Wheelock’s Latin
The WHEELOCK'S LATIN Series

WHEELOCK'S LATIN
Frederic M. Wheelock, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WORKBOOK FOR WHEELOCK'S LATIN
Paul Comeau, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER:
SELECTIONS FROM LATIN LITERATURE
Frederic M. Wheelock, revised by Richard A. LaFleur
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Maps
pages xlvi-xlvi: All maps copyright by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott with materials courtesy of the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/awmc)

Photographs

Editorial consultant: Prof. Ward Briggs, University of South Carolina

WHEELOCK'S™ is a trademark of Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor.

WHEELOCK'S LATIN (SIXTH EDITION, REVISED). Copyright © 2005 by Frederic M. Wheelock, Martha Wheelock, and Deborah Wheelock Taylor. Revision text copyright © 2005 by Richard A. LaFleur. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information, address HarperCollins Publishers, 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

HarperCollins books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. For information, please write: Special Markets Department, HarperCollins Publishers, 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

SIXTH EDITION, REVISED
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Revised Edition</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>xxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Position of the Latin Language in Linguistic History</td>
<td>xxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Brief Survey of Latin Literature</td>
<td>xxxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Alphabet and Pronunciation</td>
<td>xxxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maps</td>
<td>xlv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Verbs; First and Second Conjugations:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Nouns and Cases; First Declension; Agreement of Adjectives; Syntax</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Second Declension: Masculine Nouns and Adjectives; Apposition; Word Order</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Second Declension Neuters; Adjectives; Present Indicative of Sum; Predicate Nouns and Adjectives; Substantive Adjectives</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 First and Second Conjugations: Future and Imperfect; Adjectives in -er</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Sum: Future and Imperfect Indicative; Possum: Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative; Complementary Infinitive</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Third Declension Nouns</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Third Conjugation: Present Infinitive, Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative, Imperative</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -ius Adjectives</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Fourth Conjugation and -iâ€³ Verbs of the Third</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Personal Pronouns Ego, Tui, and Iâ€³; Demonstratives Is and Idem</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Perfect Active System of All Verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>*-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Numerals; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive and Ablative with Cardinal Numerals; Ablative of Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Third Declension Adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>The Relative Pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Perfect Passive System of All Verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Fourth Declension; Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Third and Fourth Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where; Summary of Ablative Uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Participles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Infinitives; Indirect Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative of Comparison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <em>Sum</em> and Possessum; Result Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td><em>Cum</em> Clauses; <em>Ferō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; <em>Volō, Mālō, Nōlō</em>; Proviso Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Jussive Noun Clauses; <em>Fiō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Conjugation of <em>Eō</em>; Constructions of Place and Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Gerund and Gerundive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td><em>-Ne, Nu̇m, and Nōmme</em> in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locī Antīquī</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locī Immūtātī</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key to Exercises</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some Etymological Aids</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary Syntax</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of Forms</td>
<td>446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English-Latin Vocabulary</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin-English Vocabulary</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location of the Sententiae Antīquae</td>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About the Authors</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The genesis of, and inspiration for, Wheelock's Latin was the 1946 G.I. Education bill which granted World War II Veterans a college education upon their return from service. "Why would a vet, schooled on the battlefields of Europe and Asia, want to study Latin?" asked our father, then a Professor of Classics at Brooklyn College. What could this language say to those who had already seen so much reality? How could a teacher make a dead language become alive, pertinent, and viable? How could one teach Latin, not as an extinct vehicle, but as the reflection of a lively culture and philosophy? This was the challenge our father undertook.

Frederic Wheelock set about to create a Latin text that would give students something to think about, a humanistic diet to nurture them both linguistically and philosophically. The book began with lessons he designed especially for his Brooklyn College students. As children we smelled regularly the pungent hectograph ink which allowed him to painstakingly reproduce the chapters of a book he was designing, page by page on a gelatin pad, for one student at a time. In 1950, on Frederic's six-month sabbatical leave, the Wheelock family travelled to the remote village of San Miguel De Allende in Mexico, where Frederic conscientiously wrote his text, and our diligent mother, Dorothy, meticulously typed the manuscript on an old portable typewriter. We young children scampered irreverently underfoot or played with native children and burros.

Twelve years of refinement, revision, and actual usage in our father's classrooms resulted in the book's first edition. When students needed to learn grammar, they read lessons and literature from the great ancient writers who used the grammar in a meaningful context. Our father sought to graft the vital flesh and blood of Roman experience and thinking onto the basic bones of forms, syntax, and vocabulary; he wanted students to tran-
scend mere gerund grinding by giving them literary and philosophical substance on which to sharpen their teeth.

As early as we can remember classical heritage filled our house. The etymology of a word would trigger lengthy discussion, often tedious for us as adolescents but abiding as we became adults. Knowing Latin teaches us English, we were constantly reminded; 60% of English words are derived from Latin. Students who take Latin are more proficient and earn higher scores on the verbal SAT exam. The business world has long recognized the importance of a rich vocabulary and rates it high as evidence of executive potential and success. Understanding the etymological history of a word gives the user vividness, color, punch, and precision. It also seems that the clearer and more numerous our verbal images, the greater our intellectual power. Wheelock's Latin is profuse with the etymological study of English and vocabulary enrichment. Our own experiences have shown that students will not only remember vocabulary words longer and better when they understand their etymologies, but also will use them with a sharper sense of meaning and nuance.

Why, then, exercise ourselves in the actual translation of Latin? "Inexorably accurate translation from Latin provides a training in observation, analysis, judgment, evaluation, and a sense of linguistic form, clarity, and beauty which is excellent training in the shaping of one's own English expression," asserted Frederic Wheelock. There is a discipline and an accuracy learned in the translation process which is transferable to any thinking and reasoning process, such as that employed by mathematicians. In fact, our father's beloved editor at Barnes & Noble, Dr. Gladys Walterhouse, was the Math Editor there and yet an ardent appreciator of Latin and its precision.

Our father loved the humanistic tradition of the classical writers and thinkers. And he shared this love not only with his students through the Sententiae Antiquae sections of his Latin text, but also with his family and friends in his daily life. As young girls, we were peppered with phrases of philosophical power from the ancients, and our father would show how these truths and lessons were alive and valid today. Some of the philosophical jewels which students of Latin will find in this book are: carpe diem, "seize the day"; aurea mediocritās, "the golden mean"; summum bonum, "the Highest Good"; and the derivation of "morality" from mōrēs ("good habits create good character," as our father used to tell us).

If learning the Latin language and the translation process are important, then getting to know the messages and art of Horace, Ovid, Virgil, and other Roman writers is equally important. Wheelock presents these Classical authors' writings on such illuminating topics as living for the future, attaining excellence, aging, and friendship. The summum bonum of Latin studies,
Frederic Wheelock wrote, “is the reading, analysis and appreciation of genuine ancient literary humanistic Latin in which our civilization is so deeply rooted and which has much to say to us in our 20th century.”

For the 45 years that Frederic Wheelock was a Professor of Latin, he instilled in his students the love of Latin as both language and literature, and he did so with humor and humility. He dearly loved teaching, because he was so enthusiastic about what he taught. He had a deep and abiding respect for his students and demanded discipline and high standards. He wished for Latin to be loved and learned as he lived it, as a torch passed down through the ages, to help light our way today.

In 1987, as Frederic Wheelock was dying at the end of 85 richly lived years, he recited Homer, Horace, and Emily Dickinson. He, like the ancients, leaves a legacy of the love of learning and a belief that we stand on the shoulders of the ancients. He would be delighted to know that there are still active and eager students participating in the excitement and enjoyment of his beloved Latin.

Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor

Filiae amantissimae
Preface

Why a new beginners’ Latin book when so many are already available? The question may rightly be asked, and a justification is in order.

It is notorious that every year increasing numbers of students enter college without Latin; and consequently they have to begin the language in college, usually as an elective, if they are to have any Latin at all. Though some college beginners do manage to continue their study of Latin for two or three years, a surprising number have to be satisfied with only one year of the subject. Among these, three groups predominate: Romance language majors, English majors, and students who have been convinced of the cultural and the practical value of even a little Latin. Into the hands of such mature students (and many of them are actually Juniors and Seniors!) it is a pity and a lost opportunity to put textbooks which in pace and in thought are graded to high-school beginners. On the other hand, in the classical spirit of moderation, we should avoid the opposite extreme of a beginners’ book so advanced and so severe that it is likely to break the spirit of even mature students in its attempt to cover practically everything in Latin.

Accordingly, the writer has striven to produce a beginners’ book which is mature, humanistic, challenging, and instructive, and which, at the same time, is reasonable in its demands. Certainly it is not claimed that Latin can be made easy and effortless. However, the writer’s experience with these

---

1 I have even had inquiries about my lessons from graduate students who suddenly discovered that they needed some Latin and wanted to study it by themselves—much as I taught myself Spanish from E. V. Greenfield’s Spanish Grammar (College Outline Series of Barnes & Noble) when I decided to make a trip to Mexico. Such instances really constitute a fourth group, adults who wish to learn some Latin independently of a formal academic course.
chapters in mimeographed form over a number of years shows that Latin can be made interesting despite its difficulty; it can give pleasure and profit even to the first-year student and to the student who takes only one year; it can be so presented as to afford a sense of progress and literary accomplishment more nearly commensurate with that achieved, for instance, by the student of Romance languages. The goal, then, has been a book which provides both the roots and at least some literary fruits of a sound Latin experience for those who will have only one year of Latin in their entire educational career, and a book which at the same time provides adequate introduction and encouragement for those who plan to continue their studies in the field. The distinctive methods and devices employed in this book in order to attain this goal are here listed with commentary.

1. SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE AND LOCÍ ANTIQUI

It can hardly be disputed that the most profitable and the most inspiring approach to ancient Latin is through original Latin sentences and passages derived from the ancient authors themselves. With this conviction the writer perused a number of likely ancient works, excerptsing sentences and passages which could constitute material for the envisioned beginners’ book. A prime desideratum was that the material be interesting per se and not chosen merely because it illustrated forms and syntax. These extensive excerpts provided a good cross section of Latin literature on which to base the choice of the forms, the syntax, and the vocabulary to be presented in the book. All the sentences which constitute the regular reading exercise in each chapter under the heading of Sententiae Antiquae are derived from this body of original Latin, as is demonstrated by the citing of the ancient author’s name after each sentence. The same holds for the connected passages which appear both in the chapters and in the section entitled Locī Antiquī. Experience has shown that the work of the formal chapters can be covered in about three-quarters of an academic year, and that the remaining quarter can be had free and clear for the crowning experience of the year—the experience of reading additional real Latin passages from ancient authors, passages which cover a wide range of interesting topics such as love, biography, philosophy, religion, morality, friendship, philanthropy, games, laws of war, anecdotes, wit, satirical comment. These basic exercises, then, are derived from

2 Caesar’s works were studiously avoided because of the view that Caesar’s traditional place in the curriculum of the first two years is infelicitous, and that more desirable reading matter can be found.

3 A half-dozen passages from late Latin and medieval authors are included to illustrate, among other things, the continuance of Latin through the Middle Ages.
Latin literature; they are not "made" or "synthetic" Latin. In fact, by the nature of their content they constitute something of an introduction to Roman experience and thought; they are not mere inane collections of words put together simply to illustrate vocabulary, forms, and rules—though they are intended to do this too.

2. VOCABULARIES AND VOCABULARY DEVICES

Every chapter has a regular vocabulary list of new Latin words to be thoroughly learned. Each entry includes: the Latin word with one or more forms (e.g., with all principal parts, in the case of verbs); essential grammatical information (e.g., the gender of nouns, case governed by prepositions); English meanings (usually with the basic meaning first); and, in parentheses, representative English derivatives. The full vocabulary entry must be memorized for each item; in progressing from chapter to chapter, students will find it helpful to keep a running vocabulary list in their notebooks or a computer file, or to use vocabulary cards (with the Latin on one side, and the rest of the entry on the other). With an eye to the proverb repetitio māter memoriae, words in the chapter vocabularies are generally repeated in the sentences and reading passages of the immediately following chapters, as well as elsewhere in the book.

In order to avoid overloading the regular chapter vocabularies, words that are less common in Latin generally or which occur infrequently (sometimes only once) in this book are glossed in parentheses following the Sententiae Antīquae and the reading passages. These glosses are generally less complete than the regular vocabulary entries and are even more abbreviated in the later chapters than in the earlier ones, but they should provide sufficient information for translating the text at hand; for words whose meanings can be easily deduced from English derivatives, the English is usually not provided. The instructor’s requirements regarding these vocabulary items may vary, but in general students should be expected to have at least a "passive" mastery of the words, i.e., they should be able to recognize the words if encountered in a similar context, in a later chapter, for example, or on a test; full entries for most of these "recognition" items will also be found in the end Vocabulary.

\[\text{To be sure, at times the Latin has had to be somewhat edited in order to bring an otherwise too difficult word or form or piece of syntax within the limits of the student’s experience. Such editing most commonly involves unimportant omissions, a slight simplification of the word order, or the substitution of an easier word, form, or syntactical usage. However, the thought and the fundamental expression still remain those of the ancient author.}\]
3. SYNTAX

Although the above-mentioned corpus of excerpts constituted the logical guide to the syntactical categories which should be introduced into the book, common sense dictated the mean between too little and too much, as stated above. The categories which have been introduced should prove adequate for the reading of the mature passages of *Locī Antiquī* and also provide a firm foundation for those who wish to continue their study of Latin beyond the first year. In fact, with the skill acquired in handling this mature Latin and with a knowledge of the supplementary syntax provided in the Appendix, a student can skip the traditional second-year course in Caesar and proceed directly to the third-year course in Cicero and other authors. The syntax has been explained in as simple and unpedantic a manner as possible, and each category has been made concrete by a large number of examples, which provide both the desirable element of repetition and also self-tutorial passages for students. Finally, in light of the sad experience that even English majors in college may have an inadequate knowledge of grammar, explanations of most grammatical terms have been added, usually with benefit of etymology; and these explanations have not been relegated to some general summarizing section (the kind that students usually avoid!) but have been worked in naturally as the terms first appear in the text.

4. FORMS AND THEIR PRESENTATION

The varieties of inflected and uninflected forms presented here are normal for a beginners’ book. However, the general practice in this text has been to alternate lessons containing noun or adjective forms with lessons containing verb forms. This should help reduce the ennui which results from too much of one thing at a time. The same consideration prompted the postponement of the locative case, adverbs, and most irregular verbs to the latter part of the book, where they could provide temporary respite from subjunctives and other heavy syntax.

Considerable effort has been made to place paradigms of more or less similar forms side by side for easy ocular cross reference in the same lesson and also, as a rule, to have new forms follow familiar related ones in natural sequence (as when adjectives of the third declension follow the i-stem nouns).

The rate at which the syntax and the forms can be absorbed will obviously depend on the nature and the caliber of the class; the instructor will have to adjust the assignments to the situation. Though each chapter forms a logical unit, it has been found that at least two assignments have to be allotted to many of the longer chapters: the first covers the English text,
the paradigms, the vocabularies, the Practice and Review, and some of the Sententiae Antiquae; the second one requires review, the completion of the Sententiae, the reading passage, and the section on etymology. Both these assignments are in themselves natural units, and this double approach contains the obvious gain of repetition.

5. PRACTICE AND REVIEW

The Practice and Review sentences were introduced as additional insurance of repetition of forms, syntax, and vocabulary, which is so essential in learning a language. If the author of a textbook can start with a predetermined sequence of vocabulary and syntax, for example, and is free to compose sentences based thereon, then it should be a fairly simple matter to make the sentences of succeeding lessons repeat the items of the previous few lessons, especially if the intellectual content of the sentences is not a prime concern. On the other hand, such repetition is obviously much more difficult to achieve when one works under the exacting restrictions outlined above in Section 1. Actually, most of the items introduced in a given chapter do re-appear in the Sententiae Antiquae of the immediately following chapters as well as passim thereafter, but the author frankly concocted the Practice and Review sentences to fill in the lacunae, to guarantee further repetition than could otherwise have been secured, and to provide exercises of continuous review. The English-into-Latin sentences, though few in number on the grounds that the prime emphasis rests on learning to read Latin, should, however, be done regularly, but the others need not be assigned as part of the ordinary outside preparation. They are easy enough to be done at sight in class as time permits; or they can be used as a basis for review after every fourth or fifth chapter in lieu of formal review lessons.

6. ETYMOLOGIES

Unusually full lists of English derivatives are provided in parentheses after the words in the vocabularies to help impress the Latin words on the student, to demonstrate the direct or indirect indebtedness of English to Latin, and to enlarge the student's own vocabulary. Occasionally, English cognates have been added. At the end of each chapter a section entitled Etymology covers some of the recognition vocabulary items introduced in the sentences and reading passages, as well as other interesting points which could not be easily indicated in the vocabulary. From the beginning, the student should be urged to consult the lists of prefixes and suffixes given in the Appendix under the heading of Some Etymological Aids. To interest

6 Ancient Latin sentences suggested some of them.
students of Romance languages and to suggest the importance of Latin to the subject, Romance derivatives have been listed from time to time.

7. THE INTRODUCTION

In addition to discussing the Roman alphabet and pronunciation, the book’s general introduction sketches the linguistic, literary, and palaeographical background of Latin. This background and the actual Latin of the Sententiae Antiquae and the Locĩ Antiqui give the student considerable insight into Roman literature, thought, expression, and experience, and evince the continuity of the Roman tradition down to our own times. It is hoped that the Introduction and especially the nature of the lessons themselves will establish this book as not just another Latin grammar but rather as a humanistic introduction to the reading of genuine Latin.

The book had its inception in a group of mimeographed lessons put together rather hurriedly and tried out in class as a result of the dissatisfaction expressed above at the beginning of this Preface. The lessons worked well, despite immediately obvious imperfections traceable to their hasty composition. To Professor Lillian B. Lawler of Hunter College I am grateful for her perusal of the mimeographed material and for her suggestions. I also wish to acknowledge the patience of my students and colleagues at Brooklyn College who worked with the mimeographed material, and their helpfulness and encouragement in stating their reactions to the text. Subsequently these trial lessons were completely revised and rewritten in the light of experience. I am indebted to Professor Joseph Pearl of Brooklyn College for his kindness in scrutinizing the 40 chapters of the manuscript in their revised form and for many helpful suggestions. To the Reverend Joseph M.-F. Marique, S.J., of Boston College I herewith convey my appreciation for his encouraging and helpful review of the revised manuscript. Thomas S. Lester of Northeastern University, a man of parts and my alter idem amicissimus since classical undergraduate years, has my heartfelt thanks for so often and so patiently lending to my problems a sympathetic ear, a sound mind, and a sanguine spirit. To my dear wife, Dorothy, who so faithfully devoted herself to the typing of a very difficult manuscript, who was often asked for a judgment, and who, in the process, uttered many a salutary plea for clarity and for compassion toward the students, I dedicate my affectionate and abiding gratitude. My final thanks go to Dr. Gladys Walterhouse and her colleagues in the editorial department of Barnes & Noble for their friendly, efficient, and often crucial help in many matters. It need hardly be added that no one but the author is responsible for any infelicities which may remain.
The Second and Third Editions

Because of the requests of those who found that they needed more reading material than that provided by the *Locī Antīquī*, the author prepared a second edition which enriched the book by a new section entitled *Locī Immitātī*. In these passages the original ancient Latin texts have been left unchanged except for omissions at certain points. The footnotes are of the general character of those in the *Locī Antīquī*. It is hoped that these readings will prove sufficiently extensive to keep an introductory class well supplied for the entire course, will give an interesting additional challenge to the person who is self-tutored, and will provide a very direct approach to the use of the regular annotated texts of classical authors.

Because of the indisputable value of repetition for establishing linguistic reflexes, the third edition includes a new section of Self-Tutorial Exercises. These consist of questions on grammar and syntax, and sentences for translation. A key provides answers to all the questions and translations of all the sentences.

The second and third editions would be incomplete without a word of deep gratitude to the many who in one way or another have given kind encouragement, who have made suggestions, who have indicated emendanda. I find myself particularly indebted to Professors Josephine Bree of Albertus Magnus College, Ben L. Charney of Oakland City College, Louis H. Feldman of Yeshiva College, Robert J. Leslie of Indiana University, Mr. Thomas S. Lester of Northeastern University, the Reverend James R. Murdock of Glenmary Home Missioners, Professors Paul Pascal of the University of Washington, Robert Renehan of Harvard University, John E. Rexine of Colgate University, George Tyler of Moravian College, Ralph L. Ward of Hunter College, Dr. Gladys Walterhouse of the Editorial Staff of Barnes & Noble, and most especially, once again, to my wife.

Frederic M. Wheelock
When Professor Frederic Wheelock's *Latin* first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and concision; at least one reviewer predicted that the book “might well become the standard text” for introducing college students and other adult learners to elementary Latin. Now, half a century later, that prediction has certainly been proven accurate. A second edition was published in 1960, retitled *Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors* and including a rich array of additional reading passages drawn directly from Latin literature (the *Locī Immūtātī*); the third edition, published in 1963, added Self-Tutorial Exercises, with an answer key, for each of the 40 chapters and greatly enhanced the book’s usefulness both for classroom students and for those wishing to study the language independently. In 1984, three years before the author’s death, a list of passage citations for the *Sententiae Antīquaes* was added, so that teachers and students could more easily locate and explore the context of selections they found especially interesting; and in 1992 a fourth edition appeared under the aegis of the book’s new publisher, HarperCollins, in which the entire text was set in a larger, more legible font.

The fifth edition, published in 1995 and aptly retitled *Wheelock's Latin*, constituted the first truly substantive revision of the text in more than 30 years. The revisions which I introduced were intended, not to alter the basic concept of the text, but to enhance it; indeed, a number of the most significant changes were based on Professor Wheelock’s own suggestions, contained in notes made available for the project by his family, and others reflected the experiences of colleagues around the country, many of whom (myself included) had used and admired the book for two decades or more and had in the process arrived at some consensus about certain basic ways in which it might be improved for a new generation of students.
The most obvious change in the fifth edition reflected Wheelock's own principal desideratum, shared by myself and doubtless by most who had used the book over the years, and that was the addition of passages of continuous Latin, based on ancient authors, to each of the 40 chapters. These are in the early chapters quite brief and highly adapted, but later on are more extensive and often excerpted verbatim from a variety of prose and verse authors; some had appeared in previous editions among the *Loci Antiqui* and the *Loci Immutati*, while many were included for the first time in the fifth edition. Some of the Practice and Review sentences were revised or replaced, as were a few of the *Sententiae Antiquae* (which in some instances were expanded into longer readings), again as suggested in part by Professor Wheelock himself.

The chapter vocabularies, generally regarded as too sparse, were expanded in most instances to about 20–25 words, a quite manageable list including new items as well as many found previously as parenthetical glosses to the *Sententiae Antiquae*. Full principal parts were provided for all verbs from the beginning, as colleagues around the country had agreed should be done, so students would not be confronted with the somewhat daunting list previously presented in Chapter 12.

There was only minimal shifting of grammar, but in particular the imperfect tense was introduced along with the future in Chapters 5, 8, and 10, so that a past tense would be available for use in the readings at a much earlier stage. Numerals and the associated material originally in Chapter 40 were introduced in Chapter 15; and a half dozen or so important grammatical constructions previously presented in the Supplementary Syntax were instead introduced in Chapter 40 and a few of the earlier chapters. Many of the grammatical explanations were rewritten; essential information from the footnotes was incorporated into the text, while some less important notes were deleted.

Finally, I included at the end of each chapter in the fifth edition a section titled *Latīna Est Gaudium—et Útīlis*, which presents, in a deliberately informal style, a miscellany of Latin mottoes and well-known quotations, familiar abbreviations, interesting etymologies, classroom conversation items, occasional tidbits of humor, and even a few ghastly puns, all intended to demonstrate, on the lighter side, that Latin can indeed be pleasurable as well as edifying.

**The Sixth Edition and Sixth Edition, Revised**

The very considerable success of the fifth edition encouraged all of us involved---Professor Wheelock's daughters, Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, our editor Greg Chaput and his associates at HarperCollins, and myself---to proceed with the further revisions I had proposed for
this new sixth edition. We all hope that teachers and students alike will benefit from the numerous improvements, the most immediately apparent of which are: the handsome new cover art, a Roman mosaic from Tunisia depicting Virgil with a copy of the *Aeneid* in his lap and flanked by two Muses representing his work’s inspiration; the three maps of ancient Italy, Greece and the Aegean area, and the Mediterranean, which have been specially designed to include, inter alia, all the placenames mentioned in the book’s readings and notes (except a few situated on the remotest fringes of the empire); and the numerous photographs selected primarily from classical and later European art to illustrate literary and historical figures and aspects of classical culture and mythology presented in the chapter readings. Among the less obvious but, we hope, equally helpful changes are: revision of chapter readings, especially the Practice and Review sentences, for greater clarity and increased reinforcement of new and recently introduced chapter vocabulary items; expansion of derivatives lists in the chapter vocabularies and of cross-references to related words in other chapters; and enlargement of the English-Latin end vocabulary.

The “sixth edition, revised,” first published in 2005, contains a variety of additional enhancements, including slight revisions to the Introduction and to some of the sentences, reading passages, and accompanying notes, as well as further expansion of the English-Latin vocabulary designed to render even more useful the popular companion text, *Workbook for Wheelock’s Latin* (in its revised third edition by Paul Comeau and myself, published concurrently with the sixth edition of *Wheelock’s Latin*). The sixth edition, revised, is also the first in many years to appear in a hardbound version, along with the traditional paperback; audio is now available online for all the chapter vocabularies and other pronunciation help; and, for the first time ever, a teacher’s guide has been written and is available online, password-protected, to instructors who provide verification of their faculty status.

A final note for professors, teachers, and those engaged in independent study: This revised edition of *Wheelock’s Latin* very likely contains more material for translation than can actually be covered in the two or three days typically allotted to a chapter in a semester course or the week or so allotted in high school. Instructors may thus pick and choose and be selective in the material they assign: my suggestion for the first day or two is to assign for written homework only limited selections from the Practice and Review sentences and the *Sententiae Antiquae*, while reserving the others (or some of the others, carefully selected in advance) for in-class sight translation; assignments for the second or third day should nearly always include the reading passages following the *Sententiae Antiquae*, which will give students the experience they need with continuous narrative. Students should regularly be encouraged to practice new material at home with the Self-Tutorial Exercises located at the back of the book, checking their accuracy with the an-
swer key that follows, and sentences from these exercises, again pre-selected for the purpose, can be used to drill mastery of new concepts via sight translation in class.

Most instructors will also want their students to use the *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*, which contains a wide range of additional exercises, including for each chapter a detailed set of objectives, a series of questions designed to focus directly on the newly introduced grammar, a variety of transformation drills, word, phrase, and sentence translations, questions on etymologies, synonyms, antonyms, and analogies for new vocabulary items, and reading comprehension questions to test the student’s understanding of the chapter’s reading passages.

Those who may not have time to complete all of the many *Workbook* items provided for each chapter are advised at least to review each of the *Intellelegenda* (chapter objectives), answer all the *Grammatica* (grammar review) questions and then complete at least one or two items from each section of the *Exercitatioëns* (i.e., one or two from the section A exercises, one or two from section B, etc.), all the *Vis Verbórums* (etymology and English word power) items, one or two of the Latin-to-English translations in section A of the *Lectiónes* (readings), and all the items in *Lectiónes* B (questions on the chapter’s continuous reading passages).

There are numerous other materials designed to complement *Wheelock's Latin* and the *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*, including supplemental readers, computer software, and a wealth of internet resources, many of which, along with further suggestions on teaching and learning Latin via Wheelock, are listed at the official Wheelock's Latin Series Website, www.wheelockslatin.com, and described in my book *Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom* (available from Prentice Hall Publishers).

There are many whom I am eager to thank for their support of the fifth and sixth editions of *Wheelock's Latin*: my children, Jean-Paul, Laura Caroline, and Kimberley Ellen, for their constant affection; my colleague Jared Klein, a distinguished Indo-European linguist, for reading and offering his judicious advice on my revisions to both the *Introduction* and the individual chapters; graduate assistants Cleve Fisher, Marshall Lloyd, Sean Mathis, Matthew Payne, and Jim Yavenditti, for their energetic and capable help with a variety of tasks; Mary Wells Ricks, long-time friend and former Senior Associate Editor for the *Classical Outlook*, for her expert counsel on a variety of editorial matters; our department secretaries, JoAnn Pulliam and Connie Russell, for their generous clerical assistance; my editors at HarperCollins, Erica Spaberg, Patricia Leasure, and especially Greg Chaput, each of whom enthusiastically supported my proposals for the revised editions; Tim McCarthy of Art Resource in New York, as well as colleagues Jim Anderson, Bob Curtis, Timothy Gantz, and Frances Van Keuren, for their assistance with the graphics; Tom Elliott, with the Ancient World
Mapping Center, for the lion’s share of the work involved in designing the sixth edition’s maps; students and associates at the University of Georgia who field-tested the new material or provided other helpful assistance, among them Bob Harris and Richard Shedenhelm; colleagues around the country who offered suggestions for specific revisions to one or both of these editions, especially Ward Briggs at the University of South Carolina (whose biographies of Professor Wheelock appear in his book, *A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists*, Westport CT: Greenwood Press, 1994, and in the Winter, 2003, *Classical Outlook*), Rob Latousek, John Lautermilch, John McChesney-Young, Braden Mechley, Betty Rose Nagle, John Ramsey, Joseph Riegsecker, Cliff Roti, Les Sheridan, David Sider, Alden Smith, Cliff Weber, and Stephen Wheeler; Dean Wyatt Anderson, for his encouragement of my own work and all our Classics Department’s endeavors; Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, my “sisters-in-Latin,” for their steadfast advocacy of my work on the revised editions and their generous sharing of their father’s notes; and finally, Professor Frederic M. Wheelock himself, for producing a textbook that has truly become a classic in its own right and one whose revision, therefore, became for me a *labor amōris*.

Richard A. LaFleur
University of Georgia
Autumn, 2004
I love the language, that soft bastard Latin,
Which melts like kisses from a female mouth.

George Noel Gordon, Lord Byron
*Beppo*

I would make them all learn English: and then I would let the clever ones learn Latin as an honor, and Greek as a treat.

Sir Winston Churchill
*Roving Commission: My Early Life*

He studied Latin like the violin, because he liked it.

Robert Frost
*The Death of the Hired Man*
Introduction

*Wer fremde Sprachen nicht kennt, weiss nichts von seiner eigenen.* (Goethe)
*Apprendre une langue, c'est vivre de nouveau.* (French proverb)

Interest in learning Latin can be considerably increased by even a limited knowledge of some background details such as are sketched in this introduction. The paragraphs on the position of the Latin language in linguistic history provide one with some linguistic perspective not only for Latin but also for English. The brief survey of Latin literature introduces the authors from whose works have come the *Sententiae Antiquae* and the *Locii Antiqui* of this book; and even this abbreviated survey provides some literary perspective which the student may never otherwise experience. The same holds for the account of the alphabet; and, of course, no introduction would be complete without a statement about the sounds which the letters represent.

**THE POSITION OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE IN LINGUISTIC HISTORY**

Say the words “I,” “me,” “is,” “mother,” “brother,” “ten,” and you are speaking words which, in one form or another, men and women of Europe and Asia have used for thousands of years. In fact, we cannot tell how old these words actually are. If their spelling and pronunciation have changed somewhat from period to period and from place to place, little wonder; what does pique the imagination is the fact that the basic elements of these symbols of human thought have had the vitality to traverse such spans of time.
and space down to this very moment on this new continent. The point is demonstrated in the considerably abbreviated and simplified table that follows.¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>me</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>mother</th>
<th>brother</th>
<th>ten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sanskrit²</td>
<td>aham</td>
<td>māṁ</td>
<td>asti</td>
<td>māṭar-</td>
<td>bhrāṭar-</td>
<td>daśam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>esti</td>
<td>mētēr</td>
<td>phrāṭēr³</td>
<td>dekā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>māter</td>
<td>frāter</td>
<td>decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anglo-Saxon⁴</td>
<td>ic</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>mōdor</td>
<td>brōthor</td>
<td>tien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Irish</td>
<td>mé</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>esti</td>
<td>māthir</td>
<td>brāthir</td>
<td>deich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuanian⁵</td>
<td>aš</td>
<td>manē</td>
<td>esti</td>
<td>motē</td>
<td>broterēlis</td>
<td>dešimtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian⁶</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>menja</td>
<td>jest’</td>
<td>mat’</td>
<td>brat</td>
<td>desjat’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can see from these columns of words that the listed languages are related.⁸ And yet, with the exception of the ultimate derivation of English from Anglo-Saxon,⁹ none of these languages stems directly from another in the list. Rather, they all go back through intermediate stages to a common ancestor, which is now lost but which can be predicated on the evidence of the languages which do survive. Such languages the philologist calls “cognate” (Latin for “related” or, more literally, “born together,” i.e., from the same ancestry). The name most commonly given to the now lost ancestor of all these “relatives,” or cognate languages, is Indo-European, because its descendants are found both in or near India (Sanskrit, Iranian) and also in Europe (Greek and Latin and the Germanic, Celtic, Slavic, and Baltic languages).¹⁰ The oldest of these languages on the basis of documents writ-

¹Some elements have been omitted from this table as not immediately necessary. The words in the table are only a few of the many which could be cited.
²The language of the sacred writings of ancient India, parent of the modern Indo-European languages of India.
³Though cognate with the other words in this column, classical Greek phrāṭēr meant *member of a clan*.
⁴As an example of the Germanic languages; others are Gothic, German, Dutch, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Icelandic, English.
⁵As an example of the Celtic languages; others are Gaulish, Breton, Scots (Gaelic). Old Irish mé in the chart is actually nominative case, equivalent to “I” in meaning and usage but to “me” in form.
⁶As an example of the Baltic group; others are Latvian and Old Prussian.
⁷As an example of the Slavic group; others are Polish, Bulgarian, Czech.
⁸This large family of languages shows relationship in the matter of inflections also, but no attempt is made here to demonstrate the point. An inflected language is one in which the nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs have variable endings by which the relationship of the words to each other in a sentence can be indicated. In particular, note that Anglo-Saxon, like Latin, was an inflected language but that its descendant English has lost most of its inflections.
⁹The later connection between English and Latin will be pointed out below.
¹⁰Note that many languages (e.g., the Semitic languages, Egyptian, Basque, Chinese, the native languages of Africa and the Americas) lie outside the Indo-European family.
ten in them are Sanskrit, Iranian, Greek, and Latin, and these documents go back centuries before the time of Christ.

The difference between *derived* (from roots meaning "to flow downstream from" a source) and *cognate* languages can be demonstrated even more clearly by the relationship of the Romance languages to Latin and to each other. For here we are in the realm of recorded history and can see that with the Roman political conquest of such districts as Gaul (France), Spain, and Dacia (Roumania) there occurred also a Roman linguistic conquest. Out of this victorious ancient Latin as spoken by the common people (*vulgar*us, hence "vulgar" Latin) grew the Romance languages, such as French, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian, and, of course, Italian. Consequently, we can say of Italian, French, and Spanish, for instance, that they are *derived* from Latin and that they are *cognate* with each other.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent</th>
<th>Cognate Romance Derivatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amicus</td>
<td>amico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>tempo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manus</td>
<td>mano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bucca</td>
<td>bocca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caballus^{12}</td>
<td>cavallo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flius</td>
<td>figlio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille</td>
<td>il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illa</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quattro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>buono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>bene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere</td>
<td>fare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legere</td>
<td>leggere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although it was noted above that English ultimately stems from Anglo-Saxon, which is cognate with Latin, there is much more than that to the story of our own language. Anglo-Saxon itself had early borrowed a few words from Latin; and then in the 7th century more Latin words^{14} came in as a result of the work of St. Augustine (the Lesser), who was sent by Pope Gregory to Christianize the Angles. After the victory of William the Con-

---

^{11} The classical Latin word for mouth was *ös*, *ōris*.

^{12} The classical Latin word for horse was *equus*.

^{13} Derived from *ille* but not actually cognate with *il* and *el*.

^{14} Many of these were of Greek and Hebrew origin but had been Latinized. The Latin *Vulgate* played an important role.
Actually, Latin was only one of a number of Italic dialects (among which were Oscan and Umbrian), and some time passed before Latin won out over the other dialects in Italy. Similarly, among the Greeks there were a number of dialects ( Aeolic, Attic, Ionic, Doric).
Norman French became the polite language and Anglo-Saxon was held in low esteem as the tongue of vanquished men and serfs. Thus Anglo-Saxon, no longer the language of literature, became simply the speech of humble daily life. Some two centuries later, however, as the descendants of the Normans finally amalgamated with the English natives, the Anglo-Saxon language reasserted itself; but in its poverty it had to borrow hundreds of French words (literary, intellectual, cultural) before it could become the language of literature. Borrow it did abundantly, and in the 13th and 14th centuries this development produced what is called Middle English, known especially from Chaucer, who died in 1400. Along with the adoption of these Latin-rooted French words there was also some borrowing directly from Latin itself, and the renewed interest in the classics which characterized the Renaissance naturally intensified this procedure during the 16th and the 17th centuries. From that time to the present Latin has continued to be a source of new words, particularly for the scientist.

Consequently, since English through Anglo-Saxon is cognate with Latin and since English directly or indirectly has borrowed so many words from Latin, we can easily demonstrate both cognation and derivation by our own vocabulary. For instance, our word "brother" is cognate with Latin frāter but "fraternal" clearly is derived from frāter. Other instances are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin Cognate(^\text{18})</th>
<th>English Derivative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>māter</td>
<td>maternal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>dual, duet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>dēns, stem dent-</td>
<td>dental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>pēs, stem ped-</td>
<td>pedal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>cor, stem cord-</td>
<td>cordial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>fertile</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{16}\) Thomas Wilson (16th century) says: "The unlearned or foolish fantastical, that smells but of learning (such fellows as have been learned men in their days), will so Latin their tongues, that the simple cannot but wonder at their talk, and think surely they speak by some revelation." Sir Thomas Browne (17th century) says: "If elegancy still proceedeth, and English pens maintain that stream we have of late observed to flow from many, we shall within a few years be fain to learn Latin to understand English, and a work will prove of equal facility in either." These statements are quoted by permission from the "Brief History of the English Language" by Hadley and Kittredge in Webster's New International Dictionary, Second Edition, copyright, 1934, 1939, 1945, 1950, 1953, 1954, by G. & C. Merriam Co.

\(^{17}\) And apparently even our 20th-century composers of advertisements would be reduced to near beggary if they could not draw on the Latin vocabulary and the classics in general.

\(^{18}\) Grimm's law catalogues the Germanic shift in certain consonants (the stops). This shows how such apparently different words as English heart and Latin cor, cord-., are in origin the same word.
In fact, here you see one of the reasons for the richness of our vocabulary, and the longer you study Latin the more keenly you will realize what a limited language ours would be without the Latin element.

Despite the brevity of this survey you can comprehend the general position of Latin in European linguistic history and something of its continuing importance to us of the 20th century. It is the cognate\(^\text{19}\) of many languages and the parent of many; it can even be called the adoptive parent of our own. In summary is offered the much abbreviated diagram on page xxx above.\(^\text{20}\)

**A BRIEF SURVEY OF LATIN LITERATURE**

Since throughout this entire book you will be reading sentences and longer passages excerpted from Latin literature, a brief outline is here sketched to show both the nature and the extent of this great literature. You will find the following main divisions reasonable and easy to keep in mind, though the common warning against dogmatism in regard to the names and the dates of periods should certainly be sounded.

I. Early Period (down to ca. 80 B.C.)

II. Golden Age (80 B.C.–14 A.D.)
   A. Ciceronian Period (80–43 B.C.)
   B. Augustan Period (43 B.C.–14 A.D.)

III. Silver Age (14–ca. 138 A.D.)

IV. Patristic Period (late 2nd–5th cens. of our era)

V. Medieval Period (6th–14th cens. of our era)

VI. Period from the Renaissance (ca. 15th cen.) to the Present

**THE EARLY PERIOD (DOWN TO CA. 80 B.C.)**

The apogee of Greek civilization, including the highest development of its magnificent literature and art, was reached during the 5th and the 4th centuries before Christ. In comparison, Rome during those centuries had little to offer. Our fragmentary evidence shows only a rough, accentual na-

\(^{19}\)Take particular care to note that Latin is simply cognate with Greek, not derived from it.

\(^{20}\)In the interests of simplicity and clarity a number of languages and intermediate steps have been omitted. In particular it should be noted that no attempt has been made to indicate the indebtedness of English to Greek. Two branches of the Indo-European language family, Anatolian and Tocharian, are now extinct and are not shown on the chart.
tive meter called Saturnian, some native comic skits, and a rough, practical prose for records and speeches.

In the 3d century B.C., however, the expansion of Roman power brought the Romans into contact with Greek civilization. Somehow the hardheaded, politically and legally minded Romans were fascinated by what they found, and the writers among them went to school to learn Greek literature. From this time on, Greek literary forms, meters, rhetorical devices, subjects, and ideas had a tremendous and continuing influence on Roman literature, even as it developed its own character and originality in a great many ways.

In fact, the Romans themselves did not hesitate to admit as much. Although the Romans now composed epics, tragedies, satires, and speeches, the greatest extant accomplishments of this period of apprenticeship to Greek models are the comedies of Plautus (ca. 254-184 B.C.) and Terence (185-159 B.C.). These were based on Greek plays of the type known as New Comedy, the comedy of manners, and they make excellent reading today. Indeed, a number of these plays have influenced modern playwrights; Plautus' *Menaechmi*, for instance, inspired Shakespeare's *Comedy of Errors*.

THE GOLDEN AGE (80 B.C.-14 A.D.)

During the first century before Christ the Roman writers perfected their literary media and made Latin literature one of the world's greatest. It is particularly famous for its beautiful, disciplined form, which we know as classic, and for its real substance as well. If Lucretius complained about the poverty of the Latin vocabulary, Cicero so molded the vocabulary and the general usage that Latin remained a supple and a subtle linguistic tool for thirteen centuries and more.\(^{21}\)

THE CICERONIAN PERIOD (80-43 B.C.). The literary work of the Ciceronian Period was produced during the last years of the Roman Republic. This was a period of civil wars and dictators, of military might against constitutional right, of selfish interest, of brilliant pomp and power, of moral and religious laxity. Outstanding authors important for the book which you have in hand are:

_Lucretius_ (Titus Lucretius Càrus, ca. 98-55 B.C.): author of *De Rerum Nàtūrā*, a powerful didactic poem on happiness achieved through the Epicurean philosophy. This philosophy was based on pleasure\(^{22}\) and was buttressed by an atomic theory which made the universe a realm of natural, not divine, law and thus eliminated the fear of the gods and the tyranny of religion, which Lucretius believed had shattered men's happiness.

_Catullus_ (Gàius Valerius Catullus, ca. 84-54 B.C.): lyric poet, the Robert

\(^{21}\) See below under Medieval and Renaissance Latin.

\(^{22}\) However, that it meant simply “eat, drink, and be merry” is a vulgar misinterpretation.
Burns of Roman literature, an intense and impressionable young provincial from northern Italy who fell totally under the spell of an urban sophisticate, Lesbia (a literary pseudonym for her real name, Clodia), but finally escaped bitterly disillusioned; over 100 of his poems have survived.

Cicero (Marcus Tullius Cicerō, 106–43 B.C.): the greatest Roman orator, whose eloquence thwarted the conspiracy of the bankrupt aristocrat Catiline\(^{23}\) in 63 B.C. and 20 years later cost Cicero his own life in his patriotic opposition to Anthony’s high-handed policies; admired also as an authority on Roman rhetoric, as an interpreter of Greek philosophy to his countrymen, as an essayist on friendship (De Amicitiam) and on old age (De Senectūte), and, in a less formal style, as a writer of self-revealing letters. Cicero’s vast contributions to the Latin language itself have already been mentioned.

Caesar (Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 102 or 100–44 B.C.): orator, politician, general, statesman, dictator, author; best known for his military memoirs, Bellum Gallicum and Bellum Civile.

\(^{23}\)See the introductory notes to “Cicero Denounces Catiline” in Ch. 11 and “Evidence and Confession” in Ch. 30.
Nepos (Cornélius Nepōs, 99–24 B.C.): friend of Catullus and Caesar and a writer of biographies noted rather for their relatively easy and popular style than for greatness as historical documents.

Publilius Syrus (fl. 43 B.C.): a slave who was taken to Rome and who there became famous for his mimes, which today are represented only by a collection of epigrammatic sayings.

THE AUGUSTAN PERIOD (43 B.C.–14 A.D.). The first Roman Emperor gave his name to this period. Augustus wished to correct the evils of the times, to establish civil peace by stable government, and to win the Romans’ support for his new regime. With this in mind he and Maecenas, his unofficial prime minister, sought to enlist literature in the service of the state. Under their patronage Virgil and Horace became what we should call poets laureate. Some modern critics feel that this fact vitiates the noble sentiments of these poets; others see in Horace a spirit of independence and of genuine moral concern, and maintain that Virgil, through the character of his epic hero Aeneas, is not simply glorifying Augustus but is actually suggesting to the emperor what is expected of him as head of the state.24

Virgil (Pūiblius Vergilius Marō, 70–19 B.C.): from humble origins in northern Italy; lover of nature; profoundly sympathetic student of humankind; Epicurean and mystic; severe and exacting self-critic, master craftsman, linguistic and literary architect, “lord of language”; famous as a writer of pastoral verse (the Eclogues) and of a beautiful didactic poem on farm life (the Georgics); best known as the author of one of the world’s great epics,25 the Aeneid, a national epic with ulterior purposes, to be sure, but one also with ample universal and human appeal to make it powerful 20th-century reading.

Horace (Quintus Horātius Flaccus, 65–8 B.C.): freedman’s son who, thanks to his father’s vision and his own qualities, rose to the height of poet laureate; writer of genial and self-revealing satires; author of superb lyrics both light and serious; meticulous composer famed for the happy effects of his linguistic craftsmanship (cūriōsa fēlicitās, painstaking felicity); synthesist of Epicurean carpe diem (enjoy today) and Stoic virtūs (virtue); preacher and practitioner of aurea mediocritās (the golden mean).

Livy (Titus Livius, 59 B.C.–17 A.D.): friend of Augustus but an admirer of the Republic and of olden virtues; author of a monumental, epic-spirited history of Rome, and portrayer of Roman character at its best as he judged it.

25The Aeneid is always associated with Homer’s Iliad and Odyssey, to which it owes a great deal, and with Dante’s Divine Comedy and Milton’s Paradise Lost, which owe a great deal to it.
Propertius (Sextus Propertius, ca. 50 B.C.–ca. 2 A.D.): author of four books of romantic elegiac poems, much admired by Ovid.

Ovid (Publius Ovidius Naso, 43 B.C.–17 A.D.): author of much love poetry which was hardly consonant with Augustus' plans; most famous today as the writer of the long and clever hexameter work on mythology entitled Metamorphoses, which has proved a thesaurus for subsequent poets. Ovid, like Pope, "lisped in numbers, for the numbers came."

THE SILVER AGE (14–CA. 138 A.D.)

In the Silver Age there is excellent writing; but often there are also artificialities and conceits, a striving for effects and a passion for epigrams, characteristics which often indicate a less sure literary sense and power—hence the traditional, though frequently overstated, distinction between "Golden" and "Silver." The temperaments of not a few emperors also had a limiting or blighting effect on the literature of this period.

Seneca (Lucius Annaeus Seneca, 4 B.C.–65 A.D.): Stoic philosopher from Spain; tutor of Nero; author of noble moral essays of the Stoic spirit, of tragedies (which, though marred by too much rhetoric and too many conceits, had considerable influence on the early modern drama of Europe), and of the Apocolocyntosis ("Pumpkinification"), a brilliantly witty, though sometimes cruel, prosimetric satire on the death and deification of the emperor Claudius.

Petronius (exact identity and dates uncertain, but probably Titus Petronius Arbiter, d. 65 A.D.): Neronian consular and courtier; author of the Satyricon, a satiric, prosimetric novel of sorts, famous for its depiction of the nouveau-riche freedman Trimalchio and his extravagant dinner-parties.

Quintilian (Marcus Fabius Quintilianus, ca. 35–95 A.D.): teacher and author of the Institutio Oratoria, a famous pedagogical work which discusses the entire education of a person who is to become an orator; a great admirer of Cicero's style and a critic of the rhetorical excesses of his own age.

Martial (Marcus Valerius Martialis, 45–104 A.D.): famed for his more than 1,500 witty epigrams and for the satirical twist which he so often gave to them. As he himself says, his work may not be great literature but people do enjoy it.

Pliny (Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus, ca. 62–113 A.D.): a conscientious public figure, who is now best known for his Epistulae, letters which reveal both the bright and the seamy sides of Roman life during this imperial period.

Tacitus (Publius Cornelius Tacitus, 55–117 A.D.): most famous as a satirical, pro-senatorial historian of the period from the death of Augustus to the death of Domitian.

Juvenal (Decimus Iunius Juvenalis, ca. 55–post 127 A.D.): a relentless, intensely rhetorical satirist of the evils of his times, who concludes that the
only thing for which one can pray is a \textit{mens sana in corpore sano} (a sound mind in a sound body). His satires inspired Dr. Samuel Johnson's \textit{London} and \textit{The Vanity of Human Wishes} and the whole conception of caustic, "Juvenalian" satire.

\textbf{THE ARCHAISING PERIOD.} The mid- to late 2nd century may be distinguished as an archaizing period, in which a taste developed for the vocabulary and style of early Latin and for the incorporation of diction from vulgar Latin; characteristic authors of the period were the orator Fronto and the antiquarian Aulus Gellius, known for his miscellaneous essays \textit{Noctes Atticae} ("Nights in Attica").

\textbf{THE PATRISTIC PERIOD (Late 2nd Cen.–5th Cen.)}

The name of the Patristic Period comes from the fact that most of the vital literature was the work of the Christian leaders, or fathers (\textit{patres}), among whom were Tertullian, Cyprian, Lactantius, Jerome, Ambrose, and Augustine. These men had been well educated; they were familiar with, and frequently fond of, the best classical authors; many of them had even been teachers or lawyers before going into service of the Church. At times the classical style was deliberately employed to impress the pagans, but more and more the concern was to reach the common people (\textit{vulgus}) with the Christian message. Consequently, it is not surprising to see vulgar Latin re-emerging\textsuperscript{26} as an important influence in the literature of the period. St. Jerome in his letters is essentially Ciceronian, but in his Latin edition of the Bible, the \textit{Vulgate} (383–405 A.D.), he uses the language of the people. Similarly St. Augustine, though formerly a teacher and a great lover of the Roman classics, was willing to use any idiom that would reach the people (\textit{ad usum vulgi}) and said that it did not matter if the barbarians conquered Rome provided they were Christian.

\textbf{THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD (6th–14th Cens.)}

During the first three centuries of the Medieval Period, vulgar Latin underwent rapid changes\textsuperscript{27} and, reaching the point when it could no longer be called Latin, it became this or that Romance language according to the locality.

\textsuperscript{26} Vulgar Latin has already been mentioned as the language of the common people. Its roots are in the early period. In fact, the language of Plautus has much in common with this later vulgar Latin, and we know that throughout the Golden and the Silver Ages vulgar Latin lived on as the colloquial idiom of the people but was kept distinct from the literary idiom of the texts and the polished conversation of those periods.

\textsuperscript{27} E.g., the loss of most declensional endings and the increased use of prepositions; extensive employment of auxiliary verbs; anarchy in the uses of the subjunctive and the indicative.
On the other hand, Latin, the literary idiom more or less modified by the Vulgate and other influences, continued throughout the Middle Ages as the living language of the Church and of the intellectual world. Though varying considerably in character and quality, it was an international language, and Medieval Latin literature is sometimes called “European” in contrast to the earlier “national Roman.” In this Medieval Latin was written a varied and living literature (religious works, histories, anecdotes, romances, dramas, sacred and secular poetry), examples of which are included below, in the excerpt from the 7th century writer Isidore of Seville (in Ch. 29) and selections from other authors in the Loci Antiqui. The long life of Latin is attested in the early 14th century by the facts that Dante composed in Latin the political treatise De Monarchia, that he wrote in Latin his De Vulgāri Eloquentiā to justify his use of the vernacular Italian for literature, and that in Latin pastoral verses he rejected the exhortation to give up the vernacular, in which he was writing the Divine Comedy, and compose something in Latin.28

THE PERIOD FROM THE RENAISSANCE (ca. 15th Cen.) TO THE PRESENT

Because of Petrarch’s new-found admiration of Cicero, Renaissance scholars scorned Medieval Latin and turned to Cicero in particular as the canon of perfection. Although this return to the elegant Ciceronian idiom was prompted by great affection and produced brilliant effects, it was an artificial movement which made Latin somewhat imitative and static compared with the spontaneous, living language which it had been during the Middle Ages. However, Latin continued to be effectively employed well into the modern period, and the ecclesiastical strain is still very much alive (despite its de-emphasis in the early 1960s) as the language of the Roman Catholic Church and seminaries. Furthermore, the rediscovery of the true, humanistic spirit of the ancient Latin and Greek literatures and the fresh attention to literary discipline and form as found in the classics proved very beneficial to the native literature of the new era.

The purpose of this abbreviated outline has been to provide some sense of the unbroken sweep of Latin literature from the 3rd century B.C. down to our own times. Besides enjoying its own long and venerable history, Latin literature has also inspired, schooled, and enriched our own English and other occidental literatures to a degree beyond easy assessment. Add to this

28 At the same time, by token of Dante’s success and that of others in the use of the vernacular languages, it must be admitted that Latin had begun to wage a losing battle.

29 For instance, note its use by Erasmus and Sir Thomas More in the 16th century, by Milton, Bacon, and Newton in the 17th century, and by botanists, classical scholars, and poets of the later centuries.
the wide influence of the Latin language itself as outlined above and you can hardly escape the conclusion that Latin is dead only in a technical sense of the word, and that even a limited knowledge of Latin is a great asset to anyone who works with or is interested in English and the Romance languages and literatures.

**THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION**

The forms of the letters which you see on this printed page are centuries old. They go back through the earliest Italian printed books of the 15th century and through the finest manuscripts of the 12th and 11th centuries to the firm, clear Carolingian bookhand of the 9th century as perfected under the inspiration of the Carolingian Renaissance by the monks of St. Martin's at Tours in France. These monks developed the small letters from beautiful clear semi-uncials, which in turn lead us back to the uncial and square capitals of the Roman Empire. Today we are in the habit of distinguishing the Roman alphabet from the Greek, but the fact is that the Romans learned to write from the Etruscans, who in turn had learned to write from Greek colonists who had settled in the vicinity of Naples during the 8th century B.C. Actually, therefore, the Roman alphabet is simply one form of the Greek alphabet. But the Greeks were themselves debtors in this matter, for, at an early but still undetermined date, they had received their alphabet from a Semitic source, the Phoenicians. And finally the early Semites appear to have been inspired by Egyptian hieroglyphs. This brief history of the forms of the letters which you see in our books today provides one more illustration of our indebtedness to antiquity.

The Roman alphabet was like ours except that it lacked the letters j and w. Furthermore, the letter v originally stood for both the sound of the vowel

---

30 Called "incunabula" because they were made in the "cradle days" of printing. The type is called "Roman" to distinguish it from the "black-letter" type which was used in northern Europe (cp. the German type). The Italian printers based their Roman type on that of the finest manuscripts of the period, those written for the wealthy, artistic, exacting Renaissance patrons. The scribes of those manuscripts, seeking the most attractive kind of script with which to please such patrons, found it in manuscripts written in the best Carolingian book-hand.

31 The uncial letters are similar to the square capitals except that the sharp corners of the angular letters have been rounded so that they can be written with greater rapidity. An illustration can be found in Webster's *Collegiate Dictionary*, entry uncial.

32 The 22 letters of the Phoenician alphabet represented only consonant sounds. The Greeks showed their originality in using some of these letters to designate vowel sounds.
u and the sound of the consonant w. Not till the second century of our era did the rounded u-form appear, but for convenience both v and u are employed in the Latin texts of most modern editions. The letter k was rarely

33 Note that our letter w is simply double u of the v-shaped variety.
used, and then only before a, in a very few words. The letters y and z were introduced toward the end of the Republic to be used in spelling words of Greek origin.

The following tables indicate approximately the sounds of Latin and how the letters were used by Romans of the classical period to represent those sounds (there are several differences of pronunciation in medieval and ecclesiastical Latin).

**Vowels**

Vowels in Latin had only two possible pronunciations, long and short. Long vowels were generally held about twice as long as short vowels (cf. half notes to quarter notes in music) and are marked in this book, as in most beginning texts (though not in the actual classical texts), with a “macron” or “long mark” (e.g., ä); vowels without a macron are short. Students should regard macrons as part of the spelling of a word, since the differences of pronunciation they indicate are often crucial to meaning (e.g., *liber* is a noun meaning book, while *liber* is an adjective meaning free). The pronunciations are approximately as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Long</th>
<th>Short</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ä as in father: dās, cārā</td>
<td>a as in Dinah: dat, casa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē as in they: mē, sēdēs</td>
<td>e as in pet: et, sed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĕ as in machine: hic, sīca</td>
<td>i as in pin: hic, sicca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō as in clover: ōūs, mōrēs</td>
<td>o as in orb, off: os, mōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū as in rude: tū, sūmō</td>
<td>u as in put: tum, sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Diphthongs**

Latin has the following six diphthongs, combinations of two vowel sounds that were collapsed together into a single syllable:

- ae as ai in aisle: cārē, saepe
- au as ou in house: aut, laudō
- ei as in reign: deinde
- eu as Latin e + u, pronounced rapidly as a single syllable: seu.
  The sound is not found in English and is rare in Latin.
- oe as oi in oil: coeptī, proelīum
- ui as in Latin u + i, spoken as a single syllable like Spanish muy (or like Eng. gooey, pronounced quickly as a single syllable). This diphthong occurs only in huius, cuius, huic, cui, hui. Elsewhere the two letters are spoken separately as in fu-it, fructu-i.

34 This was really Greek u, upsilon (Y), a vowel with a sound intermediate between u and i, as in French u.
Latin consonants had essentially the same sounds as the English consonants with the following exceptions:

- *bs* and *bt* were pronounced *ps* and *pt* (e.g., *urbs*, *obtineō*); otherwise Latin
  *b* had the same sound as our letter (e.g., *bibēbant*).
- *c* was always hard as in *can*, never soft as in *city*: *cum*, *cīvis*, *facilis*.
- *g* was always hard as in *get*, never soft as in *gem*: *glōria*, *gerō*. When it
  appeared before *n*, the letter *g* represented a nasalized *ng* sound as in
  *hangnail*: *magnus*.
- *h* was a breathing sound, as in English, only less harshly pronounced:
  *hie*, *haec*.
- *i* (which also represented a vowel) usually functioned as a consonant
  with the sound of *y* as in *yes* when used before a vowel at the begin­
  ning of a word (*iūstus* = *yustus*); between two vowels within a word it
  served in double capacity: as the vowel *i* forming a diphthong with the
  preceding vowel, and as the consonant *y* (*reiectus* = *rei-yectus,
  *maior* = *mai-yor*, *cuius* = *cui-yus*); otherwise it was usually a vowel.
  This so-called “consonantal” *i* regularly appears in English deriv­
  atives as a *j* (a letter added to the alphabet in the Middle Ages); hence
  *maior* = *major*, *Iūlius* = *Julius*.
- *m* had the sound it has in English, pronounced with the lips closed:
  *monet*. There is some evidence, however, that in at least certain in­
  stances final *-m* (i.e., *-m* at the end of a word), following a vowel,
  was pronounced with the lips open, producing a nasalization of the
  preceding vowel: *tum*, *etiam*.
- *q*, as in English, is always followed by consonantal *u*, the combination
  having the sound *kw*: *quid*, *quoque*.
- *r* was trilled; the Romans called it the *littera canīna*, because its sound
  suggested the snarling of a dog: *Rōma*, *cūrāre*.
- *s* was always voiceless as in *see*, never voiced as in our word *ease*: *sed,
  posuissēs*, *mūstitis*.
- *t* always had the sound of *t* as in *tired*, never of *sh* as in *nation* or *ch* as
  in *mention*: *taciturnitās*, *nātiōnem*, *mentiōnem*.
- *v* had the sound of our *w*: *vīvō* = *wīvō*, *vīnūm* = *wīnūm*.
- *x* had the sound of *ks* as in *axle*, not of *gz* as in *exert*: *mixtum*, *exerceō*.
- *ch* represented Greek *chi* and had the sound of *ckh* in *block head*, not of
  *ch* in *church*: *chorus*, *Archilochus*.
- *ph* represented Greek *phi* and had the sound of *ph* in *uphill*, not the *f*
  sound in our pronunciation of *philosophy*: *philosophia*.
- *th* represented Greek *theta* and had the sound of *th* in *hot house*, not of
  *th* in *thin* or *the*: *theātrum*.

The Romans quite appropriately pronounced double consonants as two separate consonants; we in our haste usually render them as a single conso-
nant. For instance, the rr in the Latin word currant sounded something like the two r’s in the curr ran (except that in Latin each r was trilled); and the tt in admittent sounded like the two t’s in admit ten.

**Syllables**

In Latin as in English, a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

**Syllabification:** In dividing a word into syllables:

1. Two contiguous vowels or a vowel and a diphthong are separated: dea, de-a; deae, de-ae.
2. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel: amîcus, a-mî-cus.
3. When two or more consonants stand between two vowels, generally only the last consonant goes with the second vowel: mittô, mit-tô; servâre, ser-vâ-re; côn-sîmp-tus, côn-sûmp-tus. However, a stop (p, b, t, d, c, g) + a liquid (l, r) generally count as a single consonant and go with the following vowel: patrem, pa-trem; castra, castra. Also counted as single consonants are qu and the aspirates ch, ph, th, which should never be separated in syllabification: architectus, ar-chi-tec-tus; loquâcem, lo-quâ-cem.

**Syllable quantity:** A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; a syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by x, which is a double consonant (= ks). Otherwise a syllable is short; again, the difference is rather like that between a musical half-note and a quarter-note.

Syllables long by nature (here underlined): lau-dô, Rô-ma, a-mî-cus.
Syllables long by position (underlined): ser-vat, sa-pî-en-ti-a, ax-is (= ak-sis).

Examples with all long syllables, whether by nature or by position, underlined: lau-dâ-te, mo-ne-ô, sac-pe, côn-ser-vâ-tis, pa-el-lâ-rum.

Even in English, syllables have this sort of temporal quantity, i.e., some syllables take longer to pronounce than others (consider the word “enough,” with its very short, clipped first syllable, and the longer second syllable), but it is not a phenomenon we think much about. The matter is important in Latin, however, for at least two reasons: first, syllable quantity was a major determinant of the rhythm of Latin poetry, as you will learn later in your

---

But in poetry the consonants may be separated according to the rule for two consonants.

But remember that a stop + a liquid as well as qu and the aspirates ch, ph, and th regularly count as a single consonant: e.g., pa-trem, quo-que.
study of the language; and, of more immediate importance, syllable quantity
determined the position of a word’s stress accent, as explained below.

**Accent**

Words in Latin, like those in English, were pronounced with extra em­phasis on one syllable (or more than one, in the case of very long words); the placement of this “stress accent” in Latin (unlike English) followed these strict and simple rules:

1. In a word of two syllables the accent always falls on the first syllable: sér-vo, saé-pe, ní-híl.

2. In a word of three or more syllables (a) the accent falls on the next to last syllable (sometimes called the “penult”), if that syllable is long (sér-vá-re, cón-sér-vat, for-tú-na); (b) otherwise, the accent falls on the syllable before that (the “antepenult”: mó-ne-ó, pá-trí-a, pe-cú-ní-a, vó-lu-cris).

Because these rules for accentuation are so regular, accent marks (as opposed to macrons) are not ordinarily included when writing Latin; in this text, however, accents are provided in both the “paradigms” (sample declen­sions and conjugations) and the chapter vocabularies, as an aid to correct pronunciation.

Although oral-aural communication and conversational skills are some­times—and unfortunately—given little stress in the Latin classroom, never­theless a “correct” or at least a consistent pronunciation is essential to the mastery of any language. An ability to pronounce Latin words and sentences aloud according to the rules provided in this introduction will also enable you to “pronounce” correctly in your mind and, as you think of a word, to spell it correctly.

As you begin your study of Latin, remember that it did not merely con­sist of written texts to be silently read (in fact, the Romans themselves nearly always read aloud!), but it was for centuries a spoken language—a language learned and spoken by Roman boys and girls, in fact, just as your own native language was acquired and spoken by you in your childhood, and not only by famous orators, poets, and politicians. You should apply all four lan­guage learning skills in your study every day, listening and speaking as well as reading and writing; always pronounce paradigms and vocabulary items aloud, and most especially read aloud every Latin sentence or passage you encounter; and always read for comprehension, before attempting a transla­tion into English.
MAPS
Map 1: ANCIENT ITALY

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/awmc)
Map 2: THE ROMAN EMPIRE

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu awmc)
Map 3: ANCIENT GREECE AND THE AEGEAN

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/lawmc)
Verbs; First and Second Conjugations: Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating

VERBS

One might properly consider the verb (from Lat. verbum, word), which describes the subject's activity or state of being, to be the most important word in a sentence, and so we may best begin our study of Latin with a look at that part of speech (the other parts of speech in Latin are the same as those in English: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, interjections).

In Latin as in English, verbs exhibit the following five characteristics:

PERSON (Lat. persona): who is the subject, i.e., who performs (or, in the passive, receives) the action, from the speaker's point of view; 1st person = the speaker(s), I, we; 2nd = the person(s) spoken to, you; 3rd = the person(s) spoken about, he, she, it, they.

NUMBER (numerus): how many subjects, singular or plural.
TENSE (tempus, time): the time of the action; Latin has six tenses, present, future, imperfect, perfect (or present perfect), future perfect, and pluperfect (or past perfect).

MOOD (modus, manner): the manner of indicating the action or state of being of the verb; like English, Latin has the indicative (which "indicates" facts) and the imperative (which orders actions), introduced in this chapter, and the subjunctive (which describes, in particular, hypothetical or potential actions), introduced in Ch. 28.

VOICE (vōx): an indication, with transitive verbs (those that can take direct objects), of whether the subject performs the action (the active voice) or receives it (passive).

CONJUGATION

To conjugate (Lat. coniugāre, join together) a verb is to list together all its forms, according to these five variations of person, number, tense, mood, and voice. If asked to conjugate the English verb *to praise* in the present tense and the active voice of the indicative mood, you would say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>I praise</td>
<td>we praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>you praise</td>
<td>you praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>he (she, it) praises</td>
<td>they praise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The person and the number of five of these six forms cannot be determined in English without the aid of pronouns *I, you, we, they*. Only in the third person singular can you omit the pronoun *he (she, it)* and still make clear by the special ending of the verb that *praises* is third person and singular.

PERSONAL ENDINGS

What English can accomplish in only one of the six forms, Latin can do in all six by means of "personal endings," which indicate distinctly the person, the number, and the voice of the verb. Since these personal endings will be encountered at every turn, the time taken to memorize them at this point will prove an excellent investment. For the active voice they are:

Singular

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>-ō or -m, which corresponds to <em>I</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>-s, which corresponds to <em>you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>-t, which corresponds to <em>he, she, it</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
First and Second Conjugations: Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>-mus, which corresponds to we.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>-tis, which corresponds to you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>-nt, which corresponds to they.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The next step is to find a verbal "stem" to which these endings can be added.

**PRESENT INFINITIVE\(^1\) ACTIVE AND PRESENT STEM**

The present active infinitives of the model verbs used in this book for the first and second conjugations are respectively:

- laudāre, *to praise*
- monēre, *to advise*

You see that -āre characterizes the first conjugation and -ēre characterizes the second.

Now from the infinitives drop the -re, which is the actual infinitive ending, and you have the "present stems":

- laudā-
- monē-

To this present stem add the personal endings (with the few modifications noted below), and you are ready to read or to say something in Latin about the present: e.g., laudā-s, *you praise*; monē-mus, *we advise*.

This leads to the first of many paradigms. "Paradigm" (pronounced *para-dime*) derives from Greek *paradigma*, which means *pattern, example*; and paradigms are used at numerous points throughout the chapters and in the Appendix to provide summaries of forms according to convenient patterns. Of course, the ancient Romans learned the many inflected forms from their parents and from daily contacts with other people by the direct method, as we ourselves learn English today. However, since we lack this natural Latin environment and since we usually begin the study of Latin at a relatively late age under the exigencies of time, the analytical approach through paradigms, though somewhat artificial and uninspiring, is generally found to be the most efficacious method.

In the process of memorizing all paradigms, be sure always to say them *aloud*, for this gives you the help of two senses, both sight and sound; speak-

---

\(^{1}\)The *infinitive* (*infinitus, infinitivus, not limited*) simply gives the basic idea of the verb; its form is "not limited" by person and number, though it does indicate tense and voice.
ing and listening to the language, to its basic sounds and rhythms, will be an enormous aid to acquiring mastery.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF
Laudō & Moneō

Singular
1. laudō, I praise, am praising, do praise  moneō, I advise, etc.
2. laudās, you praise, are praising, do praise  moneās, you advise, etc.
3. laudat, he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise  moneat, he (she, it) advises, etc.

Plural
1. laudāmus, we praise, are praising, do praise  monémus, we advise, etc.
2. laudātis, you praise, are praising, do praise  monētis, you advise, etc.
3. laudant, they praise, are praising, do praise  monēnt, they advise, etc.

Note that Latin has only these present active indicative forms, and so simple or progressive or emphatic translations are possible, depending on context; e.g., mē laudant, they praise me or they are praising me or they do praise me.

Remember that the accent marks are provided in the paradigm only for convenience; they follow the strict rules for accentuation explained in the Introduction, and need not be included in your own conjugation of Latin verbs (unless you are asked to do so by your instructor).

The macrons, however, must be included, and the vowel sounds they indicate must be taken into account in memorizing the paradigm and in conjugating other first and second conjugation verbs. Notice that the stem vowel has no macron in certain forms (e.g., moneō, laudant); you should learn the following rule, which will make it easier to account for macrons that seem to disappear and reappear arbitrarily:

Vowels that are normally long are usually shortened when they occur immediately before another vowel (hence moneō instead of *monēō²), before -m, -r, or -t at the end of a word (hence laudat, not *laudāt), or before nt or nd in any position (hence laudant).

In the case of first conjugation, or -ā-, verbs (by contrast with the second conjugation, -ē- verbs), the stem vowel is not merely shortened but disappears entirely in the first person singular, through contraction with the final -ō (hence laudō, not *laudāō).

² The asterisk here and elsewhere in this book indicates a form not actually occurring in classical Latin.
**PRESENT ACTIVE IMPERATIVE**

The imperative mood is used for giving commands; the singular imperative form is identical to the present stem and the plural imperative (employed when addressing two or more persons) is formed simply by adding -te to the stem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd person singular</th>
<th>2nd person plural</th>
<th>1st person singular</th>
<th>1st person plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laūdā, praise!</td>
<td>laudāte, praise!</td>
<td>mónē, advise!</td>
<td>monēte, advise!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E.g., Monē mē! Advise me! Servāte mē! Save me!

**READING AND TRANSLATING LATIN**

The following simple rules will assist you with translating the sentences and the reading passage in this chapter; further assistance will be provided in subsequent chapters. First, always read each sentence from beginning to end aloud; read for comprehension, thinking about the meanings of the individual words and the likely sense of the whole sentence. The verb often comes last in a Latin sentence: remember that if its ending is either first or second person, you already know the subject ("I," "we," or "you"); if the verb is third person, look for a noun that might be the subject (frequently the first word in the sentence). Subject-object-verb (SOV) is a common pattern. Now, once you have memorized the paradigms above and the vocabulary in the following list, and practiced conjugating some of the verbs in the list, try your hand at reading and translating the sentences and short passage that conclude the chapter. BONAM FORTŪNAM! (Good luck!)

**VOCABULARY**

*Remember:* in memorizing the vocabularies always be sure to say all the Latin words *aloud* as you learn the meanings. N.B.: Like an English verb, a Latin verb has "principal parts" (usually four, vs. three in English) which must be memorized in order to conjugate the verb in all its forms. As you will see from the following list, the first principal part is the first person singular present active indicative, and the second principal part is the present active infinitive; the function of the remaining principal parts will be explained in subsequent chapters.

- mē, pronoun, *me, myself*
- quid, pronoun, *what* (quid pro quo)
- nihil, noun, *nothing* (nihilism, annihilate)
nōn, adverb, not
saēpe, adverb, often
sī, conjunction, if
āmō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, to love, like; amābō tē, idiom, please (lit., I will love you) (amatory, Amanda)
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum, to think, ponder, consider, plan (cogitate)
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum, to owe; ought, must (debt, debit, due, duty)
dō, dāre, dēdī, dātum, to give, offer (date, data)
ērrō, errāre, errāvī, errātum, to wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken (erratic, errant, erroneous, error, aberration)
laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, to praise (laud, laudable, laudatory)
mōneō, monēre, móni, mónitum, to remind, advise, warn (admonish, admonition, monitor, monument, monition)
sālveō, salvēre, to be well, be in good health; sālve, salvete, hello, greetings (salvation, salver, salvage)
sērvō, servāre, servāvī, servātum, to preserve, save, keep, guard (observe, preserve, reserve, reservoir)
cōnsērvō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātum (con-servō), a stronger form of servō, to preserve, conserve, maintain (conservative, conservation)
tērreō, terrēre, terrui, terrītum, to frighten, terrify (terrible, terrific, terrify, terror, terrorist, deter)
vāleō, valēre, valuī, valitūrum, to be strong, have power; be well; vālē (valēte), good-bye, farewell (valid, invalidate, prevail, prevalent, valedictory)
vīdeo, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, to see; observe, understand (provide, evident, view, review, revise, revision, television)
vōcō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum, to call, summon (vocation, advocate, vocabulary, convocate, evoke, invoke, provoke, revoke)

SENTENTIAE (SENTENCES)

1. Labor mē vocat. (labor, a noun, and one of hundreds of Latin words that come into English with their spelling unchanged; such words are often not defined in the chapters but may be found in the end Vocab., p. 470-90 below.)
2. Monē mē, amābō tē, sī errō.
3. Festīnā lentē. (a saying of Augustus.—festīnō, festīnāre, to hasten, make haste.—lentē, adv., slowly.)
4. Laudās mē; culpant mē. (culpō, culpāre, to blame, censure.)
5. Saepe peccāmus. (peccō, peccāre, to sin.)

All these sentences are based on ancient Roman originals but most of them had to be considerably adapted to meet the exigencies of this first chapter.
6. Quid dēbēmus cōgitāre?
7. Čōnservāte mē!
8. Rūmor volat. (volō, volāre, to fly.)
10. Nihil mē terret.
11. Apollō mē saepe servat.
13. Saepe nihil cōgitās.
14. Bis dās, sī cito dās. (bis, adv., twice.—cito, adv., quickly.—What do you suppose this ancient proverb actually means?)
15. Sī valēs, valeō. (A friendly sentiment with which Romans often commenced a letter.)
16. What does he see?
17. They are giving nothing.
18. You ought not to praise me.
19. If I err, he often warns me.
20. If you love me, save me, please!

THE POET HORACE CONTEMPLATES AN INVITATION

Maecēnās et Vergilius mē hodiē vocant. Quid cōgitāre dēbeō? Quid dēbeō respondēre? Sī errō, mē saepe monent et culpant; sī nōn errō, mē laudant. Quid hodiē cōgitāre dēbeō?

(For Horace, and the other authors cited in these chapter reading passages, review the Introd.; the patron Maecenas and the poet Virgil were both friends of Horace, and this brief passage is very freely adapted from autobiographical references in his poetry.—et, conj., and.—hodiē, adv., today.—respondeō, respondēre, to reply, respond.)
LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! Here and at the close of each subsequent chapter, you will find a variety of Latin “tidbits,” for your pleasure and edification! (Gaudium, by the way, is the Lat. noun for joy or just plain fun, and útilis is an adj. meaning useful.) To start with, here is some “first day” conversational Latin:

Salvē, discipula or discipule! Hello, student! (The -al-e variants distinguish between female and male students respectively.)
Salvēte, discipulae et discipuli! Hello, students! (Feminine and masculine plural.)
Salvē, magister or magistra! Greetings, teacher! (Again, masculine or feminine.)
Valēte, discipuli et discipulae! Valē, magister (magistra)! Good-bye, students . . . , etc.

Quid est nōmen tibi? What’s your name?
Nōmen mihi est “Mark.” My name is Mark. (Or, better yet, how about a Latin name: nōmen mihi est “Mārcus.”?)

Remember that labor in sentence 1 above is just one of a great many Latin words that come directly into English without any alteration in spelling? Well, rūmor in sentence 8 is another, and so is videō in the Vocabulary. Amō, however, does not mean “bullets,” nor is amat “a small rug,” so beware of . . . iōcī terribilēs (terrible jokes): valēte!

Model of Rome in the 4th century A.D.
Museo della Civilita Romana, Rome, Italy
Nouns and Cases; First Declension; Agreement of Adjectives; Syntax

Nouns and Cases

As a Latin verb has various inflections or terminations which signal its particular role in a given sentence, so a Latin noun (from nōmen, name) has various terminations to show whether it is used as the subject or the object of a verb, whether it indicates the idea of possession, and so on. The various inflected forms of a noun are called "cases," the more common uses and meanings of which are catalogued below; you will encounter several other case uses in subsequent chapters, all of which you must be able to identify and name, so it is advisable to begin now keeping a list for each case, with definitions and examples, in your notebook or computer file. For illustrative purposes it will be convenient to refer to the following English sentences,¹ which later in the chapter will be translated into Latin for further analysis.

A. The poet is giving the girl large roses (or is giving large roses to the girl).
B. The girls are giving the poet's roses to the sailors.
C. Without money the girls' country (or the country of the girls) is not strong.

¹These sentences have been limited to the material available in Chs. 1 and 2 so that they may readily be understood when turned into Latin.
Nominative Case

The Romans used the nominative case most commonly to indicate the subject of a finite verb; e.g., *poet* in sentence A and *girls* in sentence B.

Genitive Case

When one noun was used to modify another, the Romans put the modifying, or limiting, noun in the genitive case, as we do in such instances as *poet's* in sentence B and *girls'*= in sentence C. One idea very commonly conveyed by the genitive is possession and, although other categories besides the genitive of possession are distinguished, the meaning of the genitive can generally be ascertained by translating it with the preposition *of*. A Latin noun in the genitive case usually follows the noun it modifies.

Dative Case

The Romans used the dative to mark the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of the verb, as *girl (to the girl)* in sentence A and *to the sailors* in B; both of these nouns are indirect objects, the most common use of the dative. In most instances the sense of the dative can be determined by using *to* or *for* with the noun.

Accusative Case

The Romans used the accusative case to indicate the direct object of the action of the verb, the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb. It can also be used for the object of certain prepositions: e.g., *ad, to; in, into; post, after, behind.* In sentences A and B, *roses* is the direct object of *is (are) giving.*

Ablative Case

The ablative case we sometimes call the adverbial case because it was the case used by the Romans when they wished to modify, or limit, the verb by such ideas as *means* ("by what"), *agent* ("by whom"), *accompaniment* ("with whom"), *manner* ("how"), *place* ("where; from which"), *time* ("when or within which"). The Romans used the ablative sometimes with a preposition and sometimes without one. There is no simple rule of thumb for translating this complex case. However, you will find little difficulty when a Latin preposition is used (*ab, by, from; cum, with; de* and *ex, from; in, in, on*); and in general you can associate with the ablative such English preposi-

---

2 Modify derives its meaning from Latin *modus* in the sense of "limit"; it means to limit one word by means of another. For example, in sentence B *roses* by itself gives a general idea but the addition of *poet's* modifies, or limits, *roses* so that only a specific group is in mind. The addition of *red* would have modified, or limited, *roses* still further by excluding white and yellow ones.

3 A preposition is a word placed before (praepositionus) a noun or pronoun, the "object of the preposition," to indicate its relationship to another word in a sentence; prepositional phrases can function adjectivally ("a man of wisdom") or adverbially ("he came from Rome").

4 Latin *ad verbum* means *to or near the verb*; an adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.
The Romans used the vocative case, sometimes with the interjection Ō, to address (vocāre, to call) a person or thing directly; e.g., Ō Caesar, Ō fortūna, O fortune. In modern punctuation the vocative (or noun of direct address) is separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. With one major exception to be studied in Ch. 3, the vocative has the same form as that of the nominative, and so it is ordinarily not listed in the paradigms.

The listing of all the cases of a noun—or an adjective—is called a "declension." Just as we conjugate verbs by adding endings to a stem, so we "decline" nouns and adjectives by adding endings to a "base." The nominative and genitive singular forms of a noun are provided in the vocabulary entry, which must be completely memorized, and the base is then found by dropping the genitive ending; the procedure for an adjective is similar and will be clarified in Chs. 3–4. The following paradigm, which should be memorized (and remember to practice aloud!), illustrates the declension of a noun/adjective phrase, porta magna, the large gate:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Base: port-</th>
<th>Base: magn-</th>
<th>Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pórt-</td>
<td>mágn-</td>
<td>the (a)8 large gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pórtae</td>
<td>mágnæ</td>
<td>of the large gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pórtæ</td>
<td>mágnæ</td>
<td>to/for the large gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pórtam</td>
<td>mágnam</td>
<td>the large gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pórtā</td>
<td>mágnā</td>
<td>by/with/from, etc., the large gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>pórtā</td>
<td>mágnā</td>
<td>O large gate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 For instance: pecūniā, by or with money; ab puellā, by or from the girl; cum puellā, with the girl; cum irā, with anger, angrily; ab (dé, ex) patriā, from the fatherland; in patriā, in the fatherland; in mēnsā, on the table; ūnā hōrā, in one hour.

6 Lat. interiectio means, lit., throwing something in, i.e., without syntactical connection to the rest of the sentence.

7 The term declension is connected with the verb dé-clināre, to lean away from. The idea of the ancient grammarians was that the other cases "lean away from" the nominative; they deviate from the nominative.

8 Since classical Latin had no words corresponding exactly to our definite article the or our indefinite article a, porta can be translated as gate or the gate or a gate.
**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pórtae</td>
<td>mágnae</td>
<td>the large gates or large gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pórtárum</td>
<td>magnárum</td>
<td>of the large gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pórtís</td>
<td>mágnís</td>
<td>to for the large gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pórtās</td>
<td>mágnās</td>
<td>the large gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pórtis</td>
<td>mágnis</td>
<td>by/with/from, etc., the large gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>pórtae</td>
<td>mágnae</td>
<td>O large gates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GENDER OF FIRST DECLENSION = FEMININE**

Like English, Latin distinguishes three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. While Latin nouns indicating male beings are naturally masculine and those indicating female beings are feminine, the gender of most other nouns was a grammatical concept, not a natural one, and so a noun’s gender must simply be memorized as part of the vocabulary entry.

Nouns of the first declension are normally feminine; e.g., *puella*, girl; *rosa*, rose; *pecúnia*, money; *patria*, country. A few nouns denoting individuals engaged in what were among the Romans traditionally male occupations are masculine; e.g., *poëta*, poet; *nauta*, sailor; *agricola*, farmer (others not employed in this book are *auriga*, charioteer; *incola*, inhabitant; *pirāta*, pirate).

In this book, as a practical procedure the gender of a noun will not be specifically labeled *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* in the notes, if it follows the general rules.

**AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES**

The normal role of adjectives is to accompany nouns and to modify, or limit, them in size, color, texture, character, and so on; and, like nouns, adjectives are declined. Naturally, therefore, an adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case (an adjective that modifies more than one noun usually agrees in gender with the nearest one, though sometimes the masculine predominates). An adjective (*adiecam*, *set next to, added*) is a word *added* to a noun. As its Latin root meaning also suggests, an adjective was usually positioned next to its noun (except in poetry, where word order is much freer). Most often the adjective followed the noun, a logical arrangement since the person or thing named is generally more important than the attribute; exceptions were adjectives denoting size or number, as well as demonstratives (*hic*, *this*; *ille*, *that*), which normally precede, as do any adjectives which the speaker or writer wishes to emphasize.
SYNTAX

The Greek verb syntattein means to arrange or, in particular, to draw up an army in orderly array. Similarly, in grammatical terminology “syntax” is the orderly marshaling of words according to the service which they are to perform in a sentence. To explain the syntax of a given noun or adjective, you should state its form, the word on which it most closely depends, and the reason for the form (i.e., its grammatical use or function in the sentence). The sample sentences given above, here translated into Latin, provide some examples. Notice in the subject and verb endings the rule that a verb must agree with its subject in person and number; notice too that where a noun ending such as -ae can represent more than one case, word order and context provide necessary clues to a sentence’s meaning (hence puellae is the indirect object in A, subject in B).

A. Poēta puellae magnās rosās dat.
B. Puellae nautīs rosās poētae dant.
C. Patria puellārum sine pecūnīā nōn valet.

The syntax of some of these words can be conveniently stated thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Dependence</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sentence A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poēta</td>
<td>nom. sg.</td>
<td>dat</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>dat. sg.</td>
<td>dat</td>
<td>indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnās</td>
<td>acc. pl.</td>
<td>rosās</td>
<td>modifies and agrees with noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentence B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>nom. pl.</td>
<td>dant</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nautīs</td>
<td>dat. pl.</td>
<td>dant</td>
<td>indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rosās</td>
<td>acc. pl.</td>
<td>dant</td>
<td>direct object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poētae</td>
<td>gen. sg.</td>
<td>rosās</td>
<td>possession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentence C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pecūnīā</td>
<td>abl. sg.</td>
<td>sine</td>
<td>object of preposition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Be ready to explain the syntax of all nouns and adjectives in the sentences and reading passage below.

VOCABULARY

fāma, fāmae, f., rumor, report; fame, reputation (famous, defame, infamy)
forma, formae, f., form, shape; beauty (formal, format, formula, formless, deform, inform, etc.; but not formic, formidable)
fortūna, fortūnae, f., fortune, luck (fortunate, unfortunate)
īra, īrae, f., ire, anger (irate, irascible; but not irritate)
naūta, naūtae, m., sailor (nautical)
pátria, pátriae, f., fatherland, native land, (one’s) country (expatriate, repatriate)

pecúnia, -ae,9 f., money (pecuniary, impecunious; cp. peculation)
philosophía, -ae, f. (Greek philosophía, love of wisdom), philosophy

poéna, -ae, f., penalty, punishment; poénas däre, idiom, to pay the penalty
(penal, penalize, penalty, pain, subpoena)

poéta, -ae, m., poet (poetry)
pórtæ, -ae, f., gate, entrance (portal, portico, porch, porthole)
puéllæ, -ae, f., girl
rósæ, -ae, f., rose (rosary, roseate, rosette)

sententia, -ae, f., feeling, thought, opinion, vote, sentence (sententious, sentencing)
vita, -ae, f., life; mode of life (vital, vitals, vitality, vitamin, vitalize, devitalize, revitalize)

antiqua, -ae, adjective,10 ancient, old-time (antique, antiquities, antiquated, antiquarian)
magna, -ae, adj., large, great; important (magnify, magnificent, magnate, magnitude, magnanimous)

mēa, -ae, adj., my

múltæ, -ae, adj., much, many (multitude, multiply, multiple; multi-, a prefix as in multimillionaire)

túæ, -ae, adj., your, used when speaking to only one person
et, conjunction, and; even; et . . . et, both . . . and

sed, conj., but

Ō, interjection, O!, Oh!, commonly used with the vocative
sine, preposition + abl., without (sinecure, sans)

est, is

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE11

1. Salvē, Ō patria! (Plautus.)

2. Fāma et sententia volunt. (Virgil.—volāre, to fly, move quickly.)

9 pecúnia, -ae = pecúnia, pecúniæ; this abbreviated format will be employed in all subsequent entries for regular first decl. nouns.

10 Given here are the adjectives’ nom. and gen. forms, the latter abbreviated as with first decl. nouns; after the masculine and neuter forms are learned in the next two chapters, adj. entries will provide the nom. endings only for all three genders (see, e.g., bónus, -a, -um in the Ch. 4 Vocab.).

11 Sentences of ancient Roman origin. Henceforth, the author of every ancient Latin sentence will be named. An asterisk before an author’s name means that the sentence is quoted verbatim. The lack of an asterisk means that the original sentence had to be somewhat altered to bring it into line with the student’s limited knowledge of Latin, but the student may be assured that the thought and the expression are those of the ancient author indicated. The specific passage from which each sentence is adapted is identified below, p. 508–10, for students who are interested in the context and wish to do further reading.
3. Dā veniam puellae, amābō tē. (Terence.—venia, -ae, favor, pardon.)
4. Clēmentia tua multās vītās servat. (Cicero.—clēmentia, -ae, clemency.)
5. Multam pecūniam dēportat. (Cicero.—dēportāre, to carry away.)
6. Fortūnām et vītām antīquae patriae saepe laudās sed recūsās. (Horace.—recūsāre, to refuse, reject.)
7. Mē vītāre turbam iūbēs. (*Seneca.—vītāre, to avoid; do not confuse this verb with the noun vīta.—tūra, -ae, crowd, multitude.—iūbēre, to order.)
8. Mē philosophiae dō. (Seneca.)
9. Philosophia est ars vītae. (*Cicero.—ars, nom. sg., art.)
10. Sāna fōrmam vītae cōnservāte. (Seneca.—sāna, -ae, adj., sound, sane.)
11. Immodica īra creat īnsāniam. (Seneca.—immodica, -ae, adj., immoderate, excessive.—cūāre, to create.—īnsānia, -ae, unsoundness, insanity.)
12. Quid cōgitās?—dēbēmus īram vītāre. (Seneca.)
13. Nūlla avāritia sine poenā est. (*Seneca.—nūlla, -ae, adj., no.—avāritia, -ae, avarice.)
14. Mē saeva catēnis onerat. (Horace.—saeva, -ae, adj., cruel.—catēna, -ae, chain.—onerāre, to load, oppress.)
15. Rotam fortūnae nōn timent. (Cicero.—rota, -ae, wheel.—tīmēre, to fear.)
16. The girls save the poet’s life.
17. Without philosophy we often go astray and pay the penalty.
18. If your land is strong, nothing terrifies the sailors and you ought to praise your great fortune.
19. We often see the penalty of anger.
20. The ancient gate is large.

**CATULLUS BIDS HIS GIRLFRIEND FAREWELL**


(Catullus 8; prose adaptation. For this 1st cen. B.C. poet, see the Introd., and for unadapted excerpts from the original poem, see Ch. 19.—Note the poet’s shift from first person, to third, and back to first; what is the intended emotional effect?—obdūrāre, to be firm, tough.—bāsiāre, to kiss.—tē, you.)

**ETYMOLOGY**

Note that “etymology” comes from the Greek etymos, true, real, and logos, word, meaning. Consequently, the etymology of a word traces the deri-
vation of the word and shows its original meaning. Under this heading will be introduced various items not covered by the derivatives listed in the vocabularies. Each chapter so abounds in such material, however, that complete coverage cannot be attempted.

Pecūnia is connected with pecus, cattle, just as English fee is related to German Vieh, cattle.

Fortūna derives from fors, chance, accident.

Explain the meanings of the following English words on the basis of the appropriate Latin words found in the sentences indicated. Further aid, if needed, can be obtained from a good dictionary; Webster’s New World Dictionary and the American Heritage Dictionary are especially helpful with etymologies.

volatile (2)  tenet (10)  onerous (14)
venial (3)  creature (11)  rotary, rotate (15)
turbulent (7)  nullify (13)  obdurate (“Catullus”)
insane (10)  concatenation (14)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! From the Vocab.: To do something subrosā is to do it secretly or in confidence (the rose was in antiquity a symbol of secrecy); aqua vītae, lit., the water of life, is an old Latin phrase for “whiskey”; and a “sinecure” (from sine + cūra, care) is an office or position that is largely without responsibility.

And here’s some more conversational Latin:

Quid agis hodie? How are you today?
   Optīmē! Great!
   Pessimē! Terrible!
   Bene! Good!
   Satis bene. So-so or Okay.
   Nōn bene. Not well.
   Et tū? And you?

Discipulae et discipuli, valēte!
Second Declension: Masculine Nouns and Adjectives; Apposition; Word Order

THE SECOND DECLENSION

The second declension follows the rule already given for the first declension: base + endings. However, the endings differ from those of the first declension, except in the dative and the ablative plural. The nouns of this declension are regularly either masculine or neuter; the masculines are introduced below, the neuters in Ch. 4. Most second declension masculine nouns have a nominative singular ending in -us, while a few end in -er (the neuters, as we shall see in the next chapter, end with -um).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculines in -us</th>
<th>Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Base:</strong> amīcus, friend magnus, great</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> amīcus</td>
<td>mágnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> amīcī</td>
<td>mágnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> amīcō</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> amīcum</td>
<td>mágnunm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> amīcō</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> amīce</td>
<td>mágne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amīcī mâgnī</td>
<td>amīcīre mâgnīre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amīcōrum mâgnōrum</td>
<td>amīcōrum mâgnōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amīcīs mâgnīs</td>
<td>amīcīs mâgnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amīcōs mâgnōs</td>
<td>amīcīs mâgnōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amīcīs mâgnīs</td>
<td>amīcīs mâgnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>amīcī mâgnī</td>
<td>amīcī mâgnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Great friends

-ē

Of the second declension -er masculines, some like *puer* retain the -e- in the base, while most, like *ager*, drop the -e-, hence the special importance of learning the genitive as part of the full vocabulary entry (though a knowledge of such English derivatives as “puerile” and “agriculture” will also help you remember the base). Similar is the unique -ir masculine, *vir*, *virī*, *man*.

### MASCULINES IN -er

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pǔer2 áger2 mâgnus3</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pǔerō agrō mâgnō</td>
<td>pǔerō agrō mâgnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pǔerum agrum mâgnum</td>
<td>pǔerum agrum mâgnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pǔerō agrō mâgnō</td>
<td>pǔerō agrō mâgnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>pǔer agrē mâgne</td>
<td>pǔer agrē mâgne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pǔerīrēum agrīrēum mâgnōrum</td>
<td>pǔerīrēum agrīrēum mâgnōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pǔerīs agrīs mâgnīs</td>
<td>pǔerīs agrīs mâgnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pǔerōs agrōs mâgnōs</td>
<td>pǔerōs agrōs mâgnōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pǔerīs agrīs mâgnīs</td>
<td>pǔerīs agrīs mâgnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī</td>
<td>pǔerī agrī mâgnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Remember that this is only an imperfect, makeshift way of representing the ablativē, and remember that prepositions are commonly used with the ablative, especially when the noun indicates a person; in English translation a preposition is virtually always used.

2 The underlined forms are the ones which call for special attention.

3 Added for the sake of comparison and contrast. Note the combination of *puer magnus*, *a big boy*; and *ō puer maugre*, *O big boy*. 
COMMENTS ON CASE ENDINGS

It should be helpful to note that some second declension endings are identical to those in the first (the dat. and abl. pl. in -is) and others are similar (e.g., -am/-um in the acc. sg., -ārum/-ōrum gen. pl., and -ās/-ōs acc. pl.). As in the first declension, some second declension endings are used for different cases (e.g., what different cases may the forms amīcī, amīcō, and amīcis represent?); again, word order and context will be in such instances essential aids to reading comprehension and translation.

It is especially important to note that only in the singular of -us nouns and adjectives of the second declension does the vocative ever differ in spelling from the nominative: singular amīcus, amīce; but plural amīci, amīci. Nouns in -ius (e.g., filius, son, Vergilius, Virgil) and the adjective meus, my, have a single -i in the vocative singular: mī filī, my son; Ō Vergiliī, O Virgil.

APPPOSITION

Gāium, filium meum, in agrō videō.
I see Gaius, my son, in the field.

In this sentence filium is in apposition with Gāium. An appositive is a noun which is “put beside” another noun as the explanatory equivalent of the other noun; nouns in apposition always agree in case, usually in number, and often in gender as well. An appositive is commonly separated from the preceding noun by commas.

WORD ORDER

A typical order of words in a simplified Latin sentence or subordinate clause is this: (1) the subject and its modifiers, (2) the indirect object, (3) the direct object, (4) adverbial words or phrases, (5) the verb. In formal composition, the tendency to place the verb at the end of its clause is probably connected with the Romans’ fondness for the periodic style, which seeks to keep the reader or listener in suspense until the last word of a sen-

\[\text{ad (to, near)} \ + \ pōnō, \ positus (put).\]
tence has been reached. Remember, too, that adjectives and genitive nouns commonly follow the words they modify. However, although the patterns described above should be kept in mind, the Romans themselves made many exceptions to these rules for the purposes of variety and emphasis. In fact, in highly inflected languages like Latin, the order of the words can be relatively unimportant to the sense, thanks to the inflectional endings, which tell so much about the interrelationship of the words in a sentence. On the other hand, in English, where the inflections are relatively few, the sense commonly depends on stricter conventions of word order.

For example, study the following idea as expressed in the one English sentence and the four Latin versions, which all mean essentially the same despite the differences of word order.

(1) The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.
(2) Puer puellae bellae rosam dat.
(3) Bellae puellae puer rosam dat.
(4) Bellae puellae rosam dat puer.
(5) Rosam puer puellae bellae dat.

Whatever the order of the words in the Latin sentence, the sense remains the same (though the emphasis does vary). Note also that according to its ending, bellae must modify puellae no matter where these words stand. But if you change the order of the words in the English sentence, you change the sense:

(1) The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.
(2) The pretty girl is giving the boy a rose.
(3) The girl is giving the boy a pretty rose.
(4) The girl is giving the pretty boy a rose.
(5) The rose is giving the boy a pretty girl.

In all these sentences the same words are used with the same spellings, but the sense of each sentence is different in accordance with the conventions of English word order. Furthermore, where the fifth English sentence is senseless, the fifth Latin sentence, though in much the same order, makes perfectly good sense.

**VOCABULARY**

áger, ágrī, m., field, farm (agrarian, agriculture, agronomy; cp. **agricola**)
agricola, -ae, m., farmer
amīca, -ae, f., and amīcus, amīci, m., friend (amicable, amiable, amity; cp. amō)
fēmina, -ae, f., woman (female, feminine, femininity)
filia, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **filiābus**, daughter (filiation, affiliation, filial, hidalgo)
filius, filīi, m., son (see **filia**
númerus, -i, m., number (numeral, innumerable, enumerate)
pópulus, -i, m., the people, a people, a nation (populace, population, popularity, popularize, populous)
púer, púerī, m., boy; pl. boys, children (puerile, puerility)
sapientia, -ae, f., wisdom (sapience, sapient, sage, savant)
vir, virī, m., man, hero (virtue, virile, triumvirate; not virulent)
avárus (m.), avára (f.), adj., greedy, avaricious (avarice)
pauca (m.), paucae (f.), adj., usually pl., few, a few (paucity)
Rōmānus (m.), Rōmāna (f.), adj., Roman (Romance, romance, romantic, romanticism, Romanesque, Romania)
dē, prep. + abl., down from, from; concerning, about; also as a prefix dē- with such meanings as down, away, aside, out, off (demote, from dē-moveō; decline, descend)
in, prep. + abl., in, on
hōdiē, adv., today
sémper, adv., always (sempiternal)
hābēō, habère, hábūi, hábitum, to have, hold, possess; consider, regard (inhabit, “hold in”; ex-habit, “hold forth”; habit, habitat)
sātīō (1), to satisfy, sate (satiate, insatiable, satiety, satisfaction; cp. satis, Ch. 5)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Filium nautae Rōmānī in agrīs vidēmus.
2. Puerī puellās hōdiē vocant.
3. Sapientiam amīcārum, Ō filia mea, semper laudat.
5. Si īra valet, Ō mī filī, saepe errāmus et poenas damus.
6. Fortūna virōs magnōs amat.
7. Agricola filiābus pecūniam dat.
8. Without a few friends life is not strong.
9. Today you have much fame in your country.
10. We see great fortune in your daughters’ lives, my friend.
11. He always gives my daughters and sons roses.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dēbētis, amācī, dē populō Rōmānō cōgitāre. (Cicero.)
2. Mācēnās, amīcus Augustī, mē in numerō amīcōrum habet. (Hor-
ace.—Maecēnās, a name in nom. sg.; see Ch. 1 reading passage.—Augustus, -i.)
3. Libellus meus et sententiae meae vítās virōrum moment. (Phaedrus.—libellus, -ī, little book.)
4. Paucī virī sapientiae student. (Cicero.—stādēre + dat., to be eager for.)
5. Fortūna adversa virum magnae sapientiae nōn terret. (Horace.—adversus, adversa, adj. = English.)
6. Cīmōn, vir magnae fāmae, magnam benevolentiam habet. (Nepos.—Cīmōn, proper name nom. sg.—benevolentia, -ae = Eng.)
7. Semper avārus eget. (*Horace.—avārus = avārus vir.—ēgēre, to be in need.)
8. Nūlla cōpia pecūniāe avārum virum satiat. (Seneca.—nūllus, nūlla, adj., no.—cōpia, -ae, abundance.)
9. Pecūnia avārum irriētāt, nōn satiat. (Publilius Syrus.—irritāre, to excite, exasperate.)
10. Sēcrētē amīcōs admonē; laudā palam. (*Publilius Syrus.—sēcrētē, adv., in secret.—admonē = monē.—palam, adv., openly.)
11. Modum tenēre dēbēmus. (*Seneca.—modus, -i, moderation.—te-nēre, to have, observe.)

THE GRASS IS ALWAYS GREENER

Agricola et vītām et fortūnam nautae saepe laudat; nauta magnam fortūnam et vītām poētāe saepe laudat; et poēta vītām et agrōs agricolae laudat. Sine philosophia avāri virī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant: multam pecūniā habent, sed pecūniā multa virum avārum nōn satiat.

(Horace, Sermōnēs 1.1; free prose adaptation.)

ETYMOLOGY

The following are some of the Romance words which you can recognize on the basis of the vocabulary of this chapter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amīcus</td>
<td>amico</td>
<td>amigo</td>
<td>ami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīlius</td>
<td>figlio</td>
<td>hijo</td>
<td>fils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numerus</td>
<td>numero</td>
<td>número</td>
<td>numéro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>populus</td>
<td>popolo</td>
<td>pueblo</td>
<td>peuple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paucī</td>
<td>poco</td>
<td>poco</td>
<td>peu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semper</td>
<td>sempre</td>
<td>siempre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habēre</td>
<td>avere</td>
<td>haber</td>
<td>avoir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē</td>
<td>di</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcae et amīcī! Quid agitis hōdiē? Well, if you are in the Coast Guard, you are semper parātus, always prepared, or if you’re a U.S. Marine, it’s semper fidēlis, always faithful (from the same Latin root as “Fido,” your trusty hound). These are just two (suggested by this chapter’s Vocab.) of countless Latin mottoes representing a wide range of modern institutions and organizations. Valēte et habēte fortūnam bonam!

Augustus of Prima Porta
Late 1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums
Vatican State
SECOND DECLENSION—NEUTERS

In the first declension there are no nouns of neuter gender but in the second declension there are many. They are declined as follows, again by adding endings to a base:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base:</th>
<th>dōnum, gift</th>
<th>cōnsilium, plan</th>
<th>magnum, great</th>
<th>Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dōnum</td>
<td>cōnsilium</td>
<td>mágnnum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dōnī</td>
<td>cōnsilīō</td>
<td>mágnī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dōnō</td>
<td>cōnsilīō</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dōnum</td>
<td>cōnsilium</td>
<td>mágnnum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dōnō</td>
<td>cōnsilīō</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The gen. sg. of second declension nouns ending in -ius or -ium was spelled with a single -ī (fīlius, gen. fīlī; cōnsilīum, gen. cōnsilī) through the Ciceronian Period. However,
Notice that the second declension neuter endings are the same as the masculine endings, except that the nominative, accusative, and vocative are identical to one another (this is true of all neuters of all declensions): -um in the singular; -a in the plural. Word order and context will often enable you to distinguish between a neuter noun used as a subject and one used as an object (vocatives are even more easily distinguished, of course, as they are regularly set off from the rest of the sentence by commas). The plural -a ending might be mistaken for a first declension nominative singular, so you can see again how important it is to memorize all vocabulary entries completely, including the gender of nouns. Regular second declension neuters will be presented in the vocabularies in the following abbreviated form: dōnum, -ī (= dōnum, dōnī), n.

**DECLENSION AND AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES**

The paradigms of magnus presented in Chs. 2–4 have illustrated the point that, while the base remains constant, the adjective has masculine, feminine, or neuter endings according to the gender of the noun with which it is used, and it likewise agrees with its noun in number and case. The full declension of magnus below provides a good review of the first two declensions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>mágnus</td>
<td>mágna</td>
<td>mágnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mágnī</td>
<td>mágnae</td>
<td>mágnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
<td>mágnae</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mágnum</td>
<td>mágnam</td>
<td>mágnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
<td>mágnā</td>
<td>mágnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>mágne</td>
<td>mágna</td>
<td>mágnum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

since the genitive form -īi (filīi, cōnsiliīi) became established during the Augustan Period and since -īi was always the rule in adjectives (eximīus, gen. eximiī), this is the form which will be employed in this text.
Henceforth, such first and second declension adjectives will appear thus in the vocabularies:

mēus, -a, -um    múltus, -a, -um    paúcī, -ae, -a (pl. only)

**Sum: PRESENT INFINITIVE AND PRESENT INDICATIVE**

As the English verb *to be* is irregular, so is the Latin *sum*. Although the personal endings can be distinguished, the stem varies so much that the best procedure is to memorize these very common forms as they are given. Notice that, because *sum* is an intransitive linking verb, we do not refer to its voice as either active or passive.

**PRESENT INFINITIVE OF Sum: esse, to be**

**PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Sum**

**Singular**

1. sum, *I am*  
2. es, *you are*  
3. est, *he (she, it) is, there is*

**Plural**

sūmus, *we are*  
éstis, *you are*  
sunt, *they are, there are*

**PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES**

As an intransitive verb, *sum* cannot take a direct object. Instead, like a coupling which connects two cars in a train, *sum* (and other linking verbs to be learned later) serves to connect the subject of a clause with a noun or adjective in the predicate. Such predicate nouns and adjectives—or "predicate nominatives," as they are often called—are connected or even equated.
with the subject by the linking verb, and so they naturally agree with the subject in number and case (usually the nominative, of course) and, wherever possible, in gender as well. In the case of compound subjects of different gender, a predicate adjective usually agrees in gender with the nearest, though the masculine often predominates. Study the following examples, and be prepared to identify the predicate nouns and adjectives in the chapter’s sentences and reading passage.

Vergilius est amicus Augusti, Virgil is the friend of Augustus.
Vergilius est poëta, Virgil is a poet.
Vergilius est magnus, Virgil is great.
Fama Vergili est magna, the fame of Virgil is great.
Amicae sunt bonae, the girlfriends are good.
Pueri debent esse boni, the boys ought to be good.
Puer et puella sunt boni, the boy and girl are good.
Dönum est magnum, the gift is large.
Dona sunt magna, the gifts are large.
Sumus Römani, we are Romans (Roman men).
Sumus Römanae, we are Roman women.

SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVES

The Romans often used an adjective as a “substantive,” i.e., in place of a noun, just as we do in English (“The meek shall inherit the earth”—i.e., “the meek people”). Such a substantive adjective should generally be translated as a noun, often by supplying man or men, woman or women, thing or things, in accordance with its number and gender, as illustrated in the following examples:

Bonas saepe laudant, they often praise the good women.
Multii sunt stultii, many (men) are foolish.
Pueri mala non amant, the boys do not love bad things.
Pauci de periculō coGITANT, few (men) are thinking about the danger.

VOCABULARY

básiu, -iī (= básii), n., kiss
béllum, -i, n., war (bellicose, belligerent, rebel, rebellion, revel)
cónsilium, -ii, n., plan, purpose, counsel, advice, judgment, wisdom (counsel, counselor)
cúra, -ae, f., care, attention, caution, anxiety (cure, curator, curious, curiosity, curio, curettage, sinecure; cp. cúro, Ch. 36))
dönum, -i, n., gift, present (donate, donation, condone; cp. dō)
exitium, -iī, n., destruction, ruin (exit; cp. exeō, Ch. 37)
magister, magistri, m., and magistra, -ae, f., schoolmaster or schoolmistress, teacher, master or mistress (magistrate, magistracy, magistrate, mastery, master, miss; cp. magnus)
móra, -ae, f., delay (moratorium, demur)
nihil, indeclinable, n., nothing (see Ch. 1)
óculus, -ī, m., eye (ocular, oculist, binoculars, monocle)
officium, -īī, n., duty, service (office, officer, official, officious; cp. faciō, Ch. 10)
ótium, -īī, n., leisure, peace (otiose, negotiate)
periculum, -ī, n., danger, risk (peril, perilous, imperil, parlous)
remédium, -īī, n., cure, remedy (remedial, irremediable, remediation)
bélulus, -ā, -um, pretty, handsome, charming (belle, beau, beauty, embellish, belladonna, belles-lettres). Do not confuse with bellum, war.
bónus, -ā, -um, good, kind (bonus, bonanza, bonny, bounty, bona fide)
hūmānus, -ā, -um, pertaining to man (homō, Ch. 7), human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated (humanity, humanitarian, humanism, the humanities, humanist, inhuman, superhuman)
mālus, -ā, -um, bad, wicked, evil (malice, malicious, malign, malignant, malaria, malady, malefactor, malefeasance, malevolent; mal-, a prefix as in maladjustment, malnutrition, maltreat, malapropos)
párvus, -ā, -um, small, little (parvovirus, parvule, parvicular)
stúltus, -ā, -um, foolish; stúltus, -ī, m., a fool (stultify, stultification)
vērus, -ā, -um, true, real, proper (verify, verisimilitude, very, veracity)
iuvō (or áduvō), iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, to help, aid, assist; please (adjutant, coadjutant, aid, aide-de-camp)
sum, éssé, fūi, futūrum, to be, exist (essence, essential, future, futurity)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Ótium est bonum, sed ótium multōrum est parvum.
2. Bella (from bellum, -ī, n.) sunt mala et multa pericula habent.
3. Officium nautam dé ōtiō hodiē vocat.
4. Paucī virī multās fūrmās periculī in pecuniā vident.
5. Si multam pecūniam habētis, saepe nōn estis sine cūris.
6. Puellae magistram dé consiliō malō sine morā monent.
7. Ó magne poēta, sumus vērī amīcī; mē iuvā, amābō tē!
8. Fēmina agricolae portam videt.
9. You (sg.) are in great danger.
10. My son's opinions are often foolish.
11. The daughters and sons of great men and women are not always great.
12. Without wisdom the sailors' good fortune is nothing and they are paying the penalty.
SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Fortūna est caeca. (*Cicero.—caecus, -a, -um, blind.)
2. Sī perīcula sunt vēra, infortūnātus es. (Terence.—infortūnātus, -a, -um, unfortunate.)
3. Salvē, Ō amīce; vir bonus es. (Terence.)
4. Nōn bella est fāma filī tuī. (Horace.)
5. Errāre est hūmānum. (Seneca.—As an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, an infinitive can be the subject of a verb.)
6. Nihil est omnīnō beātum. (Horace—omnīnō, adv., wholly.—beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate.)
7. Remedium īiae est mora. (Seneca.)
8. Bonus Daphnis, amīcus meus, ōtium et vītam agricolaē amat. (Virgil.—Daphnis is a pastoral character.)
9. Magistrī parvīs puerīs crūstula et dōna sape dant. (Horace.—crūstulum, -i, cookie.)
10. Amīcam meam magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.—magis quam, more than.)
11. Salvē, mea bella puella—dā mihi multā basia, amābō tē! (Catullus.—mihi, dat., to me.)
12. Infinitūs est numerus stultōrum. (Ecclesiastes.—infinitūs, -a, -um = Eng.)
13. Officium mē vocat. (Persius.)
14. Māli sunt in nostrō numerō et dē exitīō bonōrum virōrum cōgitant. Bonōs adiuvāte; cōnservāte populum Rōmānum. (Cicero.—nostrō, our.)

THE RARITY OF FRIENDSHIP


(Cicero, Dē Amīcitīā 21.79–80.—dignus, -a, -um, worthy, deserving. amīcitia, -ae, friendship.—omnia, all [things].—praecλārus, -a, -um, splendid, remarkable.—rārus, -a, -um = Eng.—possumus, we are able.)

ETYMOLOGY

Some Romance derivatives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oculus</td>
<td>occhio</td>
<td>ojo</td>
<td>œil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōtium</td>
<td>ozio</td>
<td>ocio</td>
<td>oisiveté</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perīculum</td>
<td>pericolo</td>
<td>peligro</td>
<td>péril</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Salvē, amīce! There are countless Latin expressions in current English usage (remember sub rosa?); one of them, related to an adjective encountered in this chapter, is rara avis, lit. a rare bird, but used for an exceptional or unusual individual or a rarity. The student of Latin in the United States was becoming a rara avis in the 1960s and early 70s, but there has been a remarkable resurgence of interest since then. Ergō, therefore, is another Latin word that has come straight into English; ergo, you now know what Descartes meant in his Discourse on Method when he said cogito ergo sum.

Semper cogitā, amīce, et valē!
THE FUTURE AND IMPERFECT TENSES

The Romans indicated future time in the first two conjugations by inserting the future tense sign (-bi- in most forms) between the present stem and the personal endings. The tense sign -ba- was similarly employed (in all four conjugations) for the imperfect tense, a past tense generally equivalent to the English past progressive. The forms of these future and imperfect endings are seen in the following paradigms:

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF Laudō AND Moneō

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. laudā-bō, I shall praise</td>
<td>laudā-ba-m, I was praising, kept praising, used to praise, praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. laudā-bi-s, you will praise</td>
<td>laudā-bā-s, you were praising, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. laudā-bi-t, he, she, it will praise</td>
<td>laudā-ba-t, he was praising, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. laudābimus, we shall praise</td>
<td>laudābāmus, we were praising, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. laudābitis, you will praise</td>
<td>laudābātis, you were praising, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. laudābunt, they will praise</td>
<td>laudābant, they were praising, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Singular
1. monē-bō, I shall advise   monē-ba-m, I was advising, kept advising, used to advise, advised
2. monē-bi-s, you will advise  monē-bā-s, you were advising, etc.
3. monē-bi-t, he, she, it will advise  monē-ba-t, he was advising, etc.

Plural
1. monēbimus, we shall advise  monēbāmus, we were advising, etc.
2. monēbitis, you will advise  monēbātis, you were advising, etc.
3. monēbunt, they will advise  monēbant, they were advising, etc.

Notice the vowel change in the first person singular and third plural future endings (remember bō/bi/bi/bi/bi/bu—sounds like baby talk!), and the shortened -a- in the first and third singular and third plural of the imperfect (remember that vowels which are normally long are regularly shortened before -m, -r, and -t at the end of a word, and before nt or another vowel in any position).

The “infixes” -bi- and -bā- (with the distinctive -i- and -ā-) can be easily remembered as signs of the future and imperfect tenses, respectively, if they are associated with the English auxiliary verbs “will” and “was” (also spelled with -i- and -a-), which are generally used to translate those two tenses. Note that, where English requires three separate words for the ideas he will praise or he was praising, Latin requires only a single word with the three components of stem + tense sign + personal ending (laudā + bi + t = praise-will-he or laudā-ba-t = praising-was-he).

TRANSLATION
Translation of the future tense, usually with shall in the first person and will in the second and third, should present no difficulty: dē amīcō cōgitābo, I shall think about my friend; multam sapientiam habēbunt, they will have much wisdom.

The imperfect tense commonly indicates an action that was continuing or progressive in the past, as suggested by the term “imperfect” (from imperfectum, not completed), including actions that were going on, repeated, habitual, attempted, or just beginning. All the following translations are possible, depending upon the context in which the sentence appears:

Nautam monēbam, I was warning (kept warning, used to warn, tried to warn, was beginning to warn) the sailor.
Poētæ vitam agricolae laudābant, poets used to praise the farmer’s life.
Magister puerōs vocābat, the teacher kept calling (was calling) the boys.
Occasionally the imperfect may be translated as a simple past tense, especially with an adverb that in itself indicates continuing action: *nautam saepe monēbam*, *I often warned the sailor.*

**ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION IN -er**

The problem with *e* before *r* appears in adjectives as well as in nouns like *puer* and *ager* (Ch. 3). This problem is no great one if you memorize the forms of the adjectives as given in the vocabularies (nominative masculine, feminine, neuter), since the base, whether with or without the -*e-*-, appears in the feminine and the neuter forms, as seen in the following examples; likewise, just as with the -*er* nouns, your familiarity with English derivatives can be an aid to remembering the base ("liberal" from *liber*, "pulchritude" from *pulcher*, "miserable" from *miser*, etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>līber</td>
<td>līberī</td>
<td>līberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td>lībera</td>
<td>līberae</td>
<td>līberāe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut.</td>
<td>līberum</td>
<td>līberī</td>
<td>līberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>pūlcher</td>
<td>pūlchri</td>
<td>pūlchri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td>pūlchra</td>
<td>pūlchrae</td>
<td>pūlchrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut.</td>
<td>pūlchrum</td>
<td>pūlchrī</td>
<td>pūlchrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(etc.)</td>
<td>(etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rest of the paradigm continues with the base and the regular endings:

For the singular of these samples fully declined, see the Summary of Forms, p. 447, and remember to refer to this Summary on a regular basis, when reviewing declensions and conjugations.

**VOCABULARY**

- *adulēscēntia, -ae, f.*, *youth, young manhood; youthfulness* (adolescence, adolescent)
- *ánimus, -i, m.*, *soul, spirit, mind; ánimi, -ōrum, high spirits, pride, courage* (animus, animosity, magnanimous, unanimous, pusillanimous)
- *caēlum, -i, n.*, *sky, heaven* (ceiling, celestial, Celeste, cerulean)
- *culpa, -ae, f.*, *fault, blame* (cp. *culpō* below; culpable, culprit, exculpate, inculpate)
- *glōria, -ae, f.*, *glory, fame* (glorify, glorification, glorious, inglorious)
- *vērum, -i, n.*, *word* (verb, adverb, verbal, verbiage, verbose, proverb)
tē, abl. and acc. sg., you; yourself; cp. mē
liber, libra, liberum, free (liberal, liberality, libertine; cp. libertās, Ch. 8, liberō, Ch. 19)
nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, our; ours (nostrum, paternoster)
pūcher, pūchra, pūchrum, beautiful, handsome; fine (pulchritude)
sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy, sane (sani- ty, sanitary, sanitation, sanitari- um, insane)
igitur, conj., postpositive, therefore, consequently
-ne, enclitic or suffix added to the emphatic word placed at the beginning of a sentence to indicate a question the answer to which is uncertain.
(For other types of direct questions, see nōne and num in Ch. 40.)
prōpter, prep. + acc., on account of, because of
crās, adv., tomorrow (procrastinate, procrastination)
herē, adv., yesterday
quāndō, interrogative and relative adv. and conj., when; sī quāndō, if ever
sātis, indecl. noun, adj., and adv., enough, sufficient (-ly) (cp. satō; satisf- isy, satisfactory, satiate, insatiable, sate; assets, from ad, up to + satis)
tum, adv., then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place
cēnō (1), to dine (cenacle; cp. ēnæ, Ch. 26)
culpā (1), to blame, censure (cp. culpa above)
remāneō, remanēre, remānī, remānsum, or mâneō, manère, mānī, mān- sum, to remain, stay, stay behind, abide, continue (permanent, rem- nant, mansion, manor, immanent—do not confuse with imminent)
sūperō (1), to be above (cp. super, adv. and prep. + abl. or acc., above), have the upper hand, sur- pass; overcome, conquer (superable, insuper- able)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW
1. Officium līberōs virōs semper vocābat.
2. Habēbimusne multōs virōs et fēminās magnōrum animōrum?
3. Perīcula bellī nōn sunt parva, sed patria tua tē vocābit et agricolae adivvābunt.
4. Propter culpās malōrum patria nostra nōn valēbit.
5. Mora animōs nostrōs superābat et remedium nōn habēbāmus.
7. Paucī virī dē cūrā animī cōgitābant.
8. Propter ēram in culpā estis et crās poenās dabitis.
9. Vērum ōtium nōn habēs, vir stulte!
10. Nihil est sine culpā; sumus bonī, sī paucās habēmus.

1 A postpositive word is one which does not appear as the first word of a sentence; it is put after (post-pōnō) the first word or phrase.
12. Will war and destruction always remain in our land?
13. Does money satisfy the greedy man?
14. Therefore, you (sg.) will save the reputation of our foolish boys.
15. Money and glory were conquering the soul of a good man.

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Invidiam populi Rōmānī crās nōn sustinēbis. (Cicero.—*invidia*, -ae, dislike.—*sustinēre*, to endure, sustain.)
2. Perículum ne igitur hērī remanēbat? (Cicero.)
3. Angustus animus pecūniām amat. (Cicero.—*angustus*, -a, -um, narrow.)
4. Superā animōs et ūram tuam. (Ovid.)
5. Cūlpā est mea, Ō amīcī. (Cicero.)
6. Dā veniam filīō et filīābus nostris. (Terence.—*venia*, -ae, favor, pardon.)
7. Propter adulēscēntiam, filiū meī, mala vītae nōn vidēbātīs. (Terence.)
8. Amābō tē, cūrā filiām meam. (Cicero.—*cūrāre*, to take care of.)
9. Vīta hūmāna est supplicium. (Seneca.—*supplicium*, -ī, punishment.)
10. Satisne sānus es? (Terence.)
11. Si quandō satis pecūniāe habēbō, tum mē cōnsiliō et philosophiae dabo. (Seneca.—*pecūniāe*, gen. case.)
12. Semper gloria et fāma tua manēbunt. (Virgil.)
13. Vīr bonus et perītus aspera verba poētārum culpābit. (Horace.—*perītus*, -a, -um, skillful.—asper, aspera, asperum, rough, harsh.)

**HIS ONLY GUEST WAS A REAL BOAR!**

Nōn cēnat sine aprī noster, Tīte, Caeciliānus:
bellum convīvam Caeciliānus habēt!

(*Martial 7.59. This is the first of several selections included in this book from the *Epigrams* of Martial, a popular poet of the late 1 st cen. A.D., briefly discussed in the Introd.; these poems are generally quite short, like this two-verse elegiac couplet, satirical, and targeted at a specific, but usually fictitious, character, here the glutton Caecilianus.—Titus, the poem’s addressee, but not its victim.—*aper*, *aprī*, *boar*, pig.—*convīva*, -ae, one of a few masc. first decl. nouns, dinner-guest.)

**THERMOPYLAE: A SOLDIER’S HUMOR**

an anecdote from the battle of Thermopylae, 480 B.C., in which the Persians under king Xerxes defeated the Spartans under Leonidas.

- **exercitus, army.** - Persicus, a Persian.
- **inquit, says.**
- sagitta, arrow. - Lacedaemonius, a Spartan.
- respondentēre = Eng. - umbrā, shade, shadow; ghost.
- pugnāre, to fight. - rēx, king.
- exclāmāre, to shout.
- cum + abl., with.
- apud + acc., among.
- infernī, -ōrum, those below, the dead.
- fortasse, adv., perhaps.

**ETYMOLOGY**

Related to **animus** is anima, -ae, the breath of life; hence: animal, animated, inanimate.

"Envy" came to us from invidia (sent. 1) indirectly through French; "invidious" we borrowed directly from Latin.

"Expert" and "experience" are both related to **perītus** (13). The ex here is intensive (= thoroughly) and the stem perī- means try, make trial of. What, then, is an "experiment"? Apparently there is no experiment without some risk (perī-culum).

In sent. 13: asperity, exasperate (ex again intensive). In "Thermopylae": sagittate; umbrella (through Italian, with diminutive ending), umbrage, adumbrate; pugnacious, pugilist.

**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!**

Salvēte, et amīci et amīcae meae! Quid agitis hodie? In fact, I hope you are sānī et sānae, both physically and spiritually; if so, you have attained what the 1st cen. A.D. Roman satirist Juvenal suggested was the highest good in life, mēns sāna in corpore sānō, a healthy mind in a healthy body (you'll encounter the two third decl. nouns mēns and corpus later on, but in the meantime you can keep this famous quotation in mente). It's rumored, by the way, that the athletic gear brand-name ASICS is an acronym for animus sānus in corpore sānō; with a glance back at the Vocab. you can figure that one out too. NIKE, an ASICS competitor, takes its name from the Greek word for "victory," which in Latin is victoria, a winning name for a queen or any powerful lady (whose male counterpart might well be dubbed "Victor," from Lat. victor).

You may have encountered the expressions verbum sap and mea culpa before; if not, you will. The former is an abbreviation of **verbum satis sapientī est:** sapientī is dat. of the third decl. adj. sapiēns, wise, used here as a noun (remember substantive adj.s from Ch. 4?), so you should already have deduced that the phrase means a word to the wise is sufficient. If you couldn't figure that out, just shout "mea culpa!" and (here's a verbum sap) go back and review the vocabulary in Chs. 1–5. Valēte!
Sum: Future and Imperfect Indicative; Possum: Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative; Complementary Infinitive

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum

As we return to the irregular verb sum, esse, the best procedure for learning the future and imperfect tenses is again simply to memorize the paradigms below; these forms are more regular than those for the present tense, however, each formed on the stem er- and with the familiar present system personal endings (-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Indicative</th>
<th>Imperfect Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. érō, <em>I shall be</em></td>
<td>éram, <em>I was</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. éris, <em>you will be</em></td>
<td>éras, <em>you were</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. érit, <em>he (she, it, there) will be</em></td>
<td>érat, <em>he (she, it, there) was</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. érimus, <em>we shall be</em></td>
<td>erámus, <em>we were</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. éritis, <em>you will be</em></td>
<td>erátis, <em>you were</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. érunt, <em>they (there) will be</em></td>
<td>érant, <em>they (there) were</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**IRREGULAR Possum, Posse, Potui: To Be Able, Can, Could**

The very common verb *possum, posse, potui*, is simply a compound of *pol-*, from the irregular adjective *potis* (*able, capable; cp. “potent,” “potential”) + *sum*. Before forms of *sum* beginning with *s-*, the *-t-* was altered or “assimilated” to *-s-* (hence *possum* from *potsum*); otherwise the *-t-* remained unchanged. The irregular present infinitive *posse* developed from an earlier form which followed this rule (*potesse*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Indicative</th>
<th>Future Indicative</th>
<th>Imperfect Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I am able, can</em></td>
<td><em>I shall be able</em></td>
<td><em>I was able, could</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pós-sum</td>
<td>pót-crō</td>
<td>pót-eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. 2. pót-es</td>
<td>pót-eris</td>
<td>pót-erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pót-est</td>
<td>pót-erit</td>
<td>pót-erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pós-sumus</td>
<td>pot-erimus</td>
<td>pot-erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 2. pot-ēstis</td>
<td>pot-ēritis</td>
<td>pot-erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pós-sunt</td>
<td>pót-erunt</td>
<td>pót-erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For both *sum* and *possum* it may be helpful to note the similarity of the future and imperfect endings, *-ōl-īs/-it*, etc., and *-aml-ās/-at*, etc., to the first and second conjugation future and imperfect endings, *-bōl-bis/-bit*, etc., and *-bam-bās/-bat*, etc., which were introduced in the previous chapter.

**COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE**

*Possum*, exactly like the English *to be able* or *can*, regularly requires an infinitive to complete its meaning. Hence we have the term “complementary” infinitive, which simply means “completing” infinitive, a point that is emphasized by the spelling: complementary in contrast to complimentary. You have already seen the complementary infinitive used with *débeō*, and you will find it employed with other verbs.

- Our friends were able to overcome (could overcome) many dangers.
- Amīcī nostrī poterant superāre multa pericula.
- My friend is not able to remain (cannot remain).
- Amīcus meus nōn potest remanēre.
- You ought to save your money.
- Dēbēs cōnservāre pecūniam tuam.
Note that a complementary infinitive has no separate subject of its own; its subject is the same as that of the verb on which it depends.

VOCABULARY

dēa, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. deābus, goddess, and dēus, -ī, m., voc. sg. deus, nom. pl. dī, dat. and abl. pl. dīs (the plurals deī and deīs became common during the Augustan Period), god (adieu, deify, deity)
discipula, -ae, f., and discipulus, -ī, m., learner, pupil, student (disciple, discipline, disciplinary; cp. discō, Ch. 8)
insidiac, -ārum, f. pl., ambush, plot, treachery (insidious)
liber, librī, m., book (library, libretto); not to be confused with libēr, free
tyrrānus, -ī, m., absolute ruler, tyrant (tyrannous, tyrannicide)
vitium, -ī, n., fault, crime, vice (vitiate, vicious; but not vice in vice versa)
Græcus, -a, -um, Greek; Græcōs, -ī, m., a Greek
perpētus, -a, -um, perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous (perpetuate, perpetuity)
plēnus, -a, -um, full, abundant, generous (plenary, plenteous, plentiful, plenitude, plenty, replenish, plenipotentiary)
sálvus, -a, -um, safe, sound (cp. salveō)
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable (secondary)
vēster, vēstra, vēstrum, your (pl., i.e., used in addressing more than one person, vs. tuus, -a, -um), yours
-que, enclitic conj., and. It is appended to the second of two words to be joined: fāma gloriāque, fame and glory.
úbi: (1) rel. adv. and conj., where, when: (2) interrog. adv. and conj., where? (ubiquitous)
ibī, adv., there (ib. or ibid.)
nunc, adv., now, at present (quidnunc)
quāre, adv., lit. because of which thing (quā rē), therefore, wherefore, why
pōssum, pōsse, pōtūī, to be able, can, could, have power (posse, possible, potent, potentate, potential, puissant, omnipotent)
tōlerō (1), to bear, endure (tolerate, toleration, tolerable, intolerable, intolerance; cp. tollō, Ch. 22, ferō, Ch. 31)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Oculī nostrī nōn valēbant; quāre agrōs bellōs vidēre nōn poterāmus.
2. Sine multā pecūniā et multīs dōnīs tyrannus satiāre populum Rōmānum nōn poterit.
3. Nōn poterant, igitur, tē dē poenā amīcōrum tuōrum herī monēre.
4. Parvus numerus Græcorum crās ibi remanēre poterit.
5. Magister pueros malōs sine morā vocābit.
6. Filiae vestrae dē librīs magnī poētae saepe cōgitābant.
7. Quandō satis sapientiae habēbimus?
8. Multī librī antiquī propter sapientiam cōnsiliumque erant magnī.
10. Possuntne pecūnia ōtiumque cūrās vitae hūmānae superāre?
11. Therefore, we cannot always see the real vices of a tyrant.
12. Few free men will be able to tolerate an absolute ruler.
13. Many Romans used to praise the great books of the ancient Greeks.
14. Where can glory and (use -que) fame be perpetual?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dionysius tum erat tyrannus Syracusanorum. (Cicero.—Dionysius, -ii, a Greek name.—Syracusanus, -i, a Syracusan.)
2. Optāes meam vītam fortūnamque gustāre? (Cicero.—optāre, to wish.—gustāre, to taste.)
3. Possumusne, Ó dī, in malīs īnsidiīs et magnō exitīō esse salvī? (Cicero.—Can you explain why the nom. pl. salvī is used here?)
4. Propter cūram meam in perpetuo periculō nōn eritis. (Cicero.)
5. Propter vitia tua multī tē culpant et nihil tē in patriā tua dēlectāre nunc potest. (Cicero.—dēlectāre, to delight.)
6. Fortūna Pūnicī belī secundī varia erat. (Livy.—Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian.—variōs, -a, -um, varied.)
7. Patria Rōmānōrum erat plēna Graecōrum librōrum statuārumque pulchrārum. (Cicero.—statuā, -ae, Eng.)
8. Sine dīs et deābus in caelō animus nōn potest sānus esse. (Seneca.)
9. Sī animus ūnfirmus est, nōn poterit bonam fortūnam tolerāre. (Publilius Syrus.—ūnfirmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak.)
10. Ubi lēgēs valent, ibi populus līber potest valēre. (Publilius Syrus.—lēgēs, nom. pl., laws.)

"I DO NOT LOVE THEE, DOCTOR FELL"

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.

Hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo tē.

(*Martial 1.32; meter: elegiac couplet. amo: final -ō was often shortened in Latin poetry.—Sabidius, -ii.—nee = et nōn.—dīcere, to say.—hoc, this, acc. case.—tantum, adv., only.)

THE HISTORIAN LIVY LAMENTS THE DECLINE OF ROMAN MORALS

(Livy, from the preface to his history of Rome, *Ab Urbe Condita*; see Introd.—
*nece... nece*, conj., *neither... nor.*)

**ETYMOLOGY**

Eng. "library" is clearly connected with *liber*. Many European languages, however, derive their equivalent from *bibliotheca*, a Latin word of Greek origin meaning in essence the same thing as our word. What, then, do you suppose *biblos* meant in Greek? Cp. the *Bible*.

---

**In the readings**


French *y* in such a phrase as *il y a* (*there is*) may prove more understandable when you know that *y* derives from *ibi*.

The following French words are derived from Latin as indicated: *êtes = estis*; *notre = noster*; *votre = vester*; *goûter = gustare*. What, then, is one thing which the French circumflex accent indicates?

---

**LATīNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!**

*Salvēte, discipuli et discipulae! Quid hodiē agitis, amici? Cōgitātisne dé lingūā Latīnā?* Well, I assume by now that your etymological sense will tell you that *lingua Latīna* means . . . *the Latin language* or just "Latin," your favorite subject. Now that you've developed a taste for the language, I know that you study with great "gusto"! (If you missed that bit of etymologizing, see S.A. 2 above.) The new Vocab. item *deus* turns up in the expression *deus ex machīnā*, *god from a machine*, which refers (in drama and other contexts) to any person or mechanism that performs an amazing rescue from some seemingly hopeless dilemma.

Do you know that *sub* is a preposition meaning *under*, as in "subterranean," under the *terra*, *earth*; if so, you can laugh at this old favorite: *semper ubi sub ubi!* (Good hygiene and prevents rash!) And speaking of *ubi*, it asks the question that *ibi* answers; a compound form of the latter constructed with the intensifying suffix *-dem*, *the same* (see Ch. 11 for a similar use of *-dem*), *ibīdem*, gives us *ibid.*, *in the same place cited*, just one of many Latin-based abbreviations commonly employed in English. Here are some others:

- *cf.* = *cōnfer*, *compare*
- *cp.* = *comparā*, *compare*
- *e.g.* = *exemplī grātiā*, *for the sake of example*
- *et al.* = *et aliī/aliae*, *and others (of persons)*

---

1 For the sake of brevity this phrase will henceforth be used to direct attention to words etymologically associated with words in the sentences indicated.
etc. = *et cetera, and others* (of things)
i.e. = *id est, that is*
n.b. = *nōtā bene, note carefully* (i.e., pay close attention)
v.i. and v.s. = *vidē infrā and vidē suprā, see below and see above*

Semper ubi sub ubi AND the scholarly *ibid.,* both in the same lesson? Well, that’s what the title means: *Latīna EST gaudium—et ūtilis!* Valēte!

*Paquius Proculus (?) and wife*

*Wallpainting from Pompeii, house at region VII.i.6, 1st century A.D.*
*Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy*
Third Declension Nouns

The third of Latin's five declensions contains nouns of all three genders with a great variety of nominative singular endings, but all characterized by the genitive singular in -is; because of this variety of gender and nominative form, it is especially important to memorize the full vocabulary entry (which in the chapter vocabularies will include the complete, unabbreviated genitive form—abbreviations will be used only in the notes). The declension itself is a simple matter, following the same principles already learned for first and second declension nouns: find the base (by dropping the genitive singular -is') and add the endings. Because the vocative is always identical to the nominative (with the sole exception of second declension -us/-ius words), it will not appear in any subsequent paradigms.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Endings</th>
<th>M./F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēx (rēg-s)</td>
<td>rēg-</td>
<td>virtūs</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēg-is</td>
<td>virtūtis</td>
<td>hōminis</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēg-ī</td>
<td>virtūtī</td>
<td>hōminī</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēg-em</td>
<td>virtūtem</td>
<td>hōminem</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rēg-e</td>
<td>virtūte</td>
<td>hōmine</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As has been pointed out before, English derivatives can also be helpful in remembering the base; e.g., *iter, itineris, journey: itinerary; cor, cordis, heart: cordial; custōs, custōdis, guard: custodian.*
TRANSLATION

In translating (as well as declining), take very careful note of the fact that a third declension noun may be modified by a first or second declension adjective; e.g., great king in Latin is magnus rēx, magnī rēgis, etc., true peace is vēra pāx, vērae pācis, etc. While an adjective and noun must agree in number, gender, and case, the spelling of their endings will not necessarily be identical.

Because some of the endings of third declension nouns are identical to the endings of different cases of nouns in other declensions (e.g., the dative singular -i is the same as the genitive singular and the masculine nominative plural in the second declension), it is absolutely essential when reading and translating not only to pay attention to word order and context but also to recognize a particular noun’s declension. Again, meticulous study of the vocabulary is the key to success.

However, the following rules have few or no exceptions:

**Masculine**
- or, -ōris (amōr, -ōris; labor, -ōris; arbor, tree, is a principal exception)
- tor, -ōris (victor, -ōris; scriptor, -ōris, writer)

**Feminine** (including a large group of abstract nouns)
- tās, -tātis (vēritās, -tātis, truth; libertās, -tātis)
- tūs, -tūtis (virtūs, -tūtis; senectūs, -tūtis, old age)
- tūdō, -tūdīnis (multītūdō, -tūdīnis; pulchritūdō, -tūdīnis)
- tōs, -tōnis (nātūs, -tōnis; orātūs, -tōnis)

**Neuter**
- us (corpus, corporis; tempus, temporis; genus, generis)
- e, -ī, -ar (mare, maris, sea; animal, animālis)
- men (carmen, carminis; nōmen, nōminis)

The gender of nouns following these rules will not be given in the notes.

A helpful device is to learn the proper form of some adjective like magnus, -a, -um, with each noun. This practice provides an easily remembered clue to the gender and is comparable to learning the definite article with nouns in Romance languages. For example: magna virtūs, magnus corpus, magnus labor.
VOCAUBULARY

amor, amóris, m., love (amorous, enamored; cp. amō, amīcus)
cármén, cármínis, n., song, poem (charm)
civitās, civitátis, f., state, citizenship (city; cp. civis, Ch. 14)
córpus, córporis, n., body (corps, corpse, corpuscle, corpulent, corporal,
corporeal, corporate, corporation, incorporate, corsage, corset)
hómō, hómīnis, m., human being, man (homicide, homage; homo sapiens,
but not the prefix homo-; cp. hūmānus and vir)
lábōr, labōris, m., labor, work, toil; a work, production (laboratory, be-
labor, laborious, collaborate, elaborate; cp. labōrō, Ch. 21)
littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; litterae, -arum, pl., a letter (epistle),
literature (literal, letters, belles-lettres, illiterate, alliteration)
mōs, mōris, m., habit, custom, manner; mōrēs, mōrum, pl., habits, morals,
character (mores, moral, immoral, immorality, morale, morose)
nōmen, nōminis, n., name (nomenclature, nominate, nominative, nomi-
nal, noun, pronoun, renown, denomination, ignominy, misnomer)
pāx, pācis, f., peace (pacify, pacific, pacifist, appease, pay)
regīna, -ae, f., queen (Regina, regina, reginal; cp. regō, Ch. 16)
rex, régis, m., king (regal, regalia, regicide, royal; cp. rajah)
témpus, témporis, n., time; occasion, opportunity (tempo, temporary,
contemporary, temporal, temporize, extempore. tense [of a verb])
térra, -ae, f., earth, ground, land, country (terrestrial, terrace, terrier, ter-
ritory, inter [verb], parterre, subterranean, terra cotta)
uxor, uxōris, f., wife (uxorial, uxorious, uxoricide)
virgō, virginis, f., maiden, virgin (virgin, virginal, virginity, Virginia)
virtūs, virtūtis, f., manliness, courage; excellence, character, worth, virtue
(virtuoso, virtuosity, virtual; cp. vir)
novus, -a, -um, new; strange (novel, novelty, novice, innovate)
post, prep. + acc., after; behind (posterity, posterior, posthumous, post
mortem, P.M. = post meridiem, preposterous, post- as a prefix, post-
graduate, postlude, postwar, etc.; cp. postrēmum, Ch. 40)
sub, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with verbs of motion, under;
up under, close to (sub- or by assimilation su-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus-, in
countless compounds: subterranean, suburb, succeed, suffix, suggest,
support, sustain)
aūdeō, audēre, aūsus sum (the unusual third principal part of this “semi-
deponent” verb is explained in Ch. 34), to dare (audacious, audacity)
nēcō (1), to murder; kill (internecine; related to noceō, Ch. 35, and necro-
from Gk. nekros).

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Secundās litterās discipulae herī vidēbās et dē verbīs tum cōgitābās.
2. Féminaes sine morā civitātem dē insidiēs et exitiō malō monēbunt.
3. Rex et regina igitur cras non audebunt ibi remanere.
4. Mōrēs Graecōrum non erant sine culpīs vitīisque.
5. Quandō homīnēs satīs virtūtēs habēbunt?
6. Corpora vestra sunt sāna et animī sunt plēnī sapientiae.
7. Propēt mōrēs hūmānōs pāce vēram non habēbimus.
8. Poteritne civītās perīcula temporum nostrōrum superāre?
9. Post bellum multōs librōs dē pāce et remedīs bellī vidēbant.
10. Offīcia sapientiamque oculīs animī possimus vidēre.
11. Without sound character we cannot have peace.
12. Many students used to have small time for Greek literature.
13. After bad times true virtue and much labor will help the state.
14. The daughters of your friends were dining there yesterday.

**SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE**

1. Homō sum. (*Terence.)
2. Nihil sub sōle novum (*Ecclesiastes.—sōl, sōlis, m., sun.—novum: sc. est.)
3. Carmina nova dē adulēscentiā virginibus puerīisque nunc cantō. (Horace.—cantāre, to sing.)
4. Laudās fortūnām et mōrēs antīquae plēbis. (*Horace.—plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people.)
5. Bonī propter amōrem virtūtēs peccāre ōdērunt. (Horace.—peccāre, to sin.—ōdērunt, defective vb., 3d per. pl., to hate.)
6. Sub prīncipe dūrō temporibusque maliēs audēs esse bonus. (Martial.—prīnceps, -cipis, m., chief, prince; dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh.)
7. Populus stultus virīs indignīs honōrēs saepe dat. (Horace.—honōr, -nōris, honor, office.—indignus, -a, -um, unworthy.)
8. Nōmina stultōrum in parietibus et portīs semper vidēmus. (Cicero.—The desire to scribble names and sentiments in public places is as old as antiquity!—parīēs, -etis, m., wall of a building.)
9. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est. (*Seneca.—mors, mortis, f., death.)
10. Multae nātiōnēs servitūtem tolerāre possunt; nostra civītās nōn potest. Praeclāra est recuperātiō libertātis. (Cicero.—nātiō, -onis = Eng.—servītūs, -tūtis, servitude.—praeclārās, -a, -um, noble, remarkable.—recuperātiō, -onis, recovery.—libertātis, -tātis = Eng.)
11. Nihil sine magno labore vita mortālibus dat. (Horace.—mortālis, -tālis, a mortal.)
12. Quōmodo in perpetuā pāce salvi est liberī esse poterimus? (Cicero.—quōmodo, how.)
THE RAPE OF LUCRETTIA


(Livy 1.58; Tarquinius Superbus was Rome’s last king, Collatinus a Roman nobleman; according to legend, the rape of Lucretia led to the overthrow of the Tarquin dynasty, the end of monarchy, and the establishment of the Roman Republic in 509 B.C.—rapuit, raped.—sē, herself.—necāvit, a past tense form.)

Tarquin and Lucretia
Titian, 1570–75
Akademie der Bildenden Kuenste, Vienna, Austria

CATULLUS DEDICATES HIS POETRY BOOK

Cornēliō, virō magnae sapientiae, dabō pulchrum librum novum. Cornēliī, mī amīce, librōs meōs semper laudābās, et es magister doctus litterārum! Quārē habē novum labōrem meum: fāma librī (et tua fāma) erit perpetua.

(Catullus 1, prose adaptation; see L.I. 1. Catullus dedicated his first book of poems to the historian and biographer Cornelius Nepos.—doctus, -a, -um, learned, scholarly.)

ETYMOLOGY

From what Latin word do you suppose It. uomo, Sp. hombre, and Fr. homme and on are derived?

“Tense” meaning the “time” of a verb comes from tempus through old
Fr. tens; but "tense" meaning "stretched tight" goes back to tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum, to stretch.

In late Latin civitās came to mean city rather than state, and thus it became the parent of the Romance words for city: It. città, Sp. ciudad, Fr. cité.

In the readings

2. solar, solstice.—novel, novelty, novice, novitiate, innovate, renovate.
3. chant, enchant, incantation, cant, recant, canto, cantabile, precentor.
4. plebeian, plebe, plebiscite. 5. peccant, peccadillo. 6. dour, duration, endure, obdurate. 13. volunteer, involuntary.

It may prove helpful to list the Romance and English equivalents of three of the suffixes given in n. 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-tās, -tātis</td>
<td>-tà</td>
<td>-dad</td>
<td>-té</td>
<td>-ty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vēritās</td>
<td>verità</td>
<td>verdad</td>
<td>vérité</td>
<td>verity (truth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antīquitās</td>
<td>antichità</td>
<td>antigüedad</td>
<td>antiquité</td>
<td>antiquity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tiō, -tiōnis</td>
<td>-zione</td>
<td>-ción</td>
<td>-tion</td>
<td>-tion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātiō</td>
<td>nazione</td>
<td>nación</td>
<td>nation</td>
<td>nation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratiō</td>
<td>razione</td>
<td>ración</td>
<td>ration</td>
<td>ration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tor, -tōris</td>
<td>-tore</td>
<td>-tor</td>
<td>-teur</td>
<td>-tor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inventōr</td>
<td>inventore</td>
<td>inventor</td>
<td>inventeur</td>
<td>inventor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actor</td>
<td>attore</td>
<td>actor</td>
<td>acteur</td>
<td>actor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte, et discipulī et discipulae! Quid nunc agitis? You are beginning to see by now that Latin is living everywhere in our language; in fact, it's a rāra avis these days who considers Latin a dead language. To anyone who does, you might quip, quot homīnēs, tot sententiae—an old proverb from the 2nd cen. B.C. comic playwright Terence meaning, freely, there are as many opinions as there are men.

Notice terra in the Vocab.: we met "subterranean" in the last chapter, now do you think of ET? In the 1980s the little guy was everybody's favorite ExtraTerrestrial (from extrā, prep. + acc., beyond, + terra). Until he became familiar with the terrain, he was in a terra incognita; but once he'd learned the territory he felt he was on terra firma (look all four of those up in your Funk and Wagnall's—if you need to!). And, speaking of movies, Stephen Spielberg's top-grossing Jurassic Park reminded us all that Tyrannosaurus rex was truly both a "tyrant" and a "king" (though Spielberg's "velociraptors" were certainly terrifying "swift-snatchers," from the Lat. adj. vēlōx, fast, as in "velocity," + raptor, a third decl. noun based on the verb rapere, to seize, snatch, grab). Latinam semper amābitis—valēte!
The third conjugation, particularly in its present system tenses (present, future, and imperfect), is the most problematic of the four Latin conjugations. Because the stem vowel was short (-e-) and generally unaccented, unlike the stem vowels of the other three conjugations (-ā- in the first, -ē- in the second, and -ī- in the fourth, introduced in Ch. 10—cf. laudāre, monēre, and audīre with āgere), it had undergone a number of sound and spelling changes by the classical period. The surest procedure, as always, is to memorize the following paradigms; a little extra effort invested in mastering these forms now will pay rich dividends in every subsequent chapter.

**PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>Pl.</th>
<th>1. ág-ō</th>
<th>(I lead)</th>
<th>1. ág-am</th>
<th>(I shall lead)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. ág-is</td>
<td>2. ág-ēs</td>
<td>(you lead)</td>
<td>(you will lead)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ág-it</td>
<td>3. ág-et</td>
<td>(he, she, it leads)</td>
<td>(he, she, it will lead)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. agēmus</td>
<td>1. agēmus</td>
<td>(we lead)</td>
<td>(we shall lead)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ágitis</td>
<td>2. agētis</td>
<td>(you lead)</td>
<td>(you will lead)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. águnt</td>
<td>3. ágent</td>
<td>(they lead)</td>
<td>(they will lead)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

1. ag-ēbam  (I was leading, used to lead, etc.)
Sg.  2. ag-ēbās  (you were leading, etc.)
     3. ag-ēbat  (he, she, it was leading, etc.)

1. agēbāmus  (we were leading, etc.)
Pl.  2. agēbātis  (you were leading, etc.)
     3. agēbant  (they were leading, etc.)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

2. Sg. āge (lead)  2. Pl. āgite (lead)

PRESENT INFINITIVE

As -āre and -ēre by this time immediately indicate to you the first and the second conjugations respectively, so -ere will indicate the third. Once again you can see the importance of meticulous vocabulary study, including attention to macrons: you must be especially careful to distinguish between second conjugation verbs in -ēre and third conjugation verbs in -ere.

PRESENT STEM AND PRESENT INDICATIVE

According to the rule for finding the present stem, you drop the infinitive ending -re and have āge- as the present stem. To this you would naturally expect to add the personal endings to form the present indicative. But in fact the short, unaccented stem vowel disappears altogether in the first person singular, and it was altered to -i- in the second and third persons singular and the first and second persons plural, and appears as -u- in the third plural. Consequently, the practical procedure is to memorize the endings.1

FUTURE INDICATIVE

The striking difference of the future tense in the third conjugation (and the fourth, as we shall see in Ch. 10) is the lack of the tense sign -bi-. Here -ē- is the sign of the future in all the forms except the first singular, and by contraction the stem vowel itself has disappeared.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

The imperfect tense is formed precisely according to the rules learned for the first two conjugations (present stem + -bam, -bās, etc.), except that

1 This mnemonic device may help: (a) for the present use an IOU (i in 4 forms, o in the first, u in the last); (b) for the future you have the remaining vowels, a and e. It may also be helpful to note that the vowel alternation is exactly the same as that seen in the future endings of first and second conjugation verbs (-bō, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt).
the stem vowel has been lengthened to -ē-, yielding forms analogous to those in the first and second conjugations.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Also in accordance with the rule already learned, the second person singular of the present imperative is simply the present stem; e.g., mitte (from mittere, to send), pōne (pōnerē, to put). In the plural imperative, however, we see again the shift of the short, unaccented -e- to -i-: hence, mittite and pōnite (not *mittete or *pōnete).

The singular imperative of dūcere was originally dūce, a form seen in the early writer Plautus. Later, however, the -e was dropped from dūce, as it was from the imperatives of three other common third conjugation verbs: dīc (dīcere, say), fac (facere, do), and fer (ferre, bear). The other verbs of this conjugation follow the rule as illustrated by age, mitte, and pōne; the four irregulars, dīc, dūc, fac, and fer, should simply be memorized.

VOCABULARY

Cicerō, Ciceronis, m., (Marcus Tullius) Cicero (Ciceronian, cicerone)
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply; cōpiacē, -ārum, pl., supplies, troops, forces
(friversary, copy, cornucopia)
frāter, frātris, m., brother (fraternal, fraternity, fraternize, fratricide)
lauās, laūdīs, f., praise, glory, fame (laud, laudable, laudation, laudatory, magna cum laude; cp. laudō)
libértās, libertātis, f., liberty (cp. liber, liberō, Ch. 19, liberālis, Ch. 39)
rātiō, ratiōnis, f., reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration; system; manner; method (ratio, ration, rational, irrational, ratiocination)
scripтор, scripторis, m., writer, author (scriptorium; cp. scribō below)
sóror, sorōris, f., sister (sororial, sororate, sorricide, sorority)
victōria, -ae, f., victory (victorious; see Latina Est Gaudium, Ch. 5, and cp. vincō below)
dum, conj., while, as long as, at the same time that; + subjunctive, until
ad, prep. + acc., to, up to, near to, in the sense of “place to which” with verbs of motion; contrast the dat. of indirect object (administer, ad hoc, ad hominem). In compounds the d is sometimes assimilated to the following consonant so that ad may appear, for instance, as ac-(acciō: ad-capiō), ap- (appellō: ad-pellō), a- (aspiciō: ad-spiciō).
ex or ē, prep. + abl., out of, from, from within; by reason of, on account of; following cardinal numbers, of (exact, except, exhibit, evict). The Romans used ex before consonants or vowels; ē before consonants only. Like ad and many other prepositions, exē was often used as a prefix in compounds, sometimes with the x assimilated to the following consonant; e.g., excīpiō, ēdūcō, ēventus, efficīō from ex + faciō, etc.
numquam, adv., never (cp. umquam, Ch. 23)
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still
ágō, ágere, égī, áctum, to drive, lead, do, act; pass, spend (life or time);
grátīas agere + dat., to thank someone, lit., to give thanks to (agent,
agenda, agile, agitate, active, actor, action, actual, actuate)
dēmōnstrō (I), to point out, show, demonstrate (demonstrable, demonstra-
stration, demonstrative; see the demonstrative pronouns in Ch. 9)
dísco, díscre, dídis, to learn (cp. discipulus, discipula)
dóceo, docère, dócuī, dóctum, to teach (docent, docile, document, doctor,
doctrine, indoctrinate)
dúcō, dúcere, dúxi, dúctum, to lead; consider, regard; prolong (ductile,
adduct, adduce, deduce, educe, induce, produce, reduce, seduce)
géro, gérere, gessi, gestum, to carry, manage, conduct, wage, accomplis-
perform (gerund, gesture, gesticulate, jest, belligerent, congest, digest, suggest, exaggerate, register, registry)
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, to write, compose (ascribe, circum-
scribe, conscript, describe, inscribe, proscribe, postscript, rescript,
scripture, subscribe, transcribe, scribble, scrivener, shrieve)
tráhō, tráhere, tráxi, tráctum, to draw, drag; derive, acquire (attract, con-
tract, retract, subtract, tractor, etc.; see Etymology section below)
vínco, vincere, vici, victum, to conquer, overcome (conclude, convict,
evince, evict, invincible, Vincent, victor, Victoria, vanquish)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Tempora nostra nunc sunt mala; vitia nostra, magna.
2. Quaerē soror mea uxōri tuae litterās scribit (scribet, scribēbat)?
3. Tyrannus populum stultum ē terrā vestrā ducet (ducet, ducēbat).
4. Ubi satis rationis animōrumque in hominibus erit?
5. Cópia vērae virtūtis multās culpās superāre poterat.
6. In libērā civitāte adulēscentiam agebāmus.
7. Rēgem malum tolerāre numquam dēbēmus.
8. Post parvam moram multa verba dē ìnsidiās scriptōrum stultōrum
scribēmus.
9. The body will remain there under the ground.
10. Write (sg. and pl.) many things about the glory of our state.
11. Does reason always lead your (pl.) queen to virtue?
12. We shall always see many Greek names there.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Frāter meus vītam in òtiō semper aget. (Terence.)
2. Age, age! Iuvē mē! Dūc mē ad secundum filium meum. (Terence.—
age, age = come, come!)
3. ō amīcī, libertātem perdimus. (Laberius.—perdere, to destroy.)
4. Nova pērícula populō Rōmānō expōnam sine morā. (Cicero.—expōnere, to set forth.)
5. Numquam pērículum sine pērículō vincēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
6. Ex mēs errōribus hominibus rēctum iter dēmōnstrāre possum. (Seneca.—error, -rōris.2—rēctus, -a, -um, right.—iter, itineris, n., road, way.)
7. Catullus Márcō Tullīō Cicerōnī magnās grātiās agit. (Catullus.—See “Thanks a Lot, Tully!” Ch. 27.)
8. Eximia fōrma virgīnis oculōs hominum convertit. (Livy.—eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary.—convertere, to turn around, attract.)
9. Agamemnon magnās cópiās ē terrā Graecā ad Trōiam dūcēt, ubi multōs virōs necābit. (Cicero.—Agamemnon, -nonis.)

Gold funerary mask of “Agamemnon”
Mycenae, 16th century B.C.
National Archaeological Museum, Athens, Greece

10. Amor laudis hominēs trahit. (Cicero.)
11. Auctōrēs pācīs Caesar cōnservābit. (Cicero.—auctor, -tōris, auctor.—Caesar, -sarīs.)
12. Inter mUltās cūrās labōrēsque carmina scribere nōn possum. (Horace.—inter, prep. + acc., among.)
13. Dum in magnā urbe déclāmās, mī amīce, scripτōrem Trōiānī belli in ōtiō relegē. (Horace.—urbs, urbīs, f., city.—déclāmāre, to declaim.—Trōiānūs, -a, -um.—relegere, to re-read.)
14. Nōn vítae, sed scholae, discimus. (*Seneca.—vítae and scholae, datives expressing purpose; see S.S., p. 443—schola, -ae, school.)
15. Hominēs, dum docent, discunt. (*Seneca.)
16. Ratiō mē dūcēt, nōn fortūna. (Livy.)

2Hereafter in the notes, when a Latin word easily suggests an English derivative, the English meaning will be omitted.
CICERO ON THE ETHICS OF WAGING WAR

Civitās bellum sine causā bona aut propter ſram gerere nōn dēbet. Si fortīnās et agrōs vitāsque populi nostri sine bellō dēfendere poterimus, tum pācem cōnservāre dēbēmus; si, autem, nōn poterimus esse salvī et servāre pātriam libertātemque nostram sine bellō, bellum erit necessārium. Semper dēbēmus dēmōnstrāre, tamen, magnum officium in bellō, et magnam clēm¬entiam post victōriam.

(Cicero, De Officīis 1.11.34–36 and De Rē Pāblicā 3.23.34–35, and see L.A. 7 for a fuller adaptation.—causa, -ae—dēfendere.—autem, conj., however.—nec¬essārius, -a, -um.—clēmentia, -ae.)

ETYMOLOGY

Also connected with trahō are: abstract, detract, detraction, distract, distraction, distraught, extract, protract, portray, portrait, retreat, trace, tract, tractable, intractable, traction, contraction, retraction, trait, treat, treaty, train, training.

In the readings


LĀTĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! With this chapter’s copious new vocabulary, you can see again what a veritable linguistic cornucopia (a “horn of plenty,” from cōpia + cornū, horn, which is cognate with “cornet”!) you have in Latin. Scīptor is one of a large group of masc. third decl. nouns formed by replacing the -um of a verb’s fourth principal part with -or, a suffix meaning essentially one who performs the action of the verb. So, a monitor, -tōris, is one who advises, i.e., an advisor; an amātor is a lover; etc. What would be the similarly formed nouns from docēre and agō? Look at the other verbs introduced in this chap­ter and at the vocabularies in the previous chapters; what other such -or nouns can you form and recognize?

The point is that if you know one Latin root word, then you will often discover and be able to deduce the meanings of whole families of words: the verb discere, e.g., is related to discipulus and discipula, of course, and also to the noun disciplīna. I like to point out that “discipline” is not “punishment” but “learning.” If you saw the popular 1993 film Man Without a Face, you heard lots of Latin, including a favorite old injunction and the motto of England’s Winchester College, aut disce aut discēde, either learn or leave (I have this posted on my office door). You’ll be learning, not leaving, I have no doubt, but for now, valēte, discipulī et discipulae!
Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -īus Adjectives

DEMONSTRATIVES

The Latin demonstratives (from dēmōnstrāre, to point out) function either as pronouns or adjectives equivalent to English this/these and that/those; the declension generally follows that of magnus, -a, -um (see Ch. 4), with the exception of the forms underlined in the following paradigms (which, as always, should be memorized by repeating the forms aloud, from left to right, hic, haec, hoc; huius, huius, huius; etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ille, that, those</th>
<th></th>
<th>hic, this, these</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>ìlla</td>
<td>ìllud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ìllus</td>
<td>ìllus</td>
<td>ìllus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ìlli</td>
<td>ìlli</td>
<td>ìlli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ìllum</td>
<td>ìllam</td>
<td>ìllud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ìllō</td>
<td>ìllā</td>
<td>ìllō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ìlli</td>
<td>ìllae</td>
<td>ìlla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ìllorum</td>
<td>ìllarum</td>
<td>ìllorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ìllis</td>
<td>ìllis</td>
<td>ìllis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ìllōs</td>
<td>ìllās</td>
<td>ìlla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ìllōs</td>
<td>ìllīs</td>
<td>ìllīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DECLENSION

Iste, ista, istud, that (near you), that of yours, such, follows the declension of ille: nom. iste, ista, istud; gen. istius, istius, istius; dat. isti, isti, isti; etc. Be ready to give all the forms orally.

Again, all three demonstratives follow the pattern of magnus, -a, -um quite closely, entirely in the plural with the exception of the neuter haec. The most striking differences are in the distinctive genitive and dative singular forms (shared by the nine other special adjectives discussed below) and the -e in several forms of hic, a shortened form of the demonstrative enclitic -ce. Note that huius and huic are among the few words in which ui functions as a diphthong; for the special pronunciation of huius (= hui-yus) see the Introduction (p. xli).

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

In general the demonstratives point out persons or things either near the speaker (hic liber, this book = this book of mine, this book here) or near the addressee (iste liber, that book, that book of yours, that book next to you), or distant from both (ille liber, that book = that book over there, that book of his or hers). Ille and hic are sometimes equivalent to the former and the latter, respectively, and occasionally they have little more force than our personal pronouns, he, she, it, they; ille can also mean the famous . . . ; iste is sometimes best translated such, and occasionally has a disparaging sense, as in ista iHar, that awful anger of yours.

When demonstratives modify nouns, they function as adjectives; since they are by nature emphatic, they regularly precede the nouns they modify. The following examples will provide practice with some of the more troublesome forms.

hic liber, this book
ille liber, that book
illius librí, of that book
illí librí, those books
illí libró, to that book
illí libró, by that book
istius amíci, of that friend (of yours)
istí amíci, those friends (of yours)
istí amíco, to that friend (of yours)
hanc civitatem, this state
huic civitáti, to this state
illí civitáti, to that state
illae civitátes, those states
haec civítas, this state
haec cónsilia, these plans
hoc cónsilió, by this plan
huic cónsilió, to this plan

When used alone, demonstratives function as pronouns (from Lat. prō, for, in place of; + nómen, name, noun) and can commonly be translated as this man, that woman, these things, and the like, according to their gender, number, and context.
Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -ius Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hic, this man</th>
<th>Ille, that man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hanc, this woman</td>
<td>Illa, that woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunc, this man</td>
<td>Illa, those things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haec, this woman</td>
<td>Huius, of this man or woman¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haec, these things</td>
<td>Illi, to that man or woman¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Istum, that man</td>
<td>Illi, those men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Istārum, of those women</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SPECIAL -ius ADJECTIVES

The singular of nine adjectives of the first and the second declensions is irregular in that the genitive ends in -ius and the dative in -i, following the pattern of illius and illi above. Elsewhere in the singular and throughout the plural these are regular adjectives of the first and the second declensions, following the pattern of magnus, -a, -um.²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>Alius, Alia, Aliud, another, other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Sólus, Sóla, Sólum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Sólius, Sólius, Sólīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Sólī, Sólī, Sólī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Sólum, Sólam, Sólum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Sólō, Sólā, Sólō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The nine adjectives in this group can be easily remembered via the acronym UNUS NAUTA, each letter of which represents the first letter of one of the adjectives (and which at the same time includes one of the nine words, ìnus, and even reminds you that nauta, though a first declension noun, is masculine, hence the masculine form ìnus). Note, too, that each of the nine words indicates some aspect of number:

¹ As a rule, the neuter was used as a pronoun only in the nominative and the accusative. In the genitive, the dative, and the ablative cases the Romans preferred to use the demonstrative as an adjective in agreement with the noun for “thing”; e.g., huius rei, of this thing.
² Except for the neuter singular form aliud (cp. illud).
³ This form, borrowed from alter, is more common than the regular one, alius.
UNUS:
ūnus, -a, -um (ūnīus, etc.), one
nullus, -a, -um (nullus, etc.), no, none
ūllus, -a, -um, any
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only

NAUTA:
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither
alius, -a, -ud, another, other
uter, utra, utrum, either, which (of two)
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two)

VOCABULARY
locus, -i, m., place; passage in literature; pl., lōca, -ōrum, n., places, region; lōcī, -ōrum, m., passages in literature (allocate, dislocate, locality, locomotion)
mórbus, -ī, m., disease, sickness (morbid, morbidity)
stūdium, -ii, n. eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study (studio, studios; cp. studeō, Ch. 35)
hic, haec, hoc, this; the latter; at times weakened to he, she, it, they (ad hoc)
ille, illa, illud, that; the former; the famous; he, she, it, they
iste, īsta, īstud, that of yours, that; such; sometimes with contemptuous force
ālius, -a, -ud, other, another; āliī . . . āliī, some . . . others (alias, alibi, alien)
áltēr, álera, álterum, the other (of two), second (alter, alteration, alternative, alteration, altruism, adulterate, adultery)
nēutēr, nēutra, nētrum, not either, neither (neutrality, neutron)
nūlīus, -a, -um, not any, no, none (null, nullify, nullification, annul)
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, the only; nōn sōlum . . . sed étiam, not only . . .
but also (sole, solitary, soliloquy, solo, desolate, sullen)
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire (total, totality, factotum, in toto)
sōlus, -a, -um, any
ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, alone (unit, unite, union, onion, unanimous, unicorn, uniform, unique, unison, universal, university)
úter, útra, útrum, either, which (of two)
ēnim, postpositive conj., for, in fact, truly
in, prep. + acc., into, toward; against (also in + abl., in, on, see Ch. 3).
In compounds in- may also appear as il-, ir-, im-; and it may have its literal meanings or have simply an intensive force. (Contrast the inseparable negative prefix in-, not, un-, in-.)
nīmis or nīmium, adv., too, too much, excessively
PRACTICE AND REVIEW
1. Hic tōtus liber litterās Rōmānās semper laudat.
2. Hī igitur illīs deābus herī grātiās agēbant.
3. Illud dē vitīs istīs rēgīnae nunc scribām, et ista poenās dabit.
5. Potestne laus ulla terræ esse perpetua?
7. Mōrēs istīs scrīptōris erant nimis mālī.
8. Nūllī magistri, tamen, sub istō vēra docēre audēbant.
9. Valēbitne pāx in patriā nostrā post hanc victōriām?
10. Dum iliī ibi remanēnt, aliī nihil agunt, aliī discunt.
11. Cicero was writing about the glory of the other man and his wife.
12. The whole state was thanking this man’s brother alone.
13. On account of that courage of yours those (men) will lead no troops into these places tomorrow.
14. Will either book be able to overcome the faults of these times?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE
1. Ubi illās nunc vidēre possum? (Terence.)
2. Hic illam virginem in mātrimōnium dūcet. (Terence.—mātrimō-nium, -ī.)
3. Huic cōnsiliō palmam dō. (Terence.—palma, -ae, palm branch of victory.)
4. Vīrtūtem enim illūs virī amāmus. (Cicero.)
5. Sōlus hunc iuvāre potes. (Terence.)
6. Poena istīs ūnīs hunc morbum cīvitātis relevābit sed perīculum semper remanēbit. (Cicero.—relevāre, to relieve, diminish.)
7. Hī enim dē exitiō huius cīvitātis et tōtīs orbīs terrārum cōgitant. (Cicero.—orbis, orbis, m., cīrcle, orb; orbis terrārum, idiom, the world.)
8. Est nūllus locus utrī homīnī in hāc terrā. (Martial.)
9. Nōn sōlum ĕventus hoc docēt—iste est magister stultōrum!—sed etiam ratiō. (Livy.—ĕventus, outcome.)

WHEN I HAVE . . . ENOUGH!
Habet Āfricānus mīliēns, tamen captat.
Fortūna multīs dat nimīs, satīs nūllī.

(*Martial 12.10; meter: choliambic.—Āfricānus, -ī, a personal name.—mīliēns, call it millions.—captāre, to hunt for legacies.)

Sī vis studēre philosophiae animōque, hoc studium nōn potest valēre sine frāguālitāte. Haec frāguālitās est paupertās voluntāria. Tolle, igitur, istās excūsātiōnēs: “Nōndum satis pecūniae habeō. Sī quandō illud ‘satis’ ha-
bēbō, tum mē tōtum philosophiae dabō." Incipe nunc philosophiae, nōn pecūniae, studēre.

(Seneca, Epistulae 17.5.—vis, irreg. form, you wish.—studère + dat., to be eager for, devote oneself to.—frūgālitās -tātis. —paupertās, -tātis, small means, poverty.—voluntārius, -a, -um.—tollere, to take away.—excūsātiō, -ōnīs.—nōndum, adv., not yet.—incipe, imper., begin.)

**ETYMOLOGY**

A few examples of in- as a prefix connected with the preposition: invoke, induce, induct, inscribe, inhibit, indebted.

Some examples of in- as an inseparable negative prefix: invalid, innumer­able, insane, insuperable, intolerant, inanimate, infamous, inglorious, imp­ecunious, illiberal, irrational.

Latin ille provided Italian, Spanish, and French with the definite article and with pronouns of the third person; and Latin unus provided these lan­guages with the indefinite article. Some of these forms and a few other deriv­atives are shown in the following table:
Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -ius Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ille, illa</td>
<td>il, la</td>
<td>el, la</td>
<td>le, la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille, illa</td>
<td>egli, ella</td>
<td>él, ella</td>
<td>il, elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>únus, ūna</td>
<td>un(o), una</td>
<td>un(o), una</td>
<td>un, une</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōtus</td>
<td>tutto</td>
<td>todo</td>
<td>tout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōlus</td>
<td>solo</td>
<td>solo</td>
<td>seul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter</td>
<td>altro</td>
<td>otro</td>
<td>autre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fr. là (there) comes from illāc (viā), an adverbial form meaning there (that way); similarly, It. là and Sp. allá.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvēte! Here is a mysterious old inscription, found on a hitching post out west in Dodge City:

TOTI
EMUL
ESTO

Aha!—looks like the newly learned dat. of tōtus + emul, like simul, simultaneously? + some form of sum, es, est, the exotic future imperative, perhaps? (NOT!—that old post was just “to tie mules to”!)

Here are some more vocab. items useful for Latin conversation and other classroom activities: surgere, to rise, stand up (surge, resurgence, insurgence); sedēre, to sit (sedentary); ambulāre, to walk (ambulatory, amble, ambulance); aperīre (fourth conj.), to open (aperture); claudere, to close (clause, closet); dēclināre; coniugāre; crēta, -ae, chalk (cretaceous); ērāsūra, -ae, eraser; stīlus, -i, pen or pencil (actually a stylus); tabula, -ae, chalkboard (tabular, tabulate); tabella, -ae, the diminutive form of tabula, notebook, writing pad (tablet); iānua, -ae, door (janitor, Janus, January); fenestra, -ae, window; cella, -ae, room (cell); sella, -ae, chair; mēnsa, -ae, table; podium, -ii. Now you’ll know just what to do when your instructor says to you, Salvē, discipula (or discipule)! Quid agis hodie? Surge ex sellā tuā, ambulā ad tabulam, et dēclinā "hic, haec, hoc.” Next thing you know, you’ll be speaking Latin—not so difficult (even Roman toddlers did!): semper valēte, amīcae amīcīque!
This chapter introduces the last of the regular conjugations, in the active voice, the fourth conjugation (illustrated here by audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, to hear) and -īō verbs of the third (illustrated by capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, to take, seize). Like the first two conjugations, the fourth is characterized by a long stem vowel; as seen in the paradigm below, the -ī is retained through all the present system tenses (present, future, imperfect), although it is shortened before vowels as well as before final -t. Certain third conjugation verbs are formed in the same way in the present system, except that the -ī is everywhere short and e appears as the stem vowel in the singular imperative (cape) and the present active infinitive (capere). Agō is presented alongside these new paradigms for comparison and review (see Ch. 8).

**PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE**

1. ágō  
   audiō  
   cápiō  
   (I hear, take)

Sg. 2. ágis  
   audi-s  
   cápi-s  
   (you hear, take)

3. ágit  
   audi-t  
   cápi-t  
   (he, she, it hears, takes)

1. ágimus  
   audiimus  
   cápimus  
   (we hear, take)

Pl. 2. ágitis  
   audiitis  
   cápitis  
   (you hear, take)

3. águnt  
   audiunt  
   cápiunt  
   (they hear, take)
FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

1. ágam  áudi-am  cápi-am  (I shall hear, take)
Sg. 2. ágēs  áudi-ēs  cápi-ēs  (you will hear, take)
3. áget  áudi-et  cápi-et  (he, she, it will hear, take)
1. agēmus  audiēmus  capiēmus  (we shall hear, take)
Pl. 2. agētis  audiētis  capiētis  (you will hear, take)
3. ágent  audient  cāpient  (they will hear, take)

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

1. agēbam  audiēbam  capiēbam  (I was hearing, taking)
Sg. 2. agēbās  audiēbās  capiēbās  (you were hearing, taking)
3. agēbat  audiēbat  capiēbat  (he, she, it was hearing, taking)
1. agēbāmus  audiēbāmus  capiēbāmus  (we were hearing, taking)
Pl. 2. agēbātis  audiēbātis  capiēbātis  (you were hearing, taking)
3. agēbant  audiēbant  capiēbant  (they were hearing, taking)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

Sg. 2. áge  aŭdī  cápe  (hear, take)
Pl. 2. ágite  audī-te  cápi-te  (hear, take)

CONJUGATION OF Audiō

The -ēre distinguishes the infinitive of the fourth conjugation from the infinitives of the other conjugations (laud-āre, mon-ēre, ág-ere, aud-īre, cápere).

As in the case of the first two conjugations, the rule for the formation of the present indicative is to add the personal endings to the present stem (audī-). In the third person plural this rule would give us *audī-nt but the actual form is audī-unt, an ending reminiscent of āgunt.

For the future of audiō a good rule of thumb is this: shorten the ĩ of the present stem, audi-, and add the future endings of āgō: -am, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent. Once again, as in the third conjugation, -ē- is the characteristic vowel of the future.

The imperfect is formed with -iē-, instead of simply the stem vowel -ī-, before the -bā- tense sign, so that the forms are audiēbam, audiēbās, etc. (rather than *audībam, etc., as might be expected).

The imperatives, however, follow exactly the pattern of the first and second conjugations, i.e., the singular is the same as the present stem (audī) and the plural merely adds -te (audīte).
CONJUGATION OF Capiō

The infinitive capere is clearly an infinitive of the third conjugation, not of the fourth. The imperative forms also show that this is a verb of the third conjugation.

The present, future, and imperfect indicative of capiō follow the pattern of audīō, except that capiō, like agō, has a short -i- in cápis, cápimus, cápitis.

Note again very carefully the rule that the -i- appears in all present system active indicative forms for both fourth and third -i- verbs, and remember that two vowels, -iē-, appear before the -bā- in the imperfect.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, -ae, f., friendship (cp. amō, amīca, amīcus)
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice (cp. cupidō, Ch. 17)
hōra, -ae, f., hour, time
nātūra, -ae, f., nature (natural, preternatural, supernatural; cp. nāscor, Ch. 34)
senectūs, senectūtis, f., old age (cp. senex, Ch. 16)
timor, timūris, m., fear (timorous; cp. timeō, Ch. 15)
vēritās, vēritātis, f., truth (verify, veritable, verity; cp. vērus, vērō, Ch. 29)
vía, -ae, f., way, road, street (via, viaduct, deviate, devious, obvious, per­vious, impervious, previous, trivial, voyage, envoy)
voluptās, voluptātis, f., pleasure (voluptuary, voluptuous)
beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed (beatific, beatify, beatitude, Beatrice)
quōniam, conj., since, inasmuch as
cum, prep. + abl., with. As a prefix cum may appear as com-, con-, cor-, col-, co-, and means with, together, completely, or simply has an intensive force (complete, connect, corroborate, collaborate)
audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum, to hear, listen to (audible, audience, audit, audition, auditory; cp. auditor, Ch. 16)
cápiō, cápere, cápi, cáptum, to take, capture, seize, get. In compounds the -a- becomes -i-, -cipiō: ac-cipiō, ex-cipiō, in-cipiō, re-cipiō, etc. (capable, capacious, capsule, captious, captive, captor)
dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, to say, tell, speak; name, call (dictate, dictum, diction, dictionary, dight, ditto, contradict, indict, edict, verdict)
facciō, fācere, fēcī, fāctum, to make, do, accomplish. In compounds the -a- becomes -i-, -ficiō: con-ficiō, per-ficiō, etc. (facile, fact, faction, factotum, facsimile, faculty, fashion, feasible, feat)
fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugītūrīm, to flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun (fugitive, fugue, centrifugal, refuge, subterfuge)
véniō, venīre, vēnī, vēntum, *to come* (advent, adventure, avenue, convene, contravene, covenant, event, inconvenient, intervene, parvenu, prevent, provenience)
invéniō, inveniēre, -vēnī, -vēntum, *to come upon, find* (invent, inventory)
vivō, vivere, vīxi, victum, *to live* (convivial, revive, survive, vivacity, vivid, vivify, viviparous, vivisection, victual, vittle; cp. vita)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. Quid discipulae hodiē discere debent?
2. Frātrēs nihil cum ratiōne herī gerēbant.
3. Ille magnum virūtem labōris et studīō docēre saepe audet.
4. Hic dē senectūte scripēbat; ille, dē amōre; et alius, dē libertāte.
5. Ex libris ūniōs virī nātūram hārum insidiārum dēmōnstrābitur.
6. Istī sōli victōriam nimis amant; neuter dē pāce cōgitāt.
7. Ubi cīvitās ūlliōs virōs magnae sapientiae audīt?
8. Ex illīs terrīs in hunc locum cum amīcīs vestris venītē.
10. Cōpiæ vestrae utrum virum ibi numquam capitēnt.
11. Alter Graecus remedium huius morbi iñveniēt.
12. Carmina illīs scripīōris sunt plēna non sōlum vēritātis sed etiam virtūtis.
13. We shall then come to your land without any friends.
14. While he was living, nevertheless, we were able to have no peace.
15. The whole state now shuns and will always shun these vices.
16. He will, therefore, thank the queen and the whole people.

**SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE**

1. Cupiditātem pecūniae glōriaeque fugite. (Cicero.)
2. Ōfficium meum faciam. (*Terence.*)
3. Fāma tua et vita filiae tuae in periculum crās venient. (Terence.)
4. Vita nōn est vīvere sed vālere. (Martial.)
5. Semper magnō cum timōre incipiō dicere. (Cicero. — incipiō, -ere, *to begin.*)
6. Si mē dūcēs, Mūsa, corōnām magnā cum laude capiam. (Lucretius. — Mūsa, -ae, Muse — corōna, -ae, crown.)
7. Vive memor mortis; fugit hōrā. (Persius. — memor, adj. nom. sg. m. or f., mindful. — mors, mortis, f., death.)
8. Rapite, amīci, occāsiōnem dē hōrā. (Horace. — rapiō, -ere, *to snatch, seize.* — occāsiō, -onis, f., *opportunity.*)
9. Pauca cēnsentūm ad senectūtem. (*Cicero.*)
10. Sed fugit, interēa, fugit tempus. (Virgil. — interēa, adv., meanwhile. — The verb is repeated for emphasis.)
11. Fāta viam iñveniēnt. (*Virgil. — fātum, -ī, fate.*)
12. Bonum virum nātūra, nōn ōrdō, facit. (*Publilius Syrus.—ōrdō, -dinis, m., rank.)

13. Obsequium parit amīcōs; vēritās parit odium. (Cicero.—obsequium, -iū, compliance.—pariō, -ere, to produce.—odium, -ī, hate.)

THE INCOMPARABLE VALUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Nihil cum amīcītiā possum comparāre; dī hominibus nihil melius dant. Pecūniam alī mālunt; alīī, corpora sāna; alīīī, fāmam glōriamque; alīīī, voluptātēs—sed hī virī nimium errant, quoniam illa sunt incerta et ex fortūnā veniunt, nōn ex sapientiā. Amīcītiā enim ex sapientiā et amōre et mōribus bonīs et virtūte venit; sine virtūte amīcītiā nōn potest esse. Si nūllīs amīcōs habēs, habēs vītam tyrannī; si inveniēs amīcum vērum, vīta tua erit beāta.

(Cicero, De Amīcītiā, excerpts; see L.A. 6.—comparāre.—melius, better.—mālunt, prefer.—incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.)

ETYMOLOGY

Audiō is the ultimate ancestor of these surprising descendants: “obey” through Fr. obéir from Lat. obēdire (ob + audīre); “obedient” (ob + audīens); “oyez, oyez” from Fr. ouir, Lat. audīre.

5. incipient, inception. 6. museum, music.—corona, coronation, coro­nary, coroner, corolla, corollary. 7. memory, memoir, commemorate. 8. rapid, rapture, rapacious. 13. obsequious.—odium, odious. “Friendship”: comparable.—certainty.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvēte! Do you remember being introduced to masc. -or nouns formed from the fourth principal parts of verbs? (That was back in Ch. 8.) Well, there are lots of others related to the new verbs in this chapter: auditor, Eng. audiōr, listener, is one; can you find others? Look at the section on Etymological Aids in the App., p. 435–42 below, and you’ll learn a great deal more about word families, including another group of third decl. nouns, mostly fem., formed by adding the suffix -ōn (-ōnis, -ōnī, etc.) to the same fourth principal part. Such nouns generally indicate the performance or re­sult of an action, e.g., audiōtio, audiōtiones, f., listening, hearing, and many have Eng. derivatives in -ion (like “audition”). Another example from this chapter’s Vocab. is dictio, (the act of) speaking, public speaking, which gives us such Eng. derivatives as “diction” (the manner or style of one’s speaking or writing), “dictionary,” “benediction,” “contradiction,” etc. How many other Latin nouns and Eng. derivatives can you identify from the new verbs in this chapter? Happy hunting, but in the meantime tempus fugit, so I’ll have to say valēte!
Personal Pronouns Ego, Tū, and Is; Demonstratives Is and Īdem

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun is a word used in place of a noun (remember prō + nōmen) to designate a particular person, from the speaker's point of view: the first person pronoun indicates the speaker himself or herself (Lat. ego, nōs, ilīme, welus), the second person pronoun indicates the person(s) addressed by the speaker (tū/vōs, you), and the third person indicates the person(s) or thing(s) the speaker is talking about (is, ea, id, and their plurals, helīhim, shēlīher, it, they/lthem).

THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSON PRONOUNS Ego/Nōs, Tū/Vōs

While the first and second person pronouns are irregular in form, their declensions are quite similar to one another and are easily memorized; note that there are two different forms for the genitive plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person—Ego, I</th>
<th>2nd Person—Tū, You</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ōgo</td>
<td>(I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. méi</td>
<td>(of me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mébhi</td>
<td>(for me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mē</td>
<td>(me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mē</td>
<td>(by/with/from me)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE THIRD PERSON/DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN Is, Ea, Id

The declension of the pronoun is, ea, id is comparable to those of hic and ille (Ch. 9), i.e., the pattern is that of magnus, -a, -um (Ch. 4), with the exception of the forms underlined below; note that the base is e- in all but four forms (including the alternate nominative plural ën).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Single</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(he²)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G.</strong></td>
<td>ëía</td>
<td>(of him, his)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D.</strong></td>
<td>â</td>
<td>(to/for him)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A.</strong></td>
<td>â</td>
<td>(him)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A.</strong></td>
<td>â</td>
<td>(bylw.lfr. him)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td>ën, ën</td>
<td>(they, masc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G.</strong></td>
<td>ëórum</td>
<td>(of them, their)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D.</strong></td>
<td>ës</td>
<td>(to/for them)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A.</strong></td>
<td>ës</td>
<td>(them)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A.</strong></td>
<td>ës</td>
<td>(bylw.lfr. them)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USAGE**

Since these pronouns are employed as substitutes for nouns, they are in general used as their corresponding nouns would be used: as subjects, direct objects, indirect objects, objects of prepositions, and the like.

Ego tibi (vóbis) librós dabō, I shall give the books to you.
Ego ei (eis) librós dabō, I shall give the books to him or her (to them).
Tū mē (nōs) nōn capiēs, you will not capture me (us).

---

¹ You will find that a preposition is used in Latin with most ablatives when the noun or pronoun in the ablative indicates a person.
² Also this/that man, woman, thing.
³ Pronounced ei-yus (cp. huius, Ch. 9).
Eî id ad nôs mittent, they (masc.) will send it to us.
Vôs eôs (eâs, ea) nôn capiêtis, you will not capture them (them).
Eae ea ad tê mittent, they (fem.) will send them (those things) to you.

Notice, however, that the Romans used the nominatives of the pronouns (ego, tû, etc.) only when they wished to stress the subject. Commonly, therefore, the pronominal subject of a Latin verb is not indicated except by the ending.

Eîs pecûniam dabô, I shall give them money.
Ego eîs pecûniam dabô; quid tû dabis? I shall give them money; what will you give?

Another point of usage: when cum was employed with the ablative of the personal pronouns (as well as the relative and reflexive pronouns, to be studied later), it was generally suffixed to the pronoun, rather than preceding it as a separate preposition: eôs nôbîscum ibi inveniês, you will find them there with us.

Notice also that the genitives of ego and tû (namely meî, nostrum, nostî; tuî, vestrum, vestî) were not used to indicate possession. To convey this idea, the Romans preferred the possessive pronominal adjectives, which you have already learned:

meus, -a, -um, my
tuus, -a, -um, your
noster, -tra, -trum, our
vester, -tra, -trum, your

English usage is comparable: just as Latin says liber meus, not liber meî, so English says my book, not the book of me.

The genitives of is, ea, id, on the other hand, were quite commonly used to indicate possession. Hence, while eîus can sometimes be translated of him/of her/of it, it is very often best translated his/her/its; likewise eôrum/eârum/eôrum can be rendered of them, but its common possessive usage should be translated their. Study the possessives in the following examples, in which mittam governs all the nouns.

Mittam (I shall send)

pecûniam meam (my money).
pecûniam nostram (our money).
pecûniam tuam (your money).
amîcûs meôs (my friends).
amîcûs nostrûs (our friends).
amîcûs tuûs (your friends).

4Meî and tuî were used as objective genitives (e.g., timôr tuî, fear of you—see S.S., p. 442–43 below) and partitive genitives (or "genitives of the whole," e.g., pars meî, part of me—see Ch. 15), nostî and vestî only as objective gens., and nostrum and vestrum only as partitive gens.
pecūniam vestram (your money).
pecūniam eius (his, her money).
pecūniam eōrum (their money).
pecūniam eārum (their money).

amīcōs vestrōs (your friends).
amīcōs eius (his, her friends).
amīcōs eōrum (their friends).
amīcōs eārum (their friends).

The possessive pronominal adjectives of the first and the second persons naturally agree with their noun in gender, number, and case, as all adjectives agree with their nouns. The possessive genitives eius, eōrum, and eārum, being genitive pronouns, remain unchanged regardless of the gender, number, and case of the noun on which they depend.

A last important point regarding possessives is the fact that Latin frequently omits them, except for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity. English, on the other hand, employs possessives regularly, and so you will often need to supply them in translating from Latin (just as you do the articles “a,” “an,” and “the”), in order to produce an idiomatic translation; e.g., patriam amāmus, we love our country.

Is, Ea, Id AS DEMONSTRATIVE

While commonly serving as Latin’s third person pronoun, is was also used as a demonstrative, somewhat weaker in force than hic or ille and translatable as either this/these or that/those. In general you should translate the word in this way when you find it immediately preceding and modifying a noun (in the same number, gender, and case); contrast the following:

Is est bonus, he is good.
Is amīcus est vir bonus, this friend is a good man.

Videsne eam, do you see her?
Videsne eam puellam, do you see that girl?

DEMONSTRATIVE Īdem, Eadem, Idem, the Same

The very common demonstrative īdem, eadem, idem, the same (man, woman, thing), is formed simply by adding -dem directly to the forms of is, ea, id, e.g., gen. eiusdem, dat. ēdem, etc.; besides the singular nominatives īdem (masc., for *īsīdem) and idem (neut., rather than *īddem), the only forms not following this pattern exactly are those shown below, where final -m changes to -n- before the -dem suffix (for the full declension of īdem, see the Summary of Forms, p. 449 below).
### Personal Pronouns Ego, Tū, and Is; Demonstratives Is and Idem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eúndem⁵</td>
<td>eándem</td>
<td>ídem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eórúndem³</td>
<td>eárúndem</td>
<td>eórúndem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like other demonstratives, idem may function as an adjective or a pronoun:

cósden mittō, *I am sending the same men*; dē cādem ratiōne cōgitābāmus, *we were thinking about the same plan.*

### VOCABULARY

cáput, cápitis, n., *head; leader; beginning; life; heading; chapter* (cape = headland, capital, capitol, capitate, captain, chief, chieftain, chief, cattle, chattels, cadet, cad, achieve, decapitate, recapitulate, precipice, occiput, sinciput, karchief)
cónsul, cónsulis, m., *consul* (consular, consulate, consulship; cp. cōnsiliim)
némō, nūllus,⁶ nēminī, nēminem, nūllō or nūlā, m. or f., *no one, nobody*  
égo, méi, *I* (ego, egoism, egotism, egotistical)  
tū, túi, *you*  
is, éa, id, *this, that; he, she, it* (i.e. = id est, *that is*)  
īdem, ēadem, ídem, *the same* (id., identical, identity, identify)  
amīcus, -a, -um, *friendly* (amicable, amiable, amiably—cp. amō and the nouns amīcus, amīca, and amīcitia).  
cārus, -a, -um, *dear* (caress, charity, charitable, cherish)  
quod, conj., *because*  
néque, nec, conj. *and not, nor; néque . . . néque or nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor*  
aútem, postpositive conj., *however; moreover*  
béne, adv. of bonus, *well, satisfactorily, quite* (benediction, benefit, benefactor, beneficent, benevolent)  
étiam, adv., *even, also*  
intéllegō, intellégere, intelléxī, intelléctum, *to understand* (intelligent, intellegetisia, intelligible, intellect, intellectual; cp. legō, Ch. 18)  
mittō, mittere, mísī, mīssum, *to send, let go* (admit, commit, emit, omit, permit, promise, remit, submit, transmit, compromise, demise)  
sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *to feel, perceive, think, experience* (assent, consent, dissent, presentiment, resent, sentimental, scent)

---

⁵ Try pronouncing *eúndem* or *eórúndem* rapidly and you will probably end up changing the -m- to -n- before -d-, just as the Romans did.

⁶ The genitive and ablative forms of nūllus are usually found in place of nēminis and nēmine.
PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Eum ad eam cum aliō agricolā herī mittēbant.
2. Tū autem filiam beātam eius nunc amās.
3. Propter amicitiam, ego hic faciō. Quid tū faciēs, mī amīce?
4. Vōsne eāsdem litterās ad eum mittēre crās audēbitis?
5. Dūc mē ad eius discipulam (ad eam discipulam), amābō tē.
6. Post labōrem eius grātiās magnās eī agēmus.
7. Tūne vēritātem in cō librō dēmōnstrās?
8. Audē, igitur, esse semper īdem.
9. Venitne nātūra mōrum nostrōrum ex nōbīs sōlīs?
10. Dum ratiō nōs dūcet, valēbimus et multa bene gerēmus.
11. Illum timōrem in hōc virō ēnō invenīmus.
12. Sine labōre autem nūlla pāx in civitātem eōrum veniet.
13. Studium nōn sōlum pecūniae sed etiam voluptātīs homīnēs nimium trahit; aliī eās cupidītātēs vincere possunt, aliī nōn possunt.
14. His līfē was always dear to the whole people.
15. You will often find them and their friends with me in this place.
16. We, however, shall now capture their forces on this road.
17. Since I was saying the same things to him about you and his other sisters, your brother was not listening.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Virtūs tua mē amīcum tibi facit. (Horace.)
2. Id sōlum est cārum mihi. (Terence.—cārus and other adjectives indicating relationship or attitude often take the dat., translated to or for; see Ch. 35).
3. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. (Pliny.—bene est, idiom, it is well.)
4. Bene est mihi quod tibi bene est. (Pliny.)
5. “Valē.” “Et tū bene valē.” (Terence.)
6. Quid hī dē tē nunc sentiunt? (Cicero.)
7. Omnēs idem sentiunt. (*Cicero.—omnia, all men, nom. pl.)
8. Videō nēminem ex eīs hodiē esse amīcum tibi. (Cicero.—The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the acc., hence nēminem; add this to your list of acc. case uses, and see Ch. 25.)
9. Hominēs vidēre caput Cicerōnis in Rōstrīs poterant. (Livy.—Antony proscribed Cicero and had the great orator’s head cut off and displayed on the Rostra!—Rōstra, -ōrum; see Etymology below.)
10. Nōn omnēs eadem amant aut eāsdem cupidītātēs studiaque habent. (Horace.)
11. Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē (*Martial.)
12. Vērus amīcus est alter īdem. (Cicero.—Explain how alter īdem can mean “a second self.”)
CICERO DENOUNCES CATILINE IN THE SENATE


(Cicero, In Catilinam 1.1.ff. Lucius Sergius Catilina, “Catiline,” masterminded a conspiracy against the Roman government during Cicero’s consulship; this excerpt is adapted from the first oration Cicero delivered against him, before the senate, in 63 B.C. See L.I. 5–6 and the reading passage in Ch. 14 below.—senâtus, senate.—désignâre.—mors, mortis, f., death.—apertë, adv., openly.)

ETYMOLOGY

Cûrus was sometimes used in the sense of expensive just as Eng. “dear” and Fr. cher can be used.
In the sentences

9. **Röstra**, the ramming beaks of captured ships affixed to the speakers' platform in the Roman Forum to attest a victory won in 338 B.C. at Antium (Anzio). These beaks gave their name to the platform. Though the pl. *rostra* is still the regular Eng. form, we sometimes use the sg. *rostrum*. “Cicero Denounces Catiline”: senator, senatorial; senile.—designate, designation.—mortal, mortality.—aperture; cp. aperiē, *to open*.

Some Romance derivatives from the Lat. personal pronouns follow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ego, tū</td>
<td>io, tu</td>
<td>yo, tu</td>
<td>je, tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihi, tibi</td>
<td>mi, ti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē, tē</td>
<td>me, te</td>
<td>me, te</td>
<td>me, moi, te, toi&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs, vōs (nom.)</td>
<td>mei, tei</td>
<td>nosotros, vosotros&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>nous, vous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs, vōs (acc.)</td>
<td>mei, tei</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!**

Salvēte, discipuli et discipulae cārae! Notice the ending on that adj. cārae?—remember that when adj.s modify two nouns of different gender, the tendency is to have it agree with the one closer to it in the sentence. By the way, now you know the source of Freud’s *ego* and *id*, and the meaning of the salutation pāx vōbīscum/pāx tēcum. And, you Caesar fans, can you believe that all three of the following have the same translation (well . . . sort of!): Caesar, Caesar! Caesar eam videt. Caesar, cape eam! According to tradition, Caesar’s last words to the assassin Brutus were *et tū, Brūte*? (To which Brutus hungrily replied, according to the late great Brother Dave Gardner, “Nah, I ain’t even et one yet!”)

Did you notice in the Vocab. the origin of the abbreviations i.e. and *id*? There are dozens of Latin abbreviations in current usage; for some others, besides those at the end of Ch. 6, see the list below, p. 492–93.

And remember those -ōr/-ō nouns? From the verbs in this Vocab. come *missor, missōris, m.*, *a shooter* (of “missiles”—lit., *a sender*) and *missiō, missiōnis, f.*, lit. *a sending forth* and used in classical Lat. for *release from captivity, liberation* (itself from *liberāre, to free*), *discharge* (from military service), *dismissal*, and, of course, *mission*; from compounds of *mittō* come a host of Latin nouns with further English derivatives such as “admission,” “commission,” “emission,” “permission,” etc. Can you think of others, both the Lat. nouns and the Eng. derivatives, from *mittō*? And how about sentiō?

Well, *tempus fugit*, so pāx vōbīscum et valēte!

<sup>7</sup> Fr. moi, toi came from accented Lat. mē, tē, and Fr. me, te came from unaccented Lat. mē, tē.

<sup>8</sup>-otros from alterōs.
You are already familiar with the formation and translation of the present, future, and imperfect tenses, the three tenses that constitute the present system, so-called because they are all formed on the present stem and all look at time from the absolute perspective of the present. In Latin, as in English, there are three other tenses, the perfect (sometimes called the "present perfect"), the future perfect, and the pluperfect (or "past perfect"), which constitute the "perfect system," so-called because they are formed on a perfect (active or passive) stem and look at time from a somewhat different perspective.

Learning the forms for these three tenses in the active voice (the perfect passive system is taken up in Ch. 19) is a relatively easy matter, since verbs of all conjugations follow the same simple rule: perfect active stem + endings.

**PRINCIPAL PARTS**

To ascertain the perfect active stem of a Latin verb you must know the principal parts of the verb, just as you must similarly know the principal parts of an English verb if you want to use English correctly. As you have

1 In fact the principal parts of an English verb to some extent parallel those of a Latin verb:

(1) Present Tense: praise lead take see sing be/am

(2) Past Tense: praised led took saw sang was

(3) Past Participle: praised led taken seen sung been

Note that, since the pres. indic. and the pres. inf. are normally identical in English, only one form need be given. Note also that the past participle is really a past passive participle like the Latin laudatum.
seen from your vocabulary study, most regular Latin verbs have four principal parts, as illustrated by *laudō* in the following paradigm:

1. Present Active Indicative: *laudō*, *I praise*
2. Present Active Infinitive: *laudāre*, *to praise*
3. Perfect Active Indicative: *laudāvī*, *I praised, have praised*
4. Perfect Passive Participle: *laudātum*, *praised, having been praised*

The principal parts of the verbs which have appeared in the paradigms are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laŭdō</td>
<td>laudāre</td>
<td>laudāvī, <em>I praised</em></td>
<td>laudātum, <em>having been praised</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>móneō</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>mónuī, <em>I advised</em></td>
<td>mónitum, <em>having been advised</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ágō</td>
<td>āgere</td>
<td>égī, <em>I led</em></td>
<td>āctum, <em>having been led</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cápiō</td>
<td>cáperere</td>
<td>cépī, <em>I took</em></td>
<td>cáptum, <em>having been taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atūdīō</td>
<td>audīre</td>
<td>audīvī, <em>I heard</em></td>
<td>auditum, <em>having been heard</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>ēsse</td>
<td>fūī, <em>I was</em></td>
<td>futūrum, <em>about to be</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>póssum</td>
<td>pósse</td>
<td>pótuī, <em>I was able</em></td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first two principal parts, necessary for conjugating a verb in the present system, have been dealt with extensively already. As the first person singular of the perfect active indicative, which always ends in *-i*, a verb’s third principal part is analogous to its first (which is, of course, the first person singular of the present active indicative and regularly ends in *-ō*). The fourth principal part, while given in its neuter form in this book, is for regular transitive verbs the perfect passive participle, a fully declinable verbal adjective of the *-us/-a/-um* variety (*laudātus, -a, -um*, etc.—some uses of participles will be explained in Chs. 19 and 23–24). Verbs lacking a perfect passive participle substitute the accusative supine (see Ch. 38), and some verbs like *sum* and other intransitives substitute a future active participle (*e.g.*, *futūrum* = *futūrus, -a, -um*), while others like *possus* have no fourth principal part at all.

THE PERFECT ACTIVE STEM

While the first and second principal parts for regular verbs follow a very consistent pattern, there are no simple rules to cover the many variations in the third and fourth principal parts (though, as we have seen, most first conjugation verbs, marked by a [I] in the vocabularies, do follow the *-āō* -ārel-ēvil-ētūm pattern of *laudō*, and many second and fourth conjugation verbs follow the patterns of *moneō* and *audiō*); hence, as pointed out earlier, it is crucial to memorize all the principal parts in the vocabulary entry for each verb by both saying *them aloud* and writing *them out*. Your knowledge of English will help you in this memorization, since there are many derivatives from both the present stem and the perfect participial stem, as you have already discovered (*e.g.*, “docile” and “doctor,” “agent” and “action,” etc.).
Once you know a verb's principal parts, finding the perfect active stem is easy: simply drop the final -i which characterizes the third principal part of every verb. The stems for the sample verbs in the preceding list are: laudāv-, monu-, ēg-, cēp-, audūv-, fu-, and potu-. The following paradigms show you the endings for the three perfect system tenses.

### Perfect Active Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I praised, have praised</th>
<th>I led, have led</th>
<th>I was, have been</th>
<th>Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. laudāv-ī</td>
<td>ēg-ī</td>
<td>fū-ī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. 2. laudāv-īstī</td>
<td>ēg-īstī</td>
<td>fū-īstī</td>
<td>-īstī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. laudāv-it</td>
<td>ēg-it</td>
<td>fū-it</td>
<td>-it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. laudāvīmus</td>
<td>ēgīmus</td>
<td>fūimus</td>
<td>-imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 2. laudāvisīs</td>
<td>ēgīstīs</td>
<td>fūīstīs</td>
<td>-īstīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. laudāvērunt</td>
<td>ēgērunt</td>
<td>fūērunt</td>
<td>-ērunt, -ēre²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect Active Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had praised</th>
<th>Future Perfect Active Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had been</td>
<td>I shall have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I shall have been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1. laudāv-eraam     | fū-eraam                       | laudāv-erō | fū-erō |
| Sg. 2. laudāv-eras  | fū-eras                        | laudāv-erās | fū-erās |
| 3. laudāv-erat     | fū-erat                        | laudāv-erat | fū-erat |
| 1. laudāverāmus     | fuerāmus                       | laudāverāmus | fuērāmus |
| Pl. 2. laudāverātis | fuerātis                       | laudāverātis | fuērātis |
| 3. laudāverant     | fuerant                        | laudāverant | fuērant |

The perfect endings (-ī, -īstī, -it, etc.) are quite new and must be memorized. The pluperfect is in effect the perfect stem + eram, the imperfect of sum. The future perfect is in effect the perfect stem + erō, the future of sum, except that the third person plural is -erint, not -erunt.

### USAGE, TRANSLATION, AND DISTINCTION FROM THE IMPERFECT

The perfect tense, like the imperfect, is sometimes translated as a simple past tense, hence both puer amīcum monuit and puer amīcum monēbat may in certain contexts be translated the boy warned his friend. But whereas the imperfect tense is like a video of the past, the perfect tense (from perficiō, perficere, perfecē, perfectum, to finish, complete) is rather like a snapshot: with the imperfect the action is viewed as going on, repeated, or habitual, so a more exact translation of puer amīcum monēbat, depending upon the

²The alternate ending -ēre (laudāvēre, ēgēre, fuēre), while fairly common, especially in Lat. poetry, appears only once or twice in this book.
context, might be the boy was warning/kept warning/used to warn his friend. Conversely, the more static perfect tense looks back at an action as a single, completed event (he warned his friend once), or as an event that, although completed, has consequences for the present; in this latter case, you should regularly translate using the auxiliary “has/ have” (he has warned his friend, and so his friend is now prepared).

The pluperfect (from plus quam perfectum, more than complete, i.e., time “prior to the perfect”) and the future perfect are employed generally as they are in English and, like the perfect tense, generally look at the consequences of completed actions. Consider these English sentences, illustrating the pluperfect, perfect, and future perfect, respectively, and note the use of the English auxiliary verbs “had,” “has,” and “will have” (the past, present, and future tenses of the verb “to have”): “he had studied the material and so he knew it well”; “he has studied the material and so he knows it well”; “he will have studied the material and so he will know it well.” You can see from these examples how the three perfect system tenses parallel the three tenses of the present system; in the latter we simply look at events of the past, present, or future, while in the former we look at events of the past, present, or future and consider the impact of previously completed actions on those events.

**VOCABULARY**

adulēscēns, adulēscēntis, m. and f., young man or woman (adolescent, adolescence, adult; cp. adulēscēntia)

ānnus, -ī, m., year (annals, anniversary, annuity, annual, biennial, centennial, millennium, superannuated)

Ásia, -ae, f., Asia, commonly referring to Asia Minor

Caesār, Caesāris, m., Caesar (Caesarian, Caesarism, kaiser, czar, tsar)

māter, mātris, f., mother (maternal, maternity, matriarchy, matrimony, matricide, matriculate, matrilineal, matrix, matron)

mēdicus, -ī, m., and mēdica, -ae, f., doctor, physician (medic, medical, medicate, medicine, medicinal)

pāter, pātris, m., father (paternal, paternity, patrician, patrimony, patronage, patronize, patter, padre, père; cp. patria)

pātiēntia, -ae, f., suffering; patience, endurance (patient, impatient; cp. patiō; Ch. 34)

princīpium, -īi, n., beginning (principal, principle; cp. princeps, Ch. 28)

acērbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter, grievous (acerbity, exacerbate)

prō, prep. + abl., in front of, before, on behalf of; for the sake of, in return for, instead of; for, as; also as prefix (pros and cons, pro- as a prefix)

dīū, adv., long, for a long time

nūper, adv., recently

āmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, to lose, let go
cădō, cădere, cecidi, căsūrum, *to fall* (cadence, case, casual, cascade, chance, accident, incident, decadence, decay, deciduous)
crēō (1), *to create* (creation, creativity, creature, procreate)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. Vŏs nŏbīs dē volupṭātibus adūlēscēntiae tum scrīpsistis.
2. Ratiōnēs alterūs filiāe herī nōn fuērunτ eaedem.
3. Nēmō in hanc viam ex utrā portā fūgerat.
4. Illī autem ad nōs cum medicā eius nūper vēnērunt.
5. Illī adulēscēntēs ad nōs propter amīcitiam saepe vēniēbant.
7. Post paucās hōrās Caesar Asiam cēpit.
8. Illā fēmina bēańska sōla magnam cupidītātem pācis sēnsit.
9. Potuitīsne bonam vītam sine ūllā libertātē agere?
10. Vēritās igitur fuit tōtī populō căra.
11. Neuter medicus nōmen patris audīverat.
12. That friendly queen did not remain there a long time.
13. Our mothers had not understood the nature of that place.
14. However, we had found no fault in the head of our country.
15. They kept sending her to him with me.

**SENTENTIÆ ANTIQUÆ**

1. *In prīncipiō Deus creavit caelum et terram; et Deus creavit hominem.* (Genesis.)
2. *In triumphō Caesar praetulit hunc titulum: ‘Vĕnī, vídi, vícī’* (Suetonius.—*triumphus, -ī, triumphal procession, here celebrating his quick victory at Zela in Asia Minor in 47 B.C.—*praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -tum, *to display.*—*titulus, -ī, placard.*
3. *Vīxīt, dum vīxīt, bene.* (*Terence.*
4. *Adulēscēns vult diū vīvere; senex diū vīxit.* (Cicero.—*vult, irreg., wishes.*—*senex, senis, m., old man.*
5. *Nōn ille diū vīxīt, sed diū fuit.* (*Seneca.*
6. *Hui, dīxistī pulchre!* (*Terence.—*hui, interj., comparable to Eng. “whee!”—*pulchre, adv. from pulcher; advs. were commonly formed from adj.s. in this way. See Chs. 26–27, and cp., e.g., *vĕre from vĕrus, liberē from liber, and the irregular bene from bonus.*
7. *Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit.* (*Cicero.—*Sophoclēs, -clēs, the famous Athenian playwright.—*summus, -a, -um, extreme.—*tragoedia, -ae, tragedy.*
8. *Illī nōn sōlum pecūniam sed etiam vītam prō patriā prōfūdērunt.* (Cicero.—*prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, to pour forth.*
9. *Rēgēs Rōmam ā prīncipiō habuērunt; libertātem Lūcius Brūtus Rōmānīs dedit.* (Tacitus.—ā + abl., *from.*)
10. Sub Caesar autem libertatem perdidimus. (Laberius.—perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, to destroy, lose.)

11. Quando libertas ceciderit, nemo liber decere audēbit. (Publius Syrus.)

**PLINY WRITES TO MARCELLINUS ABOUT THE DEATH OF FUNDANUS’ DAUGHTER**


(Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16; see L.1. 40.—XIII annōs, for 13 years, acc. of duration of time, Ch. 37. Minicius Fundanus was a consul in a.d. 107; his daughter’s funerary urn and the following epitaph were found in the family’s tomb outside of
Rome: D[īs] M[ānibus] Miniciae Marcellae Fundānī fīliae; vīxit a[nnōs] XII mēnsēs XI dīēs VII.—The bracketed text was abbreviated in the original inscription.—The dī mānēs were the spirits of the dead, who protected the deceased.—mēnsēs, months.—dīēs, days.)

DIAULUS STILL BURES HIS CLIENTS

Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus.
Quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.

(*Martial 1.47; meter: elegiac couplet.—vespīlō, -lōnis, m., undertaker.—Diaul­lus’ name is delayed for suspense.—quod, what.—et = etiam.)

ETYMOLOGY

Further examples of the help of English words in learning principal parts of Latin verbs are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>provide (vidēre)</td>
<td>provision (vīsum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maneō</td>
<td>permanent (manēre)</td>
<td>mansion (mānsum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīvō</td>
<td>revive (vīvere)</td>
<td>victuals (vīctum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentiō</td>
<td>sentiment (sentīre)</td>
<td>sense (sēnsum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veniō</td>
<td>intervene (venīre)</td>
<td>intervention (ventum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>facile (facere)</td>
<td>fact (factum)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The connection between Latin pater and patria (father-land) is obvious. However, although English “patriarch,” “patriot,” and “patronymic” have in them a stem, patr-, which is meaningful to one who knows the Latin words, nevertheless these English words are actually derived from Greek, in which the stem patr- is cognate with the same stem in Latin; cp. Greek patēr, father; pātra or patris, fatherland, patria, lineage.

In the readings

2. prefer, prelate.—title, titular. 8. confound, confuse, effuse, effusive, fuse, fusion, refund, refuse, transfusion. 10. perdition.

LATīNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulae discipulīque cārī! As we saw in S. A. 2 above, Caesar is said to have proclaimed vēni, vīdi, vīci in propagandizing his victory at Zela—a good example of the perfect tense, a “snapshot” of the action whose rapid conclusion the general wanted to emphasize. There are now some 20th-cen. variants on this boast: from the mall-masters, VENI, VIDI, VISA, “I came, I saw, I bought everything in sight!” and from the vegetarians, VENI, VIDI, VEGI, “I came, I saw, I had a salad.” Are you groan­ing?!!—but remember, patientia est virtūs, and there may yet be worse to come: meantime, rīdēte (from rīdēre, to smile) et valēte!
Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

Reflexive pronouns differ from other pronouns in that they are used ordinarily only in the predicate and refer back to the subject. “Reflexive,” which derives from re-flexus, -a, -um (reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, to bend back) means “bent back,” and so reflexive pronouns “bend back” to the subject, or, to put it another way, they “reflect” or refer to the subject. English examples are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reflexive Pronouns</th>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I praised <em>myself</em>.</td>
<td>You praised <em>me</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero praised <em>himself</em>.</td>
<td>Cicero praised <em>him</em> (Caesar).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DECLENSION OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

Since reflexive pronouns refer to the subject, they cannot serve as subjects of finite verbs and they have no nominative case. Otherwise, the declension of the reflexives of the first and the second persons is the same as that of the corresponding personal pronouns.

1 “Finite” verb forms are those which are limited (finitus, -a, -um, having been limited, bounded) by person and number; reflexives can serve as the subject of an infinitive, however, as you will see in Ch. 25.
The reflexive pronoun of the third person, however, has its own peculiar forms; these are easily recognizable because, as seen from the following chart, they are identical to the singular of tū except that the nominative is lacking and the forms begin with s- rather than t-. Note also that the singular and plural are identical, or, to put it another way, singular and plural were not distinguished and did not need to be, since reflexives in fact "reflect" the number (as well as the gender) of the subject; e.g., sē is easily understood to mean herself in the sentence fēmina dē sē cōgitābat (the woman was thinking about herself) and themselves in the sentence virī dē sē cōgitābant (the men were thinking about themselves).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2nd Pers.</th>
<th>3rd Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēī (of myself)</td>
<td>tūī</td>
<td>sūī (of himself, herself, itself)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīhi (to/for myself)</td>
<td>tībi</td>
<td>sībi (to/for himself, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē (myself)</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>sē (himself, herself, itself)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē (by/w./fr. myself)²</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>sē (by/w./fr. himself, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē (by/w./fr. ourselves)²</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>sē (by/w./fr. themselves)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēī (of ourselves)</td>
<td>vēstrī</td>
<td>sūī (of ourselves)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōbīs (to/for ourselves)</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>sībi (to/for ourselves)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs (ourselves)</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>sē (ourselves)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōbīs (by/w./fr. ourselves)²</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>sē (by/w./fr. themselves)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARALLEL EXAMPLES OF REFLEXIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF 1ST AND 2ND PERSONS.³**

1. Tū laudāvisti tē, *you praised yourself.*
2. Cicero laudāvit tē, *Cicero praised you.*
3. Nōs laudāvimus nōs, *we praised ourselves.*
5. Ego scripsī litterās mihi, *I wrote a letter to myself.*
6. Cicero scripsit litterās mihi, *Cicero wrote a letter to me.*

**PARALLEL EXAMPLES OF REFLEXIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF 3RD PERSON**

2. Cicero laudāvit eum, *Cicero praised him* (e.g., Caesar).

² See Ch. 11, n. 1.
³ The word order in these examples is modified for the sake of clarity.
3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt sē, the Romans praised themselves.
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt eōs, the Romans praised them (e.g., the Greeks).

5. Puella servāvit sē, the girl saved herself.
6. Puella servāvit eam, the girl saved her (i.e., another girl).

**REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVES**

The reflexive possessives of the first and the second persons are identical with the regular possessives already familiar to you: meus, tuus, noster, vester (i.e., my, my own; your, your own; etc.). They will never cause you any difficulty.

The reflexive possessive of the third person, however, is the adjective suus, sua, suum, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own). While the forms themselves are easily declined (on the same pattern as tuus, -a, -um, a regular first/second declension adjective), a few important points must be kept in mind regarding the word's usage and translation. First, like any adjective, suus, -a, -um, must agree with the noun it modifies in number, gender, and case. Its English translation, however, like that of the reflexive pronoun, must naturally reflect the gender and number of the subject to which it refers (e.g., vir filium suum laudat, the man praises his [own] son, vs. fēmina filium suum laudat, the woman praises her [own] son, and virī patriam suam laudant, the men praise their [own] country). Finally, the reflexive possessive adjective suus, -a, -um must be carefully distinguished from the nonreflexive possessive genitives cius, corum, carum (his/hers; theirs; see Ch. II), which do not refer to the subject.

1. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum suum, Cicero praised his (own) friend.
2. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum eius, Cicero praised his (Caesar's) friend.
3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum suum, the Romans praised their (own) friend.
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum eōrum, the Romans praised their (the Greeks') friend.
5. Fēmina scripsit litterās amīcis suīs, the woman wrote a letter to her (own) friends.
6. Fēmina scripsit litterās amīcis eius, the woman wrote a letter to his (or her, i.e., someone else's) friends.
7. Fēmina scripsit litterās amīcis eōrum, the woman wrote a letter to their (some other persons') friends.
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum

The intensive ipse, ipsa, ipsum follows the peculiar declensional pattern of the demonstratives in the genitive and the dative singular (i.e., gen. ipsius, ipsius, ipsius, dat. ipsī, ipsī, ipsī); otherwise, it is like magnus, -a, -um. The Romans used the intensive pronoun to emphasize a noun or pronoun of any person in either the subject or the predicate of a sentence; consequently its possible translations include myself/ourselves (1st pers.), yourself/yourselves (2nd pers.), and himself/herself/itself/themselves (3rd pers.), as well as the very and the actual, as illustrated in the following examples:

Cicerō ipse laudāvit mē, Cicero himself praised me.
Cicerō laudāvit mē ipsum, Cicero praised me myself (i.e., actually praised me)
Ipse laudāvī eius amīcum, I myself praised his friend.
Fīlia scripsit litterās vōbīs ipsīs, your daughter wrote a letter to you yourselves.
Cicerō vīdit Caesaris litterās ipsās, Cicero saw Caesar's letter itself (i.e., Caesar's actual letter).

VOCABULARY

divitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches, wealth (cp. dives, Ch. 32)
fāctum, -ī, n., deed, act, achievement (fact, faction, feat; cp. faciō)
signum, -ī, n., sign, signal, indication; seal (assign, consign, countersign, design, ensign, insignia, resign, seal, signet)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron., myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, etc., the very, the actual (ipso facto, solipsistic)
quīisque, quīduque (gen. cuīisque; dat. cuīque—cp. quis, Ch. 19), indefinite pron., each one, each person, each thing
sūi, reflexive pron. of 3rd pers., himself, herself, itself, themselves (suicide, sui generis, per se)
dōctus, -a, -um, taught, learned, skilled (doctor, doctorate, doctrine, indoctrinate; cp. doceō)
fortūnātus, -a, -um, lucky, fortunate, happy (unfortunate; cp. fortūna)
sūus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers., his own, her own, its own, their own
nam, conj., for
ánte, prep. + acc., before (in place or time), in front of; adv., before, previously; not to be confused with Greek anti, against (antebellum, antedate, ante-room, anterior, antediluvian, A.M. = ante meridiem, advance, advantage)

4 See the Summary of Forms, p. 448, for the full declension.
per, prep. + acc., through; with reflexive pron., by; per- (assimilated to pel- before forms beginning with l-), as a prefix, through, through and through = thoroughly, completely, very (perchance, perforce, perhaps, perceive, perfect, perspire, percolate, percussion, perchloride, pel-lucid)

ôlim, adv., at that time, once, formerly; in the future

álo, álere, álui, altum, to nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish (al-ible, aliment, alimentary, alimony, coalesce, adolescence)

dilígō, diligere, diléxi, diléctum, to esteem, love (diligent, diligence; cp. legō, Ch. 18)

iúngō, iúngere, iúnxī, iúctum, to join (join, joint, junction, juncture, adjunct, conjunction, enjoin, injunction, subjunctive)

stō, stāre, stētī, stātum, to stand, stand still or firm (stable, state, station, statue, stature, statute, establish, instant, instate, reinstate, stay; cp. praestō, Ch. 28)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Cōnsulēs sē nec tēcum nec cum illīs aliīs iungēbant.
2. Tōtus populus Rōmānus libertātem āmīsit.
3. Rēx malus enim mē ipsum capere numquam potuit.
4. Ad patrem mātre mque cōrum per illum locum tūm fūgistis.
5. Dī animōs creant et eōs in corpora homīnem cēa cēlō mittunt.
6. Ipsī per sē eum in Asiā nūper vīcērunt.
7. In hāc viā Cicerō medicum eīs vīdit, nōn suum.
8. Nēmō filīam acerbam cōnsulīs ipsīs diū diligere potuit.
10. Fēmina ante illum hōram litterās suās mīserat.
11. Ille bonam senectūtem habuit, nam bene vīxerat.
12. Māter filīum bene intellēxit, et adulēscēns eī prō patientiā grātiās ēgīt.
13. However; those young men came to Caesar himself yesterday.
14. Cicero, therefore, will never join his (Caesar’s) name with his own.
15. Cicero always esteemed himself and even you esteem yourself.
16. Cicero used to praise his own books and I now praise my own books.
17. The consul Cicero himself had never seen his (Caesar’s) book.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Ipse ad eōs contendēbat equitēseque ante sē mīsit. (Caesar.—contendō, -ere, to hasten.—eques, equitis, m., horseman.)
2. Ipsi nihil per sē sine eō facere potuērunt. (Cicero.)
3. Ipse signum suum et litterās suās ā principiō recognōvit. (Cicero.—recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvi, -cognitum, to recognize.)
4. Quisque ipse sē diligit, quod quisque per sē sibi cārus est. (Cicero.)
5. Ex vitiō alterius sapiēns emendat suum. (*Publilius Syrus.—sapiēns, -entis, m., wise man, philosopher.—ēmundāre, to correct.)
6. Recēde in tē ipsum. (*Seneca.—recēdō, -ere, to withdraw.)
7. Animus sē ipse alit. (*Seneca.)
8. Homō doctus in sē semper divitiās habet. (Phaedrus.)

**ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND THE POWER OF LITERATURE**

Magnus ille Alexander multōs scriptōres factōrum suōrum sēcum semper habēbat. Is enim ante tumulum Achillīs ōlim stetit et dixit haec verba: “Fuisti fortūnātus, ō adulēscēns, quod Homērum laudātōrem virtūtis tuae invēnīstī.” Et vērē! Nam, sine Ἰλίας ἔλλη, ἰδem tumulus et corpus eius et nōmen obrure potuit. Nihil corpus humānūm cōnservāre potest; sed litterae magnae nōmen virī magnī saepe cōnservāre possunt.

(Cicero, Prō Archiā 24. —ille, usually when placed after the word it modifies, can mean that famous.—tumulus, -ī, tomb, grave.—Achillēs, -ēs, m.—Homērus, -ī.—laudātor, -tōris, one who praises [see Ch. 8, Latina Est Gaudium], here chronicler.—vērē, adv. of vērūs.—Ἰλίας, -adis, f.—obruō, -ere, to overwhelm, bury.)

**THE AUTHORITY OF A TEACHER’S OPINION**


(Cicero, Dē Nāturā Deōrum 1.5.10.—Pythagōrās, -ae, m.—disputātiō, -onis, argument, debate.—sc. id as direct obj. of ipse dixit.)
ETYMOLOGY

The adj. altus, -a, -um, high, literally means having been nourished, and so, grown large; hence altitude, alto, contralto, exalt, hautboy, oboe.

In the readings

1. contend, contention, contentious.—equestrian; cp. equus, horse.

LATīNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvēte! If you’ve spent much time in court, or even watching Perry Mason reruns, you’ve doubtless encountered some legal Latin. Ipse turns up more than once in the lawyer’s lexicon: there’s ipsō factō, by that very fact; ipsō jūre (classical iūre), by the law itself; and rēs ipsa loquitur, the matter speaks for itself. And from the third pers. reflexive there’s sui jūris (iūris), lit. of his own right, i.e., legally competent to manage one’s own affairs. Not a legal term, but from the reflexive and common in Eng. is sui generis, lit. of his/her/its own kind (see genus, Ch. 18), used of a person or thing that is unique. Another common Eng. phrase, seen in the above reading on Pythagoras, is ipse dixit, used of any dogmatic or arbitrary statement; likewise from the intensive pronoun are the phrase ipsissima verba, the very words (of a person being quoted), the medical term “ipsilateral,” meaning “on or affecting the same side of the body” (from Lat. latus, lateris, n., side), and the word “solipsism,” for the philosophical theory that the self alone is the only reality or that it conditions our perception of reality.

By now you’ve had all the vocabulary needed to translate the famous quotation from Constantine, in hōc signō vincēs (under this standard—i.e., the cross—you shall prevail), seen in more recent decades on a well-known brand of cigarettes; freely it means, You’ll win with this brand (but would the U.S. Surgeon General agree?). Well, tempus iterum fūgit: valēte!

School of Athens, detail of Pythagoras and a boy
Raphael, 1508
Stanza della Segnatura
Vatican Palace, Vatican State
I-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner

Some nouns of the third declension differ from those introduced in Ch. 7 in that they have a characteristic i in certain case endings. Because of this i these nouns are called i-stem nouns, and the rest are known as consonant-stems. As you will see from the following paradigms, the only new ending shared by all i-stems is the genitive plural in -ium (rather than simply -um); neuters have, in addition, -i instead of -e in the ablative singular and -ia instead of -a in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; vis is a common irregular i-stem and should be memorized (its gen. and dat. sg., given in parentheses, are rarely used).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cons.-stem Base in 2 Neut. in Irregular</th>
<th>Reviewed</th>
<th>Parisyllabic</th>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th>-e, -al, -ar</th>
<th>-vis, -vis, pl. strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēx, rēgis,</td>
<td>cīvis, -is,</td>
<td>nūbēs, -is,</td>
<td>urbs, -is,</td>
<td>mare, -is,</td>
<td>vis, vīs, f., force;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., king</td>
<td>m., citizen</td>
<td>f., cloud</td>
<td>f., city</td>
<td>n., sea</td>
<td>pl. strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. rēx</td>
<td>cīvis</td>
<td>nūbēs</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>márē</td>
<td>vīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. rēgis</td>
<td>cīvis</td>
<td>nūbīs</td>
<td>úrbis</td>
<td>márī</td>
<td>(vīs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. rēgī</td>
<td>cīvī</td>
<td>nūbī</td>
<td>úrbī</td>
<td>márī</td>
<td>(vī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. rēgem</td>
<td>cīvem</td>
<td>nūbēm</td>
<td>ūrbēm</td>
<td>márē</td>
<td>vīm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. rēge</td>
<td>cīve</td>
<td>nūbe</td>
<td>ūrbe</td>
<td>márī</td>
<td>vī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An important alternate masculine and feminine accusative plural ending in -is (e.g., civis for cives), though rarely appearing in this book, was frequently employed throughout Republican literature and into the Augustan Period and should be remembered.

Besides learning these few new endings, it is also important to be able to recognize that a noun is an i-stem when you encounter it in a vocabulary list or a reading. The following three rules will enable you to do so and should be memorized.

**MASCULINE AND FEMININE i-STEMS**

1. Masculine and feminine nouns with a nominative singular in -is or -es and having the same number of syllables in both the nominative and genitive (often called “parisyllabic,” from pár, equal, + syllaba).¹

   hostis, hostis, m.; hostium; enemy
   návis, návis, f.; návium; ship
   mólës, mólis, f.; mólium; mass, structure

2. Masculine and (chiefly) feminine nouns with a nominative singular in -s or -x which have a base ending in two consonants; most, like the following examples, have monosyllabic nominatives.

   ars, art-is, f.; artium; art, skill
   dêns, dent-is, m.; dentium; tooth
   nox, noct-is, f.; noctium; night
   arx, arc-is, f.; arcium; citadel

Again, the only ending ordinarily distinguishing these masculine and feminine nouns from consonant stems is the genitive plural in -ium.

**NEUTER i-STEMS**

3. Neuter nouns with a nominative singular in -al, -ar, or -e. Again, these have the characteristic i not only in the genitive plural -ium but also in the ablative singular -i and the nominative/accusative/vocative plural -ia.

¹ Canis, canis, dog, and iuvenis, -is, youth, are exceptions, having -um in the gen. pl. There are a few nouns with -er nominatives in this category, e.g., imber, imbris, m., shower, rain (gen. pl. imbrium).
animal, animālis, n., *animal*
exemplar, exemplāris, n., *model, pattern, original*
mare, maris, n., *sea*

**IRREGULAR Vis**

The common and irregular vis must be thoroughly memorized and must be carefully distinguished from vir. Note that the characteristic i appears in most forms. Practice with the following forms: virī, virēs, virīs, virīum, virībus, virīs, virum.

**ABLATIVE CASE USES**

So far the ablative has generally appeared along with prepositions and for that reason has occasioned little difficulty. However, the Romans frequently used a simple ablative without a preposition to express ideas which in English are introduced by a preposition. The proper interpretation of such ablatives requires two things: (1) a knowledge of the prepositionless categories and (2) an analysis of the context to see which category is the most logical.

Following are three common uses (or “constructions”) of the ablative case, which should be added to the one you have already learned (i.e., object of certain prepositions); several additional uses for this case will be introduced in later chapters, so it is important to maintain a list in your notebook or computer file, complete with the name, a definition, and examples for each (you should be maintaining similar lists, of course, for all of the other cases as well).

**ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT**

The ablative of means or instrument is one of the most important of the prepositionless categories. It answers the questions *by means of what (instrument)*?, *by what*?, *with what*? and its English equivalent is a phrase introduced by the prepositions *by, by means of, with.*

Litterās stilō scīpsit, *he wrote the letter with a pencil* (stilus, -ī).
Civēs pecūniā vīcit, *he conquered the citizens with/by money.*
Id meīs oculīs vīdi, *I saw it with my own eyes.*
Suīs labōribus urbem cōnservāvit, *by his own labors he saved the city.*
You have already encountered this construction a few times in the reading and translation exercises.

**ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT AND MANNER**

You have also already encountered the use of *cum* + ablative to indicate (1) accompaniment, which answers the question *with whom?* and (2) manner, which answers the question *how?*

- Cum amīcis vēnērunt, *they came with friends (= with whom?)*
- Cum celeritāte vēnērunt, *they came with speed (= how?; speedily. — celeritās, -tās).*
- Id cum eīs fēcit, *he did it with them (= with whom?).*
- Id cum virtūte fēcit, *he did it with courage (= how?; courageously).*

You will notice that each of these three constructions may be translated using the English preposition “with” (among other possibilities), but the three constructions are conceptually different and must be very carefully distinguished. Remember that ablative constructions generally function adverbially, telling you something about the action of the verb; in these three instances they tell you, respectively, by what means or with what instrument the action was performed, with whom the action was performed, and in what manner the action was performed.

Your only real difficulty will come in translating from English to Latin. If *with* tells *with whom* or *in what manner,* use *cum* + ablative; if *with* tells *by means of what,* use the ablative without a preposition.

**VOCABULARY**

- **animal, animālis, n., a living creature, animal** (related to *anima*, Ch. 34, breath, air, spirit, soul, and *animus*; animate, animation)
- **āqua, -ae, f., water** (aquatic, aquarium, Aquarius, aqueduct, subaqueous, ever, sewer, sewage, sewerage)
- **ars, ārtis, f., art, skill** (artifact, artifice, artificial, artless, artist, artisan, inert, inertia)
- **āuris, aūris, f., ear** (aural, auricle, auricular, auriform; not to be confused with “auric,” “auriferous,” from *aurum, gold*).
- **cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., citizen** (civil, civilian, civility, incivility, civilize, civic; cp. *civitās, civilis*, related to one’s fellow citizens)
- **iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law** (jurisdiction, jurisprudence, juridical, jurist, juror, jury, just, justice, injury; cp. *iniūria*, Ch. 39, *lustus*, Ch. 40)
māre, māris, n., sea (marine, mariner, marinate, maritime, submarine, cormorant, rosemary, mere = Eng. cognate, archaic for “small lake.”)
mors, mōrtis, f., death (mortal, immortal, mortify, mortgage; murder = Eng. cognate; cp. mōrtālis, Ch. 18, immortālis, Ch. 19)
nūbēs, nūbis, f., cloud (nubilous)
ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face (oral, orifice)
pars, pārtis, f., part, share; direction (party, partial, partake, participate, participle, particle, particular, partisan, partition, apart, apartment, depart, impart, repartee)
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome (romance, romantic, romanticism; cp. Rōmānus)
tūrba, -ae, f., uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd, multitude (cp. turbāre, to disturb, throw into confusion; turbid, turbulent, turbine, turbo, disturb, perturb, imperturbable, trouble)
urbs, úrbis, f., city (urban, urbane, urbanity, suburb, suburban)
vīs, vīs, f., force, power, violence; vīrēs, virīum, pl., strength (vim, violate; violent; do not confuse with vir)
ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels or consonants), prep. + abl., away from, from; by (personal agent); frequent in compounds (aberration, abject, abrasive, absolve, abstract, abundant, abuse)
trāns, prep. + acc., across; also a prefix (transport, transmit)
appēllō (1), to speak to, address (as), call, name (appellant, appellative, appeal, appellant, appellate)
cūrō, currere, cucurrī, cūrsum, to run, rush, move quickly (current, cursive, cursory, course, coarse, discursive, incur, occur, recur)
mūtō (1), to change, alter; exchange (mutable, immutable, mutual, commute, permutation, transmutation, molt)
tēneō, tenēre, tēnūi, tēntum, to hold, keep, possess; restrain; -tīneō, -ēre, -tīnūi, -tēntum in compounds, e.g., contineō (tenable, tenacious, tenant, tenet, tenure, tentacle, tenor; continue, content, continent, pertinent, pertinacity, lieutenant, appertain, detain, retain, sustain)
vītō (1), to avoid, shun; not to be confused with vivō (inevitable)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW
1. Magnam partem illērum urbiūm post multōs annōs vi et consiliō capiēbat.
2. Ante Caesaris ipsius oculōs trāns viam cucurrimus et cum amīcis fugimus.
3. Nēmō vitia sua videt, sed quisque illa alterfūs.
4. Monuitne nūper eōs dē viribus illērum urbiūm in Asiā?
5. Ipsum autem libertātem civium suōrum magnā cum cūrā aluerant.
7. Pars civium dēvitiās cēpit et per urbem ad mare cucurrīt.
8. Hodie multae nūbēs in caelo sunt signum ïrae acerbae deōrum.
9. Illud animal herī ibi cecidit et sē trāns terram ab agrō trahēbat.
10. That wicked tyrant did not long preserve the rights of these citizens.
11. Great is the force of the arts.
12. His wife was standing there with her own friends and doing that with patience.
13. Cicero felt and said the same thing concerning his own life and the nature of death.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Et Deus aquās maria in prīncipīō appellāvit. (Genesis; aquās is direct object; maria is predicate acc. or objective complement.)
2. Terra ipsa homīnēs et animālia ōlim creāvit. (Lucretius.)
3. Pān servat ovēs et magistrōs fortūnātōs ovium. (Virgil.—Pan, the god of pastures and shepherds.—ovis, ovis, f., sheep.)
4. Parva formīca onera magna ōre trahit. (Horace.—formīca, -ae, ant.—ōnus, oneris, n., load.)
5. Auribus teneō lupum. (*Terence.—a picturesque, proverbial statement of a dilemma, like Eng. “to have a tiger by the tail.”—lupus, -i, wolf.)
6. Ille magnam turbam clientium sēcum habet. (Horace.—clīens, -entis, m., client, dependent.)
7. Hunc nēmō vī neque pecūniā superāre potuit. (Ennius.)
8. Animus eius erat ignārus artium malārum. (Sallust.—ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant.)
9. Magna pars meī mortem vītābit. (Horace.—meī, partitive gen., Ch. 15.)
10. Vōs, amīcī doctī, exemplāria Graeca semper cum cūrā versātē. (Horace.—exemplar, -plāris, model, original.—versāre, to turn; study.)
11. Nōn virībus et celerītāte corporum magna gerimus, sed sapientiā et sententiā et arte. (Cicero.—celerītās, -tātis, swiftness.)
12. Istī caelum, nōn animum suum, mūtant, sī trāns mare currunt. (Horace.)

STORE TEETH

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.

Quae ratiō est? Řemptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

(*Martial 5.43; meter: elegiac couplet.—Thāis and Laecānia are names of women; take habet ... dentēs with both these subjects.—niger, -gra, -grum,

2 Such verbs as to call (appellō, vocō), consider (dūcō, habeō), choose (legō), make (faciō, creā) may be followed by two accusatives: one is the direct object; the other is a type of predicate noun or adjective sometimes called an “objective complement.”
I-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner

black. — niveus, -a, -um, snowy. — dēns, dentis, m., tooth. — quae (interrogative adj. modifying ratiō), what. — ēmptōs [dentēs], perf. pass. partic., bought, purchased.

CICERO IMAGINES THE STATE OF ROME ITSELF URGING HIM TO PUNISH THE CATILINARIAN CONSPIRATORS


(Cicero, In Catilinam 1.11.27–28; see the readings in Ch. 11 above and Ch. 20 below.—M. = Mārcus.—multāre, to punish.—prōdītor, -tōris, betrayer.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

4. formic, formaldehyde. — omus, onerous. 11. celerity, accelerate, acceler­ator. “Store Teeth”: Negro (Spanish from niger), Negroid; dental, dentist, dentifrice, dentil, indent, dandelion (Fr. dent de lion), tooth = Eng. cognate.

Pan (sent. 3), the Greek god of woods and countryside, was accredited with the power of engendering sudden fear in people. Hence from Greek comes our word “panic.” (However, “pan-,” as in “Pan-American,” comes from another Greek word meaning all.)

Study the following Romance derivatives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ars, artis; artem</td>
<td>arte</td>
<td>arte</td>
<td>art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mors, mortis; mortem</td>
<td>morte</td>
<td>muerte</td>
<td>mort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars, partis; partem</td>
<td>parte</td>
<td>parte</td>
<td>parti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pēs, pedis; pedem</td>
<td>piede</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td>pied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēns, dentis; dentem</td>
<td>dente</td>
<td>diente</td>
<td>dent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvis, nāvis; nāvem</td>
<td>nave</td>
<td>nave</td>
<td>navire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nox, noctis; noctem</td>
<td>notte</td>
<td>noche</td>
<td>nef (nave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clearly these Romance derivatives do not come from the nominative of the Latin words. The rule is that Romance nouns and adjectives of Latin origin generally derive from the accusative form, often with the loss of some sound or feature of the final syllable.3

3One exception thus far in this book has been Fr. fils, son, from Lat. filius. (Old Fr. fiz, whence Eng. “Fitz-,” natural son, e.g., Fitzgerald.)
LATINA EST GAUDIUM—ET UTILIS!

Quid agitis, amici et amicae! Here’s hoping yours is a mens sana in corpore sano, in all of its partes. You’ve now learned the Latin names for several: oculus, auris, os, and dens (remember Thais and Laecania?). Here are some others, from the caput up only, that can be easily remembered from their Eng. derivatives: collum, -i, neck (“collar”); nāsus, -i, nose (“nasal”); supercilium, -i, eyebrow (let’s hope you’ve never raised an eyebrow superciliously at a friend); coma, -ae, hair (astronomy buffs know the constellation Coma Berenicēs, Berenice’s lock—sorry, no connection with “comb,” but “comet” is related); lingua, -ae, tongue as well as language (“multilingual,” “lingo,” and even “linguine,” which is long and flat like a tongue!). For more partes corporis, see Ch. 20.

Languages, by the way, should be learned with “oral-aural” techniques, and not just through reading and writing, so I hope you’re remembering to practice your declensions and conjugations aloud, and to say salve or te amo to someone everyday.

Oops—looking back at the Vocab. and the new i-stems, I am reminded of ars gratia artis, art for the sake of art, the motto of M.G.M. film studios, and B.A. and M.A. for Baccalaureus Artium and Magister Artium, academic degrees you may have or aspire to. Then there’s the familiar Latin phrase, mare nostrum, which is either what the Romans used to call the Mediterranean (our sea) or, perhaps somewhat less likely, Caesar’s critical comment on his unmusical equine (“my horse doesn’t play the guitar”—groan!!!). Valete!
NUMERALS

The commonest numerals in Latin, as in English, are the "cardinals" (from cardo, cardinis, m., hinge, the "pivotal" numbers in counting, "one, two, three . . .," etc.) and the "ordinals" (from ordō, ordinis, m., rank, order, the numerals indicating "order" of occurrence, "first, second . . .," etc.).

CARDINAL NUMERALS

In Latin most cardinal numerals through 100 are indeclinable adjectives; the one form is used for all cases and genders. The following, however, are declined as indicated.

únus, úna, únum, one (see Ch. 9.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>duo, two</th>
<th>tres, three</th>
<th>mille, thousand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N. M. &amp; F. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. dúo</td>
<td>dúae</td>
<td>dúo trēs tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. dúorum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. dúös</td>
<td>dúās</td>
<td>dúo trēs tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The cardinals indicating the hundreds from 200 through 900 are
declined like plural adjectives of the first and second declensions; e.g.,
ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.

Mille, 1,000, is an indeclinable adjective in the singular, but in the plural
it functions as a neuter i-stem noun of the third declension (e.g., mīlle virī, a
thousand men; mīlia virōrum, thousands of men).

The cardinals from unus through vigintī quinque should be memorized
(see the list in the Appendix, p. 451) and with them centum (100) and mille.
The following sentences illustrate these various forms and uses of cardinal
numerals:

Trēs puerī rosās dedērunt duābus puellīs, three boys gave roses to two
girls.
Octō puerī librōs dedērunt decem puellīs, eight boys gave books to ten
girls.
Ūnus vir vēnit cum quattuor amīcīs, one man came with four friends.
Cōnsul vēnit cum centum virīs, the consul came with 100 men.
Cōnsul vēnit cum ducentīs virīs, the consul came with 200 men.
Cōnsul vēnit cum mīlle virīs, the consul came with 1,000 men.
Cōnsul vēnit cum sex mīlibus virōrum, the consul came with six thou-
sand(s) (of) men.

ORDINAL NUMERALS

The ordinal numerals, which indicate the order of sequence, are regular
adjectives of the first and the second declensions (prīmus, -a, -um; secundus,
-a, -um; etc.—see Appendix, p. 451). The ordinals from prīmus through duodecimus
should be learned.

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

The genitive of a word indicating the whole of some thing or group is
used after a word designating a part of that whole.

pars urbis, part of the city (city = the whole)
nēmō amīcōrum meōrum, no one of my friends

This genitive of the whole (sometimes called the "partitive genitive") can
also be used after the neuter nominative and accusative of certain pronouns
and adjectives such as aliquid, quid, multum, plūs, minus, satis, nihil, tantum, quantum.
nihil temporis, no time (nothing of time)
quid consilii, what plan?
satis eloquentiae, sufficient eloquence

The genitive of the whole may itself be the neuter singular of a second declension adjective.

multum boni, much good (lit. of good)
quid novi, what (is) new?
nihil certi, nothing certain

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE WITH CARDINAL NUMERALS

With milia the genitive of the whole is used.

decem milia virorum, 10,000 men (but mille viri, 1,000 men)

With other cardinal numerals and with quidam (a certain one, introduced in Ch. 26) the idea of the whole is regularly expressed by ex or de and the ablative. This construction is sometimes found after other words.

tres ex amicis meis, three of my friends (but tres amici = three friends)
quinque ex eis, five of them
centum ex viris, 100 of the men
quidam ex eis, a certain one of them

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH

The Romans expressed the idea of “time when” or “within which” using the ablative without a preposition. The English equivalent is usually a prepositional phrase introduced by at, on, in, or within, depending on the English idiom (for which indicates “duration of time,” is not an option: see Ch. 37).

Eo tempore non poteram id facere, at that time I could not do it.
Agricolaebonis annis valabant, in good years the farmers flourished.
Eodem die venirent, they came on the same day (die, abl. of dies, day).
Aestate ludebant, in the summer they used to play. (aestate, abl. of aestas, summer)

Paucis hortis id faciet, in (within) a few hours he will do it.
Since this construction always involves some noun indicating a unit of time, without a preposition, you should easily distinguish it from the other ablative case uses you have now learned (object of certain prepositions, means, manner, and accompaniment, abl. with cardinal numerals); you must be able to recognize, name, and translate each of the six types of ablative usages.

**VOCABULARY**

- *Itália, -ae, f.*, *Italy* (italics, italicize)
- *memória, -ae, f.*, *memory, recollection* (memoir, memorial, memorize, memorandum, commemorate)
- *tempéstās, tempestātis, f.*, *period of time, season; weather, storm* (tempest, tempestuous; cp. *tempus*)

Cardinal numerals from *únus* to *vígintī quīnque* (App., p. 451)

Ordinal numerals from *prīmus* to *duódecimus* (App., p. 451)

- *cēntum*, indecl. adj., *a hundred* (cent, centenary, centennial, centi-, centi-grade, centimeter, centipede, centurion, century, bicentenary, bicentennial, sesquicentennial, tercentenary)
- *mīlle*, indecl. adj. in sg., *thousand; mīlia, miliūm*, n. pl., *thousands* (millennium, millennial, mile, milli-, milligram, millimeter, millipede, million, mill (= 1/10 cent), bimillennium, millenium)
- *miser, misera, miserum*, *wretched, miserable, unfortunate* (misery, Misereere, commiserate)
- *inter, prep. + acc., between, among* (intern, internal; common as Eng. prefix, e.g., interact, intercept, interdict)
- *itaque*, adv., *and so, therefore*
- *committō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum*, *to entrust, commit* (committee, commission, commissary, commitment, noncommissioned, noncom)
- *exspectō (1)*, *to look for, expect, await* (expectancy, expectation)
- *iāciō, iācere, iēci, iāctum, to throw, hurl.* This verb appears in compounds as *-iāciō, -icere, -iēci, -iēctum: e.g., ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēci, ēiēctum, to throw out, drive out* (abject, adjective, conjecture, dejected, eject, inject, interject, object, project, subject, reject, trajectory)
- *timeō, timēre, timūi, to fear, be afraid of; be afraid* (timid, timorous, intimidate; cp. *timor*)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. *Illae quīnque fēminae inter ea animālia mortem nōn timebant.*
2. *Duo ex filiīs ā portā per agrōs cum patre sua ĕrī currēbant et in aquam ceciderunt.*
4. *Nēmō eandem partem Asiae ūnō annō vincet.*
5. Rōmānī quattuor ex eīs urbibus prīmā viā īnixērunt.
6. Itaque mīlia librōrum eius ab urbe trāns Italiam mēsistis.
7. Libertātem et iūra hārum urbium artibus belliō ĉonservāvimus.
8. Di Graecī sē inter homīnēs cum virtūte saepe nōn gerēbant.
10. Sententiae medicī eum ĉārum mihi numquam fēcērunt.
11. The tyrant used to entrust his life to those three friends.
12. The greedy man never has enough wealth.
13. At that time we saved their mother with those six letters.
14. Through their friends they conquered the citizens of the ten cities.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAΕ

1. Diū in istā nāve fūt et propter tempestātem nūbēsque semper mor-
tem expectābam. (Terence.—nāvis, nāvis, /., ship.)
2. Septem hōrīs ad eam urbem vēnīmūs. (Cicero.)
3. Italia illīs temporibus erat plēna Graecārum artium, et multī Rō-
mānī ipsi hās artēs colēbant. (Cicero.—artēs, in the sense of studies,
literature, philosophy.—colō, -ere, to cultivate, pursue.)
4. Inter bellum et pācem dubitābant. (Tacitus.—dubitāre, to hesitate,
wavér.)
5. Eō tempore istum ex urbe ēiciēbam. (Cicero.)
6. Dūcēbat quisque miser: “Civis Rōmānus sum.” (Cicero.)
7. Mea puella passerem suum amābat, et passer ad eam sōlam semper
pīpiēbat nec sē ex gremiō movēbat. (Catullus.—passer, -seris, m.,
sparrow, a pet bird.—pīpiēre, to chirp.—gremium, -ii, lap.—movēre.)
8. Filī meī frātrem meum dūlitēbant, mē vitābant; mē patrem acerbum
appellābant et meam mortem exspectābant. Nunc autem mōrēs
meōs mūtāvī et duōs filiōs ad mē crās traham. (Terence.)
9. Dionysius tyrannus, quoniam tōnsōrī caput committere timēbat,
filiās suās barbam et capillum tondēre docuit; itaque virginēs tondē-
bant barbam et capillum patris. (Cicero.—tōnsor, -sōris, barber.—
barba, -ae, beard.—capillus, -i, hair.—tondēre, to shave, cut.)

CYRUS’ DYING WORDS ON IMMORTALITY

Ô meī filī tres, nōn dēbētis esse miserī. Ad mortem enim nunc venīō,
sed pars meī, animus meus, semper remanēbit. Dum eram vôbīscum, ani-
mum nōn vidēbātis, sed ex factīs meīs intellegēbātis eum esse in hōc corpore.
Crēdite igitur animum esse eundem post mortem, etiam si eum nōn vidē-
bātis, et semper ĉonservāte mē in memoriā vestrā.

(Cicero, De Senectūte 22.79–81.—Cyrus the Great, whom Cicero quotes here,
was a Persian king of the 6th cen. B.C.—crēdō, -ere, to believe.)
**FABIAN TACTICS**

Etiam in senectūte Quintus Fabius Maximus erat vir vēræ virtūtis et bella cum animīs adulēscēntibus gerebat. Dē eō amīcus noster Ennius, doctus ille poēta, haec verba ōlim scrīpsit: “Ūnus homō cīvitātem fortūnātam nōbīs cūntātiōne cōnservāvit. Rūmorēs et fāmam nōn pōnēbat ante salūtem Rōmae. Glōria eius, igitur, nunc bene valet et semper valēbit.”

(Ibid. 4.10.—Quintus Fabius Maximus enjoyed considerable success against Hannibal in the Second Punic War [218–201 B.C.] through his delaying tactics, thus earning the epithet Čunctātor, the Delayer.—Ennius, an early Roman poet.—cūntātiō, -ōnis, delaying.—rūmor, -mōris, rumor, gossip.—pōnō, -ere, to put, place.—salūs, salūtis, f., safety.)

---

_Hamilcar Asks Hannibal to Swear His Hatred Against the Romans_  
_{Giovanni Battista Pittoni, 18th century_}  
_{Pinacoteca di Brera, Milan, Italy_}

**ETYMOLOGY**

The following are some of the Eng. derivatives from the Lat. cardinals and ordinals 2–12: (2) dual, duel, duet, double (cp. doubt, dubious), duplicity; second; (3) trio, triple, trivial; (4) quart, quarter, quartet, quatrain; (5) quinquennium, quintet, quintuplets, quincunx; (6) sextet, sextant; (7) September; (8) October, octave, octavo; (9) November, noon; (10) December, decimal, decimate, dime, dean; (12) duodecimal, dozen.
The following table lists some Romance cardinal numbers derived from Latin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unus</td>
<td>un(o)</td>
<td>un(o)</td>
<td>un</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>due</td>
<td>dos</td>
<td>deux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tre</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quattro</td>
<td>cuatro</td>
<td>quatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnque</td>
<td>cinque</td>
<td>cinco</td>
<td>cinq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sei</td>
<td>seis</td>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septem</td>
<td>sette</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>sept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octō</td>
<td>otto</td>
<td>ocho</td>
<td>huit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nove</td>
<td>nueve</td>
<td>neuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decem</td>
<td>dieci</td>
<td>diez</td>
<td>dix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ündecest</td>
<td>undici</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>onze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>dodici</td>
<td>doce</td>
<td>douze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centum</td>
<td>cento</td>
<td>ciento</td>
<td>cent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mille</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. cult, culture, agriculture, horticulture (hortus, garden), colony. 7. passerine.—"pipe," both verb and noun, an onomatopoetic (imitative) word widely used; e.g., Gk. pipos, a young bird, and pipizein or peppizein, to peep, chirp, Gér. piepen and pfeifen, Eng. "peep," Fr. piper. 9. tonsorial, tonsure.—barber, barb, barbed, barbate.—capillary, capillaceous. “Cyrus”: credo, creed, credible, credulous (see Vocab., Ch. 25). “Fabian”: cunctation.—component, etc. (Ch. 27).—salutation, salutary; cf. salvēre.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! Quid novī, meī amīcī amīcaeque? Latin has other types of numerals, besides the cardinals and ordinals, which you will encounter later in your study of the language and many of which are already familiar. “Roman numerals” developed from counting on the fingers: I = one finger, II = two, etc., V = five (the hand held outstretched with the thumb and index finger making a “V”), VI = a “handful of fingers” plus one, etc., X = two V’s, one inverted on the other, and so on. There were also “distributive” numerals, singuli, -ae, -a (one each); bīnī, -ae, -a (two each), ternī, -ae, -a, etc., and “multiplicatives,” simplex, simplicis (single), duplex (double), triplex, etc.; likewise numeral adverbs, semel (once), bis (twice), ter (three times), etc. All these words have numerous (pardon the pun) Eng. derivatives!

“Me, I believe in grammar, but I did not really know about it until I learnt a little Latin—and that is a gift, an absolute gift.”—Margaret Thatcher. Id est bonum cōnsilium, whatever your politics. Valēte!
Latin has two major categories of adjectives. You are already quite familiar with those having first and second declension forms like magnus, -a, -um (Ch. 4) and the small sub-category of first/second declension adjectives that have -ius in the genitive singular and -i in the dative singular (Ch. 9).

Adjectives of the second major group generally have third declension i-stem forms and are declined exactly like i-stem nouns of the third declension, except that the ablative singular of all genders (not just the neuter) ends with -i.

Adjectives of this group fall into three categories that differ from each other in simply one respect. Some, called “adjectives of three endings,” have distinct forms of the nominative singular that differentiate each of the three genders, just as magnus, magna, and magnum do (e.g., ācer M., ācris F., and ācre N.); those of “two endings” (the largest category of third declension adjectives) have a single nominative form for both masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter (e.g., fortis M. and F., forte N.); and those of “one ending” do not differentiate the genders at all in the nominative singular (e.g., potēns is the M., F., and N. nom. sg. form). In all other respects the adjectives of all three categories are the same, with the masculine and feminine endings differing from the neuters only in the accusative singular and the nominative (= vocative) and accusative plural.

Paradigms are given below, with the distinctive i-stem endings in bold; the nouns civis and mare are provided for comparison (review Ch. 14, if necessary) and to show that there is very little new to be learned in order to master third declension adjectives.
### I-Stem Nouns Reviewed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. or F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cívís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cívís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cíví</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cívem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cíve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fórís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fórís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fórí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fórtem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fórti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adj. of 2 Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fortís, forte, strong, brave</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fórís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fórís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fórí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fórtem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fórti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adj. of 3 Endings

| ácer, ácrís, ácre, keen, severe, fierce |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ácer, ácrís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ácrís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ácrí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ácre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ácrí</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pótëns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pótëntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pótëntí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pótëntem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pótëntí</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adj. of 1 Ending

| potëns, gen. potentis, powerful |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ácrès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ácrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ácribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ácria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ácribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>potëntës</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>potëntium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>potëntibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>potëntës</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>potëntibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OBSERVATIONS

Note carefully the places in which the characteristic i appears, as indicated in the paradigms:

1. **-i** in the ablative singular of all genders.
2. **-ium** in the genitive plural of all genders.
3. **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural of the neuter.

---

1. Remember that i-stem nouns and adjectives have an alternate -is ending in the acc. pl. (the regular ending until the Augustan Period), but it will rarely be used in this book.
2. A few third-declension adjectives of one ending are declined without this characteristic i in one or more of the three places; e.g., vetus, veteris, old: vetere (abl. sg.), veterum (gen. pl.), vetera (neut. nom. and acc. pl.). The forms of comparatives and present participles will be taken up later.
Note also that an adjective of the third declension can be used with a noun of any declension just as an adjective of the first and the second declensions can. In the following illustrations omnis, -e, every, all, is used as the example of an adjective of two endings.

omnis amīcus or homō  ācer amīcus/homō  potēns amīcus/homō
omnis rēgīna or māter  ācris rēgīna/māter  potēns rēgīna/māter
omne bellum or animal  ācre bellum/animal  potēns bellum/animal

For the sake of practice, study and analyze the forms in the following phrases:

omnī fōrmāe  in omnī fōrmā  omnium fōrmārum
omnī animō  in omnī animō  omnium animōrum
omnī homīnī  in omnī homīne  omnium homīnum
omnī urbī  in omnī urbe  omnium urbium
omnī marī  in omnī marī  omnium marīum

The vocabulary entries for adjectives of three endings (-er words like ācer, some of which retain the -e- in the base, some of which drop it) and two endings (of the -is/-e variety) list the different nominative endings; the base can be determined from the feminine or neuter form. For adjectives of one ending (many of these end in -ns or -x) the genitive is provided so that you can determine the base (by dropping the -is ending, e.g., potēns, potent-is).

USAGE

Third declension adjectives function in the same ways as other adjectives: they modify nouns (omnēs agricola, all the farmers, sometimes called the “attributive” use); they can serve as “predicate nominatives” (virī erant ācrēs, the men were fierce) or “objective complements” (virtūs fecit virōs fortēs, virtue made the men brave); they can take the place of nouns (fortūna fortēs adivat, fortune helps the brave, sometimes called the “substantive” use). Remember, too, that attributive adjectives usually follow the nouns they modify, except those that denote size or quantity, demonstratives, and any that are meant to be emphasized.

VOCABULARY

aētās, aetātis, f., period of life, life, age, an age, time (eternal, eternity)
auditor, audītoris, m., hearer, listener, member of an audience (auditor, auditory, auditorium; cp. audīō)
clēmentia, -ae, f., mildness, gentleness, mercy (clement, clemency, inclement, Clement, Clementine)
mēns, mēntis, f., mind, thought, intention (mental, mentality, mention, demented; Minerva [?]; cp. mind)
sátura, -ae, f., satíre (saturist, satirical, satirize)
ácer, ácris, ácre, sharp, keen, eager; severe, fierce (acrid, acrimony, acrimonious, eager, vinegar)
brévis, bréve, short, small, brief (brevity, breviary, abbreviate, abridge)
céler, céleris, céleres, swift, quick, rapid (celerity, accelerate)
diffícilis, difficilí, hard, difficult, troublesome (difficulty)
duíçis, dúcile, sweet; pleasant, agreeable (dulcify, dulcet, dulcimer)
fácilis, fácile, easy, agreeable (facile, facility, facilitate; cp. fació)
fórtis, fórte, strong, brave (fort, forte, fortify, fortitude, force, comfort)
ingéns, gen. ingéntis, huge
iúcundus, -a, -um, pleasant, delightful, agreeable, pleasing (jocund)
lóngus, -a, -um, long (longitude, longevity, elongate, oblong, prolong;
Eng. “long” is cognate.)
ómnis, únne, every, all (omnibus, bus, omnipresent, omnipotent, omniscient, omnivorous; cp. omnínō, Ch. 40)
pótenis, gen. poténtis, pres. part. of possum as an adj., able, powerful, mighty, strong (potent, impotent, omnipotent, potentate, potential)
sénex, gen. sénis, adj. and noun, old, aged; old man (senate, senator, senescent, senile, senior, seniority, sir, sire)
quam, adv., how
régō, régere, réxi, réctum, to rule, guide, direct (regent, regime, regiment, regular, regulate, correct, direction, rectitude; cp. réx, régina)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. Fortés virí et fēminaæ ante aetātem nostram vivēbant.
2. Eōs centum senēs miserōs ab Italūa trans mariam difficilium herī mittēbat.
3. Illī duo virī omnēs cupiditātēs ex sē éiecērunt, nam nātūram corpōris timuērunt.
4. Potēns régīna, quoniam sē dīlēxit, istōs trōs vītāvit et sē cum eīs numquam inūxīt.
5. Itaque inter eōs ibi stābam et signum cum animō fortī diū exspectābam.
6. Celer rūmor per òra aurēsque omnium sine morā currēbat.
7. Vīs bellī acerbī autem vītam eius paucīs hōrīs mūtāvit.
8. Quīnque ex nautīs sē ex aquā trāxerunt sēque Caesarī potentiī commīsērunt.
9. Caesar nōn poterat suās cōpiās cum celeribus cōpiās régis iungere.
10. Themistoclēs omnēs cīvēs ōlim appellābat et nōmina eōrum acri mérioriā tenēbat.
11. In caelo sunt multae nūbēs et animālia agricolae tempestātē malā nōn valent.
12. The father and mother often used to come to the city with their two sweet daughters.
13. The souls of brave men and women will never fear difficult times.
14. Does he now understand all the rights of these four men?
15. The doctor could not help the brave girl, for death was swift.

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Quam dulcis est libertas! (Phaedrus.)
2. Labor omnia vicit. (*Virgil.)
3. Fortuna fortis adiuvat. (Terence.)
4. Quam celeris et acris est mens! (Cicero.)
5. Polyphemus erat monstrum horrendum, infirmum, ingens. (Virgil.—
   monstrum, -i.—horrendus, -a, -um.—infirmus, -e, formless, hideous.)

The blinding of Polyphemus
Hydra from Cerveteri, 525 B.C.
Museo Nazionale di Villa Giulia, Rome, Italy

6. Varium et mutabile semper femina. (*Virgil.—Order: femina semper
   est] varium et mutabile. —varius, -a, -um, varying, fickle.—mutabili
   sis, -e, changeable; the neuters varium and mutabile are used to
   mean “a fickle and changeable thing”)
7. Facile est epigrammata belle scribere, sed librum scribere difficile
   est. (*Martial.—epigramma, -matis, n., short poem, epigram.—belle,
   adv. from bellus, -a, -um.)
8. Ira furor brevis est; animum rege. (*Horace.—furor, -orris, madness.)
9. Ars poetica est non omnia dicere. (*Servius.—poetica, -is, -um.)
10. Nihil est ab omnibus parte beatum. (*Horace.)
11. Liber meus hominibus prudenti consiliio alit. (Phaedrus.—prudens,
    gen. prudentis.)
12. Mater omnium bonarum artium sapientia est. (*Cicero.)
13. Clémentia regem salvum facit; nam amor omnium civium est inexpegnabile munimentum rēgis. (Seneca.—inexpugnabilis, -e, imprægnable.—munimentum, -i, fortification, defense.)
14. Vita est brevis; ars, longa. (Hippocrates, quoted by Seneca.)
15. Breve tempus ætatis autem satis longum est ad bene vivendum.
   (Cicero.—vivendum, living, verbal noun obj. of ad, for.)
16. Vivit et vivet per omnium saeculorum memoriam. (*Velleius Paterculus.—saeculum, -i, century, age.)
**JIUVEINAL EXPLAINS HIS IMPULSE TO SATIRE**


(Juvėnal, Saturae 1.1ff; prose adaptation from the opening of Juvenal’s pro­grammatic first satire.—indignātiō, -ōnis.—versus, verse, poetry.)

**ON A TEMPERAMENTAL FRIEND**

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus—es īdem:

nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē.

(*Martial, 12.46; meter: elegiac couplet.)

**ETYMOLOGY**

In the readings

5. monstrous.—horrendous.—informal, inform (adj. with neg. prefix in-) 6. variety, variegated, vary, unvaried, invariable. 8. fūror. 11. prūdēns, syncopated form of prōvidēns as seen in “providence,” “providential.” “Juvenal”: indignation, indignant.—verse, versify, versification.

**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!**

Salvēte! Quid agitis? Quid hodiē est tempestās? Here are some possible answers, many of which you can again recognize from Eng. derivatives: frigida (tempestās is fem., as you recall from Ch. 15, hence the fem. adj., from frīgidus, -a, -um); calīda (Eng. “scald” is a derivative); nimbōsa (from nimbus, which means the same as nūbēs, + the common suffix -ōsus, -a, -um, full of; hence “cloudy”—cp. Eng. “cumulonimbus clouds”); ventōsa (an identical formation from ventus, wind); sōl lūcet, the sun is shining (cp. “sol­lar,” “translucent”); pluit, it’s raining (“pluvial,” “pluviometer”); nīngit, it’s snowing (Eng. “niveous” from Lat. niveus, -a, -um is related).

Well, enough of the weather. Here’s an omnibus of omni- words and phrases to delight you all: If you were “omnific” (from facere) and “omni­present” (-sent from sum) and your appetite “omnivorous” (vorāre, to eat, cp. “carnivorous,” “herbivorous”) and your sight were “omnidirectional” (see regō in the Vocab. above), then you might potentially be “omnipotent” and even “omniscient” (scīre, to know). But as a proverbial saying from Virgil reminds us, nōn omnēs possimus omnia. (By the way regō, mentioned above, does NOT mean to go again nor should regit be translated leave, and this time I mean it!)

Valēte, omnēs amīcī et amīcae meae, et semper amāte Latinam!
The Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun qui, quae, quod, as common in Latin as its English equivalent who/which/that, ordinarily introduces a subordinate clause and refers back to some noun or pronoun known as its "antecedent"; the relative clause itself has an adjectival function, providing descriptive information about the antecedent (e.g., "the man who was from Italy" ... = "the Italian man").

The forms of the relative pronoun are so diverse that the only practical procedure is to memorize them. However, it is easy to see that the endings of the genitive cuius and dative cui are related to those of illius and illi; and it is easy to identify the case, the number, and often the gender of most of the remaining forms.

**QUÍ, QUÆ, QUOD, who, which, that**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuius¹</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cui¹</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USAGE AND AGREEMENT**

Since the relative pronoun (from Lat. referö, referre, rettuli, relatum, Ch. 31) refers to and is essentially equivalent to its antecedent (from antecedere,

¹ For the pronunciation of the ui in cuius (as if spelled cui-yus) and in cui, cp. huius and huië (Ch. 9) and see the Introd., p. xli.
to go before, since the antecedent usually appears in a preceding clause), the two words naturally agree in number and gender; the case of the relative, however, like that of any noun or pronoun, is determined by its use within its own clause. The logic of this can be demonstrated by analyzing and translating the following sentence:

_The woman whom you are praising is talented._

1. The main clause of the sentence reads:
   _The woman . . . is talented._ Fēmina . . . est docta.

2. _Whom_ introduces a subordinate, relative clause modifying _woman._

3. _Woman (fēmina)_ stands before the relative _whom_ and is its antecedent.

4. _Whom_ has a double loyalty: (1) to its antecedent, _fēmina_, and (2) to the subordinate clause in which it stands.

   a. Since the antecedent, _fēmina_, is feminine and singular, _whom_ in Latin will have to be feminine and singular.

   b. Since in the subordinate clause _whom_ is the direct object of _you are praising_ (laudās), it must be in the accusative case in Latin.

   c. Therefore, the Latin form must be _feminine_ and _singular_ and _accusative_: _quam._

The complete sentence in Latin appears thus:

Fēmina quam laudās est docta.

Again, succinctly, the rule is this: the _gender_ and the _number_ of a relative are determined by its antecedent; the _case_ of a relative is determined by its use in its own clause.

Analyze the gender, the number, and the case of each of the relatives in the following sentences:

1. Dilīgō puellam _quae_ ex Italīā vēnit, _I admire the girl who came from Italy._

2. Homō dē _quō_ dīcēbās est amīcus cārus, _the man about whom you were speaking is a dear friend._

3. Puella _cui_ librum dat est fortūnāta, _the girl to whom he is giving the book is fortunate._

4. Puer _cuius_ patrem iūvābāmus est fortis, _the boy whose father we used to help is brave._

5. Vitam meam committam eīs _virī_ _quōrum_ virtūtēs laudābās, _I shall entrust my life to those men whose virtues you were praising._
6. *Timeō idem periculum quod timētis, I fear the same danger which you fear.*

In translating, be sure not to introduce words from the relative clause into the main clause or vice versa; e.g., in the third sentence above, *puella* should not be mistaken as the subject of *dat*. Note that a relative clause is a self-contained unit, beginning with the relative pronoun and often ending with the very first verb you encounter (*cui . . . dat* in the third sample sentence); in complex sentences, like S.A. 3 below, you may find it helpful first to identify and actually even bracket the relative clause(s):


Begin next to read the rest of the sentence and then, as soon as you have translated the relative pronoun’s antecedent (which very often precedes the relative pronoun immediately), translate the relative clause.

**VOCABULARY**

- *libēllus, -i, m., little book* (libel, libelous; diminutive of *liber*)
- *quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that* (quorum)
- *caēcus, -a, -um, blind* (caecum, caecal, caecilian)
- *lévis, lēve, light; easy; slight, trivial* (levity, lever, levy, levec, Levant, leaven, legerdemain, alleviate, elevate, relevant, irrelevant, relieve)
- *aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or*
- *cīto, adv., quickly* (excite, incite, recite; cp. *recitō, below*)
- *quōque, adv., also, too*
- *admittō, -mittere, -missum, to admit, receive, let in* (admission, admissible, inadmissible, admittedly)
- *coēpī, coēpsisse, coēptum, began, defective verb used in the perfect system only; the present system is supplied by *incipiō* (below).*
- *cūpiō, cūpīre, cūpīvī, cūpitum, to desire, wish, long for* (Cupid, cupidity, concupiscence, covet, covetous, Kewpie doll; cp. *cupiditās, cupīdō, Ch. 36, cupidus, Ch. 39*)
- *dēléō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, to destroy, wipe out, erase* (delete, indelible)
- *dēsiderō (1), to desire, long for, miss* (desiderate, desideratum, desiderative, desire, desirous)
- *incipiō, -cīpere, -cēpī, -cēptum, to begin* (incipient, inception; cp. *capiō*)
- *nāvigō (1), to sail, navigate* (navigation, navigable; cp. *nauta*)
- *nēglegō, nēglegere, nēglexī, nēglectum, to neglect, disregard* (negligent, negligence, negligible; cp. *legō, Ch. 18*)
- *rēcitō (1), to read aloud, recite* (recital, recitation, recitative)
PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Patēns quoque est vīs artium, quae nōs semper alunt.
2. Miserōs hominēs, autem, sēcum iungere coeperant.
3. Nam illā aetāte pars populi in Italiā īūra civium numquam tenuit.
4. Incipimus vēritātem intellegere, quae mentēs nostrās semper regere dēbet et sīne quā valēre nōn possimus.
5. Quam difficile est bona aut dulcīa ex bellō trahere!
6. Centum ex virīs mortem dīū timēbant et nihil clēmentiae exspectābant.
7. Puer matrēm timēbat, quae eum saepe neglegēbat.
8. Inter omnia perīcula īlla fēmina sē cum sapientīa gessit.
9. Itaque celer rūmor ācrīs mortis per ingentēs urbēs cucerīt.
10. Quoniam memoria factōrum nostrōrum dulcis est, beātī nunc sumus et senectūtem faciēm agēmus.
11. Multī audītōrēs saturās ācrēs timēbant quās poēta recitābat.
12. They feared the powerful men whose city they were ruling by force.
13. We began to help those three pleasant women to whom we had given our friendship.
14. We fear that book with which he is beginning to destroy our liberty.

SENTENTIAE ANTīQUAE

1. Salvē, bone amīce, cuī filiīum meum herī commisi. (Terence.)
2. Dionysius, dē quō ante dīxī, ā Graeciā ad Siciliam per tempestātem nāvigābat. (Cicero.—Siciīla, -ae, Sicily.)
3. Multī civēs aut ea perīcula quae imīinent nōn vident aut ea quae vident neglegunt. (Cicero.—imminēre, to impend, threaten.)
4. Bis dat quī cito dat. (Publilius Syrus.—bis, adv., twice.)
5. Quī coepit, dīmidium factī habet. Incipe! (Horace.—dīmidium, -ī, half.)
6. Levis est fortūna: id cito repōscīt quod dedit. (Publilius Syrus.—repōscō, -ere, to demand back.)
7. Fortūna eum stultum facit quem nimium amat. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Nōn sōlum fortūna ipsa est caeca sed etiam eōs caecōs facit quōs semper adivat. (Cicero.)
9. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victoriā. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Simulātiō dēlet vēritātem, sīne quā nōmen amīcitiae valēre nōn potest. (Cicero.—simulātiō, -ōnis, pretense, insincerity.)
11. Virtūtem enim illius virī amāvi, quae cum corpore nōn perīt. (Cicero.—pereō, -ere, -ēī, -itum, to perish.)
12. Turban vita. Cum hīs vīve quī tē meliōrem facere possunt; illōs admitte quōs tū potes facere meliōrēs. (Seneca.—melior, better.)
ON THE PLEASURES OF LOVE IN OLD AGE

Estne amor in senectūre? Voluptās enim minor est, sed minor quoque est cupiditās. Nihil autem est cura nōbīs, si nōn cupimus, et nōn caret is quī nōn dēsīderat. Adulēscēntēs nimis dēsīderant; senēs satēs amōris saepe habent et multum sapientiae. Cōgitō, igitur, hoc tempus vitae esse iūcundum.

(Cicero, De Senecūre 14.47-48.—minor, less.—carēre, to lack, want.)

IT’S ALL IN THE DELIVERY

Quem recitās meus est, ò Fīdentīne, libellus;
   sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus!

(*Martial, 1.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—Fīdentīnus, a fellow who had publicly recited some of Martial’s poems.—libellus, diminutive of liber, is the delayed antecedent of quem; in prose the order would be libellus quem recitās est meus.—male, adv. of malus.—cum, conj., when.)

A Reading from Homer, Sir Lawrence Alma-Tadema, 1885
Philadelphia Museum of Art: The George W. Elkins Collection

ETYMOLOGY

The Lat. rel. pron. was the parent of the following Romance forms: It. chi, che; Sp. que; Fr. qui, que.

If the suffix -scō shows a Latin verb to be an “inceptive” verb, what force or meaning does this ending impart to the verb?—tremō, tremble; tremēscō = ?
In medieval manuscripts many texts begin with an “incipit”; e.g., liber prīmus Epistulārum Pīnī incipit.
To Latin aut can be traced lt. o, Sp. o, Fr. ou.

In the readings


LATÌNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÙTILIS!

Iterum salvēte! There are a couple of Eng. abbreviations from quī, quae, quod which you may have seen: q.v. = quod vidē, which see (i.e., “see this item”), and Q.E.D. = quod erat dēmōnstrandum, that which was to be proved (used, e.g., in mathematical proofs—for the verbal form, a “passive periphrazic;” see Ch. 24). Less common are q.e. = quod est, which is, and Q.E.F. = quod erat faciendum, which was to be done. You are beginning to see that for a truly literate person Latin is sine quā nīn (indispensable, lit. something without which one can not manage), and that’s a point we needn’t “quibble” over (a diminutive derived from the frequent use of quibus in legal documents).

The root meaning of recitāre, by the way, is to arouse again (cp. “excite,” “incite”); when we “recite” a text, we are quite literally “reviving” or bringing it back to life, which is why we—just like the Romans—should always read literature, especially poetry, aloud!

Here’s some good advice on doing your translations: semper scribe sententiās in tabellā tuā (your notebook). An ancient proverb tells you why: quī scribit, bis discit! And here’s an old proverb with the new Vocab. item cito: cito matōrum, cito putridum, quickly ripe, quickly rotten. So let’s not go too fast: valēte!
**First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent**

**FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE VOICE**

In Latin as in English there are passive verb forms and passive sentence types, in which the subject is recipient of the action (rather than performing the action, as in the active voice). The rule for forming the passive of first and second conjugation present system passives (i.e., passives of the present, future, and imperfect tenses) is an easy one: simply substitute the new passive endings (-r, -ris, -tur; -mur, -minī, -ntur) for the active ones learned in Ch. 1 (-ō/-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt). The few exceptions to this rule are highlighted in bold in the following paradigms.

**PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF Laudō and Moneō**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PASSIVE ENDINGS</th>
<th>laud-</th>
<th>mōnecor</th>
<th>I am (am being) praised, warned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -r</td>
<td>laud-</td>
<td>mōnecor</td>
<td>you are (are being) praised, warned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ris</td>
<td>laudā-</td>
<td>mōnēris</td>
<td>he is (is being) praised, warned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -tur</td>
<td>laudā-</td>
<td>monētūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent

1. -mur       laudā-mur    monēmur       we are (are being) praised, warned
2. -minī      laudā-minī    monēminī    you are (are being) praised, warned
3. -ntur      laudā-ntur    monēntur    they are (are being) praised, warned

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I was (being) praised, I was (being) warned,
used to be praised, etc.  used to be warned, etc.
1. laudā-ba-r       monebar
2. laudā-ba-ris     monēbāris
3. laudā-ba-tur     monēbātur
1. laudā-ba-mur     monebāmur
2. laudā-ba-minī    monēbāminī
3. laudā-ba-ntur    monēbāntur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I shall be praised    I shall be warned
1. laudā-ba-or       monebor
2. laudā-be-ris      monēberis
3. laudā-bi-tur      monēbitur
1. laudā-bi-mur      monebimur
2. laudā-bi-minī     monēbimīnī
3. laudā-bi-ntur     monēbimīntur

The exceptional forms, highlighted in bold above, are few: in the first
person singular, present and future, the -r is added directly to the full active
form (with the -0- shortened before final -r); -bi- is changed to -be- in the
future second person singular. Notice, too, that the stem vowel remains
short in laudantur/monentur but is long in laudātur/monētur (review the rule
in Ch. 1: vowels are generally shortened before nt in any position but only
before a final -m, -r, or -t, hence laudat but laudātur). You should note the
existence of an alternate second person singular passive ending in -re (e.g.,
laudāberē for laudāberis); this ending is not employed in this book, but you
will certainly encounter it in your later readings.

THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

The present passive infinitive of the first and the second conjugations is
formed simply by changing the final -e of the active to -ī.

laudārī, to be praised        monērī, to be warned
THE PASSIVE VOICE

When the verb is in the active voice (from agō, agere, ēgi, ēctum, to act), the subject performs the action of the verb. When the verb is in the passive voice (from patior, patī, passus sum, to undergo, experience) the subject is acted upon: it suffers or passively permits the action of the verb. As a rule, only transitive verbs can be used in the passive; and what had been the object of the transitive verb (receiving the action of the verb) now becomes the subject of the passive verb (still receiving the action of the verb).

Caesarem admonet, he is warning Caesar.
Caesar admonētur, Caesar is being warned.

Urbem dēlēbant, they were destroying the city.
Urbs dēlēbātur, the city was being destroyed.

Patriam cōnservābit, he will save the country.
Patria cōnservābitur, the country will be saved.

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

The personal agent by whom the action of a passive verb is performed is indicated by ab and the “ablative of agent”; the means by which the action is accomplished is indicated by the “ablative of means” without a preposition, as you have already learned in Ch. 14.

Dī Caesarēm admonēnt, the gods are warning Caesar.
Caesar ā dīs admonētur, Caesar is warned by the gods. (Agent)
Caesar īīs prōdigīīs admonētur, Caesar is warned by these omens. (Means); prōdigium, -ī, omen.
Malī virī urbem dēlēbant, evil men were destroying the city.
Urbs ab malīs virīs dēlēbātur, the city was being destroyed by evil men. (Agent)
Urbs flammīs dēlēbātur, the city was being destroyed by flames. (Means); flamma, -ae.
Hī cīvēs patriam cōnservābunt, these citizens will save the country.
Patria ab hīs cīvibus cōnservābitur, the country will be saved by these citizens. (Agent)
Patria armīs et vēritāte cōnservābitur, the country will be saved by arms and truth. (Means)

In summary, and as seen in the preceding examples, an active sentence construction can generally be transformed to a passive construction as follows: what was the direct object becomes the subject, the recipient of the
action; what was the subject becomes an ablative of agent (remember to add this to your list of ablative uses), if a person, or an ablative of means, if a thing; and the appropriate passive verb form is substituted for the active.

VOCABULARY

flōmen, flāminis, n., river (flume; cp. flūō, below)
genēs, gēneris, n., origin; kind, type, sort, class (genus, generic, genitive, gender, general, generous, genuine, degenerate, genre, congenial; cp. gēns, Ch. 21, ingenium, Ch. 29)
hōstis, hōstis, m., an enemy (of the state); hōstēs, -ium, the enemy (hostile, hostility, host)
lūdus, -i, m., game, sport; school (ludicrous, delude, elude, elusive, allude, allusion, illusion, collusion, interlude, prelude, postlude)
prōbitās, prōbitātis, f., uprightness, honesty (probity; cp. prōbāre, Ch. 27)
scientia, -ae, f., knowledge (science, scientific; cp. sciō, Ch. 21)
clārus, -a, -um, clear; bright: renowned, famous, illustrious (clarify, clarity, claret, clarinet, clarion, declare, Clara, Clarissa, Claribel)
mortālis, mortāle, mortal (mortality, immortality; cp. mors)
cūr, adv., why
deinde, adv., thereupon, next, then
flūō, flūere, flūxī, flūxum, to flow (fluid, fluent, flux, influx, affluence, effluence, influence, confuence, influenza, flu, mellifluous, superfluous)
légō, légere, légī, lēctum, to pick out, choose; read (elect, elegant, eligible, lecture, legend, legible, intellect; cp. intellegō, neglegō)
misceō, miscère, miscui, mixtum, to mix, stir, up, disturb (miscellanea, miscellaneous, miscellany, miscible, meddle, meddlesome, medley, melee, admixture, intermixture, promiscuous)
móvéō, movēre, móvī, mó tum, to move; arouse, affect (mobile, motion, motive, motor, commotion, emotion, remote, locomotive, mutiny)
vidēor, vidērī, visus sum, pass. of videō, to be seen, seem, appear

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Multī morte etiam faciē nimiis terrentur.
2. Beāta memoria amīciīārum dulciium numquam dēlēbitur.
3. Illā fēmina caeca omnia genera artium quoque intelēxit et ab amīcis iūcundīs semper laudābitur.
4. Pater senex vester, ā quō sæpe iuvābāmur; multa dē celeribus perīculis ingenti maris herī dicere coepit.
5. Mentēs nostrae memoriā potentī illōrum duōrum factōrum cito moventur.
6. Cōnsilia rēgīnae illō tertīō bellō longō et difficīli dēlēbantur.
7. Itaque māter mortem quartī filīī exspectābat, quī nōn valēbat et cu-
ius aetās erat brevis.
8. Bella difficilia sine cōnsiliō et clēmentiā numquam gerēbāmus.
9. Tē cum novem ex aliīs miseriō ad Caesarem crās trahent.
10. Rēgem ācrem, quī officiā neglēxerat, ex urbe suā eīcērunt.
11. Ille poēta in tertīo libellō saturarūm scriscit dē hominibus avarīs quī
ad centum terrās aliās nāvigāre cupiunt quod pecūniam nīmis dēsi-
derant.
12. Mercy will be given by them even to the citizens of other cities.
13. Many are moved too often by money but not by truth.
14. The state will be destroyed by the powerful king, whom they are
beginning to fear.
15. Those ten women were not frightened by plans of that trivial sort.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Possunt quīa posse videntur. (*Virgil.—quīa, conj., because.)
2. Etiam fortēs virī subītīs perīculīs saepe terrentur. (Tacitus.—subītus,
-a, -um, sudden.)
3. Tua cōnsilia sunt clāra nōbīs; tenēris scientiā hōrum civĭum om-
nium. (Cicero.)
4. Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest. (*Publílius Syrus.)
5. Fās est ab hoste docĕrī. (Ovid.—fās est, it is right.)
6. Eō tempore erant circēnsēs lūdī, quō genere levī spectāculi num-
quam teneor. (Pliny.—circēnsēs lūdī, contests in the Circus.—As here
with genere, the antecedent is often attracted into the rel. clause.—
spectāculum, -ī.)

7. Haec est nunc vīta mea: admissŏ et salūtŏ bonōs virōs quī ad mē
veniunt; deinde aut scrisbŏ aut legŏ; post haec omne tempus corpŏrī
datur. (Cicero.—salutāre, to greet at the early morning reception.)
8. Nihil igitur mors est, quoniam nātūra animī habētur mortālis. (Lu-
cretius.)
9. Amor miscērī cum timōre nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Numquam enim ternerīs cum sapientiā commiscētur. (*Cicero.—
ternerīs, -ēris, rashness.)
11. Dīligēmus eum qui pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
12. Laudātur ab hīs; culpātur ab illīs. (*Horace.)
13. Probitās laudātur—et alget. (*Juvenal.—algēre, to be cold, be ne­
glected.)

ON DEATH AND METAMORPHOSIS

Ω genus hūmānum, quod mortem nimium timet! Cūr perīcula mortis
timētis? Omnia mūtantur, omnia fluunt, nihil ad vēram mortem venit. Ani­
mus errat et in alia corpora miscētur; nec manet, nec eāsdem fōrmās servat,
sed in fōrmās novās mūtantur. Viā est flūmen; tempora nostra fugiunt et
nova sunt semper. Nostra corpora semper mūtantur; id quod fūimus aut
sumus, nōn crās erimus.

(Ovid, Metamorphōsēs 15.153–216; prose adaptation.—The ancients had some
imaginative views on the transmigration of souls.)

ETYMOLOGY

Hostis meant originally stranger and then enemy, since any stranger in
early times was a possible enemy. From hostis, enemy, stems our “host” in
the sense of “army.” Hospes, hospitis, which is an ancient compound of
hostis, stranger; and potis, having power over; lord of (cf. Russ. gospodin, lord,
gentleman), means host (one who receives strangers or guests) and also
guest; cp. “hospital,” “hospitality,” “hostel,” “hotel” (Fr. hôtel), and Eng.
cognate “guest.”

In the readings

6. circus.—spectator; spectacle, specter; spectacular. 10. temerity (con­
trast “timidity”).

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! Wondering how the same verb, legere, can mean both to pick
out and to read? Because the process of reading was likened to gathering
and collecting the words of a text. What a splendid metaphor: we are all of
us (especially Latin students) “word collectors”! “Gather ye rosebuds while
ye may” . . . and also the delights of language.

Remember the special pass. meaning of videor introduced in this Vocab.;
here it is in the pres. pass. inf. form, also newly introduced in this chapter:
esse quam vidērī, to be rather than to seem, the state motto of North Caro­
lina. Scientia also turns up in several mottoes: scientia est potentia, knowl­
dge is power, is one favorite, and another is scientia sōl mentis est, knowledge
is the sun of the mind (motto of the University of Delaware). Valēte, discipu­
lae discipulīque!
Perfect Passive System of All Verbs; Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

THE PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM

The construction of the forms of the perfect passive system is quite simple: a verb's perfect passive participle (the fourth principal part) is combined with sum, erō, and eram to form the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect passive, respectively. The same pattern is employed for verbs of all conjugations; thus, in the following paradigms, monitus, actus, auditus, captus, or any other perfect passive participle could be substituted for laudatus.

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. laudátus, -a, -um sum
2. laudátus, -a, -um es
3. laudátus, -a, -um est

1. laudatóri, -ae, -a súmus
2. laudatóri, -ae, -a éstis
3. laudatóri, -ae, -a sunt

I was praised, have been praised
you were praised, have been praised
he, she, it was praised, has been praised
we were praised, have been praised
you were praised, have been praised
they were praised, have been praised

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

I shall have been praised, etc.

1. laudátus, -a, -um érō
2. laudátus, -a, -um éris
3. laudátus, -a, -um érit

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I had been praised, etc.

1. laudátus, -a, -um éram
2. laudátus, -a, -um érās
3. laudátus, -a, -um érat
1. laudātī, -ae, -a ērīmus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a ēritis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a ērunt

1. laudātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a erātīs
3. laudātī, -ae, -a erant

**USAGE AND TRANSLATION**

Although *sum* + the participle function together in Latin as a verbal unit, the participle in essence is a type of predicate adjective; i.e., *puella laudāta est* = *puella est laudāta*, cp. *puella est bona*. Consequently, and logically, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Just as Latin uses the present, future, and imperfect of *sum*, *esse* to form these perfect system passive verbs, so English uses the present, future, and past tenses of the verb *to have* as perfect system (active and passive) auxiliaries: *laudātus est*, *he has been praised* (or, simple past, *was praised*); *laudātus erit*, *he will have been praised*; *laudātus erat*, *he had been praised*.¹ Be careful to avoid such common mistranslations as *is praised* for *laudātus est* and *was praised* for *laudātus erat* (caused by looking at the forms of *esse* and the participle separately, rather than seeing them as a unit).

The following examples illustrate these rules of form, usage, and translation:

Puella laudāta est, *the girl has been* (or *was*) praised.
Puellae laudātae erant, *the girls had been* praised.
Puellae laudātae erunt, *the girls will have been* praised.
Puerī monitī sunt, *the boys have been* (were) warned.
Perīculum nōn visum erat, *the danger had not been seen.*
Perīcula nōn visa sunt, *the dangers were not seen.*
Litterae scriptae erunt, *the letter will have been written.*

**THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN**

As with the English interrogative pronoun (who, whose, whom? what, which?), the Latin interrogative pronoun *quis, quid* asks for the identity of a person or thing: e.g., *quid legis?* *what are you reading?* and *quis illum librum legit?* *who is reading that book?* In the plural the forms of the Latin interrogative pronoun are identical to those of the relative pronoun; in the singular, also, it follows the pattern of the relative with two exceptions: (1) the mascu-

¹ The perfect system tenses are sometimes (and with greater clarity, in fact) called the present perfect, future perfect, and past perfect; from the use of present, future, and past tense auxiliaries discussed in this chapter, you can see the appropriateness of this terminology.
line and the feminine have the same forms, (2) the nominative forms have their distinctive spellings *quis*, *quid* (and *quid* is also, of course, the neut. acc. form).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>quīs</td>
<td>quīd</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>cuiús</td>
<td>cuiús</td>
<td>quórum</td>
<td>quórum</td>
<td>quórum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quiús</td>
<td>quiús</td>
<td>quiús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td>quós</td>
<td>quās</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quiús</td>
<td>quiús</td>
<td>quiús</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE**

As with the English interrogative adjective (which, what, what kind of), the Latin interrogative adjective *qui*, *quae*, *quod* asks for more specific identification of a person or thing: e.g., *quem librum legis?* which (or what) book are you reading? and *quae fēmina illum librum legit?* which woman is reading that book? The forms of the interrogative adjective are identical to those of the relative pronoun, in both the singular and the plural.

**THE INTERROGATIVES AND RELATIVE DISTINGUISHED**

The forms *quis* and *quid* are easily recognized as interrogative pronouns, but otherwise the interrogative pronoun, the interrogative adjective, and the relative pronoun can only be distinguished by their function and context, not by their forms. The following points will make the distinction simple:

- the relative pronoun usually introduces a subordinate clause, has an antecedent, and does not ask a question (in fact, relative clauses answer questions, in the sense that they are adjectival and provide further information about their antecedents: e.g., *liber quem legis est meus*, the book which you are reading is mine);

- the interrogative pronoun asks a question about the identity of a person or thing, has no antecedent, and often introduces a sentence with a question mark at the end (an exception is the “indirect question,” introduced in Ch. 30); and

- the interrogative adjective asks for more specific identification of a person or thing and both precedes and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it is asking about.
Consider these additional examples, and determine whether a relative pronoun, an interrogative pronoun, or an interrogative adjective is used in each one:

**Quis** librum tibi dedit? *Who gave the book to you?*
Vir qui librum tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man who gave the book to you praised you.*

**Quem** librum tibi dedit? *Which book did he give you?*

**Cuius** librum Cicerō tibi dedit? *Whose book did Cicero give to you?*

**Cuius** librum fuit Cicerō auctor? *Of which book was Cicero the author?*
Vir cuius librum Cicerō tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man whose book Cicero gave to you praised you.*

Cui amīcō librum dedisti? *To which friend did you give the book?*
Cui librum Cicerō dedit? *To whom did Cicero give the book?*
Vir cui Cicerō librum dedit tē laudāvit, *the man to whom Cicero gave the book praised you.*

**Quid** dedit? *What did he give?*
**Quod** praemium dedit? *What reward did he give?* (praemium, -ī.)
Praemium quod dedit erat magnum, *the reward which he gave was large.*

Ā quō praemium datum est? *By whom was the reward given?*
Vir ā quō praemium datum est tē laudāvit, *the man by whom the reward was given praised you.*

**Quō** praemīō ille mōtus est? *By which reward was that man motivated?*

**VOCABULARY**

argūmentum, -ī, n., proof, evidence, argument (argumentation, argumentative)
auctor, auctóris, m., increaser; author, originator (authority, authorize)
beneficiō, -īn, n., benefit, kindness; favor (benefice, beneficence, beneficial, beneficiary; cp. faciō)
familia, -ae, f., household, family (familial, familiar, familiarity, familiarize)
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece
iūdex, iūdícis, m., judge, juror (judge, judgment; cp. iūdicum, below, iūs, iūriā, Ch. 39, iūstus, Ch. 40)
iūdicum, -īn, n., judgment, decision, opinion; trial (adjudge, adjudicate, judicial, judicious, injudicious, misjudge, prejudge, prejudice)
scélus, scéleris, n., evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness
certus, -a, -um, definite, sure, certain, reliable (ascertain, certify, certificate)
gravis, grave, heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous (aggravate, grief, grievance, grieve, grave, gravity)
immortālis, immortal, not subject to death, immortal (cp. mors)
at, conj. but; but, mind you; but, you say; a more emotional adversative than sed
nisi, conj., if . . . not, unless; except (nisi prius)
contra, prep. + acc., against (contra- in compounds such as contradict, contrast, contravene, contrapuntal; contrary, counter, encounter, country, pro and con)
iam, adv., now, already, soon
delēctō (1), to delight, charm, please (delectable, delectation; cp. delēc- tātiō, Ch. 27)
liberō (1), to free, liberate (liberate, liberation, liberal, deliver; cp. liber, libertās)
pārō (1), to prepare, provide; get, obtain (apparatus, compare, parachute, parapet, parasol, pare, parry, repair, reparation, separate, several)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quis libertātem eōrum eō tempore délēre coepit?
2. Cuius libertās ab istō auctōre deinde délēta est?
3. Quōs librōs bonōs poēta caecus herī recitāvit?
4. Fēminae librōs difficilēs crās legent quōs mīsistī?
5. Omnia flūmina in mare fluunt et cum eō miscentur.
6. Itaque id genus lūdōrum levīum, quod ā multīs familiīs laudābātur, nōs ipsī numquam cupidimus.
7. Puērī et puellae propter facta bona ā mātrībus patribusque laudātae sunt.
8. Cūr īstī vēritātem timēbant, quā multī adiūtī erant?
9. Hostīs trāns ingēns flūmen in Graecīa deinde nāvīgāvit.
10. Quī vir fortis clārusque, dē quō lēgīsti, aetātem brevem mortemque celerem exspectābat?
11. Quae studia graviā tē semper délēcunt, aut quae nunc désiderās?
12. Who saw the six men who had prepared this?
13. What was neglected by the second student yesterday?
14. We were helped by the knowledge which had been neglected by him.
15. Whose plans did the old men of all cities fear? Which plans did they esteem?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAＥ

1. Quae est nātūra animī? Est mortālis. (Lucretius.)
2. Illa argūmenta visā sunt et graviā et certa. (Cicero.)
3. Quid nōs facere contrā istōs et scelera eōrum dēbēmus? (Cicero.)
4. Quid ego ēgī? In quod perīculum iactus sum? (Terence.)
5. Ō dī immortālēs! In quā urbe vīvimus? Quam cīvitātem habēmus? Quae scelera vidēmus? (Cicero.)
6. Quī sunt bonī cīvēs nisi eī quī beneficiā patriae memoriā tenent? (Cicero.)
7. Alīa, quae pecūniā parantur, ab eō stultō parāta sunt; at mōrès eius vērōs amīcōs parāre nōn potuērunt. (Cicero.)

THE AGED PLAYWRIGHT SOPHOCLES HOLDS HIS OWN

Quam multa senēs in mentibus tenent! Sī studium grave et labor et probitās in senectūte remanent, saepe manēnt etiam memoria, scientia, sapientiaque.

Sophoclēs, scriptor ille Graecus, ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; sed propter hoc studium familiam neglegere vidēbatur et a filiīs in iūdi-cium vocātus est. Tum auctor eam tragoediam quam sēcum habuit et quam proximē scripsērat, “Oedipum Colōnēum,” iūdicibus recitāvit. Ubi hæc tragoedia recitāta est, senex sententīs iūdicum est liberātus.

(Cicero, De Senectūte, 7.22.—summam, extreme.—tragoedia, -ae: the diphthong oe has become e in the English word.—proximē, adv., shortly before.—“Oedipus at Colonus.”)

Sophocles
Roman copy, 4th century B.C.
Museo Gregoriano Profano
Vatican Museums, Vatican State
CATULLUS BIDS A BITTER FAREWELL TO LESBIA

Valē, puella—iam Catullus obdiurat.

... 15 Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibi manet vīta?
     Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
     Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
     Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdiurā.

(*Catullus 8.12, 15–19; meter: choliambic. See L.A. 1, below (and cp. the adaptation of this passage in Ch. 2). obdiurāre, to be hard.—scelestus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed.—vae tē, woe to you.—Quae, with vīta.—adībit, will visit.—dīcēris, will you be said.—bāsiāre, to kiss —cui, here = cuius.—labellum, -ī, lip.—mordēre, to bite.—dēstinātus, -a, -um, resolved, firm.)

MESSAGE FROM A BOOKCASE

Sēlectōs nisi dās mihī libellōs,
admittam tīnēās truncēsque blattās!

(*Martial 14.37; meter: hendecasyllabic.—sēlectus, -a, -um, select, carefully chosen.—tīnea, -ae, maggot, bookworm.—trux, gen. trucis, fierce, savage.—blatta, -ae, cockroach.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings


LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte!—quid agitis? We’ve been seeing quid in that idiom (how are you doing? not what are you doing?) ever since Ch. 2, and do you recall quid novī, what’s new?, from the discussion of the gen. of the whole in Ch. 15? Even before beginning your study of Latin you’d likely encountered the common phrase quid prō quō, one thing in return for another (= “tit for tat”—quid was often equivalent to the indefinite something) and you may even have run into quidnunc, a “busybody” (lit., what-now?!) The interrogative adj. has also come into Eng.: quō jūre (= classical iūre), by what (legal) right, quō animō, with what intention, and quō modo, in what manner.

You learned iacīo, iacere, iēci, iactum in Ch. 15; you can now recognize the perfect passive form in Julius Caesar’s famous dictum, alea iacta est, the die has been cast, a remark he made when crossing the Rubicon river in northern Italy in 49 B.C. and embarking upon civil war with Pompey the Great. Discipuli discipulaeque, valēte!
FOURTH DECLENSION

The fourth declension presents fewer problems than the third and contains fewer nouns; most are masculine, with the nominative singular in -us, but there are some feminines, also in -us (manus, hand, and domus, house, appear in this book), and a very few neuters, with the nominative singular in -ū.

As with all nouns, in order to decline, simply add the new endings presented below to the base; note that the characteristic vowel u appears in all the endings except the dative and ablative plural (and even there a few nouns have -ubus for -ibus) and that, of all the -us endings, only the masculine and feminine nominative singular has a short -u-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>frūctus, -ūs, m.</th>
<th>cornū, -ūs, n.</th>
<th>Endings</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>frūctus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>frūctūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>frūctūi</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-ūi</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>frūctum</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>frūctū</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remember that there are also -us nouns in the second and third declensions, e.g., amicus and corpus; it is a noun’s genitive ending, not the nominative, that determines its declension, so it is imperative that you memorize the full vocabulary entry for every new noun you encounter. Remember, too, that a noun and modifying adjective, though they must agree in number, gender, and case, will not necessarily have the same endings, hence fructus dulcis, fructus dulcis, etc., sweet fruit; manus mea, manūs meae, etc., my hand; cornū longum, cornūs longī, etc., a long horn; etc.

ABLATIVES OF PLACE FROM WHICH AND SEPARATION

The ablatives of place from which and separation are two very common and closely related constructions (which should be added now to your list of ablative case uses). The principal difference is that the former, which you have in fact already encountered in your readings, virtually always involves a verb of active motion from one place to another; nearly always, too, the ablative is governed by one of the prepositions ab, de, or ex (away from, down from, out of):

Graeci ā patriā suā ad Italiam navigāverunt, the Greeks sailed from their own country to Italy.
Flūmen de montibus in mare flūxit, the river flowed down from the mountains into the sea.
Multī ex agrīs in urbem venient, many will come from the country into the city.
Cicerō hostēs ab urbe mīsit, Cicero sent the enemy away from the city.

The ablative of separation, as the terminology suggests, implies only that some person or thing is separated from another; there is no active movement from one place to another; and sometimes there is no preposition, particularly with certain verbs meaning “to free,” “to lack,” and “to deprive,” which commonly take an ablative of separation:

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe prohibuit, Cicero kept the enemy away from the city (cp. the similar example above).
Eós timóre līberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

Agri colaē pecūniā saepe carēbant, *the farmers often lacked money.*

**VOCABULARY**

coniūrāti, -ōrum, m. pl., *conspirators* (conjure, conjurer; cp. *coniūrātiō*, conspiracy, conjuration)

córnu, córnus, n., *horn* (corn—not the grain, but a thick growth of skin; cornea, corner, cornet, cornucopia, unicorn)

frúctus, frúctus, m., *fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment* (fructify, fructose, frugal)

génū, génus, n., *knee* (genuflect, genuflection; *knee* and *genū* are cognates)

mánus, mánus, f., *hand; handwriting; band* (manual, manufacture, manuscript, emancipate, manacle, manage, manacle, maneuver)

métus, -iús (= *métus*; subsequent 4th decl. nouns will be abbreviated in this way), m., *fear; dread, anxiety* (meticulous; cp. *metuō*, Ch. 38)

mōns, mōntis, m., *mountain* (mount, mountainous, Montana, amount, catamount, paramount, surmount, tantamount)

senátus, -iús, m., *senate* (senatorial; cp. *senex*)

sénus, -iús, m., *feeling, sense* (sensation, sensory, sensual, sensuous, senseless, insensate, sensible, sensitive; cp. *sentīō*)

sérviūs, servitūtis, f., *servitude, slavery* (cp. *servō*)

spíritus, -iús, m., *breath, breathing; spirit, soul* (spiritual, spiritous, conspire, inspire, expire, respiratory, transpire; cp. *spírāre, to breathe*)

vérsum, -iús, m., *line of verse* (versify, versification; cp. *vertō*, Ch. 23)

commúnis, commūne, *common, general, of the community* (communal, commune, communicate, communicable, communion, communism, community, excommunicate)

déxter, déxtra, dēxtrum, *right, right-hand* (dexterity, dextrous, ambidextrous)

sinístér, sinístra, sinístrum, *left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened* (sinister, sinistral, sinistrodextral, sinistrorse)

cáreō, carēre, cáruī, caritūrum + abl. of separation, *to be without, be deprived of; want, lack; be free from* (caret)

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, *to ward off; defend, protect* (defendant, defense, defensible, defensive, fence, fencing, fend, fender, offend)

discédō, -cédere, -cēsī, -cēssum, *to go away, depart* (cp. *cēdō*, Ch. 28)

ōdi, ōdivide, ōsōrum (a so-called “defective” verb, having only perf. system forms and a fut. act. participle), *to hate* (odious; cp. *odiōm*, Ch. 38)

prohibēō, -hibére, -hibuī, -hibitum, *to keep (back), prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit* (prohibitive, prohibition, prohibitory; cp. *habeō*)
pronuntiō (1), to proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce (pronouncement, pronunciation; cp. nuntius, messenger, message)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Etiam senes fructibus sapientiae et consiliis argumentisque certis saepe carent.
3. Quoniam nimis fortia facta faciebat, aetās cius erat brevis.
4. Illa medica facere poterat multa manū dextrā sed sinistrā manū paucā.
5. Veritās nōs metū gravē iam liberābit quō diū terrītī sumus.
6. Quibus generibus scelerum sinistrōrum illae duae civitātēs dēlētae sunt?
7. Quī mortālis sine amīcitiā et probitāte et beneficiō in aliōs potest esse beatūs?
8. Pater pecūniam ex Graecia in suam patriam movere coeperat, nam familia discēdere cupīvit.
9. Ā quibus studium difficultium artium eō tempore neglectum est?
10. Ubi versūs illius auctūris clāri lēctī sunt, auditōrēs delectātī sunt.
11. Sē cito iēcērunt ad genua iūdicum, quī autem nūllam clementiam dēmōnstrāvērunt.
12. We cannot have the fruits of peace, unless we ourselves free our families from heavy dread.
13. Those bands of unfortunate men and women will come to us from other countries in which they are deprived of the benefits of citizenship.
14. The old men lacked neither games nor serious pursuits.
15. Who began to perceive our common fears of serious crime?

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Cornua cervum à periculis dēfendunt. (Martial.—cervus, -i, stag.)
2. Oedipūs duōbus oculis sē prīvāvit. (Cicero.—prīvāre, to deprive.)
3. Themistoclēs bellō Persicō Graeciam servitūte liberāvit. (Cicero.—Persicus, -a, -um, Persian.)
4. Dēmosthenēs multōs versūs ūnō spīritū prōnuntiābat. (Cicero.)
5. Persicōs apparatūs ōdī. (Horace.—apparātus, -ūs, equipment, display.)
6. Iste communī sensū caret. (Horace.)
7. Senectūs nōs prīvat omnibus voluptātibus neque longē abest ā morte. (Cicero.—longē, adv. of longus.—absūm, to be away.)
8. Nūllus accusātor caret culpā; omnēs peccāvimus. (Seneca.—accusātor, -ōris.—peccāre, to sin.)
9. Nūlla pars vītae vacāre officiō potest. (Cicero.—vacāre, to be free from.)

10. Prīma virtūs est vītiō carēre. (Quintilian.)

11. Vir scelere vacuus nōn eget iaculīs neque arcū. (Horace.—vacuus, -a, -um, free from.—egēre, to need.—iaculum, -ī, javelin.—arcus, -ūs, bow.)

12. Magnī tumultūs urbem eō tempore miscēbant. (Cicero.—tumultus, -ūs.)

13. Litterae senātūrī populōque Allobrogum manibus consōrītōrum ipsōrum erant scriptae. (Cicero.—Allobrogēs, -gum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe whom the Catilinarian conspirators tried to arouse against Rome.)

**CICERO URGES CATILINE’S DEPARTURE FROM ROME**


(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.3ff; see the readings in Chs. 11 and 14 above, and “Evidence and Confession,” Ch. 30.—cōnsultum, -ī, decree.—vehemēns, gen. vehemēnitis.—scelerātus, -a, -um, adj. from scelus.—Manlius was one of Catiline’s principal fellow conspirators.)
ETYMOLOGY

The Roman *senate* was in origin a council of elders, hence the connection with *senex*.

If one knows the derivation of “caret,” one is not likely to confuse this word with “carat.”

---

**In the readings**


**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!**

*Salvête!* This chapter’s Vocab. provides some “handy” items: can you explain the etymologies of “manumit,” “manuscript,” and “manufacture”? A “manual” is the Latinate equivalent of the Germanic “handbook.” Then there’s the old Roman proverb *manus manum lavat* (*lavāre*, to bathe, gives us “lavatory”), *one hand washes the other*. You can see the right-handed bias in the etymologies of “dexterity” and “sinister” (from the ancient superstition that bad signs and omens appeared to one’s left) and even “ambidextrous” (from *ambo*, both, two: is having “two right hands” better than having two left hands?).

And speaking of hands, how about fingers? The Latin word is *digitus*, -ī, which gives us “digit,” “digital,” “prestidigitation” (for a magician’s quick fingers), and even “digitalis,” a heart medication from a plant whose flowers are finger-shaped. These appendages are also handy for counting (*numerāre*): *prīmus digitus*, *secundus digitus*, *tertius*... etc. (*Pote*stisne *numerāre omnēs digitōs vestrōs, discipulī et discipulae*? If not, look back at Ch. 15 and review your *numerī!*) The Romans had special names for each of the fingers, beginning with the thumb, *pollex*, then *index* (from *indicāre*, to point), *medius* (middle) or *infāmis* (infamous, evil—*not* all our body language is new!), *quartus* or *ānulārius* (where they often wore ānuli, rings: see “Ringo,” Ch. 31), and *minimus* (*the smallest*) or *auriculārius* (the *parvus digitus*, and so handy for scratching or cleaning one’s aurēs!). *Valete!*
The pattern of substituting passive endings for active endings, which you learned in Ch. 18 for the present system passives of first and second conjugation verbs, generally applies to third and fourth conjugation verbs as well; the only exceptions are in the second person singular present tense (set in bold in the following paradigms) and the present infinitive of third conjugation verbs.

**PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE**

| 1. ágor | aúdior | cápior |
| 2. ágeris | audíris | cáperis |
| 3. ágitur | audítur | cápitur |

| 1. ágimur | audímur | cápimur |
| 2. ágíminī | audíminī | capíminī |
| 3. agúntur | audiúntur | capiúntur |

**FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE**

| 1. ágar | aúdiar | cápiar |
| 2. agēris | audiēris | capiēris |
| 3. agētur | audiētur | capiētur |
1. agémur audiémur capiémur
2. agémìnī audiémìnī capiéminī
3. agéntur audiéntur capiéntur

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. agébar audiébar capiébar
2. agébāris audiēbāris capiébāris
3. agébātur audiēbātur capiébātur

Be careful not to confuse the second person singular present and future third conjugation forms, which are distinguished only by the vowel quantity (ageris vs. agēris). Note that capiō and audiō are identical throughout the present system active and passive, except for variations in -i- vs. -ē- (in the present tense only) and the second singular passive caperis vs. audēris. Remember that the perfect passive system for third and fourth conjugation verbs follows the universal pattern introduced in Ch. 19.

PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE

The present infinitive passive of the fourth conjugation is formed by changing the final -e to -i, as in the first two conjugations; but in the third conjugation, including -īō verbs, the whole -ere is changed to -ī.

audīre, to hear audīrī, to be heard (cp. laudārī, monērī)
ágere, to lead ágī, to be led
cápere, to take cápī, to be taken

SYNOPSIS

To test your ability to conjugate a Latin verb completely, you may be asked to provide a labelled “synopsis” of the verb in a specified person and number, in lieu of writing out all of the verb’s many forms. Following is a sample third person singular synopsis of agō in the indicative mood:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>ágit</td>
<td>áget</td>
<td>agēbat</td>
<td>égit</td>
<td>égerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>ágitur</td>
<td>agētur</td>
<td>agēbātur</td>
<td>áctus est</td>
<td>áctus érit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCABULARY

cása, -ae, f., house, cottage, hut (casino)
causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; case, situation; causā, abl. with a preceding gen., for the sake of, on account of (accuse, because, excuse)
fénestra, -ae, f., window (fenestra, fenestrated, fenestration, fenestella, defenestration)
finis, finis, m., end, limit, boundary; purpose; fines, -ium, boundaries, territory (affinity, confine, define, final, finale, finance, fine, finesse, finial, finicky, finish, finite, infinite, paraffin, refine)
gēns, gēntis, f., clan, race, nation, people (gentile, gentle, genteel, gentry; cp. genus, ingenium, Ch. 29)
mundus, -i, m., world, universe (mundane, demimonde)
nāvis, nāvis, f., ship, boat (naval, navy, navigable, navigate, nave; cp. nāvigation)
sālūs, salūtis, f., health, safety; greeting (salubrious, salutary, salutation, salute, salutatorian, salutatory; cp. salveō, salvo)
Tróia, -ae, f., Troy
vīcīnus, -i, m., and vīcīna, -ae, f., neighbor (vicinity)
vulgus, -i, n. (sometimes m.), the common people, mob, rabble (vulgar, vulgarity, vulgarize, vulgate, divulge)
āspēr, āspēra, āspērum, rough, harsh (asperity, exasperate, exasperation)
ātque or ac (only before consonants), conj., and, and also, and even
ītum, adv., again, a second time (iterate, iterative, reiterate, reiteration)
contineō, -tinere, -tinni, -tentum, to hold together; contain, keep, enclose, restrain (content, discontent, malcontent, continual, continuous, incontinent, countenance; cp. teneō)
iūbeō, iūbēre, iūssī, iūssum, to bid, order, command (jussive)
laborō (1), to labor; be in distress (laboratory, laborer, belabor; cp. labor)
rāpiō, rāpere, rāpuī, rāptum, to seize, snatch, carry away (rapacious, rapid, rapine, rupture, ravage, ravine, ravish; cp. rēripō, Ch. 22)
relinquo, -linquere, -liqui, -līctum, to leave behind, leave, abandon, desert (relinquish, reliquary, relict, relic, delinquent, dereliction)
scīō, scire, scīvī, scītum, to know (science, scientific, conscience, conscious, prescience, scilicet; cp. scientia, nesciō, Ch. 25)
tángō, tāngere, tētīgī, tāctum, to touch (tangent, tangible, tact, tactile, contact, contagious, contiguous, contingent, integer, taste, tax)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Laus autem nimis saepe est neque certa neque magna.
2. Senēs in gente nostrā ab filiīs numquam neglegēbantur.
3. Quis tum iussus erat Graeciam metū liberāre, familiās defendere, atque hostēs ā patriā prohibēre?
4. Salūtis commūnis causā eōs coniūrātōs ex urbe discēdere ac trāns flūmen ad montēs dūcī iussit.
5. Aliē auctōrēs coeōrunt spīritūs nostrōs contrā iūdīciōnem atque argumēnta senātūs iterum movēre, quod omnēs metū novō terrītī erant.
6. Omnia genera servitūtis nōbīs videntur aspera.
7. Rapiētūrne igitur Cicerō ex manibus istōrum?
8. Quī finēs metūs atque servitūtis in eā cfvītāte nunc potest vidērī?
9. At senectūtis bona causā iam bene vīvere dēbēmus.
10. In familiā eōrum erant duae filiae atque quattuor filīī.
11. Casa viēnī nostri habuit paucās fenestrās per quās vidēre potuit.
13. Propēr beneficia et sēnsum commūnem tyrannī, paucī eum odērunt.
14. The truth will not be found without great labor.
15. Many nations which lack true peace are being destroyed by wars.
16. Their fears can now be conquered because our deeds are understood by all.
17. Unless serious pursuits delight us, they are often neglected for the sake of money or praise.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincitur. (Publilius Syrus.)
2. Novius est viēנīs meus et manū dexterā tangī dē fenestrīs meīs poest. (Martialis.—Novius, a personal name.)
3. Nōnne iūdīcēs iubēbunt hunc in vincula dūcī et ad mortem rapī?
   (Cicerō.—nōnne introduces a question which anticipates the answer “yes”; see Ch. 40.—vinculum, -i, chain.)
4. Altera aētās bellīs civīlibus teritur et Rōma ipsa suīs vīribus dēlētur.
   (Horacē.—civīlis, -e.—terū, -ere, trīvī, trītum, to wear out.)
5. At aēcītia nūllō locō exclūditur; numquam est intempestīva aut si­nistra; multa beneficia continet. (Cicerō.—exclūdō, -ere, to shut out.—intempestīvus, -a, -um, untimely.)
6. Futūra scītī nōn possunt. (Cicerō.—futūrus, -a, -um.)
7. Prīncipiō ipse mundus deōrum hominumque causā factus est, et quae in eō sunt, ea parāta sunt ad frūctum hominum. (Cicerō.)
8. Quam cōpīōsē a Xenophonte agrīcultūra laudāitur in eō librō quī “Oeconomicus” inscribītur. (Cicerō.—cōpīōsē, adv., cp. cōpia.—Xenophōn, -phōtis.—agrīcultūra, -ae.—inscribō, -ere, to entitle.)
9. Vulgus vult dēcipi. (*Phaedrus.—vult, want (irreg. form).—dēcipiō, -ere, to deceive.)
10. Ubi scientia ac sapientia inveniuntur? (Job.)
11. Vēritās nimis saepe labōrat; extinguitur numquam. (Livy.—ex­stinguō, -ere.)
VIRGIL’S MESSIANIC ECLOGUE

Venit iam magna aetās nova; dē caelō mittitur puer, quī vītam deōrum habēbit deōsque vidēbit et ipse vidēbitur ab illis. Hic puer reget mundum cui virtūtēs patēs pācem dedērunt. Pauca mala, autem, remanēbunt, quae hominēs iubēbunt labōrāre atque bellum asperum gerere. Erunt etiam altera bella atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittitur Achillēs. Tum, puer, ubi iam longa aetās tē virum fecerit, erunt nūlli labōrēs, nūlla bella; nautae ex navi­bus discēdent, agricolae quoque iam agrōs relinquent, terra ipsa omnibus hominibus omnia parābit. Currite, aetātēs; incipe, parve puer, scīre mātrem, et erit satis spīritūs mihi tua dīcere facta.

(Virgil, Eclogae 4; written ca. 40 B.C., the poem from which this reading is adapted was taken by many early Christians as a prophecy of the birth of Christ.—altera bella, the same wars over again.—scīre mātrem, i.e., to be born.)
ETYMOLGY

Exemplī causā was Cicero’s equivalent of the somewhat later exemplī grātiā, whence our abbreviation e.g.

Romance derivatives from some of the words in the vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>causa</td>
<td>cosa</td>
<td>cosa</td>
<td>chose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis</td>
<td>fine</td>
<td>fin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēns</td>
<td>gente</td>
<td>gente</td>
<td>gent; gens (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continēre</td>
<td>continere</td>
<td>contener</td>
<td>contenir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mundus</td>
<td>mondo</td>
<td>mundo</td>
<td>monde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the readings

3. vinculum (in mathematics). 4. civil; cp. cīvis, cīvitās.—trite, contrite, contrition, attrition, detriment. 5. ex + claudō (-ere, clausi, clausum, to shut, close): conclude, include, preclude, seclude, clause, close, closet, cloister.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulae atque discipuli! Quid novī? Well, how about some more well-known Latin phrases and mottoes related to the verba nova in this chapter’s Vocab.? First, for you Godfather fans, there’s It. cōsa nostra, from causa nostra (shh!). Vestra causa tōta nostra est is the motto of the American Classical League, one of our national professional organizations for teachers of Latin, Greek, and classical humanities. The University of Georgia’s motto is et docère et rērum exquīrere causās, both to teach and to seek out the causes of things (i.e., to conduct research—for rērum, see the next chapter). Here are some others: finis corōnat opus, the end crowns the work; gēns togāta, the toga-clad nation (a phrase Virgil applies to Rome, where the toga was a man’s formal attire); tangere ulcus, to touch a sore spot (lit., ulcer); sīc trānsit glōria mundī, so passes the glory of the world (Thomas à Kempis, on the transitory nature of worldly things—some comedian who shall forever remain nameless has offered an alternate translation, to wit, “Gloria always gets sick on the subway at the beginning of the week”!!!); and the abbreviation sc., meaning supply (something omitted from a text but readily understood), comes from scīlicet, short for scīre licet, lit. it is permitted for you to understand. Hic est finis: valēte!
Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where; Summary of Ablative Uses

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

This chapter introduces the fifth and last of the Latin noun declensions. The characteristic vowel is -e-, and -ē or -ēi is the genitive and dative ending (the gen./dat. -e- is long when preceded by a vowel, short when preceded by a consonant; cp. diē and reī below); to avoid confusion, the genitive form will be spelled out in full for fifth declension nouns (as they are with third declension nouns) in the chapter vocabularies. Nouns of this declension are all feminine, except diēs (day) and its compound merīdiēs (midday), which are masculine.

To decline, follow the usual pattern, i.e., drop the genitive ending to find the base, then add the new endings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēs, reī, f. thing</td>
<td>diēs, diēi, m. day</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>réi</td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>-ēi, -ēī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēī</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>-ēī, -ēī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>diēm</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rérum</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>-ērum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rébus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rébus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OBSERVATIONS

Notice that the genitive and dative singular are identical (true of the first declension also), as are the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural (the vocatives, too, of course), and the dative and ablative plural (true of all declensions); word order, context, and other cues such as subject-verb agreement will help you distinguish them in a sentence.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE AND SUMMARY OF ABLATIVE USES

You have thus far been introduced to these specific ablative case uses: ablative of means, manner, accompaniment (Ch. 14), ablative with cardinal numerals and ablative of time (Ch. 15), ablative of agent (Ch. 18), place from which and separation (Ch. 20).

You have in fact also encountered frequently the construction known as ablative of “place where,” which consists most commonly of the preposition in, in/on, or sub, under; plus a noun in the ablative to describe where someone or something is located or some action is being done:

In magnā casā vivunt, they live in a large house.

Nāvis sub aquā fuit, the ship was under water.

Some of these case uses require a preposition in Latin, others do not, and in some instances the practice was variable. A case in point, and something to be carefully noted, is that in the ablative of manner construction, when the noun is modified by an adjective, cum is frequently omitted; if cum is used, it is usually preceded by the adjective (e.g., id magnā cūrā fēcit and id magnā cum cūrā fēcit, both meaning he did it with great care).

The following summary reviews each of the ablative uses studied thus far:

I. THE ABLATIVE WITH A PREPOSITION

The ablative is used with:

1. cum to indicate *accompaniment*
   Cum amīcō id scrīpsit, he wrote it with his friend.

2. cum to indicate *manner*; cp. II.2 below
   Cum cūrā id scrīpsit, he wrote it with care.
   Magnā cum cūrā id scrīpsit, he wrote it with great care.

3. in and sub to indicate *place where*
   In urbe id scrīpsit, he wrote it in the city.
4. **ab, de, ex** to indicate *place from which*
   Ex urbe id missit, *he sent it from the city.*

5. **ab, de, ex** to indicate *separation;* cp. II. 4 below
   Ab urbe eós prohibuit, *he kept them from the city.*

6. **ab** to indicate *personal agent*
   Ab amīcō id scriptum est, *it was written by his friend.*

7. **ex** or **de** following certain *cardinal numerals* to indicate a group of
   which some part is specified
   Trēs ex nāvibus discērunt, *three of the ships departed.*

II. THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

The ablative is used without a preposition to indicate:

1. *means*
   Suā manū id scripsit, *he wrote it with his own hand.*

2. *manner;* when an adjective is used
   Magnā cūrā id scripsit, *he wrote it with great care.*

3. *time when or within which*
   Eō tempore or ūnā hōrā id scripsit, *he wrote it at that time or in one hour.*

4. *separation,* especially with ideas of freeing, lacking, depriving
   Metū eōs liberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

VOCABULARY

- **dīēs, dīēr, m.,** *day* (diary, dial, dismal, diurnal, journal, adjourn, journey, meridian, sojourn)
- **fērrum, -ī, n.,** *iron; sword* (ferric, ferrite, ferro-, farrier)
- **fidēs, fideī, f.,** *faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection* (confide, diffident, infidel, perfidy, fealty)
- **ignis, ignis, m.,** *fire* (igneous, ignite, ignition)
- **mōdus, -ī, m.,** *measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way* (model, moderate, modern, modest, modicum, modify, mood)
- **rēs, rēr, f.,** *thing, matter, business, affair* (real, realistic, realize, reality, real estate)
- **rēs pūblīca, rēr pūblīcae, f.,** *state, commonwealth, republic* (Republican)
- **spēs, spēr, f.,** *hope* (despair, desperate; cf. spērō, Ch. 25)
- **aēquus, -a, -um,** *level, even; calm; equal, just; favorable* (equable, equanimity, equation, equator, equilateral, equilibrium, equinox, equity, equivalent, equivocal, inequity, inequality, adequate, coequal)
- **fēlix, gen. fēlīcis,** *lucky, fortunate, happy* (felicitate, felicitation, felicitous, infelicitous, felicity, infelicity; Felix)
- **incērτus, -a, -um (in-certus),** *uncertain, unsure, doubtful* (incertitude)
- **Latiνus, -a, -um,** *Latin* (Latinate, Latinist, Latinity, Latinize, Latino)
médius, -a, -um, middle; used partitively, the middle of: media urbs, the middle of the city (mediterranean, medium, median, mediate, mean, medieval, meridian, demimonde, immediate, intermediary; cp. medio-crivis, Ch. 31)
quondam, adv., formerly, once (quondam)
ultrā, adv. and prep. + acc., on the other side of; beyond (ultra, ultrasonic, ultrasound, ultraviolet, outrage, outrageous)
prōtinus, adv., immediately
cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, to distinguish, discern, perceive (discern, discernible, discreet, discrete, discretion; cp. dēcernō, Ch. 36)
eripio, -ripel'e, -ripui, -nuptum (e-rapiō), to snatch away, take away; rescue
inquit, defective verb, he says or said, placed after one or more words of a direct quotation but usually translated first
tölō, tölere, sūstuli, sublātum, to raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy (extol; cp. tolerō, ferō, Ch. 31)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Vicīnī nostrī sē in genua prōtinus iēcērunt et omnēs deōs in mundō laudāvērunt.
2. Gentēs Graeciae ingentibus montibus et parvīs fīnibus continēbantur.
3. Quis iussit illum rem pūblicam servitūte asperā līberāri?
5. Contrā aliās manūs malōrum cīvium rēs iterum parābuntur; rem pūblicam dēfendēmus et isī cito discēdent.
6. Senectūs senēs ā mediūs rēbus saepe prohibet.
7. At rēs gravēs neque vī neque spē geruntur sed cōnsiliō.
8. Si versūs hōrum duōrum poētārum neclegētis, magnā parte Rōmānārum litterārum carent.
9. Eōdem tempore nostrae spēs salūtis commūnis vestrā fidē altae sunt, spīritūs sublātī sunt, et timōrēs reliētī sunt.
10. Nova genera sceletum in hāc urbe inveniuntur quod multī etiam nunc bonīs mōribus et sēnsū commūnī carent ac nātūram sinistrām habent.
11. Vulgus multa ex fenestrās casārum Ciēciēbat.
12. Great fidelity can now be found in this commonwealth.
13. His new hopes had been destroyed by the common fear of uncertain things.
14. On that day the courage and the faith of the brave Roman men and women were seen by all.
15. With great hope the tyrant ordered those ships to be destroyed.
16. He could not defend himself with his left hand or his right.
SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Dum vita est, spes est. (Cicero.)
2. Aequum animum in rebus difficilibus servā. (Horace.)
3. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi plānē est nulla reō publica. (*Cicero.—plānē, adv., clearly.)
4. Fuērant quondam in hac reō publicā virī magnae virtūtis et antiquae fideī. (Cicero.)
5. Hanc rem publicam salvam esse volumus. (*Cicero.—volumus, we wish.)
6. Spēs consūrātōrum mollibus sententiās multōrum cīvium alitur. (Cicero.—mollis, -e, soft, mild.)
7. Rēs publica cōnsiliīs meīs eō diē ex igne atque ferrō ērepta est. (Cicero.)
8. Quod bellum ödērunt, prō pāce cum fidē labōrabant. (Livy.)
9. Dīc mihi bonā fidē: tū eam pecūniam ex eis manū dextrā nōn ēripu­istī? (Plautus.)
10. Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius.)
11. Homērus audītōrem in mediās rēs rapit. (Horace.)
12. Félix est qui potest causās rērum intellegere; et fortūnātus ille qui deōs antiquōs dīligit. (Virgil.)
14. Et mihi rēs subiungamus, nōn mē rēbus. (Horace.—subiungō, -ere, to subject.)
15. Est modus in rēbus; sunt certī finēs ultrā quōs virtūs inuenīrī nōn potest. (Horace.)

A VISIT FROM THE YOUNG INTERNS

Languēbam: sed tū comitātus prōtīnus ad mē vēnīsti centum, Symmachē, discipulīs.
Centum mē tetigēre manūs aquilōne gelātæ:
nōn habuī febris, Symmachē, nunc habēō!

(*Martial 5.9; meter: elegiac couplet.—languēre, to be weak, sick.—comitātus, -a, -um, accompanied (by).—Symmachus, a Greek name, used here for a medical school professor.—centum . . . discipulīs, abl. of agent with comitātus; the preposition was often omitted in poetry.—tetigēre = tetigerunt; for this alternate ending, see Ch. 12.—aquilō, -lōnis, m., the north wind.—gelātus, -a, -um, chilled, here modifying centum . . . manūs; cp. Eng. gel, gelatin.—febris, febris, f., fever.)
ON AMBITION AND LITERATURE, BOTH LATIN AND GREEK

Poëtae per litterās hominibus magnam perpetuamque fāmam dare possunt; multī virī,igitur, litterās dē suīs rēbus scribī cupiunt. Trahītur omnēs studīō laudis et multī glōriā dūcuntur, quae aut in litterās Graecīs aut Latinīs invenītī potest. Quī, autem, videt multum fructum glōriāe in versibus Latinīs sed nōn in Graecīs, nimium errat, quod litterae Graecae leguntur in omnibus fērē gentibus, sed Latinae in finibus suīs continentur.

(Cicero, Pro Archiō 11.26, 10.23. — fērē, adv., almost.)

ETYMOLOGY

Connected with diēs is the adj. diurnus, daily, whence come the words for “day” in Italian and French: It. giorno, Fr. jour, journée; cp. Sp. día. In late Latin there was a form diurnālis, from which derive It. giornale, Fr. journal, Eng. “journal”; cp. Sp. diario. English “dismal” stems ultimately from diēs malus.

The stem of fidēs can be found in the following words even though it may not be immediately obvious: affidavit, defy, affinity, fiancé. Eng. “faith” is from early Old Fr. feit, feid, from Latin fidem.

Other words connected with modus are: modulate, accommodate, commodious, discommode, incommode, à la mode, modus operandi.

In the readings

6. mollify, emollient, mollusk. 13. The Stoic philosophy was so called because Zeno, its founder, used to teach in a certain stoa (portico) at Athens. 14. subjunctive.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! Now that you’ve encountered merīdiēs, you understand a.m. and p.m., from ante and post meridiēm. Your physician might prescribe a medication diēbus alternīs, every other day, or diēbus tertīīs, every third day, or even b.i.d. or t.i.d., bis in diē or ter in diē (if you’ve thought about those last two twice or thrice and still can’t figure them out, look back at Ch. 15!). Other items you might encounter one of these days: diēm ex diē, day by day; diēs fēlīx, a lucky day; the legal terms diēs jūridicus and nōn jūridicus, days when court is and is not in session; and the Diēs Īræ, a medieval hymn about the Day of Judgment, part of the requiem mass. And surely you follow Horace’s advice every day and carpe diēm (an agricultural metaphor, since carpō, carpere really means to pluck or harvest from the vine or stalk—so your day, once seized, should be a bountiful cornucopia).

Now you know, too, what is meant by the common phrase, amīcus certus in rē incertā; a bona fīdē agreement is made with good faith (recognize the abl. usage?); and if your “friend indeed” is your trusty dog, you should consider dubbing him “Fido.” Carpīte omnēs diēs, discipuli discipulaeque, et valēte!
Participles

Like English, Latin has a set of verbal adjectives, i.e., adjectives formed from a verb stem, called "participles." Regular transitive verbs in Latin have four participles, two of them in the active voice (the present and future), and two in the passive (future and perfect); they are formed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>present stem + -ns (gen. -ntis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>partic. stem + -us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>participial stem + -ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pres. stem + -ndus, -nda, -ndum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is important to know the proper stem for each participle as well as the proper ending. Note that the present active and the future passive are formed on the present stem, while the perfect passive and future active are formed on the so-called "participial stem" (found by dropping the endings from the perfect passive participle, which is itself most often a verb's fourth principal part: i.e., laudāt- from laudātus, -a, -um). This pattern can perhaps best be recalled by memorizing the participles of agō, in which the difference between the present stem and the participial stem is sufficient to eliminate any confusion. It is also helpful to note that the base of the present participle is marked by -nt-, the future active by -ūr-¹, and the future passive, often called the "gerundive," by -nd-.

¹ The ending of the future active participle is very easy to remember if you keep in mind the fact that our word future comes from futūrus, -a, -um, the future (and, incidentally, the only) participle of sum.
agō, agere, ēgi, ēctum, to lead

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ágēns, agēntis, leading</td>
<td>áctus, -a, -um, led, having been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>âctūrus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>agēndus, -a, -um, (about) to be led, about to lead, going to lead, deserving or fit to be led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

English derivatives are illustrative of the sense of three of these participles: “agent” (from agēns), a person doing something; “act” (âctus, -a, -um), something done; “agenda” (agēndus, -a, -um), something to be done. The participles of three of the model verbs follow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ágēns</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>aūdīēns</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>câpiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>âctus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>audītus</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>âctūrus</td>
<td>agēndus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>auditūrus</td>
<td>audiēndus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note carefully that fourth conjugation and third conjugation -īō verbs have -iē- in both the present active participle (-iēns, -iēntis) and the future passive (-iēndus, -a, -um). Notice too that while Latin has present active, perfect passive, and future active and passive participles, the equivalents of praising, having been praised, about to praise, and (about) to be praised, it lacks both a present passive participle (being praised) and a perfect active participle (having praised).

**DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES**

Three of the four participles are declined on the pattern of magnus, -a, -um. Only the present participle has third declension forms, following essentially the model of potēns (Ch. 16), except that the ablative singular sometimes ends in -e, sometimes -ī²; the vowel before -ns in the nominative singular is always long, but before -nt- (according to the rule learned earlier) it is always short.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ágēns</td>
<td>ágēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>agēntis</td>
<td>agēntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>agēntī</td>
<td>agēntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>agēntem</td>
<td>ágēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>agēntem</td>
<td>agēntī, agēnte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

²The present participle has -ī in the ablative singular when used strictly as an attributive adjective (ā patre amantī, by the loving father) but -e when it functions verbally (e.g., with an object, patre filiūm amante, with the father loving his son) or as a substantive (ab amante, by a lover).
The etymology of the term participle, from participere, to share in (pars + capere), reflects the fact that participles share in the characteristics of both adjectives and verbs. As adjectives, participles naturally agree in gender, number, and case with the words which they modify. Sometimes also, like adjectives, they modify no expressed noun but function as nouns themselves: amans, a lover; sapiens, a wise man, philosopher; venientes, those coming.

As verbs, participles have tense and voice; they may take direct objects or other constructions used with the particular verb; and they may be modified by an adverb or an adverbial phrase:

Patrem in casâ videntèś, puella et puer ad eum cucurrèrunt, seeing their father in the house, the boy and girl ran up to him.

In Latin as in English, the tense of a participle, it should be carefully noted, is not absolute but is relative to that of the main verb. For example, the action of a present participle is contemporaneous with the action of the verb of its clause, no matter whether that verb is in a present, a past, or a future tense; in the preceding sample you can see that it was at some time in the past that the children first saw and then ran toward their father (seeing him, i.e., when they saw him, they ran up to him). A similar situation obtains for the perfect and future participles, as can be seen in the following table:

1. Present participle = action contemporaneous with that of the verb (the same time).
2. Perfect participle = action prior to that of the verb (time before).
3. Future participle = action subsequent to that of the verb (time after).

Graecì nautae, videntès Polyphèmum, timent, timuèrunt, timèbunt.
The Greek sailors, seeing Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecì nautæ, vîsî ã Polyphèmò, timent, timuèrunt, timèbunt.
The Greek sailors, (having been) seen by P., are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecì nautae, vîsûrî Polyphèmum, timent, timuèrunt, timèbunt.
The Greek sailors, about to see Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.
TRANSLATING PARTICIPIAL PHRASES AS CLAUSES

Participial phrases are used much more frequently in Latin than in English, which prefers clauses with regular finite verbs. In translating from Latin to idiomatic English, therefore, it is often preferable to transform a participial phrase (especially if it sounds stilted in English) into a subordinate clause.

In doing so you need to consider 1) the relationship between the action in the phrase and the action in the clause to which it is attached, so that you can then choose an appropriate subordinating conjunction (especially “when,” “since,” or “although”), and 2) the relativity of participial tenses, so that you can then transform the participle into the appropriate verb tense.

Thus the example given earlier, patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt, can be translated seeing their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him or, more idiomatically, when they saw their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him. Likewise Graeci nautae, vīsī à Polyphemō, timuērunt is better translated when they had been seen [time prior to main verb] by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid than the more literal having been seen by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid. Consider these further examples:

Māter, filium amāns, auxilium dat, since she loves her son [lit., loving her son], the mother gives him assistance.
Pater, filiam vivērus, casam parābat, since he was about to see his daughter, the father was preparing the house.
Puella, in casā veniens, gaudēbat, when she came into the house [lit., coming into the house], the girl was happy.

VOCABULARY

arx, àrcis, f., citadel, stronghold
dux, dūcīs, m., leader, guide; commander, general (duke, ducal, ducat, duchess, duchy, doge; cp. dūcō)
équus, -i, m., horse (equestrian, equine; cp. equa, -ae, mare)
hāsta, -ae, f., spear (hastate)
insula, -ae, f., island (insular, insularity, insulate, isolate, isolation, peninsula)
lītus, lītōris, n., shore, coast (littoral)
mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier (military, militaristic, militate, militant, militia)
orātor, orātōris, m., orator, speaker (oratory, oratorio; cp. ōrō, Ch. 36, ōrātiō, Ch. 38)
sacērdōs, sacerdōtis, m., priest (sacerdotal; cp. sacer, sacred)
aliquis, aliquid (gen. alicuius, dat. alicui, etc.; cp. decl. of quis, quid; nom. and acc. neut. pl. are aliqua), indef. pron., someone, somebody, something
quisquis, quidquid (quis repeated; cases other than nom. rare), indef. pron., whoever, whatever
magnánimus, -a, -um, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous (magnanimity)
úquam, adv., in questions or negative clauses, ever, at any time (cp. numquam)
édúcō (1), to bring up, educate (education, educator, educable; do not confuse with éducō, to lead out)
gáudēō, gáudere, gávisus sum, to be glad, rejoice (gau­dium, -i, joy, as in Latina est gaudium!)
osténdō, osténdere, osténdī, osténtum, to exhibit, show, display (ostentation, ostentatious, ostensible, ostensive; cp. tendō, stretch, extend)
pétō, pétere, petīvī, petītum, to seek, aim at, beg, beseech (appetite, competent, impetuous, petition, petulant, repeat; cp. perpetuus)
prēmō, prēmere, prēssī, prēssum, to press, press hard, pursue; -primō in compounds as seen in opprimō below (compress, depress, express, impress, imprint, print, repress, reprimand, suppress)
opprimō, -primere, -prēssī, -prēssum, to suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check (oppress, oppression, oppressive, oppressor)
vértō, vérerere, vērtī, vērsum, to turn; change; so avertō, turn away, avert,
revertō, turn back, etc. (adverse, advertise, avert, adverse, convert, controversy, divers, diverse, divorce, invert, obverse, pervert, revert, subvert, subversive, transverse, verse, version, animadvert)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Aliquid numquam ante audiūtum cernō.
2. Illum ōrātorem in mediō senātū iterum petentem finem bellōrum ac scelerum nōn adīvístis.
3. Certī fructūs pācis ab territō vulgō atque senātū cupiēbantur.
4. Qui vir magnanimus aliās gentēs gravi servītūtis liberābit?
5. Nēmō ōdēm neglēgens timōrem umquam carēbit.
6. Iliā femina fortūnāta haec cōnsilia contrā eōs malōs quondam aluit et salūtis commūnīs causā semper lāborabat.
7. Illam gentem Latinām opprēsūrī et divītias raptūrī, omnēs virōs magnae probitātēs premere ac dēlēre prōtīnus coepērunt.
8. Tolle turne hāc medicī istīs versibus novīs?
9. At viāti illīs modī aequī aliquīd iūcundī atque ōlīcis containing.
10. Quō diē ex igne et ferrō atque morte certā ēreptus es?
11. We gave many things to nations lacking hope.
12. Those ten men, (when) called, will come again with great eagerness.
13. Through the window they saw the second old man running out of his neighbor's house and away from the city.
14. He himself was overpowered by uncertain fear because he desired neither truth nor liberty.
**SENTENTIAE ANTĬQUAE**

1. Vīvēs meīs praevidīs oppressus. (Cicero.—praesidium, -iī, guard.)
2. Illī autem, tendentēs manūs dextrās, salūtem petēbant. (Livy.—tendō, -ere, to stretch, extend.)
3. Tāntalus sitiēns flūmina ab ōre fugientia tangere dēsiderābat. (Horace.—sīficre, to be thirsty.)
4. Signa rērum futūrārum mundō ā dīs ostenduntur. (Cicero.)
5. Graecia capta asperum victorem cepit. (Horace.—victor, -toris, here = Rome.)
6. Atticus Ciceroī ex patria fugeintī multam pecūniam dedit. (Nepos.—Atticus, a friend of Cicero.)
7. Si mihi eum educandum committēs, studia eius fōrmāre ab ūnitiā incipiam. (Quintilian.—fōrmāre.—infantia, -ae.)
8. Saepe stilum verte, bonum libellum scriptūrus. (Horace.—stilum vertere, to invert the stilus = to use the eraser.)
9. Cūra ārtōris dictūri ēōs audītūrōs dēlectat. (Quintilian.)
10. Mortī Sōcratīs semper illacrimō, legēns Platonem. (Cicero.—Sōcratēs, -cratis.—illacrimāre, to weep over.—Platō, -tōnis.)
11. Memoria vitae bene ācta multōrumque bene factōrum iūcunda est. (Cicero.)
12. Quī timēns vivet, līber nōn erit umquam. (Horace.—quī, as often, = is quī.)
13. Nōn īs est miser quī iussus aliquid facit, sed īs quī invītus facit. (Sene­ca.—invītus, -a, -um, unwilling; the adj. here has adverbial force, as it commonly does in Latin.)
14. Verbum semel ēmissum volat irrevocābile. (Horace.—semel, adv., once.—ē-mittere.—volāre, to fly.—irrevocābilis, -e.)

**LAOCOON SPEAKS OUT AGAINST THE TROYAN HORSE**

Participles

(Virgil, Aeneid 2.13–52; prose adaptation. — ligneus, -a, -um, wooden, of wood. — Minerva, goddess of war and protectress of the Greeks. — uterus, -i. — complère, to fill up, make pregnant. — proximus, -a, -um, nearby. — Tröianus, -a, -um, Trojan. — pandō, -ere, to open. — Lāocoōn, -onīs, m. — Nōme introduces a question anticipating an affirmative answer, Don’t you . . . ? — machina, -ae. — visūra, here to spy on. — latēre, to be hidden, be concealed. — equō, dat. with crēdite (see Ch. 35). — nē = nōn. — Danaōs = Graecōs. — et (with gerentēs) = etiam. — tremō, -ere, to tremble, shake, vibrate. — To be continued. . . . )

Trojan horse with Greek soldiers
Relief from neck of an amphora, Mykonos, 7th century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Mykonos, Greece
ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. tend, tent, tense, attend, contend, distend, extend, extent, extensive, intend, intent, intense, portend, pretend, subtend, superintendent; cp. ostendō in the vocabulary. 3. tantalize, Gk. derivative. 8. stilus, style. 10. lachrymose. 14. volatile, volley. “Laocoon”: uterine.—complete, completion, complement, complementary.—proximity, approximate.—expand, expansive.—machine, machinery, machination.—latent.—tremor, tremulous, tremulant, tremble, tremendous.

LATīNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! This chapter’s Vocab. suggests a couple of literary titles from ancient Rome: among Cicero’s dozens of books was a rhetorical treatise titled De Ōrātōre, and one of Plautus’ most popular plays was the Miles Gloriosus, usually translated The Braggart Soldier. Then there’s the medieval student song with the famous line (quite apt for college Latin students) gaudēamus, igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus, so let us rejoice, while we are young!

From vertere is verte for turn the page and verso for the left-hand page in a book (i.e., the side you see when you have just turned the page); printers call the the right-hand page the rectō.

And from the reading passage: the expression “a Trojan horse” is used of any person, group, or device that tries to subvert a government or any organization from within. Also from the Trojan saga and Virgil’s story of Aeneas’ sojourn in Carthage is the famous quotation dux fēmina facti, a woman (was) leader of the action! Gaudēte atque valete!

Athena (Minerva) constructing the Trojan horse
Red-figure Greek kylix, the Sabouroff Painter, 470–460 B.C.
Museo Archeologico, Florence, Italy
The participles which you learned in the last chapter were employed by the Romans in two very common constructions introduced below, the "ablative absolute" and the "passive periphrastic."

**ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE**

The ablative absolute is a type of participial phrase generally consisting of a noun (or pronoun) and a modifying participle in the ablative case; somewhat loosely connected to the rest of the sentence (hence the term, from *absolutum*, *loosened from, separated*) and usually set off by commas, the phrase describes some general circumstances under which the action of the sentence occurs.

*Rōmā visā, virī gaudēbant, Rome having been seen, the men rejoiced.*

As typified by this example, the ablative absolute always is self-contained, i.e., the participle and the noun it modifies are both in the same phrase and the noun of the ablative absolute phrase is not referred to at all in the attached clause. In other types of participial phrases (such as those seen in
Ch. 23), the participles modify some noun or pronoun in the attached clause; compare the following example, which has an ordinary participial phrase, with the previous example:

Rōmam videntēs, virī gaudebant, *seeing Rome, the men rejoiced.*

In this instance the participle modifies the subject of the main clause, and so an ablative absolute cannot be used.

Like other participial phrases, the ablative absolute can be translated quite literally, as in *Rōmā visā,* *(with)* Rome having been seen. Often, however, it is better style to transform the phrase to a clause, converting the participle to a verb in the appropriate tense, treating the ablative noun as its subject, and supplying the most logical conjunction (usually “when,” “since,” or “although”), as explained in the last chapter; thus, a more idiomatic translation of *Rōmā visā, virī gaudebant* would be *when Rome was (had been) seen, the men rejoiced.* Compare the following additional examples:

**His rebus auditīs, coepit timère.**

*These things having been heard, he began to be afraid.*

Or in much better English:

*When (since, after, etc., depending on the context) these things had been heard, he began . . . When (since, after, etc.) he had heard these things, he began . . .* 

**Eō imperium tenantē, ēventum timeō.**

*With him holding the power; Since he holds the power; When he holds the power; If he holds the power; Although he holds the power. I fear the outcome.*

In the ablative absolute, the ablative noun/pronoun regularly comes first, the participle last; when the phrase contains additional words, like the direct object of the participle in the preceding example, they are usually enclosed within the noun/participle “frame.”

As seen in the following examples, even two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, can function as an ablative absolute, with the present participle of *sum* (lacking in classical Latin) to be understood:

**Caesare duce, nihil timēbimus.**

*Caesar being the commander; Under Caesar's command, With Caesar in command, Since (when, if, etc.) Caesar is the commander, we shall fear nothing.*
Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent

Caesare incertō, bellum timēbāmus.
Since Caesar was uncertain (with Caesar uncertain), we were afraid of war.

THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION:
GERUNDIVE + Sum

Despite its horrendous name, the passive periphrastic conjugation is simply a passive verb form consisting of the gerundive (i.e., the future passive participle) along with a form of sum.1 The gerundive, as a predicate adjective, agrees with the subject of sum in gender, number, and case, e.g., haec fēmina laudanda est, this woman is to be praised.

The gerundive often conveys an idea of necessary, obligatory, or appropriate action, rather than simple futurity, and this is the case in the passive periphrastic construction. Hence id faciendum est means not simply this is about to be done, but rather this has to be done; hic liber cum cūrā legendus erit, this book will have to be (must be) read with care.

Just as Latin uses the auxiliary sum in its various tenses in this construction, English commonly uses the expressions “has to be,” “had to be,” “will have to be”; “should,” “ought,” and “must” are other auxiliaries commonly used in translating the passive periphrastic (cp. dēbeō, which, as you have already learned, is also used to indicate obligatory action).

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

Instead of the ablative of agent, the dative of agent is used with the passive periphrastic. A literal translation of the passive periphrastic + dative of agent generally sounds awkward, and so it is often best to transform such a clause into an active construction; consider the following examples:

Hic liber mihi cum cūrā legendus erit, this book will have to be read by me with care or (better) I will have to (ought to, must, should) read this book with care.

1 The word “periphrasis” (adj. “periphrastic”) comes from the Gk. equivalent of Lat. circumlocutio, a roundabout way of speaking, and simply refers to the form’s construction from a participle plus sum as an auxiliary (even “did sing” in Eng. is a periphrastic for “sang”); the entire perfect passive system is similarly “periphrastic,” consisting of sum + the perfect passive participle rather than the gerundive (be careful not to confuse the two: the pass. periphrastic will always contain an -nd- gerundive).
illa fēmina omnibus laudanda est, that woman should be praised by all
or everyone should praise that woman.

Pāx ducibus nostrīs petenda erat, peace had to be sought by our leaders
or our leaders had to seek peace.

VOCABULARY

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f., Carthage (a city in North Africa)
fábula, -ae, f., story, tale; play (fable, fabulous, confabulate; cp. fāma)
imperātor, imperātōris, m., general, commander-in-chief, emperor (cp.
pārō, imperium, imperō, Ch. 35)
impérium, -īi, n., power to command, supreme power; authority, command,
control (imperial, imperialism, imperious, empire)
perfūgium, -īi, n., refuge, shelter (cp. fugiō)
sérvis, -ī, m., and sērva, -ae, f., slave (serf, servant, servile, service; cp.
servīō, Ch. 35)
sōlāciō, -īi, n., comfort, relief (solace, consolation, inconsolable)
vūnus, vulneris, n., wound (vulnerable, invulnerable)
re- or red-, prefix, again, back (recede, receive, remit, repeat, repel,
revert)
ut, conj. + indic., as, just as, when
pōsteā, adv., afterwards (cp. post)
acciōō, -ciperē, -cēpī, -cēptum, to take (to one's self), receive, accept
(cp. capō)
exciciōō, -ciperē, -cēpī, -cēptum, to take out, except; take, receive, capture
(exception, exceptionable)
rećiōō, -ciperē, -cēpī, -cēptum, to take back, regain; admit, receive (rec-
ipe, Rē, receipt, recipient, receptacle, reception)
pellō, pellere, pellūs, pūlsum, to strike, push; drive out, banish (compel,
compulsion, compulsory, dispel, expel, impel, propel, repel, pelt, pulsate, pulse)
expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, to drive out, expel, banish (expulsion)
nārrō (1), to tell, report, narrate (narration, narrative, narrator)
quaērō, quaērēre, quaēsivī, quaēsītum, to seek, look for, strive for, ask,
inquire, inquire into (acquire, conquer, exquisite, inquire, inquest, in-
quisition, perquisite, query, quest, question, request, require)
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum, to laugh, laugh at (deride, derisive, ridicule, ri-
diculous, risibilities; cf. ridiculus, Ch. 30, subridēō, Ch. 35)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Igne vīsō, omnēs virī et uxōrēs territae sunt et ultrā urbem ad ītus
insulae nāvīgāvērunt, ubi perfugium inventum est.
2. Populō metū oppressō, iste imperātor nōbiēs ex urbe pellendus est.
3. Orátor, signó à sacerdóte dató, cō diē revēnit et nunc tōtus populus Latīnus gaudent.


5. Laudēs atque dōna huius modī ab ōrātōribus désiderābantur.

6. Imperiō acceptō, dux magnanimus fidem suam rerē públicae ostendit.

7. Aliquis cōs quīnque equōs ex igne ēripī posteā uisse rāt.

8. Cernisne omnia quae tibi scienda sunt?

9. Ille, ab arce urbīs reveniēns, ab īstīs hominibus premē coepit.

10. Cupiō tangere manum illūs militis qui metū caruit atque graviā sce-
lera contrā rem públicam oppressit.

11. Iste dux prōtīnus expulsus est, ut imperium excipiēbat.

12. Iīiae servae, autem, perfugium sōlāciūmque ab amīcīs quaerēbant.

13. Cornū audītō, ille mīles, incertus cōnsilīi, cōpiās ad médiam īnsum-
lam vertit.

14. When the common danger had been averted, two of our sons and all our daughters came back from Asia.

15. Our hopes must not be destroyed by those three evil men.

16. Since the people of all nations are seeking peace, all leaders must conquer the passion for (= of) power. (Use an ablative absolute and a passive periphrastic.)

17. The leader, having been driven out by both the free men and the slaves, could not regain his command.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Carthāgō délenda est. (Cato.)

2. Asiā victā, dux Rōmānus fēlix multōs servōs in Italiam mīsit. (Pliny the Elder.)

3. Omnibus ferrō mīlitis perterrītīs, quisque sē servāre cupidēbat. (Caesar.)

4. Quidquid dīcendum est, līberē dīcam. (Cicero.—līberē, adv. of līber.)

5. Haec omnia vulnera belūf tibi nunc sānanda sunt. (Cicero.—sānāre, to heal.)

6. Nec tumultum nec hastam mīlitis nec mortem violentam timēbō, Augustō terrās tenente. (Horace.—tumultus -ūs, disturbance, civil war.—violentūs, -a, -um.—Augustus, -i.)

7. Tarquinīō expulsō, nōmen régis audīre nōn poterat populus Rō-
mānus. (Cicero.)

8. Ad utīlitātem vítae omnia cōnsilīa factaque nōbīs regenda sunt. (Tacitus.—utīlitās, -tātis, benefit, advantage.)

DĒ CUPIDĪTĀTE

Homo stultus, “ō civēs, civēs,” inquit, “pecūnia ante omnia quaerenda est; virtūs et probitās post pecūniām.”
Pecūniae autem cupiditās fugienda est. Fugienda etiam est cupiditās gloriāe; ēripit enim libertātem. Neque imperia semper petenda sunt neque semper accipienda; etiam dēpōnenda nōn numquam.

(Horace, Epistulae 1.1.53, and Cicero, De Officiis 1.20.68.—dēpōnō, -ere, to put down, resign.)

Caelō receptus propter virtūtem, Herculēs multōs deōs salūtāvit; sed Plūtō veniente, quī Fortūnæ est filius, avertit oculōs. Tum, causā quaeśītā, “Ōdī,” inquit, “illum, quod maiōs amīcus est atque omnia corrumpit lucrī causā.”

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 4.12.—Herculēs, -īs.—salūtāre, to greet.—Plūtus, -ī, god of wealth.—Fortūnæ, here personified.—corrumpō, -ere, to corrupt.—lucrum, -ī, gain, profit.)

*Heracles (Hercules) fighting the Nemean lion, one of his 12 labors
Attic black-figure kalpis, Early 5th century B.C.
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria*

**THE SATIRIST’S MODUS OPERANDI**


(Horace, Sermōnēs 1.1.23–27, 69–70; prose adaptation.—per + currō.—vetāre, to forbid.—puerīs . . . magistrī, the order of the nouns is varied for effect: indi-
rect obj., direct obj., subject.—crūstulum, -i, cookie, pastry.—fingā, -ere, fīnxī, fictum, to form, invent, make up.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

6. tumultuous.—“Violent” is clearly based on vis.—Originally the Romans, counting March as the first month of the year, named the fifth month Quintīlis (quīntus, fīlih), but Julius Caesar renamed it Iūlius (July) because he was born in July. Subsequently, when the Roman Senate gave Octavian, Caesar’s heir, the title of “Augustus” (the augus, the revered one), the Senate also changed the name of the sixth month (Sextīlis) to Augustus (August).

“De Cupiditāte”: Herculean—salute; cp. salvēre, salūs.—plutocrat, a word of Gk. origin.—lucre, lucrative.—“The Satirist”: veto.—crust.—fiction, fictitious, fictive.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcae amīcīque! Quid agitis hodie? Bet you didn’t know that R, and “recipe” came from the same word (see recipiō in the Vocab.), but now, thanks to Latin, you do! There are countless derivatives from the capiō family, as you have seen already; and from excipere there are some “exceptionally” familiar phrases: exceptī probar regulam, the exception proves the rule, and exceptīs excipiendīs, with all the necessary exceptions (lit., with things excepted that should be excepted: recognize the gerundive?) And, by analogy with this last, what are the idiomatic and the literal meanings of the very common phrase mītātīs mūtandīs? (If you can’t figure that out, it’s in your Webster’s, along with hundreds of other Latin phrases, mottoes, words, and abbreviations in current Eng. usage!)

Some other gerundives that pop up in Eng.: agenda (things to be done), corrigenda (things to be corrected, i.e., an errāta list), and even the passive periphrastics dē gustibus nōn disputandum est, sometimes shortened simply to dē gustibus (you can’t argue about taste), and quod erat demonstrandum (which we’ve seen before), abbreviated Q.E.D. at the end of a mathematical proof.

Servus, also in the new Vocab., gives us one of the Pope’s titles, servus servōrum dei (another is pontifex, the name of an ancient Roman priestly office, which may originally have meant bridge-builder—because priests bridge the gap between men and gods?); and quære is used in Eng. as a note to request further information. Nunc est satis: valēte atque semper rūlēte!
Having surveyed the forms and uses of the verbal adjectives known as participles in the last two chapters, we turn now to the common verbal noun known as the infinitive (e.g., amāre, to love—two other verbal nouns, the supine and the gerund, are introduced in Chs. 38–39). Most transitive verbs have six infinitives, the present, future, and perfect, active and passive, though the future passive is rare; intransitive verbs usually lack the passive. You are already familiar with the present active and passive infinitives, whose forms vary with each of the four conjugations; the perfect and future infinitives are all formed according to the following patterns, regardless of conjugation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. -āre, -ēre, -ere, -īre²</td>
<td>-ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. perfect stem + -isse</td>
<td>perf. pass. participle + esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. fut. act. participle + esse</td>
<td>[supine in -um + īrī]³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ In other words, there are active and passive infinitives for each of the three basic time frames, past, present, and future; contrast participles, which lack present passive and perfect active forms.

² Actually, the ending of the present active infinitive is -re, which is added to the present stem; but for purposes of distinction it is convenient to include here the stem vowel as well.

³ The future passive infinitive is given in brackets here because it is not a common form and does not occur in this book. The Romans preferred a substitute expression like fore ut + subjunctive (result clause). The supine in -um has the same spelling as that of the perf. pass. part. in the nom. neut. sg.
INFINITIVES OF agō, agere, ēgī, ēctum, to lead

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>ágēre, to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>ēgisse, to have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>ēctūrūs, -a, -um esse, to be about to lead, to be going to lead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The literal translations of the six infinitives given above are conventional; in actual use (especially in indirect statement, as explained below) the perfect and particularly the future infinitives are rarely translated literally.

The infinitives of the other model verbs are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>laudāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>laudāvisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>laudātūrus, -a, -um, esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>laudārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>laudātus, -a, -um, esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>laudātum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USAGE**

As a verbal noun, an infinitive can function in a variety of ways. We have seen its use as a subject (errāre est humānum, to err is human) and as a complement with such verbs as possum and dēbeō (discēdere nunc possunt, they can leave now—Ch. 6), and the infinitive, with its own accusative subject, can also serve as a direct object (iussit eōs venīre, he ordered them to come: see S.S., p. 445). One of the commonest uses of the infinitive, however, is in a construction known as "indirect statement."
INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT WITH ACCUSATIVE SUBJECT

An indirect statement simply reports indirectly (i.e., not in direct quotation) what someone has said, thought, felt, etc. The following is a direct statement, made by a teacher:

Julia is a good student.

Here the teacher's comment is directly reported or quoted:

"Julia is a good student," says the teacher.
The teacher said, "Julia is a good student."

Latin also uses direct quotations with certain verbs of speaking, etc., including inquit (Ch. 22 Vocab.):

"Iūlia," magister inquit, "est discipula bona."

Often, however, both Latin and English will report someone's remarks (or thoughts or feelings) indirectly. In English we regularly put such indirect statements into a subordinate clause introduced by that:

The teacher says that Julia is a good student.
The teacher said that Julia was a good student.

Latin, on the other hand, uses no introductory word for that and employs an infinitive phrase with an accusative subject, instead of a clause:

Magister dicit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.
Magister dixit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

This indirect statement construction is regularly employed in Latin after verbs of "speech," "mental activity," or "sense perception" (i.e., saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, feeling, seeing, hearing, etc.; see the list of Latin verbs following the Vocab.). English uses a similar objective case + infinitive construction after a few verbs of this type (e.g., "the teacher considers her to be a good student"), but in classical Latin this pattern is always followed and the accusative subject is always expressed, even when it is the same as the subject of the verb of saying, etc. (in which case the subject is ordinarily a reflexive pronoun):

Iūlia putat sē esse bonam discipulam, Julia thinks that she (herself) is a good student.

Recognizing indirect statements is easy: look for the main verb of speech, mental activity, or sense perception with an accusative + infinitive
phrase following. The greater challenge is in translation, since you must nearly always supply *that* and convert the infinitive phrase into a regular clause, as in the above examples, where literal translations (e.g., *the teacher says Julia to be a good student* or *Julia thinks herself to be a good student*) would not produce idiomatic English. After supplying *that* and translating the accusative subject as if it were a nominative, you must then transform the infinitive into a regular finite verb *in the correct tense*, noting that tenses of the infinitive, like those of the participle, are relative not absolute.

**INFINITIVE TENSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT**

Study carefully the *tenses* in the following groups of sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. <em>Dicunt—</em></th>
<th>They say</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. eum <em>iuvāre</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he is helping her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. eum <em>iūvisse</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he helped her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. eum <em>iūtūrum esse</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he will help her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. <em>Dīxērunt—</em></th>
<th>They said</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. eum <em>iuvāre</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he was helping her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. eum <em>iūvisse</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he had helped her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. eum <em>iūtūrum esse</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he would help her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3. <em>Dīcent—</em></th>
<th>They will say</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. eum <em>iuvāre</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he is helping her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. eum <em>iūvisse</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he helped her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. eum <em>iūtūrum esse</em> eam.</td>
<td>that he will help her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You probably noticed that after any tense of the main verb (*dicunt, dīxērunt, dīcent*) the present, the perfect, or the future tense of the infinitive may be used. This fact shows that the tenses of the infinitive are not absolute but are relative.

To put it another way, *regardless of the tense of the main verb*:

1. the *present infinitive* indicates the *same time as* that of the main verb  
   (= contemporaneous infinitive).

2. the *perfect infinitive* indicates *time before* that of the main verb  
   (= prior infinitive).

3. the *future infinitive* indicates *time after* that of the main verb  
   (= subsequent infinitive).

Here are some further examples; note carefully the translation of tenses, the use of reflexives, the agreement of participial endings with the accusative subjects, and the use in one instance of the passive periphrastic infinitive (gerundive + esse, to indicate obligatory action).
Gaius dicit sē iūvisse eam,
    Gaius says that he (Gaius) helped her.

Gaius dixit eum iūvisse eam,
    Gaius said that he (e.g., Marcus) had helped her.

Gaius dicit litterās ā sē scripτās esse,
    G. says that the letter was written by him (Gaius).

Gaius dicit litterās tibi scribendas esse,
    G. says that the letter ought to be written by you (or that you ought to write the letter).

Discipulī putant sē linguam Latīnam amāturōs esse,
    the (male) students think that they will love the Latin language.

Magistra scīvit discipulās Latīnam amāturōs esse,
    the (female) teacher knew that the (female) students would love Latin.

**VOCABULARY**

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language (linguist, linguistics, bilingual, lingo, lingue: see Latina Est Gaudium, Ch. 14)

férox, gen. ferōcis, fierce, savage (ferocious, ferocity; cp. ferus, -i, beast)

fidelis, fidēle, faithful, loyal (fidelity, infidelity, infrēd; cp. fidēs)

gēminus, -a, -um, twin (geminate, gemination, Gemini)

sāpiēns, gen. sapiēntis, as adj., wise, judicious; as noun, a wise man, philosopher (homo sapiens, sapience, insipience, sapid, insipid, verbum sapienti, savant, sage; cp. sapientia, sapio, Ch. 35)

últimus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme; last, final (ultimate, ultimatum, penultimate, antepenultimate)

dēhinc, adv., then, next

hic, adv., here

āit, āiunt, he says, they say, assert, commonly used in connection with proverbs and anecdotes (adage)

credō, crēdere, crēdīdī, crēdītum + acc. or (Ch. 35) dat., to believe, trust
    (credence, credentials, credible, incredible, credulity, credulous, creed, credibility, credo, credit, creditable, accreditation, miscreant, grant)

iāceō, iacēre, iācuī, to lie; lie prostrate; lie dead (adjacent, adjacency, interjacent, subjacent, gist, joist; do not confuse with iaciō, iacere)

nēgō (1), to deny, say that . . . not (negate, negative, abnegate, renegade, renege, denial, runagate)

nēsciō, nescire, nescivī, nescītum, not to know; be ignorant (nice; cp. sciō)

nūntiō (1), to announce, report, relate (denounce, enunciate, pronounce, renounce, nuncio; cp. prōnūntiō, nūntius, -ī, messenger)

patefāciō, -fācere, -fēcī, -fēctum, to make open, open; disclose, expose
Infinitives; Indirect Statement

pútō (1), to reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine (compute, count, account, depute, dispute, impute, putative, amputate)
spérō (1), to hope for, hope, regularly + fut. inf. in ind. state. (despair, desperate, desperation, prosper; cp. spēs.)
suscipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cēptum (sub-capīō), to undertake (susceptible, susceptibility)

LIST OF VERBS CAPABLE OF INTRODUCING INDIRECT STATEMENT

1. saying: dīcō, nēgō, āit, nūntiō, prōnūntiō, nārrō, scūrbō, dóceō, ostēndō, dēmōnstrō, mōneō, pētō
2. knowing: sciō, nesciō, intellegō, memoriā tēneō, dīscō
3. thinking: cerno, cogito, cnōto, habeo, pilto, spero
4. perceiving and feeling: alīdiō, videō, sēntiō, gaûdeō

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. “Quisque,” inquit, “semper putat suās rēs esse magnās.”
2. Posteā audīvimus servōs dōnōrum causā labōrāvisse, ut mīlitēs fidēlēs herī narrāverant.
3. Vicīnī nostrī vīm igan magnā virtūte dehinc āvertērunt, quod laudem atque dōna cupīverunt.
4. Hoc sīgnum perīcuī tōtam gentem nostram tanget, nisi hostem ex urbe excipere ac ab Itāliā pellere poterimus.
5. Duce ferōcī Carthāginīs expulsō, spēs fīdēsque virōrum magnanīmōrum rem püblicam contiēbunt.
6. Cūr īucundus Horātius culpās hūmānās in sātuīs semper ostendēbat atque rūdebat?
7. Crēdimus fidem antīquam omnibus gentibus iterum alendam esse.
8. Dux, ad senātum missus, imperium accēpit et imperātor factus est.
9. Rēs pūblica, ut āit, libellīs hūius modī tollī potest.
10. Aliquī negant hostēs victōs servītūte unquam opprimendōs esse.
11. Crēdunt magistrām sapientem vēritātem patēfactūram esse.
12. Quisquis vēritātem recipiet bene educābitur.
13. We thought that your sisters were writing the letter.
14. They will show that the letter was written by the brave slavegirl.
15. He said that the letter had never been written.
16. We hope that the judge’s wife will write those two letters tomorrow.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Id factum esse tum nōn negāvit. (Terence.)
2. His rēbus prōnūntiātīs, igitur, eum esse hostem scīvistī. (Cicero.)

5 Others to be introduced later are respondeō, answer; cognōscō, learn, know; arbitror, think; oūnōr, think, suppose; prōmittō, promise; dēcernō, decide; dolēō, grieve.
3. Eum ab hostibus exspectārī nunc sentīs. (Cicero.)
4. Vīdī eōs in urbe remānsisse et nōbiscum esse. (Cicero.)
5. Itaque aeternum bellum cum malīs civibus ā mē susceptum esse cernō. (Cicero.)
6. Idem crēdō tibi faciendum esse. (Cicero.)
7. Tē enim esse fidēlem mihi sciēbam. (Terence.)
8. Hostibus sē in cīvitātem vertentibus, senātus Cincinnātō nūntiāvit eum factum esse dictātōrem. (Cicero.—Cincinnātus, -ī. —dictātōr, -tōris.)
9. Dīcō tē, Pyrrhe, Rōmānōs posse vincere. (Ennius.—Pyrrhus, -ī.)
10. Dīc, hospes, Spartae tē nōs hīc iacentēs vīdīsse, patriae fidēlēs. (Cicero; epigram on the Spartans who died at Thermopylae.—hospes, -petīs, m., stranger.—Spartae, to Sparta.)
11. Sōcratēs putābat sē esse civem tōtīus mundī. (Cicero.)
12. Im magistrī negant quemquam virum esse bonum nisi sapientem. (Cicero.—quisquam, quidquam, anyone, anything; any.)
13. Negāvī, autem, mortem timendam esse. (Cicero.)
14. Crēdō deōs immortālēs sparsisse spīritūs in corpora hūmāna. (Cicero.—spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsum, to scatter; sow.)
15. Adulēscēns spērat sē diū vīctūrum esse; senex potest dīcere sē diū vīxisse. (Cicero.—Do not confuse victūrum, from vivō, with vīctūrum, from vincō).
16. Āiunt enim multum legendum esse, nōn multa. (*Pliny.)

---

**THE DEATH OF LAOCOON . . . AND TROY**

Hīc alius magnūs timor (Ō fābula misera!) animōs caecōs nostrōs terret. Lāocoōn, sacerdōs Neptūnī fортūnā factus, ācrem taurum ad āram in litorē mactābat. Tum gēmini serpentēs potentēs, mare prementēs, ab īnsulā ad lītora currunt. Iamque agrōs tenēbant et, oculīs igne ardentībus, ōra linguīs sibilīs lambēbant.

Nōs omnēs fugimus; ǐlī viā certā Lāocoonta filiōsque eius petunt. Prīnum parva corpora duōrum puērōrum capiunt et lacerant necantque devōrantque. Tum patrem fortem, ad filiōs miserōs currentem, rapiant et magnā spīritūs tenēnt et superant. Nec sē ā vulnerībus défendere nec fugere potest, ut ipse, ut taurus saucius ad āram, clāmōrēs horrendōs ad caelum tollit. Eōdem tempore serpentēs fugiunt, petuntque perfugium in arce Mi¬nervae ācrīs.

Quod Lāocoōn in equum Minervae hastam iēcerat, nōs putāvimus eum errāvisse et poenās dedisse; vēritātem acerbam nescīvimus. Portās patefaci¬mus et admittimus istum equum in urbem; atque puērī puellaeque—Ō patria, Ō dī magnī, Ō Trōia!—eum tangere gaudent. Et quoque gaudēmus nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs fuit ultimus ac quibus numquam erit ūllum sōłāciōm.
(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.199–249; prose adaptation.—Lāocoōn, -ontis, m.—Neptūnus, god of the sea, took the side of the Greeks in the Trojan war.—taurus, -i, bull.—āra, -ae, altar.—mactāre, to sacrifice, sacrificially slaughter.—serpēns, -pentis, m.—ardēre, to blaze.—sībilus, -a, -um, hissing.—lambō, -ere, to lick.—Lāocoonta, Gk. acc.—prīnum, adv. of prīmus.—lacerāre, to tear to pieces, mangle.—dēvōrāre, to devour.—spīra, -ae, coil.—sauces, -a, -um, wounded.—clāmor, -mōris, shout, scream.—horrendus, -a, -um.)
ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

8. propinquity.—“Cincinnati,” both the organization composed originally of the officers who served under George Washington and also the city named after the organization. 9. Pyrrhus, the Greek general, defeated the Romans twice, but the victories cost him almost as many men as they cost the Romans; hence the term “Pyrrhic victory.” 14. aspersion, disperse, intersperse, sparse. “Laocoon”: toreador.—serpent, serpentine; “herpes” is cognate.—lambent.—lacerate, laceration.—voracious.—spire, spiral.—clamor, clamorous; cp. clāmāre, dēclāmāre, exclāmāre.—horrendous.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Quid agitis hodiē, amīci et amīcae? Also from iacēre in the new Vocab. is the phrase hīc iacet, here lies . . . , often inscribed on tombstones (sometimes spelled hīc jacet and mistaken to mean a country boy’s sportcoat!). And here are some other well-known mottoes and phrases: dum spīrō, spērō, while I breathe, I hope (South Carolina’s state motto—the verb spīrāre is related to spīritus, Ch. 20, and gives us “conspire,” “expire,” “inspire,” “perspire,” “respiratory,” “transpire,” etc.); crēde Deō, trust in God (for crēdere + dat., see Ch. 35); and It. lingua franca, lit. Frankish language, used of any hybrid language that is employed for communication among different cultures. Spīrāte, spērāte, ridēte, atque valēte!

Trojan horse fresco from the House of Menander
Pompeii, mid- to late 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The adjective forms you have learned thus far indicate a basic characteristic (a quality or quantity) associated with the modified noun, e.g., *vir beātus*, *a happy man*. This is called the “positive degree” of the adjective.

In Latin, as in English, an adjective may be “compared” in order to indicate whether a person or thing being described has a greater degree of a particular characteristic than some other person(s) or thing(s), or more than is usual or customary. When comparing a person/thing with just one other, the “comparative degree” is used: *vir beātior*, *the happier man*. When comparing a person/thing with two or more others, the “superlative degree” is employed: *vir beātissimus*, *the happiest man*.

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND THE SUPERLATIVE

The form of the positive degree is learned from the vocabulary. The forms of the comparative and the superlative of regular adjectives are ordinarily made on the *base* of the positive, which is identified, as you know, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.  

1 Occasionally an adjective is compared by adding *magis* (*more*) and *maximē* (*most*) to the positive. This is regular in adjectives like *idōneus*, -a, -um (*suitable*) where a vowel precedes the endings: *magis idōneus, maximē idōneus.*
Comparative: base of positive + -ior (m. & f.), -ius (n.); -iōris, gen.
Superlative: base of positive + -issimus, -issima, -issimum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carus, -a, -um</td>
<td>càriōr, -ius</td>
<td>càriissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dear)</td>
<td>(dearer)</td>
<td>(dearest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus, -a, -um</td>
<td>longior, -ius</td>
<td>longissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(long)</td>
<td>(longer)</td>
<td>(longest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e</td>
<td>fortior, -ius</td>
<td>fortissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(brave)</td>
<td>(braver)</td>
<td>(bravest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felix, gen. felicis</td>
<td>felícior, -ius</td>
<td>felícissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(happy)</td>
<td>(happier)</td>
<td>(happiest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, gen. potēntis</td>
<td>potentior, -ius</td>
<td>potentissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(powerful)</td>
<td>(more powerful)</td>
<td>(most powerful)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapiēns, gen. sapiēntis</td>
<td>sapiēntior, -ius</td>
<td>sapiēntissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(wise)</td>
<td>(wiser)</td>
<td>(wisest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES**

The declension of superlatives quite simply follows the pattern of magnus, -a, -um. Comparatives, however, are two-ending adjectives of the third declension, but they follow the consonant declension; and so they constitute the chief exception to the rule that adjectives of the third declension belong to the i-stem declension (i.e., comparatives do not have the -i abl. sg., -ium gen. pl., or -ia neut. nom./acc. pl. endings that characterize other third declension adjectives, as seen in Ch. 16). Memorize the following paradigm, taking special note of the endings given in bold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortiorēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
<td>fortiorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fortiorī</td>
<td>fortiorī</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fortiorēm</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortiorēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USAGE AND TRANSLATION**

Comparative degree adjectives are commonly translated with more or the suffix -er and superlatives with most or -est, depending on the context and English idiom, e.g.: femina sapientior, the wiser woman; urbs antiquior,
Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative of Comparison

a more ancient city; tempus incertissimum, a most uncertain time; lūx clāri­ssima, the brightest light. Though there is no direct connection between the forms, it may be helpful for mnemonic purposes to associate the Latin com­parative marker -or- with English more/-er and the superlative marker -ss­with English most/-est.

The comparative sometimes has the force of rather, indicating a greater degree of some quality than usual (lūx clārior, a rather bright light), or too, indicating a greater degree than desirable (vīta eius erat brevior, his/her life was too short). The superlative is sometimes translated with very, especially when comparing a person/thing to what is usual or ideal: vīta eius erat bre­vissima, his/her life was very short.

Quam WITH THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

When quam follows a comparative degree adjective it functions as a co­ordinating conjunction meaning than, linking two items that are being compared; the same case or construction follows quam as precedes:

Hī libīrī sunt clāriōrēs quam illī, these books are more famous than those.

Dīcit hōs librōs esse clāriōrēs quam illōs, he says that these books are more famous than those.

When quam precedes a superlative, it functions adverbially and indicates that the person/thing modified has the greatest possible degree of a particu­lar quality:

Amīcus meus erat vir quam iūcundissimus, my friend was the pleasantest man possible or as pleasant as can be.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

When the first element to be compared was in the nominative or accusa­tive case, quam was often omitted and the second element followed in the ablative case, the so-called “ablative of comparison” (which should be added to your now extensive list of ablative case uses).

Cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra lūce, your plans are clearer than light.

(Cp. cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra quam lūx, which means the same.)

Quis in Italiā erat clārior Cicerōne? Who in Italy was more famous than Cicerō?

Vīdī paucōs fēliciōres patre tuō, I have seen few men happier than your father.
VOCABULARY

cēna, -ae, f., dinner (cenacle)
fōrum, -ī, n., marketplace, forum (forensic)
lex, légis, f., law, statute; cp. iūs, which emphasizes right, justice (legal, legislator, legitimate, loyal, colleague, college, privilege)
ilēmen, liminis, n., threshold (liminality, subliminal, eliminate, preliminary)
ilūx, lūcis, f., light (lucid, elucidate, translucent, lucubration, illustrate, illuminate)
mēnsa, -ae, f., table; dining; dish, course; ménsa secúnda, dessert (the constellation Mensa)
nox, nocītis, f., night (nocturnal, nocturne, equinox, noctiluca, noctuid; cp. pernoctō, Ch. 39)
sómnia, -i, m., sleep (somnambulate, somnambulism, somnambulist, somniferous, somniloquist, somnolent, insomnia, Somnix)
quīdam, quaēdam, quīddam (pron.) or quōddam (adj.), indef. pron. and adj.; as pron., a certain one or thing, someone, something; as adj., a certain, some (gen. cuīūsdam, dat. cuīdam, etc.)
pudicus, -a, -urn, modest, chaste (impudent, pudency, pudendum; cp. pudicitia, modesty, chastity)
supérbus, -a, -um, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud (superb; cp. superāre)
trīstis, trīste, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe (cp. trīstitia, sorrow)
tūrpes, tūrpe, ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful (turpitude)
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, urban; urbane, elegant (urbanity, urbanization, suburban, suburbanite; cp. urbs)
prae, prep. + abl., in front of, before (frequent as a prefix, e.g., praepone-re, to put before, prefer; sometimes intensifying, e.g., praeclārus, -a, -um, especially famous, remarkable; precede, prepare, preposition; cp. praeter, Ch. 40)
quam, adv. and conj. after comparatives, than; with superlatives, as . . . as possible: quam fortissimus, as brave as possible (cp. quam, how, Ch. 16, and do not confuse with the rel. pron. fem. acc. sg.)
tantum, adv., only
invītō (1), to entertain, invite, summon (invitation, vie)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Ille dux nescīvit sē imperium prōtīnus susceptūrum esse.
2. “Quīdam,” inquit, “imperium quondam petēbant et ūberōs virōs opprimere cupēbant.”
3. Eōdem dīc decem milia hostium ab duce fīdelissimō āversa ac pulsa sunt; multi militēs vulnera recēperant et in agrīs iacēbant.
4. Morte tyrannī ferōcis nūntiātā, quisque sē ad ōrātōrem potentissīmum magnā spē vertit.
5. Rīdēns, scriptor illius fābulae sapiēns aliquid iūcundius dehinc nārāvit.
7. Rēgīna fortissima Carthāginis posteā ostendit fidem semper esse sibi cāriōrem divītīs.
8. Negāvit sē umquam vīdisse servam fidēliōrem quam hanc.
9. Iūcundior modus vitaec homīnibus nunc quacendus est.
10. Crēdimus illōs vīgitī līberōs virōs fēmināsque vītam quam iūcundissimam agere.
11. Imperātor centum mīlitēs fortissīmos praē sē herī mīsit.
12. Lūx in illā casā nōn fuit clārissima, quod familia paucās fenestrās patefēcerat.
13. Amīcōs trāstēs excēpit, ad mēnsam invītāvit, et eīs perfugium ac sōlāciōm hīc dedit.
14. What is sweeter than a very pleasant life?
15. Certain men, however, say that death is sweeter than life.
16. When these three very sure signs had been reported, we sought ad­vice and comfort from the most powerful leader.
17. In that story the author says that all men seek as happy lives as poss­ible.
18. This light is always brighter than the other.

**SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE**

1. Senectūs est loquācior. (Cicero.—loquāx, gen. loquācis, garrulous.)
2. Tua cōnsilia omnia nōbis clāriōra sunt quam lūx. (Cicero.)
3. Quaedam remedia graviōra sunt quam ipsa pericula. (Seneca.)
4. Eō diē virōs fortissimōs atque amantissimōs rē publicae ad mē vocāvī. (Cicero.—amāns rē publicae, i.e., patriotic.)
5. Quī imperia libēns accēpit, partem acerbissimam servitūtis vītat. (Seneca.—libēns, gen. libentīs, willing; here, as is often the case, the adj. has adverbial force.)
6. Iūcundissimā dōna, ut āiunt, semper sunt ea quae auctor ipse càra facit. (Ovid.)
7. Beātus sapiēnsque vir forum vītat et superba līmina potentiōrum civium. (Horace.)
8. Quid est turpius quam ab aliquō īllūdi? (Cicero.—īlūdō, -ere, to de­ceive.)
9. Quid enim est stultius quam incerta prō certīs habēre, falsa prō vērīs? (*Cicero.—falsus, -a, -um.*)
10. Saepe mihi dícis, cárissime amini: "Scribē aliquid magnum; désidiosissimus homō es." (Martial.—désidiosus, -a, -um, lazy.)

11. Verba currunt; at manus notāriē est vēlōcior illis; nōn lingua mea, sed manus eius, labōrem perfecit. (Martial.—notārius, -i, stenographer.—vēlōx, gen. vēlōcis, swift.—perficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum, to complete.)

12. Multī putant rēs bellicās graviōrēs esse quam rēs urbānās; sed haec sententia mutanda est, nam multae rēs urbānae sunt graviōrēs clāriōrēsque quam bellicae. (Cicero.—bellicus, -a, -um, adj. of bellum.)

13. Invītātus ad cēnam, manū sinistrā lintea neglegentiorum sustulistī. Hoc salsum esse putās? Rēs sordidissima est! Itaque mihi lintea remitte. (Catullus.—lintēum, -i, linen, napkin.—neglegēns, gen. neglegentis, careless.—salsus, -a, -um, salty; witty.—sordidus, -a, -um, dirty, mean.)

**THE NATIONS OF GAUL**


(*Caesar, Bellum Gallicum 1.1.—The places and peoples mentioned: Gaul, the Belgae, the Aquitani, the Celts or Gauls, and the rivers Garonne, Marne, and Seine.—dividō, -ere, -visi, -visum, to divide, separate.—īncolō, -ere, to inhabit; Belgae, Aquītānī, and [ē] qui are all subjects of this verb.—īpsōrum linguā = linguā suā.—nostrā, sc. linguā.—īnstitūtum, -i, custom, institution.—differō.*)
THE GOOD LIFE

Haec sunt, amīce iūcundissimē, quae vītam faciunt beātiōrem: rēs nōn facta labōre sed ā patre relictā, ager fēlix, parvum forī et satis ōtī, mēns aequa, vīrēs et corpus sānum, sapientīa, amīcī vērī, sine arte mēnsa, nox nōn ebria sed solūta cūris, nōn trīstis torus et tamen pudīcus, somnus facilis. Dēsiderā tantum quod habēs, cupe nihil; nōlī timēre ultīsum diem aut spērāre.

(Martial 10.47; prose adaptation.—rēs, here property, wealth.—ā patre relictā, i.e., inherited.—forī, gen. of the whole with parvum.—sine arte, i.e., simple, modest.—ebrius, -a, -um, drunken.—solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, to loosen, free (from).—torus, -ī, bed.—nōlī is used with the inf. for a negative command, do not . . . )

Funeral banquet, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Leopards, early 5th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy
ETYMOLOGY

In Sp. the comparative degree of an adjective is regularly formed by putting más (more) before the adjective: más caro, más alto. This más comes from the magis mentioned in n. 1. Sp. and It. both retain some vestiges of the Lat. superlative ending -issimus. Forms with this ending, however, are not the normal superlative forms, but are used to convey the intensive idea of very, exceedingly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carissimus</td>
<td>carissimo</td>
<td>carisimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clarissimus</td>
<td>chiarissimo</td>
<td>clarisimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altissimus</td>
<td>altissimo</td>
<td>altisimo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the readings


LATīNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvete! Here are some more familiar mottoes, phrases, famous quotations, and etymological tidbits ex vocabularīō huius capitis (vocabulāriōm is medieval Lat. for vocabulary, a list of “what you call things,” words that is, from vocāre): auctor ignotus means author unknown, i.e., “anonymous”; cēna Domīnī is the Lord’s Supper; dūra lēx sed lēx, a harsh law, but the law nevertheless; lēx nōn scripta, customary law (as opposed to lēx scripta)—what are the lit. meanings?—you can also figure out lēx locī); then there’s Ovid’s admonition to loners, tristis eris si sōlus eris, and the hope of one of Plautus’ characters for lēx eadem uxōrī et virō; a legal decree of ā mēnsā et torō, from table and bed (torus, -i), is a separation prohibiting husband and wife from cohabiting.

Knowing the noun lūx and the related verb lūceō, lūcēre, to shine brightly, can shed some light on these items: lūx et vēritās is the motto of Yale University, lūx et lēx is the motto of the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, pellucid explanations are perfectly clear (per + lūc-), translucent materials let the light shine through, and Lux soap will make you shine like light! Lūcēte, discipulae discipulīque, et valēte!
Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

ADJECTIVES HAVING PECULIAR FORMS IN THE SUPERLATIVE

Two groups of adjectives, which are otherwise regular, have peculiar forms in the superlative:

I. Six adjectives ending in -lis form the superlative by adding -limus, -lima, -limum to the base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facil-limus, -a, -um (easiest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis,-e</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um (most difficult)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um (most l.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dissimilis (unlike, dissimilar), gracilis (slender, thin), and humilis (low, humble) follow this same pattern; all other -lis adjectives have regular superlatives (e.g., fidēlissimus, utilissimus, etc.).

II. Any adjective which has a masculine in -er, regardless of the declension, forms the superlative by adding -rīmus directly to this masculine -er, not to the base; note that the comparatives of -er adjectives are formed regularly, by adding -ior, -ius to the base (which, as you know, in some cases retains the -e- and sometimes drops it).
**ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON**

More important from the consideration of frequency of appearance are a few adjectives which are so irregular in their comparison that the only solution to the difficulty is memorization. However, English derivatives from the irregular forms greatly aid the memorization (see the Etymology section below). A list of the most useful of these adjectives follows.¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>libēr, -bera, -berum</td>
<td>libērīor, -ius</td>
<td>libēr-rimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(free)</td>
<td>(freer)</td>
<td>(freest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pūlcher, -chra, -chrom</td>
<td>pūlchrior, -ius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(beautiful)</td>
<td>(more beautiful)</td>
<td>(most beautiful)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácer, ácris, ácre</td>
<td>ácrīor, ácrius</td>
<td>ácērīminus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(keen)</td>
<td>(keener)</td>
<td>(keenest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bōnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>mélior, -ius</td>
<td>óptimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(good)</td>
<td>(better)</td>
<td>(best)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mágnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>máior, -ius</td>
<td>máximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(great)</td>
<td>(greater)</td>
<td>(greatest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>málus, -a, -um</td>
<td>pēior, -ius</td>
<td>péssimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bad)</td>
<td>(worse)</td>
<td>(worst)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>múltus, -a, -um</td>
<td>——, plūs</td>
<td>plūrīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(much)</td>
<td>(more)</td>
<td>(most)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pārvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>mǐnus, minus</td>
<td>mǐnimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(small)</td>
<td>(smaller)</td>
<td>(smallest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(praed, prō)²</td>
<td>prior, -ius</td>
<td>prīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(in front of, before)</td>
<td>(former)</td>
<td>(first)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūperus, -a, -um</td>
<td>supérior, -ius</td>
<td>sūmmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(that above)</td>
<td>(higher)</td>
<td>(highest, furthest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>suprēmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(highest, last)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Others less important for this book are: ex·ter·us, -a, -um (foreign), ex·ter·ior, -ius (outer), ex·trē·mus, -a, -um (outermost) in·fer·us, -a, -um (below), in·fer·ior, -ius (lower), in·fī·mus, -a, -um (lowest) (pro·pe, near), pro·pior, -ius (nearer), pro·xīmus, -a, -um (nearest)² There is no positive degree adj. corresponding to prior and prīmus, since those words, by the very definition of “priority” and “primacy,” imply comparison with one or more persons or things; the prepositions praed and prō, however, are related.
None of the irregular forms offers any declensional difficulty except *plús*. In the plural *plús* functions as an adjective (e.g., *plúrés amícō*), but has mixed i-stem and consonant-stem forms (-*ium* in the genitive plural but -*a*, not -*ia*, in the neuter nominative and accusative); in the singular it functions not as an adjective at all, but as a neuter noun which is commonly followed by a genitive of the whole (e.g., *plús pecúniae*, *more money*, lit. *more of money*—see Ch. 15).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>plús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>plúris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>plús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>plúre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VOCABULARY**

- *dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis, f.*, *delight, pleasure, enjoyment* (delectation, delectable, delicious, dilettante; cp. *dēlectō, dēlicita, delight*)
- *népōs, nepōtis, m.*, *grandson, descendant* (nephew, nepotism, niece)
- *sōl, sólis, m.*, *sun* (solar, solarium, solstice, parasol)
- *diligēns, gen. diligēntis, diligent, careful* (diligence, diligently)
- *dissimilis, dissimile, unlike, different* (dissimilar, dissimilarity, dissemble)
- *grācilis, grācile, slender, thin* (graceful)
- *hūmilis, hūmile, lowly, humble* (humility, humiliate, humiliation; cp. *hūmus*, Ch. 37)
- *māior, māius, comp. adj., greater, older; maiōrēs, maiōrum, m. pl.*, *ancestors* (i.e., *the older ones*; major, majority, etc.—see Etymology below).
- *primus, -a, -um, first, foremost, chief, principal* (primary, primate, prime, primeval, primer, premier, primitive, prim, primo-geniture, prima facie, primordial, primrose)
- *quot, indecl. adj., how many, as many as* (quota, quotation, quote, quotient)
- *similis, simile, + gen. or dat., similar (to), like, resembling* (similarly, similar, assimilate, dissimilar, dissimilarity, simulate, dissimulate, verisimilitude, assemble, resemble, simultaneous; cp. same)
- *súperus, -a, -um, above, upper; súperi, -ōrum, m. pl.*, *the gods* (superior, etc.; cp. *superē* and see Etymology below)
- *útilis, útile, useful, advantageous* (what Latin is to YOU!—utility, from *útilitās, -ātis*; utilitarian, utilization, utilize; cp. *útor*, Ch. 34)

All the irregular adjectival forms given above in this lesson.
ponō, pōnere, pósuī, pósitum, *to put, place, set* (See Etymology at end of chapter.)

prōbō (1), *to approve, recommend; test* (probe, probate, probation, probative, probable, probably, probability, approbation, proof, prove, approve, approval, disprove, improve, reprove, reprobate; cp. probitās)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. Quisque cupit quam pulcherrima atque utillissima dōna dare.
2. Quīdam turpēs habent plārīma sed etiam plūra petunt.
3. Ille ōrātor, ab tyrannō superbissimō expulsus, ducem iūcundiórem et légēs acquisīrēs dehinc quaesīvit.
4. Summum imperium optimās virīs semper petendum est.
5. Senex nepōtibus tristībus casam patefēcit et ēōs trāns līmen invitāvit.
6. Ostendīt hostēs ultimum signum lūce clārissimā illā nocte dedisse.
7. Iste tyrannus pessimus negāvit sē virōs liberōs umquam oppressisse.
8. Fidēlissimus servus plūs cēnae ad mēnsam accipiēbat quam trēs peiōrēs.
9. Āiunt hunc auctōrem vitam humillīmam hīc agere.
10. Cūr dī superī oculōs ā rēbus hūmānīs eō tempore āvertērunt?
11. Habēsne pecūniam et rēs tuās prae rē pūblicā?
12. Sōlem post paucās nūbēs gracillīmās in caelō hodiē vidēre possumus.
13. Some believe that very large cities are worse than very small ones.
14. In return for the three rather small gifts, the young man gave even more and prettier ones to his very sad mother.
15. Those very large mountains were higher than these.

**SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE**

1. Trahit mē nova vis: videō meliōra probōque, sed peiōra tantum faciō et nescīo cūr. (Ovid.)
2. Quaedam carmina sunt bona; plūra sunt mala. (Martial.)
3. Optimum est. Nihil melius, nihil pulchrius hoc vīdī. (Terence.)
4. Spērō tē et hunc nātālem et plārīmos aliōs quam fēlicissimōs āctūrum esse. (Pliny.—nātālis [diēs], *birthday.*)
5. Quoniam cōnsilium et ratiō sunt in senibus, maiōrēs nostri summum concilium appellāvērunt senātum. (Cicero.—concilium, -ii, *council.*)
6. Plūs operae studiǐque in rēbus domesticīs nōbīs nunc pōnendum est etiam quam in rēbus mīlītāribus. (Cicero.—opera, -ae, *work, effort.* —domesticus, -a, -um.—mīlītāris, -e.)
7. Neque enim periculum in rē pūblicā fuit gravius umquam neque ōtium māius. (Cicero.)
8. Sumus sapientiōrēs illīs, quod nōs nātūram esse optimam ducem
Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives 183

scĭmus. (Cicero.—optimam, f. by attraction to the gender of nā-tūram.)

9. Nātūra minimum petit; nātūrae autem sē sapiēns accommodat.
(*Seneca.—accommodāre, to adapt.)

10. Maximum remedium īrae mora est. (*Seneca.)

11. Quī animum vincit et īram continet, eum cum summīs virīs nōn comparō sed eum esse simillimum deō dicō. (Cicero.—comparāre, to compare.)

12. Dionysius, tyrannus urbis pulcherrimae, erat vir summae in vīctū temperantiae et in omnibus rēbus diligentissimus et ācerrimus.Īdem tamen erat ferōx ac inīṣtus. Quā ex rē, sī vērum dīcimus, vidēbātur miserrimus. (Cicero.—Dionysius, ruler of Syracuse in the 4th cen. B.C.—vīctus, -ūs, mode of life.—temperantia, -ae.—inīstus, -ā, -um, unjust.—Quā ex rē = Ex illā rē.)

13. Nisi superōs vertere possum, Acheronta movēbō. (Virgil.—Acheronta, Gk. acc., Acheron, a river in the underworld, here by metonymy the land of the dead.)

ALLEY CAT

Caēli, Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam
plūs quam sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,
nunc in quadriviis et angipōrtis
5 glūbit magnanimī Remī nepōtēs.

(*Catullus 58; meter: hendecasyllabic.—Caēlius, a rival of Catullus for Lesbia’s favors.—quadrivium, -ī, crossroads.—angipōrtum, -i, alley.—glūbo, -ere, to peel (back), strip (off); used of stripping the bark off trees or the skin off an animal, here in an obscene sense.—Remus, brother of Romulus, legendary founders of Rome.)

THANKS A LOT, TULLY!

Dīsertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
grātiās tībi maximās Catullus
5 agit, pessimus omnium poēta,
tantō pessimus omnium poēta
quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus.

(*Catullus 49; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet sends thanks to the orator and statesman, Marcus Tullius Cicero; whether or not the tone is ironic is a matter
debated by scholars.—disertus, -a, -um, eloquent, learned.—fuère = fuërunt, see p. 77.—post = postea.—tantō ... quantō, just as much ... as.—tū, sc. es.)

AN UNCLE’S LOVE FOR HIS NEPHEW AND ADOPTED SON

Adulescens est carior mihi quam ego ipse! Atque hic nōn est filius meus sed ex frātre meō. Studia frātris iam diū sunt dissimillima meīs. Ego vītam urbānam ēgī et ōtium petīvi et, id quod quīdam fortūnātius putant, uxōrem numquam habuī. Ille, autem, haec omnia fēcit: nōn in forō sed in agrīs vītam ēgīt, parvum pecūnīae accepit, uxōrem pudicam dūxit, duōs filiōs habuit. Ex īllō ego hunc maiōrem adoptāvī mihi, ēdūxī ā parvō puerō, amāvī prō meō. In eō adulescente est dēlectātiō mea; sōlum id est cārum mihi.

(Terence, Adelphoe 39-49.—dūxit, he married.—adoptāre.—ēdūxī, I raised.)

ETYMOLOGY

In many instances the irregular comparison of a Latin adjective can easily be remembered by English derivatives:

**bonus**
- melior: ameliorate
- optimus: optimist, optimum, optimal

**magnus**
- maior: major, majority, mayor
- maximus: maximum

**malus**
- peior: pejorative
- pessimus: pessimist

**multus**
- plūs: plus, plural, plurality, nonplus

**parvus**
- minor: minor, minority, minus, minute, minuet, minister, minstrel
- minimus: minimum, minimize

**(prō)**
- prior: prior, priority
- prīmus: prime, primacy, primary, primeval, primitive

**superus**
- superior: superior, superiority
- summus: summit, sum, consummate
- suprēmus: supreme, supremacy

Lat. plūs is the parent of Fr. plus and It. più, words which are placed before adjectives to form the comparative degree in those Romance languages. If the definite article is then added to these comparatives, it converts them into superlatives.
In the readings

From pōnō come innumerable derivatives: apposite, apposition, component, composite, compost, compound, deponent, deposit, deposition, de­pot, exponent, exposition, expound, imposition, impost, impostor, juxta­position, opponent, opposite, positive, post, postpone, preposition, proposition, propound, repository, supposition, transposition.

However, note that “pose” and its compounds derive, not from pōnō as one would think, but from the late Latin pausāre, which stems from Gk. pausis, a pause, and pauein, to stop. In Fr. this pausāre became poser, which took the place of pōnō in compounds. Consequently, the forms given above under pōnō are not etymologically related to the following words despite their appearance: compose, depose, expose, impose, oppose, propose, re­pose, suppose, transpose.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvē! Quid agis hodie? Spirasne? Sperasne? Ridesne? Valēsne? Si tū valēs, ego valeō! And here are some more rēs Latīnae to give you a mēns sāna:

First, an old Latin maxim which you should now be able to read, sapiēns nihil affirmat quod nōn probat. Likewise this quote from Horace (Epistulae 1.1.106), sapiēns ūnō minor est Iove, and the motto of the Jesuit order, ad maiōrem glōriam Deī. Now, quid est tempestās? Pluitne? Estne frīgida? Nim­bōsa? Well, it really won’t matter, if you remember this proverb: sōl lū cet omnibus! (Remember lūcēre from last chapter?) Birds of a feather flock together and, according to another old Latin proverb, similis in similī gaudet.

Here are some more from the irregular comparatives and superlatives you’ve just learned: meliōrēs priōrēs, freely, the better have priority; maximā cum laude and summā cum laude (what you should have on your next diploma, sī es diligēns in studiō Latīnae!); peior bellō est timor ipse bellī (note the abl. of comparison); ē plūribus ūnum, motto of the United States, one from several, i.e., one union from many states; prīmus inter parēs, first among equals; prīmā faciē, at first sight; and, finally, summum bonum, the highest good, which can come from studying Latin, of course: valē!
Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

You will recall from Ch. 1 that “mood” (from Lat. modus) is the “manner” of expressing a verbal action or state of being. Thus far we have encountered verbs in two of the three Latin moods, the indicative and the imperative. As you know, an imperative (from imperāre, to command) emphatically commands someone to undertake an action that is not yet going on, while indicatives (from indicāre, to point out) “indicate” real actions, i.e., actions that have in fact occurred (or have definitely not occurred) in the past, that are occurring (or are definitely not occurring) in the present, or that fairly definitely will (or will not) occur in the future.

In contrast to the indicative, the mood of actuality and factuality, the subjunctive is in general (though not always) the mood of potential, tentative, hypothetical, ideal, or even unreal action. An example in English is, “If the other student were here, he would be taking notes”; in this conditional sentence, which imagines actions that are contrary to the actual facts, English employs the auxiliaries “were” and “would” to indicate that the action described is only ideal. Among the other auxiliaries used in English to describe potential or hypothetical actions are “may,” “might,” “should,” “would,” “may have,” “would have,” etc.

Latin employs the subjunctive much more frequently than English, in a wide variety of clause types, and it uses special subjunctive verb forms rather
than auxiliaries. There are two tasks involved in mastering the subjunctive: first, learning the new forms, which is a relatively simple matter; second, learning to recognize and translate the various subjunctive clause types, which is also quite easily done, if your approach is systematic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES

There are only four tenses in the subjunctive mood. The present subjunctive is introduced in this chapter and has rules for formation that vary slightly for each of the four conjugations; rules for forming the imperfect (Ch. 29), perfect, and pluperfect (Ch. 30) are the same for all four conjugations, and even for irregular verbs.

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES

In this and subsequent chapters you will be introduced to a series of subjunctive clause types: the jussive subjunctive and purpose clauses (Ch. 28), result clauses (29), indirect questions (30), cum clauses (31), proviso clauses (32), conditions (33, with three distinct subjunctive types), jussive noun clauses (36), relative clauses of characteristic (38), and fear clauses (40). You should catalog these clause types in your notebook or computer file and systematically learn three details for each: (1) its definition, (2) how to recognize it in a Latin sentence, and (3) how to translate it into English.

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. laúdem móneam ágam aúdiam cápiam
2. laúdēs móneās ágās aúdiās cápiās
3. laúdet móneat ágat aúdiat cápiat

1. laudémonus moneámus agámus aúdiámus capiámus
2. laudētis moneátit agátis aúdiátis capiátis
3. laúdent móneant ágant aúdiant cápiant

Note that in the first conjugation the characteristic stem vowel changes from -ā- in the present indicative to -ē- in the present subjunctive. In the other conjugations -ā- is consistently the sign of the present subjunctive, but with variations in the handling of the actual stem vowel (shortened in the second, replaced in the third, altered to short -i- in the fourth/third -io); the sentence "we fear a liar" will help you remember that the actual vowels preceding the personal endings are -ē-, -eā-, -ā-, and -iā- for the first, second, third, and fourth/third -io conjugations, respectively.

Note that a subjunctive may be mistaken for an indicative, if you neglect to recognize a verb's conjugation (e.g., cp. agat with amat, and amet with monet), so remember your vocabulary.
The present passive subjunctive naturally follows the pattern of the active except that passive endings are used.

laudēr, laudēris (and remember the alternate -re ending, Ch. 18), laudētur; laudēmur, laudēminī, laudēntur
moneār, moneāris, moneātur; moneāmur, moneāminī, moneāntur
ágār, agāris, agātur; agāmur, agāminī, agāntur
audīār, audīāris, audīātur; audīāmur, audīāminī, audīāntur
capiār, capiāris, capiātur; capiāmur, capiāminī, capiāntur

TRANSLATION

While *may* is sometimes used to translate the present subjunctive (e.g., in purpose clauses), the translation of all subjunctive tenses, in fact, varies with the type of clause, as you will see when each is introduced.

**THE JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**

As the term "subjunctive" (from *subiungere*, *to subjoin, subordinate*) suggests, the subjunctive was used chiefly in subordinate (or dependent) clauses. However, the subjunctive was also employed in certain types of main, or independent, clauses. The "jussive" subjunctive (from *iubère*, *to order*) is among the most important of these independent uses, and the only one formally introduced in this book. As the term implies, the jussive expresses a command or exhortation, especially in the first or third person, singular or plural (the imperative is generally used for the second person); *ne* is employed for negative commands. The clause type is easily recognized, since the sentence’s main verb (and often its only verb) is subjunctive; while *may* and *should* can sometimes be employed in translating the jussive subjunctive (particularly with the second person: *semper spērēs*, *you should always hope*), *let* is the English auxiliary most often used, followed by the subject noun or pronoun (in the objective case, i.e., *me, us, him, her, it, them*).

Cogitem nunc dē hāc rē, et tum nōn errābō, *let me now think about this matter, and then I will not make a mistake*.
Discipulus discat aut discēdat, *let the student either learn or leave*.
Doceāmus magnā cum dēlectātiōne linguam Laūnam, *let us teach the Latin language with great delight*.
Nē id faciāmus, *let us not do this*.
Audeant illī virī et fēminae esse fortēs, *let those men and women dare to be brave.*
PURPOSE CLAUSES

A purpose clause is a subordinate clause indicating the purpose or objective of the action in the main clause; e.g., “we study Latin so that we may learn more about ancient Rome” or “we study Latin to improve our English.” As seen in this second example, English often employs an infinitive to express purpose, but that use of the infinitive is rare in Latin prose (though not unusual in verse). Instead Latin most commonly employed a subjunctive clause introduced by ut or, for a negative purpose, nē; the auxiliary may (as in the first English example above) is frequently used in translating the present tense in a purpose clause, but often we can translate with an infinitive (if the subject of the purpose clause is the same as that of the main clause). Study carefully the following Latin sentences and the several acceptable translations:

Hoc dīcit ut eōs iuvet.
He says this to help them.
in order to help them.
that he may help them.
so that he may help them.
in order that he may help them.

The first two translation options given above are more colloquial, the others more formal.

Discēdit nē id audiat.
He leaves in order not to hear this.
so that he may not hear this.

Cum cūrā docet ut discipulī bene discant.
He teaches with care so (that) his students may learn well.

Hoc facit nē capiātur.
He does this in order not to be captured.

Librōs legimus ut multa discāmus.
We read books (in order) to learn many things.

Bonōs librōs nōbīs dent nē malōs legāmus.
Let them give us good books so that we may not read bad ones.

You should have no difficulty recognizing a purpose clause: look for a subordinate clause, introduced by ut or nē, ending with a subjunctive verb, and answering the question “why?” or “for what purpose?”

VOCABULARY

ārma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms, weapons (armor, army, armament, armada, armature, armistice, armadillo, alarm, disarmament, gendarme)
cúrsus, -ūs, m., running, race: course (courser, cursor, cursory, cursive, concause, discourse, recourse, precursor, excursion; cp. currō)
lúna, -ae, f., moon (lunar, lunacy, lunate, lunatic, lunation, interlunar)
occhásiō, occásiōnis, f., occasion, opportunity (occasional; cp. occidō, Ch. 31)
párēns, parēntis, m./f., parent (parentage, parental, parenting; cp. pariō, parere, to give birth to)
stellá, -ae, f., star: planet (stellar, constellation, interstellar)
vésper, vésperis or vespéri, m., evening; evening star (vesper, vesperal, ves­erpertine)
mórtuus, -a, -um, dead (mortuary; cp. mors, mortālis, immortālis, and, Ch. 34, morior)
princeps, gen. principis, chief, foremost; m./f. noun, leader, emperor (prince, principal, principality; cp. primus, principium)
ut, conj. + subj., in order that, so that, in order to, so as to, to; + indic., as, when
nē, adv. and conj. with subjunctives of command and purpose, not; in order that . . . not, that . . . not, in order not to
cédō, cédere, cēssi, cēsum, to go, withdraw; yield to, grant, submit (ac­cede, access, accession, antecedent, ancestor, cede, concede, de­ceased, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, secede, succeed; cp. discēdō)
dédicō (1), to dedicate (dedication, dedicatory, rededication)
égeō, egere, egū + abl. or gen., to need, lack, want (indigence, indigent; do not confuse with ēgī, from āgō)
expleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, to fill, fill up, complete (expletive, expletory, deplete, replete; cp. plēnus, plēō, to fill)
praestō, -stāre, -stītī, -stītum, to excel; exhibit, show, offer, supply, furnish táceō, tacère, tácuī, tácitum, to be silent, leave unmentioned (tacit, taciturn, taciturnity, reticence, reticent)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Auctor sapiēns et diligēns turpia vītet et bona probet.
2. Itaque prō patria etiam maiōra mēliōraque nunc faciāmus.
3. Nepōs tuus ā mēnsā discēdat nē ista verba acerba audiat.
4. Nē imperātor superbus credat sē esse fēliciōrem quam virum humil­limum.
5. Quisque petit quam felicissimum et urbānissimum modum vītae.
6. Quīdam delectātiōnēs et beneficia aliīs praestant ut beneficia simi­lia recipiant.
7. Multī medicī lūcem sólis fuisse primum remedium putant.
8. Imperium ducī potentiōrī dabunt ut hostēs ācerrīmōs āvertat.
9. His verbis tristibus nuntiat, pars hostium duos principes suos reliquit.
10. Maiiores putabant deos superos habere corpora humana pulcherrima et fortissima.
11. Uxor pudica eius haec decem utilissima tum probavit.
12. Let him not think that those dissimilar laws are worse than the others (translate with and without quam).
13. They will send only twenty men to do this very easy thing in the forum.
14. They said: “Let us call the arrogant emperor a most illustrious man in order not to be expelled from the country.”
15. Therefore, let them not order this very wise and very good woman to depart from the dinner.

SENTENTIAE ANTITIIQAE

1. Ratio ducat, non fortuna. (*Livy.)
2. Arma togae cedant. (Cicero.—toga, -ae, the garment of peace and civil, in contrast to military, activity.)
3. Ex urbe nunc discede ne metu et armis opprimar. (Cicero.)
4. Nunc una res mihi prōtinus est facienda ut maximum otium et sōlācium habeam. (Terence.)
5. Rapiamus, amici, occāsionem dē die. (*Horace.)
6. Corpus enim somnō et multīs aliis rēbus eget ut valeat; animus ipse sē alit. (Seneca.)
7. Quī beneficium dedit, tacet; nāret quī accēpit. (*Seneca.)
8. Dē mortuī nihil nisi bonum dicāmus. (Diogenes Laertius.)
9. Parēns ipse nec habeat vitia nec toleret. (Quintilian.)
10. In hac rē ratiō habenda est ut monitio acerbitātē careat. (Cicero.—monitiō, -onis, admonition.—acerbitās, -tātis, noun of acerbus.)
11. Feminae ad lūdōs semper veniunt ut videant—et ut ipsae videantur. (Ovid.)
12. Arma virumque canō quī prīmus a lītoribus Trōiae ad Italiam vēnit. (Virgil.—canō, -ere, to sing about.)

PLEASE REMOVE MY NAME FROM YOUR MAILING LIST!

Cur nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

(*Martial 7.3; meter: elegiac couplet. Roman poets, just like American writers, would often exchange copies of their works with one another; but Pontilianus’ poems are not Martial’s cup of tea!—mitto: final -ō was often shortened in Latin verse.—Pontiliānus, -ī.—Nē . . . mittās, not jussive, but purpose, following the implied statement, “I don’t send mine to you. . . .”)
TO HAVE FRIENDS ONE MUST BE FRIENDLY

Ut praestem Pyladen, aliquis mihi praestet Orestēn.
Hoc nōn fit verbīs, Mārce; ut amēris, amā.

(*Martial 6.11.9–10; meter: elegiac couplet. Orestes and Pylades were a classic pair of very devoted friends; Martial cannot play the role of Pylades unless someone proves a real Orestes to him.—Pyladen and Orestēn are Greek acc. sg. forms.—fit, is accomplished.)

Pylades and Orestes Brought as Victims before Iphigenia
Benjamin West, 1766, Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK


(Isidore of Seville, Origēnēs 5.30, 7th cen.—Mārs, Mārtis.—Mercurius, -ī.—Iuppiter, Iovis.—Venus, Veneris.—Lūciferus, -ī, Lucifer, light-bringer.—Sāturnus, -ī.—trīgintā, 30.—Hebraeus, -ī, Hebrew.—sabbatum, -i, the Sabbath; ūnus diēs sabbatī, i.e., the first day after the Sabbath.—dominicus, -a, -um, of the Lord, the Lord's.—pāgānus, -ī, rustic, peasant; here, pagan.)
ETYMOLOGY

“Alarm” derives ultimately from It. all’arme (to arms), which stands for ad illa arma.

From cessō (1), an intensive form of cēdō: cease, cessation, incessant.

The -ā- which is consistently found in the present subjunctive of all conjugations except the first in Latin is similarly found in the present subjunctive of all conjugations except the first in both Italian and Spanish. And Spanish even has the characteristic -ē- of the Latin in the present subjunctive of the first conjugation.

In the readings

“Days of the Week”: martial.—mercury, mercurial.—Jovian, by Jove! jovial.—Venusian, venereal, venery.—lucifer, luciferase, luciferin, luciferous.—Saturnian, Saturday, saturnine.—Dominic, Dominica, Dominican, dominical; cp. dominus/domina.—paganism, paganize.

LATINÆ EST GAUDIUM—ET UTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some nuggets from the new Vocab.: teachers and guardians can serve in locō parentis; mortuī nōn mordent, “dead men tell no tales” (lit., the dead don’t bite!); occēsiō fūrem facit, opportunity makes a thief; those who know about Watergate will now recognize the etymology of the “expletives deleted” (four-letter words that “fill out” the sentences of vulgar and illiterate folk!); an ēditīō prīnceps is a first edition; tacet, a musical notation calling for a vocalist or instrumentalist to be silent; related to cursus is curriculum, running, course, course of action, hence a résumé provides your curriculum vitæ; and the motto of New York University (filiō meō grātiās!), a good one for Latin students, is perstāre et praestāre, to persevere and to excel.

Now let’s focus on jussives: first off, I hope that all my students in Wyoming recognized arma togae cēdant as their state motto; another motto, with this new verb cēdere and an imperative rather than a jussive, is Virgil’s nē cēde malīs, yield not to evils; Vegetius, an ancient military analyst, has advised us, qūi désiderat pācem, praeparet bellum; and I’m certain all the Star Wars fans can decipher this: sit vīs tēcum!

Before bidding you farewell, friends, let me point out that the jussive subjunctive, common in the first and third person, is sometimes used in the second as well, in lieu of an imperative, and translated with should or may; an example is seen in this anonymous proverb, which makes the same point as the Pylades reading above: ut amīcum habeās, sīs amīcus, in order to have a friend, you should be a friend. By the way, I call first person plural jussives the “salad subjunctives” (remember VENI, VIDI, VEGI?) because they always contain “let us”: GROAN!! On that punny note lettuce juss say goodbye: amīcī amīcæque meae, semper valeātis!
Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum and Possum; Result Clauses

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is perhaps the easiest of all the subjunctive tenses to recognize and form. For all verbs it is in effect simply the present active infinitive + the present system personal endings, active and passive, with the -ē- long (except, as usual, before final -m, -r, and -t, and both final and medial -nt-). Sample forms are given in the following paradigms; for complete conjugations, see the Appendix (p. 453–54).

1. laudāre-m laudāre-r ágerer audīrem cáperem
2. laudārē-s laudārē-ris agerēris audīrēs cáperēs
3. laudāre-t laudārē-tur agerētur audīret cáperet
1. laudārē-mus laudārē-mur agerēmur audīrēmus caperēmus
2. laudārē-tis laudārē-minī agerēminī audīrētis caperētis
3. laudāre-nt laudārē-ntur agerēntur audīrent cáperent
PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF Sum AND Possum

The present subjunctives of sum and possum are irregular (though they do follow a consistent pattern) and must be memorized. The imperfect subjunctives, however, follow the rule given above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperfect Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sim</td>
<td>póssim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sís</td>
<td>póssīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sit</td>
<td>póssit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. símus</td>
<td>possīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sítis</td>
<td>possētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sint</td>
<td>póssint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Particular care should be taken to distinguish between the forms of the present and the imperfect subjunctive of possum.

USE AND TRANSLATION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is used in a variety of clause types, including purpose and result clauses, when the main verb is a past tense. As for all subjunctives, the translation depends upon the type of clause, but auxiliaries sometimes used with the imperfect include were, would, and, in purpose clauses, might (vs. may for the present tense). Study these sample sentences containing purpose clauses:

Hoc dicit ut eōs iuvet.
*He says this (in order) to help them.*
so that he may help them.

Hoc dixit (dicēbat) ut eōs iuvēret.
*He said (kept saying) this (in order) to help them.*
so that he might help them.

Hoc facit nē urbs capiātur.
*He does this so that the city may not be captured.*

Hoc fēcit (facībat) nē urbs caperētur.
*He did (was doing) this so that the city might not be captured.*

Remember that in order to master the subjunctive (notice the purpose clause?!) you must 1) learn a definition for each clause type, 2) know how to recognize each, and 3) know the proper translation for the subjunctive verb in each type. Keep these three points in mind—definition, recognition,
As you proceed to the following discussion of result clauses and to the subsequent chapters in this book.

**RESULT CLAUSES**

A result clause is a subordinate clause that shows the result of the action in the main clause; the purpose clause answers the question “why is (was) it being done?” while the result clause answers the question “what is (was) the outcome?” Examples in English are: “it is raining so hard that the streets are flooding” and “she studied Latin so diligently that she knew it like a Roman.” Notice that English introduces such clauses with “that” and uses the indicative mood, generally with *no auxiliary* (i.e., neither *may* nor *might*).

Latin result clauses begin with *ut* and contain (usually at the end) a subjunctive verb. The result clause can be easily recognized, and distinguished from a purpose clause, by the sense and context and also by the fact that the main clause usually contains an adverb (*ita, tam, sic, so*) or adjective (*tantus, so much, so great*) indicating degree and signaling that a result clause is to follow. Moreover, if the clause describes a negative result, it will contain some negative word such as *nōn, nihil, nēmō, numquam* or *nūllus* (vs. a negative purpose clause, which is introduced by *nē*). Analyze carefully the following examples, and note that in the result clauses (vs. the purpose clauses) the subjunctive verb is regularly translated *as an indicative*, without an auxiliary (*may* or *might* are used only in those instances where a potential or ideal result, rather than an actual result, is being described):

- **Tanta fēcit ut urbem servāret,** *he did such great things that he saved the city.* (Result)
- **Haec fēcit ut urbem servāret,** *he did these things that he might save the city.* (Purpose)
- **Tam strēnūē labōrat ut multa perficiat,** *he works so energetically that he accomplishes many things.* (Result)
- **Strēnūē labōrat ut multa perficiat,** *he works energetically so that he may accomplish many things.* (Purpose)
- **Hoc tantā benevolentiā dīxit ut eōs nōn offendorēt,** *he said this with such great kindness that he did not offend them.* (Result)
- **Hoc magnā benevolentiā dīxit nē eōs offendorēt,** *he said this with great kindness in order that he might not offend them.* (Purpose)
- **Saltus erat angustus,** *the pass was narrow, so that a few Greeks were able to stop many soldiers.* (Result)
In this last example you will notice that there is no “signal word” such as ita or tam in the main clause, but it is clear from the context that the ut clause indicates the result of the pass’s narrowness (the pass was clearly not designed by nature with the purpose of obstructing Persians, but it was so narrow that the Persians were in fact obstructed by it).

**VOCABULARY**

- **fátum, -i, n.**, fate; death (fatal, fatalism, fatality, fateful, fairy; cp. fábula, fáma, and for, Ch. 40)
- **ingéniun, -i, n.**, nature, innate talent (ingenuity, genius, genial, congenial; cp. genus, gens, gigno, to create, give birth to)
- **moénia, moénium, n. pl., walls of a city** (munitions, ammunition; cp. múniō, to fortify)
- **nátā, -ae, f., daughter** (prenatal, postnatal, Natalie; cp. nátuра, nátālis, of birth, natal, náscor, Ch. 34)
- **óscculum, -i, n.**, kiss (osculate, osculation, osculat, oscular, osculatory)
- **sidus, sideris, n., constellation, star** (sidereal, consider, desire)
- **dígnus, -a, -um + abl., worthy, worthy of** (dignify, dignity from dignitās, Ch. 38, indignation from indignātiō, deign, disdain, dainty)
- **dírus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, difficult** (dour, durable, duration, duress, endure, obdurate)
- **tántus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such a size** (tantamount)
- **dénique, adv., at last, finally, lastly**
- **ita, adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs., so, thus**
- **quidem, postpositive adv., indeed, certainly, at least, even; nē . . . quidem, not . . . even**
- **sic, adv. most commonly with verbs, so, thus** (sic)
- **tam, adv. with adjs. and advs., so, to such a degree; tam . . . quam, so . . . as; tamquam, as it were, as if; so to speak**
- **vērō, adv., in truth, indeed, to be sure, however** (very, verily, etc.; cp. vērus, vēritās)
- **cóndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, to put together or into, store; found, establish** (= con- + dō, dare; condiment, abscond, recondite, sconce)
- **conténdō, -tendere, -tēndī, -tēntum, to strive, struggle, contend; hasten** (contender, contentious; cp. tendō, to stretch, extend)
- **mólliō, mollire, mollīvī, mollītum, to soften; make calm or less hostile** (mollescent, mollify, mollusk, emollient; cp. mollis, soft, mild)
- **púgnō (1), to fight** (pugnacious, impugn, pugilist, pugilism; cp. oppugnō, Ch. 39)
- **respóndeō, -spóndere, -spóndī, -spōnsum, to answer** (respond, response, responsive, responsibility, correspond)
- **súrgō, súrgere, surréxi, surréctum, to get up, arise** (surge, resurgent, resurrection, insurgent, insurrection, source, resource)
PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Prīnceps arma meliora in manibus mīlitum posuit, ut hostēs terrērent.
2. Hostēs quidem negāvērunt sē arma dissimilia habēre.
3. Pars mīlitum ĕtām vitāvit nē hēc vidērentur.
4. Sōlem prīmam ĕtām caeli superfē, lūnam prīmam ĕtām vesperī, et stēllās ocūlōs noctis appellābant.
5. Illī adulēscēntēs sapientiae dēnique cēdant ut fēlīciōrēs hīs sint.
6. Sapientēs putant beneficia esse potentiōra quam verba acerba et turpia.
7. Quīdam magister verba tam dūra discipulīs dīxit ut discēderent.
8. Respondērunt auctōrem hōrum novem remedīōrum esse medicam potentissīmam.
9. Nihil vērō tam facile est ut sine labōre id facere possīmus.
10. Prō labōre studiōque patria nostra nōbīs plūrīmās occasiōnēs bonās praestat.
12. The words of the philosopher were very difficult, so that those listening were unable to learn them.
13. The two women wished to understand these things so that they might not live base lives.
14. Those four wives were so pleasant that they received very many kindnesses.
15. He said that the writer's third poem was so beautiful that it delighted the minds of thousands of citizens.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Omnia vincit Amor; et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (Virgil.)
2. Urbem clāriissimam condidī; mea moenia vīdī; explēvi cursum quem Fāta dederant. (Virgil.)
3. Ita dūrus erās ut neque amore neque precibus mollīrī possēs. (Terence.—prex, precis, f., prayer.)
4. Nēmō quidem tam fērōx est ut nōn mollīrī possit, cultūrā datā. (Horace.—cultūra, -ae.)
5. Difficile est saturam nōn scriberē; nam quis est tam patiēns malae urbis ut sē teneat? (Juvenal.—patiēns, gen. patientis, tolerant of.)
6. Fuit quondam in hāc rē publicā tanta virtūs ut virī fortēs cīvem perniciōsum ácriōribus poenīs quam acerbissīmum hostem reprime¬rent. (Cicero.—perniciōsus, -a, -um, pernicious.—re-primō, cp. op-primō.)
7. Ita praecērā est recuperātiō libertātīs ut nē mors quidem in hāc rē sit fugienda. (Cicero.—recuperātiō, -onis, recovery.)
(Cicero.—ũtilitās, -tātis, advantage; cp. ūtīlis.)

9. Eō tempore Athēniēnsēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut decemplex-
numerus hostium superārent, et hōs sīc perterrērunt ut in 
Asiae rēfugerent. (Nepos.—Athēniēnsēs, -ium, Athenians.—decem-
pless, -icis, tenfold.—per-terrē.)

10. Ōrātor exemplum dignum petat ab Dēmosthēnēs illō, in quō tantum 
studium tantusque labor fuisset dicuntur ut impedimenta nātūrae 
diligentīa industriāque superāret. (Cicero.—exemplum, -i, ex-
ample.—Dēmosthēnēs, -thenis, a famous Greek orator.—impedimen-
tum, -ī,—diligentia, -ae.—industria, -ae.)

11. Praecepta tua sint brevia ut cito mentēs discipulōrum ea discant 
teneantque memoriā fidēli. (Horace.—praecēptum, -i, precept.)

12. Nihil tam difficile est ut nōn possit studiō invēstīgāri. (Terence.— 
invēstīgāre, to track down, investigate.)

13. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil nisi pāx quaesīta esse vi-
deātur. (Cicero.)

14. Tanta est vīs probitātis ut eam etiam in hospē diligentūs. (Cicero.)

**HOW MANY KISSES ARE ENOUGH?**

Queris, Lesbia, quot bāsia tua sint mihi satis? Tam multa bāsia quam 
magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae aut quam sīdera multa quae, ubi tacet 
nox, furtīvōs amōrēs hominum vident—tam bāsia multa (nēmō numerum 
scīre potest) sunt satis Catullō īnsānō!

(Catullus 7; prose adaptation.—quot ... sint, how many ... are (an indirect 
question; see Ch. 30)—Libyssae, Libyan, African.—harēna, -ae, sand, here = 
the grains of sand.—furtīvōs, -a, -um, stolen, secret.—īnsānus, -a, -um.)
THE NERVOUSNESS OF EVEN A GREAT ORATOR


(Cicero, Pro Cluentio 51. — sollicitūdō, -dinis, f., anxiety. — quotiescumque, adv., whenever. — The genitives ingenī, virtūtis, and officiī all modify iūdicium. — perturbāre, to disturb, confuse. — colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, to gather, collect, control.)

YOU’RE ALL JUST WONDERFUL!

Nē laudet dignōs, laudat Callistratus omnēs:

cui malus est nēmō, quis bonus esse potest?

(*Martial 12.80; meter: elegiac couplet. — dignōs, i.e., only the deserving. — Callistratus, a Greek name, meant to suggest perhaps a former slave. — quis . . . potest, supply ei, antecedent of cui, to a man to whom.)

ETYMOLOGY

The adverbial ending -mente or -ment which is so characteristic of Romance languages derives from Lat. mente (abl. of mēns) used originally as an abl. of manner but now reduced to an adverbial suffix. The following examples are based on Latin adjectives which have already appeared in the vocabularies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Words</th>
<th>It. Adverb</th>
<th>Sp. Adverb</th>
<th>Fr. Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūrā mente</td>
<td>duramente</td>
<td>duramente</td>
<td>durement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clārā mente</td>
<td>chiaramente</td>
<td>claramente</td>
<td>clairement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōlā mente</td>
<td>solamente</td>
<td>solamente</td>
<td>seulement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certā mente</td>
<td>certamente</td>
<td>certamente</td>
<td>certainement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dulcī mente</td>
<td>dolcemente</td>
<td>dulcemente</td>
<td>doucement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevī mente</td>
<td>brevemente</td>
<td>brevemente</td>
<td>brèvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilī mente</td>
<td>facilmente</td>
<td>facilmente</td>
<td>facilement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lat. sīc is the parent of It. sì, Sp. sí, and Fr. sì meaning yes.

In the readings


LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET UTILIS!

Salvē! Long-time Tonight Show fans will know why I call result clauses “Johnny Carson clauses”: during his monologue, Johnny began many an
Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum and Possum; Result Clauses

anecdote with the likes of “I saw this fellow the other night who was so funny . . .”. Ed McMahon (or some bloke from the audience) then chimes in, “How funny was he, Johnny?” and Johnny replies, always with a result clause, “Why, he was so funny that . . .!”

Sunt multae dēlectātiōnēs in novō vocābulāriō nostrō: e.g., there’s Virginia’s state motto, sic semper tyrannis, thus always to tyrants (death, i.e.); and ingenium, which really means something inborn, like a Roman man’s genius (his inborn guardian spirit, counterpart to the woman’s iūnō, magnified and deified in the goddess Juno); the connection of moenia and müniirement reminds us that fortification walls were the ancients’ best munitions, and there’s the old proverb praemonitus, praemūniitus, forewarned (is) forearmed; sic is an editor’s annotation, meaning thus (it was written), and used to identify an error or peculiarity in a text being quoted.

And here’s a brief “kissertation” on the nicest word in this new list: osculum was the native word for kiss (vs. bāsiium, which the poet Catullus seems to have introduced into the language from the north); it is actually the diminutive of ōs, ōris (Ch. 14) and so means literally little mouth (which perhaps proves the Romans “puckered up” when they smooched!). Catullus, by the way, loved to invent words, and one was bāsiātiō, kissification or smooch-making (“smooch,” by the way, is not Latinate, alas, but Germanic and related to “smack,” as in “to smack one’s lips,” which one might do before enjoying either a kiss or a slice of toast with “Smucker’s”!). Ridiēte et valēte!

Reconstruction of the Roman Forum, Soprintendenza alle Antichità, Rome, Italy
Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect system subjunctives, like perfect system indicatives, all follow the same basic rules of formation, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong. For the perfect subjunctive active, add -erī- + the personal endings to the perfect stem (shortening the -i- before -m, -t, and -nt); for the pluperfect active, add -issē- + the personal endings to the perfect stem (shortening the -e- before -m, etc.). For the passives, substitute the subjunctives sim and essen for the equivalent indicatives sum and eram.

The forms of laudō are shown below; those for the other model verbs (which follow the very same pattern) are provided in the Appendix.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Sg. laudāv-erim, laudāverīs, laudāverit
Pl. laudāverimus, laudāverītis, laudāverint

Note that these forms are identical to those of the future perfect indicative except for the first person singular and the long -ī- in certain of the subjunctive forms; the identical forms can be distinguished as indicative or subjunctive by sentence context.
Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Sg. laudāv-isset, laudāvissēs, laudāvisset
Pl. laudāvissēmus, laudāvissētis, laudāvissent

Note that these forms resemble the perfect active infinitive, laudāvisse, + the endings (with the -ē- long except before -m, etc.; cp. the imperfect subjunctive, which resembles the present active infinitive + endings).

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Sg. laudātus, -a, -um sim, laudātus sīs, laudātus sit
Pl. laudātī, -ae, -a sīmus, laudātī sītis, laudātī sint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Sg. laudātus, -a, -um ēssēm, laudātus ēssēs, laudātus ēsset
Pl. laudātī, -ae, -a ēssēmus, laudātī essētis, laudātī essent

TRANSLATION AND USAGE

As with the present and imperfect subjunctives, the perfect and pluperfect are employed in a variety of clauses (in accordance with the sequence of tenses discussed below) and with a variety of translations. Just as may and might/would are sometimes used in translating the present and imperfect, respectively, so may have and might have/would have are sometimes employed with the perfect and pluperfect; likewise, they are often translated as simple indicatives: the best procedure is to learn the rules for translation of each clause type.

SYNOPSIS

You have now learned to conjugate a verb fully in all of its finite forms; following is a complete third person singular synopsis of agō, agere, ēgi, āctum (cp. Ch. 21):

Indicative Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>āgit</td>
<td>āget</td>
<td>āgēbat</td>
<td>ēgit</td>
<td>ēgerit</td>
<td>ēgerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>āgitur</td>
<td>āgētur</td>
<td>āgēbātur</td>
<td>āctus</td>
<td>āctus</td>
<td>āctus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>āgat</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>āgeret</td>
<td>ēgerit</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>ēgisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>agātur</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>agēretur</td>
<td>āctus</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>āctus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question is a subordinate clause which reports some question indirectly, i.e., not via a direct quotation (e.g., "they asked what Gaius was doing" vs. "they asked, 'What is Gaius doing?'"; as such, it is comparable in conception to an indirect statement, which reports indirectly, not a question, but some affirmative statement (see Ch. 25). The indirect question, however, uses a subjunctive verb (not an infinitive) and is easily distinguished from other subjunctive clause types since it is introduced by some interrogative word such as quis/quid, quī/quae/quod (i.e., the interrogative adjective), quam, quandō, cūr, ubi, unde, uter, utrum ... an (whether ... or), -ne (attached to the clause's first word, = whether), etc.; moreover, the verb in the main clause is ordinarily a verb of speech, mental activity, or sense perception (including many of the same verbs that introduce indirect statements: see the list in Ch. 25).

The subjunctive verb in an indirect question is usually translated as though it were an indicative in the same tense (i.e., without any auxiliary such as may or might). Compare the first three examples below, which are direct questions, with the next three, which contain indirect questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quid Gāius facit?</td>
<td>What is Gaius doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quid Gāius fēcit?</td>
<td>What did Gaius do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quid Gāius faciet?</td>
<td>What will Gaius do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rogant quid Gāius faciat.</td>
<td>They ask what Gaius is doing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rogant quid Gāius fēcerit.</td>
<td>They ask what Gaius did.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rogant quid Gāius factūrus sit.</td>
<td>They ask what Gaius will do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(lit., is about to do).

Factūrus sit in this last example is a form sometimes called the "future active periphrastic"; in the absence of an actual future subjunctive, this combination of a form of sum + the future active participle (cp. the passive periphrastic, consisting of sum + the future passive participle, in Ch. 24) was occasionally employed in order to indicate future time unambiguously in certain types of clauses (including the indirect question). In this last example, if the main verb were a past tense, then (in accordance with the rules for sequence of tenses) the sentence would be rogāvērunt quid Gaius factūrus esset, they asked what Gaius would do (was about to do, was going to do).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

As in English, so also in Latin, there is a logical sequence of tenses as the speaker or writer proceeds from a main clause to a subordinate clause.
The rule in Latin is simple: a "primary" tense of the indicative must be followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a "historical" (or "secondary") indicative tense must be followed by a historical subjunctive tense, as illustrated in the following chart.

It may be helpful to note at this point that the so-called primary tenses of the indicative, the present and future, both indicate incomplete actions (i.e., actions now going on, in the present, or only to be begun in the future), while the historical tenses, as the term implies, refer to past actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Subordinate Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Primary     | Pres. or Fut. | { Present (= action at same time or after)  
|             |           | Perfect (= action before)                   |
| Historical  | Past Tenses | { Imperfect (= action at same time or after) 
|             |            | Pluperfect (= action before)                |

After a primary main verb the present subjunctive indicates action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb or after that of the main verb. The perfect subjunctive indicates action which occurred before that of the main verb.

Similarly after a historical main verb the imperfect subjunctive indicates action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb or after that of the main verb. The pluperfect subjunctive indicates action which occurred before that of the main verb.¹

These rules for the sequence of tenses operate in purpose clauses, result clauses, indirect questions, and similar constructions to be introduced in subsequent chapters; analyze carefully the sequencing in each of the following examples:

Id facit (faciet) ut mē iuvet, *he does (will do) it to help me.*
Id fecit (faciebat) ut mē iuvaret, *he did (kept doing) it to help me.*

Tam dūrus est ut eum vītem, *he is so harsh that I avoid him.*
Tam dūrus fuit (erat) ut eum vītērem, *he was so harsh that I avoided him.*

*Rogant, rogābunt*—*They ask, will ask*  
quid faciat, *what he is doing.*

¹There are two common and quite logical exceptions to the rules for sequence of tenses: a historical present main verb (i.e., a present tense used for the vivid narration of past events) will often take a historical sequence subjunctive, and a perfect tense main verb, when focussing on the present consequences of the past action, may be followed by a primary sequence subjunctive (see P.R. 8 below). Note, too, that since purpose and result clauses logically describe actions that follow (actually or potentially) the actions of the main verb, they do not ordinarily contain perfect or pluperfect tense verbs, which indicate prior action (though the perfect subjunctive was sometimes used as a historical tense in a result clause).
quid fecerit, what he did.
quid facturus sit, what he will do.

Rogāvērunt, rogābant—They asked, kept asking
quid faceret, what he was doing.
quid fecisset, what he had done.
quid facturus esset, what he would do.

VOCABULARY

honor, honōris, m., honor; esteem; public office (honorable, honorary, honorific, dishonor, honest)
cēterī, -ae, -a, pl., the remaining, the rest, the other; all the others; cp. alius, another, other (etc. = et cetera)
quāntus, -a, -um, how large, how great, how much (quantify, quantity, quantitative, quantum; cp. tantus); tāntus . . . quāntus, just as much (many) . . . as
riddiculus, -a, -um, laughable, ridiculous (ridicule, etc.; cp. rīdeō, subrīdeō, Ch. 35)
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living (vivid, vivify, convivial; cp. vīvō, vīta)
fūrtim, adv., stealthily, secretly (furtively, ferret; cp. fūrtīvus, -a, -um, secret, furtive; fūr, fūris, m./f., thief)
mox, adv., soon
prīnō, adv., at first, at the beginning (cp. prīnum, -a, -um)
repēnte, adv., suddenly
ūnde, adv., whence, from what or which place, from which, from whom
ūtrum . . . an, conj., whether . . . or
bibō, bibere, bibi, to drink (bib, bibulous, imbibe, wine-bibber, beverage)
cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, to become acquainted with, learn, recognize; in perfect tenses, know (cognizance, cognizant, cognition, connoisseur; incognito, reconnaissance, reconnoiter; cp. nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, noble, notice, notify, notion, notorious, and recog(nōscō), Ch. 38)
comprehēndō, -hendere, -hēndī, -hēnsum, to grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand (comprehensive, comprehensible, incomprehensible)
consūmō, -sumere, -sumpsī, -sūptum, to consume, use up (consumer, consumption, assume, assumption, presume, presumable, presumption, presumptive, presumptuous, resume, resumption; cp. sūmō, to take)
dūbitō (1), to doubt, hesitate (dubious, dubitable, dubitative, doubtful, doubtless, indubitable, undoubtedly)
expōnō, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsitum, to set forth, explain, expose (exponent, exposition, expository, expound)
mīnuō, mīnūere, mīnūi, mīnutum, to lessen, diminish (cp. minor, minus,
minimus; diminish, diminuendo, diminution, diminutive, minuet, minute, minutiae, menu, mince
rógō (1), to ask (interrogate, abrogate, arrogant, derogatory, prerogative, surrogate)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Rogāvit ubi illae duae discipulae dignae haec dicicissent.
2. Videbit quanta fuerit Vīs illōrum verbōrum felicium.
3. Hās īnsidiās repente exposuit nē rēs pūblica oppresserētur.
4. Hī taceant et trēs cēterī expellantur nē occasīōnem sīmīlem habeant.
5. Ita dūrus erat ut beneficia uxorīs comprehendere nōn posset.
6. Cēterī quidem nesciebant quam ācrīs esset mens nātae ēorum.
7. Dēnīque prīncēps cognōscet cūr potentior pars mūlītum nōs vītet.
8. Iam cognōvī cūr clāra facta vērō nōn sint fācillīma.
9. Quīdām auctōrēs appellābant arma optimum remedium malōrum.
10. Mortuīs haec arma mox dēdīcēmus nē honōre egeant.
11. Fātō duce, Rōmulus Remusque Rōmam condiderunt; et, Remō nē-
cātō, moenia urbis novae cito sūrēxērunt.
12. Tell me in what lands liberty is found.
13. We did not know where the sword had finally been put.
14. He does not understand the first words of the little book which they
wrote about the constellations.
15. They asked why you could not learn what the rest had done.
16. Let all men now seek better things than money or supreme power
so that their souls may be happier.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Nunc vidētis quantum scelus contrā rem pūblicam et lēgēs nostrās
vōbis prōnūntiātum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Quam dulcis sit lībertās vōbis prōtīnus dīcam. (Phaedrus.)
3. Rogābat dēnīque cūr umquam ex urbe cessissent. (Horace.)
4. Nunc sciō quid sit amor. (*Virgil.)
5. Videāmus uter hīc in mediō forō plus scribere possit. (Horace.)
6. Multī dubitābant quid optimum esset. (*Cicero.)
7. Incipiam expōnere unde nātūra omnēs rēs creet alatque. (Lucretius.)
8. Dulce est vidēre quibus malīs ipse careās. (Lucretius.)
9. Auctōrem Trōiānī bellī relēgī, qui dīcit quid sit pulchrum, quid
turpe, quid utile, quid nōn. (Horace.—Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan.)
10. Doctōres rogābis quā ratione bene agere cursum vitae possīs, utrum
virtūtem doctrīnā paret an nātūra ingeniumque dent, quid minuat
cūrās, quid tē amīcum tībi faciat. (Horace.—doctrīnā, -ae, teaching.)
11. Istī autem rogant tantum quid habeās, nōn cūr et unde. (Seneca.)
12. Errat, qui finem vēsānī quaevit amorīs: vērus amor nūllum nōvit ha-bēre modum. (*Propertius. — vēsānus, -a, -um, insane.)

13. Sed tempus est iam mē discēdere ut cicūtam bibam, et vōs discēdere ut vītam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; homi-nem quidem nēminem scīre crēdō. (Cicero.—Socrates’ parting words to the jury which had condemned him to death.—cicūta, -ae, hemlock.—nēmō homō, no human being.)

---

**EVIDENCE AND CONFESSION**

Sit dēnique scriptum in fronte ĺūnīs cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat; nam rem pūblicam labōribus cōnsiliisque mēs ex igne atque ferrō ēreptam esse vīdētis. Haec iam expōnam breviter ut scīre possītis quā ratione comprehēnsa sint. Semper prōvidī quō modō īn tantīs īnsidīis salvī esse possēmus. Omēs diēs cōnsūmpsī ut vidērem quid consūrātī āctūrī essent. Dēnique litterās intercipere potuī quae ad Catilinam ā Lentulō aliisque consūrātīs missae erant. Tum, consūrātīs comprehēnsīs et senātū convocātō, contendī īn senātum, ostendī litterās Lentulō, quaesīvī cognōscere signum. Dīxit sē cognōscere; sed prīmō dubitāvit et nēgāvit sē dē hīs rēbus responsūrum esse. Mox autem ostendīt quanta esset vīs cōnsicientiae; nam repente mollītus est
atque omnem rem narravit. Tum ceteri confurrati sic furtim inter se spicié-
bant ut non ab aliis indicári sed indicáre se ipsi vídérentur.

(Cicero, excerpts from the first and third Catilinarian orations—Cicero finally
succeeded in forcing Catiline to leave Rome, but his henchmen remained and
Cicero still lacked the tangible evidence he needed to convict them in court; in
this passage he shows how he finally obtained not only that evidence but even a
confession. See the readings in Chs. 11 and 14, “Cicero Urges Catiline’s Departure”
in Ch. 20, and the continuation, “Testimony Against the Conspirators.”
in Ch. 36.—frōns, frontis, f., brow, face.—breviter, adv. of brevis.—prō-vidō, to
fore-see, give attention to.—intercipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.—cōnscientia, -ae,
conscience.—inter se spiciō, -ere, to glance at each other.—indicáre, to accuse.)

A COVERED DISH DINNER!

Mēnsās, Ōle, bonās pōnis, sed pōnis opertās.
Riddiculum est: possum sūc ego habēre bonās.

(*Martial 10.54; meter: elegiac couplet.—Olus, another of Martial’s
“friends.”—opertus, -a, -um, concealed, covered.—ego, i.e., even a poor fellow
like me.)

Cocks fighting in front of a mensa
Mosaic from Pompeii, detail
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

A LEGACY-HUNTER’S WISH

Nil mihi dās vivus; dícis post fāta datūrum:
si non es stultus, scis, Maro, quid cupiam!

(*Martial 11.67; meter: elegiac couplet.—nīl = nihil.—fāta, poetic pl. for sg. =
mortem.—datūrum = tē datūrum esse.—Maro, another of Martial’s fictitious
[?] addressees.)

NOTE ON A COPY OF CATULLUS’ CARMINA

Tantum magna suō débet Vērōna Catullō
quantum parva suō Mantua Vergiliō.
(*Martial 14.195; meter: elegiac couplet. Verona and Mantua were the birthplaces of Catullus and Virgil respectively; see the Intro.—Note the interlocked word order within each verse and the neatly parallel structure between the two verses.)

ETYMOLOGY

The “dubitative” (or “deliberative”) subjunctive is another of the independent subjunctives. On the basis of dubitō you should have a good sense of the idea conveyed by this subjunctive; e.g., quid faciat? what is he to do (I wonder)?

Further derivatives from the basic prehendo, seize, are: apprehend, apprentice, apprise, imprison,prehensile, prison, prize, reprehend, reprisal, surprise.

**In the readings**

“Evidence”: front, frontal, affront, confront, effrontery, frontier, frontispiece.—provide, providence, provision, improvident, improvise, improvisation.—interception.—conscientious, conscious, inconscionable.—aspect.

**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!**

Salvēte, amīci! This chapter’s vocābulārium novum brings a veritable cēna verbōrum for your mēnsa Latina; let’s start with the main course: the cursus honōrum, a familiar phrase in Eng., was the traditional course of political office-holding in Rome; ordinarily one served first as quaestor (a treasury official), then as praetor (judge), and only later as cōnsul. The consulship was something like our presidency, but the term was one year, and there were two consuls, each with veto power over the other (Cicero, as you recall, was one of the consuls in 63 B.C., when he uncovered the Catilinarian conspiracy).

Now for the mēnsa secunda, Lat. for dessert: first, an old proverb that will serve you near as well as carpe diem: occāsionem cognōsce! And here’s another that may save you from temptation to even the slightest of crimes: nēmō repente fuit turpissimus, no one was ever suddenly most vicious (Juvenal 2.83: the satirist meant that even the worst criminals attained that status through the gradual accumulation of guilty acts). An honorary degree is granted honōris causā; honōres mutant mōrēs is an ancient truism; from cēterī, besides et cētera/etc., is cētera désunt, the rest is lacking, an editorial notation for missing sections of a text; from quantus comes a large quantity of phrases, one of which should be sufficient here, quantum satis, as much as suffices (if you are not satisfied, see Chs. 32 and 35; and when day is done you can shout mox nox, in rem, soon ('twill be) night, (let’s get down) to business. Valēte!
You are already quite familiar with the use of **cum** as a preposition. **Cum** can also serve as a conjunction, meaning *when, since, or although* and introducing a subordinate clause.

Sometimes the verb in a **cum** clause is indicative, especially when describing the precise time of an action. In these so-called "**cum temporal clauses,**" **cum** is translated *when* (or *while*); **tum** is occasionally found in the main clause, and **cum** . . . **tum** together may be translated *not only . . . but also:*

**Cum eum vidēbis, eum cognōscēs,** *when you (will) see him* [i.e., at that very moment], *you will recognize him.*

**Cum vincimus, tum pācem spērās,** *when (while) we are winning, you are (at the same time) hoping for peace.*

**Cum ad illum locum vēnerant, tum amīcōs contulerant,** *when they had come to that place, they had brought their friends or not only had they come to that place, but they had also brought their friends.*

Very often, however, the verb of the **cum** clause is in the subjunctive mood, especially when it describes either the general circumstances (rather than the exact time) when the main action occurred (often called a "**cum circumstantial clause**"), or explains the cause of the main action ("**cum causal**"), or describes a circumstance that might have obstructed the main action or is in some other way opposed to it ("**cum adversative**"):
Cum hoc fécisset, ad tē fūgit.
*When he had done this, he fled to you.* (circumstantial)

Cum hoc scīret, potuit eōs iuvāre.
*Since he knew this, he was able to help them.* (causal)

Cum hoc scīret, tamen mīlitēs mīsit.
*Although he knew this, nevertheless he sent the soldiers.* (adversative)

Cum Gāium dīligērēmus, nōn poterāmus eum iuvāre.
*Although we loved Gaius, we could not help him.* (adversative)

Remember that when *cum* is followed immediately by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case, you should translate it *with*. When instead it introduces a subordinate clause, translate it *when, since, although*, etc. You should have little difficulty distinguishing among the four basic types of *cum* clauses: the temporal has its verb in the indicative, and the three subjunctive types can generally be recognized by analyzing the relationship between the actions in the main clause and the subordinate clause (note, too, that in the case of adversative clauses the adverb *tamen* often appears in the main clause). The verb in a *cum* clause, whatever its type, is regularly translated *as an indicative*, i.e., without an auxiliary such as *may* or *might*.

**IRREGULAR Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, to bear, carry**

Ferō is one of a series of irregular verbs to be introduced in the closing chapters of this text (the others being volō, nōlō, mālō, fō, and cō); they are all very commonly used and should be learned thoroughly.

The English verb “to bear” is cognate with Latin *ferō, ferre* and has generally the same basic and metaphorical meanings, *to carry* and *to endure*. In the present system *ferō* is simply a third conjugation verb, formed exactly like *agō* except that the stem vowel does not appear in a few places, including the infinitive *ferre*. The only irregular forms, all of them in the present tense (indicative, imperative, and infinitive), are highlighted below in bold; the imperfect subjunctive, while formed on the irregular infinitive *ferre*, nevertheless follows the usual pattern of present infinitive + endings. Remember that the singular imperative lacks the -*e*, just like *dīc, dūc*, and *fac* (Ch. 8).

Although *tuli* (originally *tetuli*) and *lātum* (originally *tītum*) derive ultimately from a different verb related to *tollō* (the Eng. hybrid “go, went, gone,” e.g., is similarly composed from two different verbs through a common linguistic phenomenon known as “suppletion”), their conjugation follows the regular pattern and so should cause no difficulty.
Present Indicative

Active
1. férō
2. fers (cp. ágis)
3. fert (cp. ágit)

Passive
férōr
férris (ágēris)
fértur (ágītur)

1. férimus
2. fēritis (cp. ágitis)
3. fērunt

Present Imperative

Active
2. fer (āge), férite (ágite)

Infinitives

Active
Pres. férre (ágere)
Perf. tulisse
Fut. lātūrus ēsse

Passive
fērī (ágī)
lātus ēsse
lātum ērī

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis, showing irregular forms in bold and taken together with the preceding summary, should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of fērō; for the complete conjugation, see the Appendix (p. 459–60)

Indicative Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>féret</td>
<td>fēret</td>
<td>tūlit</td>
<td>tūlerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>fērtur</td>
<td>ferētur</td>
<td>ferēbatur</td>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>lātus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>fērat</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>fēret</td>
<td>tūlerit</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>ferātur</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ferrētur</td>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VOCABULARY

as, ássis, m., an as (a small copper coin, roughly equivalent to a penny; ace)
auxilium, -īn, n., aid, help (auxiliary; cp. augeō, to increase, augment)
digitus, -ī, m., finger, toe (digit, digital, digitalis, digitalize, digitate, digitize, prestidigitation; see Latina Est Gaudium, Ch. 20)
elephántus, -ī, m. and f., elephant (elephantiasis, elephantine)
exsilium, -ī, n., exile, banishment (exilic)

invidia, -ae, f., envy, jealousy, hatred (invidious, invidiousness, envious; cp. invideo below)

rūmor, rūmōris, m., rumor; gossip (rumormonger)

vinum, -i, n., wine (vino, vinegar, viniculture, viniferous, vintage, vinyl)

mediocris, mediocre, ordinary, moderate, mediocre (mediocrity; cp. medius)

cum, conj. + subj., when, since, although; conj. + indic., when

ápud, prep. + acc., among, in the presence of, at the house of

sémel, adv., a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously

úsque, adv., all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always

dōleō, dolère, dolui, doliturum, to grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain (doleful, dolor, dolorous, Dolores, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. dolor, Ch. 38)

dórnioō, dormire, dormivī, dormítum, to sleep (dormitory, dormer, dormancy, dormant, dormouse)

férō, férre, tuli, tátum, to bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report (fertile, circumference, confer, defer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, proffer, refer, suffer, transfer; cp. bear)

áderēō, adferre, adferri, allatum, to bring to (afferent)

cönferō, cönferrēre, cönfertī, cönfertūm, to bring together; compare; confer; bestow; ἓ cönfertēre, betake oneself, go (conference, collation)

ófferō, offereō, óbtuli, oblātum, to offer (offertory, oblation)

réferō, referre, réttuli, relātum, to carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report (refer, reference, referent, referral, relate, relation, relative)

invideoō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, to be envious; + dat. (see Ch. 35), to look at with envy, envy, be jealous of

occidōō, -cidere, -cidi, -cásum, to fall down; die; set (occident, occidental, occasion, occasional; cp. cadō, occāsiō)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Iam vērō cognōvimus istās mentēs dūrās ferrum prō pāce offerre.

2. Nē nātæ geminae discant verba tam acerb et tam dura.

3. Cum hī decem virī ex moenibus semel discississent, alia occāsiō pācis numquam oblāta est.

4. Tantum auxiliō nōbīs referet ut nē ācerrimī quidem mīlitēs aut pugnāre aut hīc remanēre possint.

5. Rogābat cūr cētera tantam fidem apud nōs praestārent et nōbīs tam tandem adferrent.

6. Cum patria nostra tanta beneficia offerat, tamen quīdam sē in īnsiās fūrīm cōnferunt et contrā bonōs mox pugnābunt.

7. Dēnique audiāmus quantae sint hae īnsidiae ac quot coniūrātī contrā civitātem surgant.
8. Haec scelera repente exposuī nē alia et similia fērētīs.
9. Respondērunt plūrima arma ā milītibus ad lītus allāta esse et in nā-vibus condita esse.
10. Cum parentēs essent vīvī, fēlīcēs erant; mortuī quoque sunt beātī.
11. Nesciō utrum trēs consūrātī maneat an in exsilium contenderint.
12. Nōs cōnferāmus ad cēnām, meī amīcī, bibāmus multum vīnī, cōn- māmus noctem, atque omnēs cūrās nostrās minuāmus!
13. When the soldiers had been arrested, they soon offered us money.
14. Although life brings very difficult things, let us endure them all and dedicate ourselves to philosophy.
15. Since you know what help is being brought by our six friends, these evils can be endured with courage.
16. Although his eyes could not see the light of the sun, nevertheless that humble man used to do very many and very difficult things.

**SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE**

1. Potestne haec lūx esse tibi iūcunda, cum sciās hōs omnēs cōnsilia tua cognōvisse? (Cicero.)
2. Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam servītūte Persicā liberāvisset et propter invidiam in exsilium expulsus esset, ingrātae patriae iniūriam nōn tulit quam ferre dēbuit. (Cicero.—Persicus, -a, -um.—ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful.—iniūria, -ae, injury.)
3. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, cōnfer tē in exsilium. (Cicero.—quae cum = et cum haec.)
4. Ó nāvis, novī flūctūs bellī tē in mare referent! Ó quid agis? Unde erit flūlum perfugium? (Horace.—nāvis, ship [of state].—flūctus, -ūs, wave, billow.)
5. Cum rēs pūblica immortālīs esse dēbeat, doleō eam salūtis egere ac in vītā ānīus mortālīs cōnsistere. (Cicero.—cōnsistō, -ere + in, to depend on.)
6. Cum illum hominem esse servum nōvisset, eum comprehendere nōn dubitāvit. (Cicero.)
7. Ille comprehēnsus, cum prīmō impudenter respondēre coepisset, dē-nique tamen nihil negāvit. (Cicero.—impudenter, adv.)
8. Milō dicitur per stadium vēnisse cum bovem umerīs ferret. (Cic- ero.—Milō, -lōnis, m., a famous Greek athlete.—stadium, -ī, —bōs, bovis, m./f., ox.—umerus, -ī, shoulder.)
9. Quid vesper et somnus ferant, incertum est. (Livy.)
10. Ferte miserō tantum auxilium quantum potestis. (Terence.)
11. Hoc ānum sciō: quod fāta ferunt, id ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence.)
12. Lēgum dēnique idcirco omnēs servī sumus, ut īberī esse possīmus. (*Cicero.—idcirco, adv., for this reason.*)
GIVE ME A THOUSAND KISSES!

Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atque amémus,
rümöresque senum sevériorum
omnês ünius aëstimémus assis!
Sôlês occidere et redire possunt;
nôbis cum semel occidit brevis lûx,
nox est perpetua ùna dormienda.
Dâ mi bâsia mille, deinde centum;
dein mille altera, dein secunda centum;
deinde üsque altera mille, deinde centum.

Dein, cum mîlia multa fécerimus—
conturbâbimus illa, nê sciaîmus,
aut nê quis malus invidère possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bâsiôrum.

(*Catullus 5; an exhortation to love, and to ignore the grumbling of stern old men who envy the young and curse their passion.—rümöres, with omnês; adj. and noun were often widely separated in poetry, so it is especially important to take note of the endings.—sevérus, -a, -um.—ünius ... assis, gen. of value, at one penny.—aëstimâre, to value, estimate.—redire, to return.—nôbis, dat. of reference [Ch. 38], here = nostra, with brevis lûx.—mî = mihi.—dein = deinde.—conturbâre, to throw into confusion, mix up, jumble; possibly an allusion to disturbing the counters on an abacus.—nê sciaîmus, sc. numerum; if the number is unknown then, in a sense, it is limitless.—quis, here someone.—invidère, with malus, means both to envy and to cast an evil eye upon, i.e., to hex.—tantum, with bâsiôrum, gen. of the whole, = so many kisses.)
RINGO

Sēnōs Charīnus omnibus digitīs gerit
nec nocte pōnit ānulōs
nec cum lavātur. Causa quae sit quaeritis?
Dactyliothēcam nōn habet!

(*Martial 11.59; meter: iambic trimeter and dimeter.—Charinus, an ostenta-
tious chap who liked to show off his rings.—sēnī, -ae, -a, six each, six apiece,
here with ānulōs, rings [see Latina Est Gaudium, Ch. 20]; what effect might the
poet be hoping to achieve by so widely separating noun and adj.?—pōnit =
dēpōnit, put away.—lavāre, to bathe.—Causa . . . quaeritis: the usual order
would be quaeritisne quae sit causa.—dactyliothēca, -ae, a ring-box, jewelry
chest.)

FACĒTIAE (WITTICISMS)

Cum Cicerō apud Damasippum cēnāret et īlle, mediocrī vīnō in mēnsā
positō, dīceret, “Bibe hoc Falernum; hoc est vīnum quadrāgintā annōrum.”
Cicerō respondit, “Bene aetātem fert!”

(Macrobius, Sāturnālia 2.3.—Falernum, -i, Falernian wine, actually a very fa-
mous wine, not a “mediocre” one.—quadrāgintā, indecl., 40.)

Augustus, cum quīdam ridīculus ē libellum trepidē adferret, et modo
prōferret manum et modo retraheret, “Putās,” inquit, “tē assem elephantō
dare?”

(Macrobius, Sāturnālia 2.4.—trepidē, adv., in confusion.—modo . . . modo, now
. . . now.—re-trahō.—elephantō: one thinks of a child offering a peanut to a
circus elephant.)
ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. ingrate, ingratitude.—injurious. 4. fluctuate. 5. consist, consistent.
7. impudent, impudence. 8. bovine.—humerus, humeral. “Kisses”: severe,
severity, asseverate.—estimate, estimation, inestimable. “Ringo”: annulus,
annular eclipse, annulate, annulet (all spelled with nn, perhaps by analogy
with annus, year, despite the classical ānulus, which—to get down to
“fundamentals”—is actually the diminutive of ānus, ring, circle, anus). “Facētiae”:
trepidation.—retract, retraction.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Iterum salvēte, doctae doctiēque! Having made it this far, you’ve certainly
earned that appellation, and, as a further reward, here are more tidbits ex
vocābulāriō novō huius capitis, all focussed on that villainous Catiline: to
start with, there’s that famous cum temporal clause from Cicero’s indictment
of Catiline: cum tacent, clamant, when they are silent, they are shouting, i.e.,
“by their silence they condemn you.” Poor Catiline, perhaps he had too
much to drink, úsque ad nauseam, and spilled the beans, ignoring the warn-
ing, in vīnō vēritās; if only he had observed Horace’s aurea mediocrītās, the
golden mean, he might have received auxilium ab altō, help from on high, but
the gods, it appears, were against him. And so he soon met his end, semel
et simul, once and for all: valē, miser Catilīna, et vōs omnēs, amīcī vēritātis
honōrisque, valeātis!
FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

You are by now familiar with a wide range of Latin adverbs, words employed (as in English) to modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. Many have their own peculiar forms and endings and must simply be memorized when first introduced in the vocabularies (often without benefit of English derivatives to aid in the memorization): among these are cūr, etiam, ita, tam, etc.

POSITIVE DEGREE

A great many adverbs, however, are formed directly from adjectives and are easily recognized. Many first/second declension adjectives form positive degree adverbs by adding -ē to the base:

lōng-ē  (far; longus, -a, -um)
līber-ē  (freely; liber, libera, liberum)
pūlchr-ē  (beautifully; pulcher, -chra, -chrum)

From adjectives of the third declension, adverbs are often formed by adding -iter to the base; if the base ends in -nt- only -er is added:
Many Latin adverbs have comparative and superlative forms, just as they do in English, and their English translations correspond to those of comparative and superlative adjectives; e.g., positive degree "quickly"; comparative "more (rather, too) quickly"; superlative "most (very) quickly," etc.

The comparative degree of adverbs is with few exceptions the -ius form which you have already learned as the neuter of the comparative degree of the adjective.

The superlative degree of adverbs, being normally derived from the superlative degree of adjectives, regularly ends in -ē according to the rule given above for converting adjectives of the first and the second declensions into adverbs.

Quam WITH COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

Quam is used with adverbs in essentially the same ways as with adjectives: *hic puer celerius ecemrit quam ille*, this boy ran more quickly than that one; *illa puella quam celerirmē ecemrit*, that girl ran as quickly as possible. The ablative of comparison is not ordinarily employed after comparative adverbs (except in poetry).

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS

When the comparison of an adjective is irregular (see Ch. 27), the comparison of the adverb derived from it normally follows the basic irregularities of the adjective but, of course, has adverbiaλ endings. Study carefully the following list of representative adverbs; those that do not follow the standard rules stated above for forming adverbs from adjectives are highlighted in bold (be prepared to point out how they do not conform). Note the alternate superlatives prīmo, which usually means first (in time) vs. prīnum, usually first (in a series); quam prīnum, however, has the idiomatic translation as soon as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lónge (far)</td>
<td>lóngius (farther, too f.)</td>
<td>lóngissimē (farthest, very f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberē (freely)</td>
<td>libérius (more f.)</td>
<td>liberirmē (most, very f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchērē (beautifully)</td>
<td>pulchērius (more b.)</td>
<td>pulchērirmē (most b.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrtiter (bravely)</td>
<td>fōrtius (more b.)</td>
<td>fōrtisimē (most b.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**IRREGULAR Volō, velle, volui, to wish**

Like ferō, introduced in the last chapter, volō is another extremely common third conjugation verb which, though regular for the most part, does have several irregular forms, including the present infinitive velle. Remember these points:

—volō has no passive forms at all, no future active infinitive or participle, and no imperatives;
— the perfect system is entirely regular;
— the only irregular forms are in the present indicative (which must be memorized) and the present subjunctive (which is comparable to sim, sis, sit);
— the imperfect subjunctive resembles that of ferō; while formed from the irregular infinitive velle, it nevertheless follows the usual pattern of present infinitive + personal endings;
— vol- is the base in the present system indicatives, vel- in the subjunctives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. vólō</td>
<td>vélim</td>
<td>véllem</td>
<td>Pres. vélle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vīs</td>
<td>vélis</td>
<td>vélēs</td>
<td>Perf. voluisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vult</td>
<td>vélit</td>
<td>véllet</td>
<td>Fut. ———</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. vólumus</td>
<td>velístus</td>
<td>vellēmus</td>
<td>Participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vültis</td>
<td>vélīs</td>
<td>vellētis</td>
<td>Pres. vólēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vólunt</td>
<td>vélint</td>
<td>vellent</td>
<td>———</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis, with irregular forms in bold, should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of volō; for the complete conjugation, see the Appendix (p. 458–59).

Indicative Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>völet</td>
<td>volēbat</td>
<td>vōluit</td>
<td>volūerit</td>
<td>volūerat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>vēlit</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>vēllet</td>
<td>volūerit</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>volūisset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nōlō AND Mālō

The compounds nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (nē + volō), not to wish, to be unwilling, and mālō, mālle, māluī (magis + volō), to want (something) more or instead, prefer, follow volō closely, but have long vowels in their stems (nō-, mā-) and some other striking peculiarities, especially in the present indicative.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Nōlō

Sg. nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult  Pl. nōlumus, nōn vūltis, nōlunt

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Mālō

Sg. mālō, māvīs, māvult  Pl. mālumus, māvūltis, mālunt

The following synoposes provide representative forms, again with irregular forms in bold, but you should see the Appendix (p. 458–59) for the full conjugation of these verbs.

Indicative Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>nōlet</td>
<td>nōlēbat</td>
<td>nōluit</td>
<td>nōlūerit</td>
<td>nōlūerat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Act.</th>
<th>—</th>
<th>nōllet</th>
<th>nōlūerit</th>
<th>—</th>
<th>nōluisset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Indicative Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Act.</th>
<th>—</th>
<th>mālet</th>
<th>mālēbat</th>
<th>māluit</th>
<th>mālūerit</th>
<th>mālūerat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Subjunctive Mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Act.</th>
<th>—</th>
<th>māllet</th>
<th>mālūerit</th>
<th>—</th>
<th>māluisset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Nolō AND NEGATIVE COMMANDS

While volō and mālō lack imperatives, nolō has both singular and plural imperatives that were very commonly employed along with complementary infinitives to express negative commands:

Nolī manēre, Catilīna, do not remain, Catiline!
Nolīte discēdere, amīcī meī, do not leave, my friends!

PROVISO CLAUSES

The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause introduced by dummodo, provided that, so long as, and certain other words that express a provisional circumstance or “proviso”; nē is used as the negative in such clauses.

Nōn timēbō, dummodo hīc remaneās, I shall not be afraid, provided that you remain here.
Erimus fēlicēs, dummodo nē discēdās, we shall be happy, so long as (provid ed that) you do not leave.

Note that the verb in such clauses is simply translated as an indicative.

VOCABULARY

custōdia, -ae, f., protection, custody; pl., guards (custodian, custodial)
exércitus, -ūs, m., army (exercise)

paupertas, paupertātis, f., poverty, humble circumstances (cp. pauper below)
dīves, gen. dīvitis or dītis, rich, (Dives)
pār, gen. pāris + dat. (cp. Ch. 35), equal, like (par, pair, parity, peer, peerless, disparate, disparity, umpire, nonpareil)

paūper, gen. paūperis, of small means, poor (poverty, impoverished; cp. paupertās)
dūmmodo, conj. + subj., provided that, so long as

All adverbs given in the list above, p. 220–21.
mālō, mālle, mālūi, to want (something) more, instead; prefer
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, to not . . . wish, be unwilling (nolo contendere, nol. pros.)
pāteō, patēre, pātūi, to be open, lie open; be accessible; be evident (patent, pātent, patency)

praebō, -bēre, -būi, -bitum, to offer, provide
prōmiss, -mittēre, -missī, -missum, to send forth; promise (promissory)
vōlō, vēlē, vōlūi, to wish, want, be willing, will (volition, voluntary, involuntary, volunteer, volitive, voluptuous, benevolent, malevolent, no lens volens)
PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Prīmō illī trés rūdiculi nē mediocriā quidem pericula fortiter ferre poterant et ullaum auxilium offere nōlēbant.
2. Maximē rogāvimus quantum auxilium septem fēmina ac adferrent et utrum dubitārent an nōs mox adiūtūrae essent.
3. Dēnique armīs collātīs, imperātor prōmīsit decem mīlia mīlitum celerīmē discēssīra esse, dummodo sātis cōpiārum receptorēnt.
4. Paria beneficia, igitur, in omnēs dignōs cōnferre māvultīs.
5. Haec mala melius expōnānt nē dīvitiās minuant aut honōrēs suōs āmittant.
6. Ate volumus cognōscere cūr sīc invīderit et cūr verba eius tam dūra fuerint.
7. Cum cēterī hās īnsidiās cognōverint, vult in exsilium fūrīm ac quam celerīmē sē cōnferre ut rūmōrēs et invidiam vītet.
8. Multīne disciplinī tantum studium āsque praestant ut hās sententiās facillīmē ūnō annō legere possint?
9. Cum dīvitiās āmīsisset et ūnum assem nōn habēret, tamen omnēs civēs ingentēm mōrēsque eius maximē laudābant.
11. Oculī tui sunt pulchriores sideribus caeli, mea puella; es gracilis et bella, ac ōscula sunt dulciōra vīnō: amēmus sub lūce lūnae!
12. Iste hostis, in Italiam cum multīs elephantiās veniens, prīmō pugnāre nōluit et plūrimōs diēs in montibus cōnsumpsit.
13. Si nepōs tē ad cēnam invītābit, mēnsam explēbit et tibi tantum vīni offeret quantum vīs; nōlī, autem, nimium bibere.
14. Do you wish to live longer and better?
15. He wishes to speak as wisely as possible so that they may yield to him very quickly.
16. When these plans had been learned, we asked why he had been unwilling to prepare the army with the greatest possible care.
17. That man, who used to be very humble, now so keenly wishes to have wealth that he is willing to lose his two best friends.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Occāsiō nōn facile praebētur sed facile ac repente āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)
2. Nōbīscum vivere iam diūtius nōn potes; nōlī remanēre; id nōn ferēmus. (Cicero.)
3. Vis rēctē vivere? Quis nōn? (*Horace.—rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right.)
4. Plūs nōvisti quid faciendum sit. (Terence.)
5. Mihi vērē dīxit quid vellet. (Terence.)
6. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur. (*Cicero.—*congregāre, *to
gather into a flock.*)

7. Ĥē magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.)

8. Hominēs libenter id crēdunt quod volunt. (Caesar.—libēns, -entis,
*willig*)

9. Multa ēveniunt hominibus quae volunt et quae nōlunt. (Plautus.—
ēveniēre, *to happen.*)

10. Ėonsōlī melius contendere atque vincere possimus quam ēra.
(Publilius Syrus.)

11. Optimus quisque facere māvult quam dīcere. (Sallust.—māvult
quam = magis vult quam.)

12. Omnēs sapientēs fēliciter, perfectē, fortūnātē vivunt. (Cicero.—per-
fectus, -a, -um, *complete.*)

13. Maxime eum laudant qui pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)

14. Si ŭis sēcre quam nihil malī in paupertātē sit, cōnfer pauperem et
dīvitem: pauper saeπius et fidēlius ŭidet. (Seneca.)

15. Magistrī puerīs crūstula dant ut prīma elementa discere velint. (Hor-
ace.—crūstulum, -i, *cookie.*—elementum, -i.)

16. Si ŭis mē flēre, dolendum est prīmum ĭspī tībi. (*Horace.—*flēre, *to
weep.*)

**THE CHARACTER OF CIMON**

Cimōn celerītē ad summōs honōrēs pervēnit. Hābēbat enim satis ēlo-
quentiae, summan liberālitātem, magnam scientiam lēgum et reī militāris,
quod cum patre ā puerō in exercitūs fuerat. Itaque hic populum urbānum
in suā potestātē facillimē tenuit et apud exercitum valuit plūrimum auctō-
ritātē.

Cum ille occidisset, Athēniēnsēs dē eō diū dulūrunt; nōn sōlum in bel-
lō, autem, sed etiam in pāce eum graviār dēsiderāvērunt. Fuit enim viρ	
tae liberālitātis ut, cum multōs hortōs habēret, numquam in hīs custōdiās
pōneret; nam hortōs liberrimē patēre voluit nē populus ab hīs fructibus pro-
hibērētū. Saepe autem, cum alicium minus bene vestītum vidēret, eō suum
amiculum dedit. Multōs locuplētāvit; multōs pauperēs vivōs ĭūvit atque
mortuos suō sumptūa extulit. Śic minimē mīrūm est sī, propter mōrēs Ci-
mōnis, vita eius fuit sēśūra et mors eius fuit omnibus tam acerba quam mors
cuiusdam ex famiīā.

(Nepos, *Cimōn;* adapted excerpts.—per-venīre.—ēloquentia, -ae.—liberālitās,
tātis.—militāris, -e.—ā puerō, *from his boyhood.*—potestās, -tātis, *power.*—
auctōritās, -tātis, *authority;* the abl. tells in what respect.—Athēniēnsēs, Atheni-
ans.—hortus, -i, *garden.*—vestītus, -a, -um, *clothed.*—amiculum, -i, *cloak.*—lo-
cuplētāre, *to enrich.*—sūmptus, -ūs, *expense.*—extulit: ef-ferō, *bury.*—mīrūs, -a,
-um, *surprising.*—sē-cūrus, -a, -um: sē- *means without.*)
A VACATION . . . FROM YOU!

Quid mihi reddat ager quaeris, Line, Nōmentānus?
Hoc mihi reddit ager: tē, Line, nōn videō!

(*Martial 2.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—reddō, -ere, to give back, return (in
dow).—Linus, -ī, another of Martial’s addressees.—Nōmentānus, -a, -um, in
Nomentum, a town of Latium known for its wine industry.)

PLEASE . . . DON'T!

Nīl recitās et vīs, Māmerce, poēta vidērī.
Quidquid vīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs!

(*Martial 2.88; meter: elegiac couplet.—nīl = nīhil.—Māmercus, -ī.—estō, fut.
imper. of esse, “Be . . .!”)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

3. rectitude, rectify, direct, erect, correct; cp. right. 6. congregate, se­
gate, gregarious, aggregate. 9. event (=out-come), eventual. 12. perfect (= made or done thoroughly). “Cimon”: vest, vestment, invest, divest.—sump­tuous, sumptuary.—miraculous, admire. “Vacation”: render, rendering, ren­
dition.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! The modern Olympic games have as their motto three compara­tive adverbs, cītius, altius (from altus, -a, -um, high), fortius. The new irregular
verbs in this chapter, especially vōlo and nōlo are extremely common in Lat.
and you’ll find them, willy-nilly, all through English. You know very well,
for example, the legal plea of nōlo, short for nōlo contendere, I am unwilling
to contest (the accusation); there’s also nol. pros. = nōlle prōsequī, to be un­
willing to pursue (the matter), meaning to drop a lawsuit; nōlēns, volēns, un­
willing (or) willing, i.e., whether or not one wishes, like “willy-nilly” (a con­
traction of “will ye, nill ye”); the abbreviation “d.v.,” for deō volente; also
volō, nōn valeō, I am willing but not able; nōli mē tangere, a warning against	tampering as well as Lat. for the jewel-weed flower or “touch-me-not”; quan­
tum vīs, as much as you wish (which may be more than just quantum satis,
Ch. 30!); Deus vult, the call to arms of the First Crusade; and mālō morī
quam foedārī, freely “death before dishonor” (lit., I wish to die rather than
to be dishonored: for the deponent verb morior, see Ch. 34). Years ago some
pundit wrote (demonstrating the importance of macrons), mālō malō malō
mālō, I’d rather be in an apple tree than a bad man in adversity; the first mālō
is from mālum, -ī, apple, fruit-tree, which calls to mind Horace’s character­
zation of a Roman cēna, from the hors d’oeuvres to the dessert, as ab ovō
(ovum, -i, egg) ēque ad māla, a phrase, very like the expression “from soup to nuts,” that became proverbial for “from start to finish.”

Et cētera ex vocabulāriō novō: cēteris pāribus, all else being equal; custōdia is related to custōs, custōdis, guard, and custōdīre, to guard, hence Juvenal’s satiric query, sed quis custōdīet ipsōs custōdēs; exercitus is connected with exercēō, exercēre, to practice, exercise, and the noun exercitātiō, which gives us the proverb, most salutary for Latin students: exercitātiō est optimus magister. And so, valēte, discipuli/ae, et exercēte, exercēte, exercēte!
Conditions

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditions are among the most common sentence types, others being "declarative," "interrogative," and "exclamatory." You have encountered numer-rous conditional sentences in your Latin readings already, and so you are aware that the basic sentence of this type consists of two clauses: 1) the "condition" (or "protasis," Gk. for proposition or premise), a subordinate clause usually introduced by sī, if; or nisi, if not or unless, and stating a hypothetical action or circumstance, and 2) the "conclusion" (or "apodosis," Gk. for outcome or result), the main clause, which expresses the anticipated outcome if the premise turns out to be true.

There are six basic conditional types; three have their verbs in the indicative, three in the subjunctive, and the reason is simple. While all conditional sentences, by their very nature, describe actions in the past, present, or future that are to one extent or another hypothetical, the indicative was employed in those where the condition was more likely to be realized, the subjunctive in those where the premise was either less likely to be realized or where both the condition and the conclusion were absolutely contrary to the actual facts of a situation. Study carefully the following summary, learning the names of each of the six conditional types, how to recognize them, and the standard formulae for translation.

INDICATIVE CONDITIONS

1. Simple fact present: Sī id facit, prūdēns est. If he is doing this [and it is quite possible that he is], he is wise. Present indicative in both clauses; translate verbs as present indicatives.
2. Simple fact past: Si id fecit, prudens fuit. *If he did this [and quite possibly he did], he was wise.* Past tense (perfect or imperfect) indicative in both clauses; translate verbs as past indicatives.

3. Simple fact future (sometimes called “future more vivid”): Si id faciet, prudens erit. *If he does (will do) this [and quite possibly he will], he will be wise.* Future indicative in both clauses; translate the verb in the protasis as a present tense (here Eng. “if” + the present has a future sense), the verb in the conclusion as a future. (Occasionally the future perfect is used, in either or both clauses, with virtually the same sense as the future: see S.A. 8 and “B.Y.O.B.” line 3, p. 231.)

**SUBJUNCTIVE CONDITIONS**

The indicative conditions deal with potential facts; the subjunctive conditions are ideal rather than factual, describing circumstances that are either, in the case of the “future less vivid,” somewhat less likely to be realized or less vividly imagined or, in the case of the two “contrary to fact” types, opposite to what actually is happening or has happened in the past.

1. Contrary to fact present: Si id faceret, prudens esset. *If he were doing this [but in fact he is not], he would be wise [but he is not].* Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries were ( . . . ing) and would (be).

2. Contrary to fact past: Si id fecisset, prudens fuisset. *If he had done this [but he did not], he would have been wise [but he was not].* Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries had and would have.

3. Future less vivid (sometimes called “should-would”): Si id faciat, prudens sit. *If he should do this [and he may, or he may not], he would be wise.* Present subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries should and would.

There are occasional variants on these six basic types, i.e., use of the imperative in the apodosis, “mixed conditions” with different tenses or moods in the protasis and apodosis, different introductory words (e.g., dum), etc., but those are easily dealt with in context.

**FURTHER EXAMPLES**

Classify each of the following conditions.

1. Si hoc dicet, errabit; *if he says this, he will be wrong.*
2. Si hoc dicit, errat; *if he says this, he is wrong.*
3. Si hoc dixisset, erravisset; *if he had said this, he would have been wrong.*
4. Si hoc dicit, erret; *if he should say this, he would be wrong.*
5. Si hoc dixit, erravit; if he said this, he was wrong.
6. Si hoc diceret, erraret; if he were saying this, he would be wrong.
7. Si veniat, hoc videat; if he should come, he would see this.
8. Si venit, hoc vidiit; if he came, he saw this.
9. Si veniret, hoc vidisset; if he were coming, he would see this.
10. Si veniet, hoc videbit; if he comes, he will see this.
11. Si vénisset, hoc vídisset; if he had come, he would have seen this.

**VOCABULARY**

*initium, -i, n., beginning, commencement (initial, initiate, initiation)*

*ops, opis, f., help, aid; ópês, ópum, pl., power, resources; wealth (opulent, opulence; cp. cópia, from con- + ops)*

*philosophus, -i, m., and philosopha, -ae, f., philosopher* (philosophy, philosophical)

*plebs, plebís, f., the common people, populace, plebeians (plebs, plebe, plebeian, plebiscite)*

*sál, sális, m., salt, wit* (salad, salami, salary, salina, saline, salify, salimeter, salinometer, sauce, sausage)

*speculum, -i, n., mirror (speculate, speculation; cp. spectō, Ch. 34)*

*quí, quid, after si, nisi, nè, num, indef. pron., anyone, anything, someone, something (cp. quis? quid? quíisque, quíquis)*

*cándidus, -a, -um, shining, bright, white; beautiful* (candescent, candid, candidate, candor, incandescent, candle, chandelier)

*mérus, -a, -um, pure, undiluted (mere, merely)*

*suávis, suáve, sweet* (suave, suaveness, suavity, suasion, dissuade, persuasion; cp. persuádeō, Ch. 35)*

-ve, conj. suffixed to a word = aut before the word (cp. -que), or

*heu, interj., ahl!, alas! (a sound of grief or pain)*

*súbitō, adv., suddenly (sudden, suddenness)*

*recísō (1), to refuse (recuse, recusant; cp. causa)*

*trádō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), to give over, surrender; hand down, transmit, teach* (tradition, traditional, traitor, treason)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. Dummodo exercitus opem mox ferat, moenia urbis celeriter conservāre poterimus.
2. Cum cónsilia hostium ab initiō cognōvisses, prīmō tamen Úllum auxilium offérre aut etiam centum mīlitēs prōmittere nōluistī.
3. Si dīvitiae et invidia nōs ab amōre et honōre úsque prohibent, dīvitēs vērē sumus?
4. Pauper quidem nōn erit pār cēterīs nisi scientiam ingeniumve habēbit; si haec habeat, autem, multī magnopere invideant.
5. Nisi Ínsidia patērent, ferrum eius maximē timērēmus.
6. Si quis rogābit quid nunc discās, refer tē artem nōn mediocrem sed utilissīmam ac difficillīmam discere.
7. Lēgēs ita scribantur ut dīvītēs et plēbs—etiam pauper sine aesse—sint parēs.
8. Si custōdiae dūriōrēs fortīōrēsque ad casam tuam contendissent, heu, numquam tanta scelera suscepisses et hī omnēs nōn occidissent.
9. Illa fēmina sapientissima, cum id semel cognōvisset, ad eōs celerrimē sē contulit et omnēs opēs suās praebuat.
10. Dūrum exsilium tam acrem mentem īnō annō mollīre nōn poterit.
11. Propter omnēs rūmōrēs pessimōs (qui nōn erant vērī), nātae suāvēs eius magnopere dolēbant et dormūre nōn poterant.
12. If those philosophers should come soon, you would be happier.
13. If you had not answered very wisely, they would have hesitated to offer us peace.
14. If anyone does these three things well, he will live better.
15. If you were willing to read better books, you would most certainly learn more.

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Si vīs pācem, parā bellum. (Flavius Vegetius.—parā, prepare for.)
2. Arma sunt parvī pretīi, nisi vērō cōnsilium est in patriā. (Cicero.—pretium, −ī, value.)
3. Salūs omnium ūnā nocte certē āmissa esset, nisi illa sevirītās contrā istōs suscepta esset. (Cicero.—sevirītās, −ītās.)
4. Si quid dē mē posse agī putābis, id agēs—si tū ipse ab istō pérículō eris līber. (Cicero.)
5. Si essem mihi cōnscius ullius culpae, aequō animō hoc malum fer·rem. (Phaedrus.—cōnscius, -a, -um, conscious.)
6. Dīces tē vērē mālle fortūnam et mōrēs antiquae plēbis; sed si quis ad illa subitō tē agat, illum modum vītae recūsēs. (Horace.)
7. Minus saepe errēs, si sciās quid nesciās. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Dīcēs “heu” si tē in speculō vīderis. (Horace.)
9. Nīl habet ūfīlīx paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod ridicule s homi­nēs facit. (*Iuvenal.—nīl = nihil.—quod, the fact that.)

**B.Y.O.B., etc., etc.**

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē paucēs (sī tibi di faveat) diēbus—
sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
5 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs;
haec sī, īnquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
cēnābis bene; nam tū Catullī
plenus sacculus est araneärum.
Sed contrā accipies merōs amōres,

10 seu quid suāvius elegantiusve est:

nam unguentum dabo, quod meae puellae
dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdīnēsque;
quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

(*Catullus 13; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet invites a friend to dinner, but there's a hitch and a BIG surprise.—favēre + dat., to be favorable toward, favor.—cachina, -ae, laugh, laughter.—venustus, -a, -um, charming.—sacculus, -ī, money-bag, wallet.—arānea, -ae, spiderweb.—contrā, here adv., on the other hand, in return.—seu, conj., or.—ēlegāns, gen. ēlegantis.—unguentum, -ī, salve, perfume.—dabo: remember that -ēō was often shortened in verse.—dōnārunt = dōnāvērunt, from dōnāre, to give.—Venus, -neris, f., and Cupīdō, -dinis, m.; Venus and Cupid, pl. here to represent all the fostering powers of Love.—quod . . . olfaciēs = cum tū id olfaciēs.—olfaciō, -ere, to smell.—For formal discussion of the “jussive noun” clause deōs rogābis . . . ut . . . faciant, easily translated here, see Ch. 36.—tōtum . . . nāsum, from nāsus, -ī, nose, objective complement with tē; the wide separation of adj. and noun suggests the cartoon-like enormity of the imagined schnoz!)

THE RICH GET RICHER

Semper pauper eris, sī pauper es, Aemiliāne:
dantur opēs nūlli nunc nisi dīvitibus.

(*Martial 5.81.; meter: elegiac couplet.—Aemiliānus, -ī.)

ARISTOTLE, TUTOR OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

An Philippus, rēx Macedonum, voluisset Alexandrō, fīliō suō, prīma elementa litterārum trādī ab Aristotele, summō eius aetātis philosophō, aut hic suscipīsse illud maximum officium, nisi initia studiōrum pertinēre ad summam sapientissimē crēdidisset?

(Quintilian, Institutōnēs Ὄrātoriāe 1.1.23.—an, interrog. conj., or, can it be that.—Macedonēs, -donum, m.f. pl., Macedonians.—Aristotelēs, -telis.—pertinēre ad, to relate to, affect.—summa, -ae, highest part, whole.)

YOUR LOSS, MY GAIN!


(Cicero, De Senectūte 4.11.—During the second Punic War, Tarentum revolted from the Romans to Hannibal, though the Romans under Marcus Livius
Salinator continued to hold the citadel throughout this period. In 209 B.C. the city was recaptured by Quintus Fabius Maximus.—Tarentum — a famous city in southern Italy (which the Romans called Magna Graecia).—mea operā, thanks to me.

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. price, precious, prize, praise, appraise, appreciate, depreciate. 3. severe, persevere, perseverance, asseverate. 5. conscious, unconscious, conscience.

“B.Y.O.B.”: favorite, disfavor.—cachinnate, cachinnation.—sack, satchel.—araneid.—elegance, elegantly.—unguent, unguentary.—donate, donation, donor.—olfaction, olfactory, olfactometer, olfactronics.—nasal, nasalize, nasalization; “nose,” “nostril,” and “nozzle” are cognate. “Aristotle”: pertain, pertinent, pertinacity, purtenance, appertain, appurtenance, impertinent, impertinence.—sum, summary, summation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvete! Here are some well known conditions: si nātūra negat, facit indignātiō versum, if nature denies (i.e., if my talent is lacking), indignation creates my verse (so said the satirist Juvenal, who had plenty of both!); si fortūna iuvat; si fēcisti, negā! (a lawyer’s advice); si Deus nōbīscum, quis contrā nōs (the verbs are left out, but the meaning is clear); si post fāta venit glória, nōn properō, if glory comes (only) after death, I’m in no hurry! (Martial); si sic omnēs, freely, a wistful “if only everything were like this” (or does it really mean “all on the boat became ill”??!).

Ex vocabularīo novō quoque: well, to start “from the beginning,” the phrase ab initiō is quite common in Eng.; those running for political office in Rome wore the toga candida, white toga, hence Eng. “candidate.” The Romans called undiluted wine merum (which the bibulous merely imbibed!); ope et cōnsiliō is a good way to manage life. The expression “with a grain of salt” comes from Lat. cum grānō salis; sāl Attīcum is dry Athenian wit; and “salary” is also from sāl, a package of which was part of a Roman soldier’s pay (we “bring home the [salty] bacon,” Romans brought home the salt!). Art is a speculum vitae. If you remember how to form adverbs from adjectives, then you can decipher the proverb suaviter in modō, fortiter in rē, a good mode for the Latin teacher; and if you read music, you may have seen subitō, a musical annotation meaning quickly.

Hope you enjoy these closing miscellānea (from miscellāneus, -a, -um, varied, mixed), and here’s one reason why: si finis bonus est, tōtum bonum erit, an old proverb, a “mixed condition,” and familiar vocabulary, so I’ll give you the free version, “All’s well that ends well (including this chapter)!”: et vōs omnēs, quoque valeātis!
Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents

DEPONENT VERBS

Latin has a number of commonly used "deponent verbs," verbs that have passive endings but active meanings. There are very few new forms to be learned in this chapter (only the imperatives); the most crucial matter is simply to recall which verbs are deponent, so that you remember to translate them in the active voice, and that can be managed through careful vocabulary study. There are a few exceptions to the rule of passive forms/active meanings, and those will also need to be carefully noted.

PRINCIPAL PARTS AND CONJUGATION

As you will see from the following examples, deponents regularly have only three principal parts, the passive equivalents of the first three principal parts of regular verbs (1. first pers. sg. pres. indic., 2. pres. infin., 3. first pers. sg. perf. indic.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hórtor, I urge</td>
<td>hortári, to urge</td>
<td>hortátus (-a, -um) sum, I urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fáteor, I confess</td>
<td>fatéri, to confess</td>
<td>fássus (-a, -um) sum, I confessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>séquor, I follow</td>
<td>séquíi, to follow</td>
<td>secútus (-a, -um) sum, I followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mólior, I work at</td>
<td>mólíri, to work at</td>
<td>mólítus (-a, -um) sum, I worked at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pátior, I suffer</td>
<td>pátíi, to suffer</td>
<td>pássus (-a, -um) sum, I suffered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SAMPLE FORMS OF Hortor AND Sequor

Again, deponents are conjugated according to precisely the same rules as regular verbs in the passive voice; the following representative forms are provided for review, and full conjugations for each of the five examples given above are included in the Appendix (p. 455–57).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>PRESENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. hórtor, I urge</td>
<td>séquor, I follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hortáris (-re), you urge</td>
<td>séqueris (-re), you follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hortátur, he urges</td>
<td>séquitur, he follows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hortámur, we urge</td>
<td>séquimur, we follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hortámini, you urge</td>
<td>sequimini, you follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hortántur, they urge</td>
<td>sequintur, they follow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. hortábar, I was urging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hortábaris (-re), you were urging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. hortábor, I shall urge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hortáberis (-re), you will urge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hortábitur, he will urge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortátus, -a, -um sum, I urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortátus, -a, -um éram, I had urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortátus, -a, -um étō, I shall have urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>PRESENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hórtet, hortérís, hortétur</td>
<td>séquar, sequáris, sequátur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMPERFECT
hortárer, hortáréris, hortárétur etc.

perfect
hortátus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

PLUPERFECT
hortátus, -a, -um éssem, etc.

SYNOPSIS
The following third person singular synopsis of fateor, fatērī, fassus sum should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of deponents; remember that all the English equivalents are active, i.e., he confesses, he will confess, etc.

indicative mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fatētur</td>
<td>fatēbitur</td>
<td>fatēbātur</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

subjunctive mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fatēātur</th>
<th>fatērētur</th>
<th>fassus</th>
<th>fassus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>ésset</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES
The participles and infinitives of typical deponent verbs are here given in full not because of any actually new forms but because of certain discrepancies in the general rule of passive forms with active meanings.

Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortāns, urging</th>
<th>hortátus, -a, -um, having urged</th>
<th>hortätūrus, -a, -um, about to urge</th>
<th>hortándus, -a, -um, to be urged</th>
<th>séquēns, following</th>
<th>secūtus, -a, -um, having followed</th>
<th>secūtūrus, -a, -um, about to follow</th>
<th>sequéndus, -a, -um, to be followed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortārī, to urge</th>
<th>hortátus, -a, -um ésse, to have urged</th>
<th>séquī, to follow</th>
<th>secūtus, -a, -um ésse, to have followed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
**Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents**

**Fut.** hortātūrus, -a, -um esse, secūtūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to urge to be about to follow

*Exceptions:* Deponents have the same four participles that regular verbs have, but only three infinitives, one for each tense. Three of the participles and one of the infinitives present exceptions to the basic rule that deponents are passive in form but active in meaning:

1. Present and future participles: active forms with active meanings.
2. Gerundive (future passive participle): passive form with passive meaning.
3. Future infinitive: active form with active meaning.

**Imperatives**

The present imperative of deponent verbs would naturally have the forms of the present “passive” imperative. These forms have not been given before because they are found only in deponent verbs, but they are easy to learn.

1. The second person singular has the same spelling as that of the alternate second person singular of the present indicative, e.g., sequere! (Note that this is also the same form as the non-existent present active infinitive: be especially careful not to mistake this characteristic deponent imperative form for an infinitive.)
2. The second person plural imperative has the same spelling as that of the second person plural of the present indicative, e.g., sequīminī!

Take careful note of the following examples:

2. hortāre, urge! fatēre, confess! séquere mōlīre pātere
2. hortāminī, urge! fatēminī, confess! sequīminī mōlīminī pātīminī

**SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS**

Semi-deponent (“half-deponent”) is the name given to a few verbs which are normal in the present system but are deponent in the perfect system, as is clearly demonstrated by the principal parts. For example:

aūdeō, I dare audère, to dare ausus sum, I dared
gaūdeō, I rejoice gaudère, to rejoice gāvisus sum, I rejoiced

**ABLATIVE WITH SPECIAL DEPONENTS**

The ablative of means is used idiomatically with a few deponent verbs, of which ītor (and its compounds) is by far the most common (the others, fruor, to enjoy, fungor, to perform, potior, to possess, and vēscor, to eat, are
not employed in this book, but you will likely encounter them in your later reading). Ţitor, to use, enjoy, is in fact a reflexive verb and means literally to benefit oneself by means of something.¹

Ūtitur stilō,
   *he is benefiting himself by means of a pencil (literally).*
   *he is using a pencil (idiomatically).*
Nōn audent ūti nāvibus, they do not dare to use the ships.
Nōn ausē sunt ūti nāvibus, they did not dare to use the ships.

FURTHER EXAMPLES OF DEPONENT FORMS IN SENTENCES

1. Eum patientem haec mala hortātī sunt,  
   *they encouraged him (as he was) suffering these evils.
2. Eum passūrum haec mala hortātī sunt,  
   *they encouraged him (as he was) about to suffer these evils.
3. Is, haec mala passus, hortandus est,  
   *this man, having suffered these evils, ought to be encouraged.
4. Is haec mala fortiter patiētur,  
   *he will suffer these evils bravely.
5. Eum sequere et haec mōfīre,  
   *follow him and work at these things.
6. Eum sequī et haec mōfīrī nōn ausus es,  
   *you did not dare to follow him and work at these things.
7. Eum sequeris/sequēris,  
   *you are following/will follow him.
8. Eum hortēmur et sequāmur,  
   *let us encourage and follow him.
9. Cicerō Graecīs litterīs ūtēbātur,  
   *Cicero used to enjoy Greek literature.

VOCABULARY

ānima, -ae, f., soul, spirit (anima, animism, animatism, animation, animated, inanimate, etc.; cp. animal, animus)
remissiō, remissiōnis, f., letting go, release; relaxation (remiss, remission; from re + mittō)
vōx, vocīs, f., voice, word (vocal, vocalic, vocalize, vociferous, vowel; vox angelica, vox humana, vox populi; cp. vocō)
adversus, -a, -um, opposite, adverse (adversary, adversative, adversely, adversity; cp. vertō)
tālis, tāle, such, of such a sort (cp. quālis, of what sort, what kind of)
vaei, interj., often + dat., alas, woe to

¹Cp. Fr. se servir de, “to use,” orig. “to serve oneself with.”
árbitror, arbitrāři, arbitrātus sum, to judge, think (arbiter, arbitress, arbitration, arbitrator, arbitrary, arbitrarily)
cónor, cōnāři, cōnātus sum, to try, attempt (conation, conative)
crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, to increase (crescent, crescendo, crescive, concrescence, concrete, decrease, excrescence, increment, accretion, accrué, crew, recruit)
ēgrēdior, ēgrēdi, ēgrēssus sum, to go out (agression, congress, degrade, digress, egress, grade, gradient, gradual, graduate, ingredient, ingress, progress, regress, retrogress, transgress)
fāteor, fātēři, fāssus sum, to confess, admit (confess, confession, profess, profession, professor; cp. fābula, fāma, fātum, also for, fāři, fātus sum, Ch. 40)
hórtor, hortāři, hortātus sum, to encourage, urge (hortatory, exhort, exhortation)
lóquor, lóquī, locātus sum, to say, speak, tell (loquacious, circumlocution, colloquial, elocution, eloquent, obloquy, soliloquy, ventriloquist)
mōlior, mōlīři, mōlitus sum, to work at, build, undertake, plan (demolish, demolition; cp. mōlēs, a large mass, massive structure)
mōrior, mōři, mōrtus sum, fut. act. part. moritūrus, to die (moribund, mortuary; cp. mors, mortālis, immortālis)
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, to be born; spring forth, arise (agnate, cognate, innate, nascent, natal, nation, nature, naive; cp. nāta, nātūra)
pātor, pātī, pāssus sum, to suffer, endure; permit (passion, passive, patient, compassion, compatible, incompatibility, impatient, impassioned, impassive, dispassionate)
profīscor, -fīscī, -fēctus sum, to set out, start (profit and proficient from the related verb prōfīcīō, to make headway, gain results)
rūstīcor, rūstīcāřī, rūstīcatūs sum, to live in the country (rusticate, rustic, rural, cp. rūsticus, rural, rūs, Ch. 37)
sédēo, sédere, sēdi, sēssum, to sit (sedan, sedate, sedentary, sediment, sessile, session, assess, assiduous, president, siege, subsidy)
sequor, séquī, secātus sum, to follow (consequent, consecutive, sequence, sequel, subsequent; see Etymology below)
spectō (1), to look at, see (spectate, spectator, spectacle, speculate, aspect, circumspect, inspect, prospect, respect, suspect; cp. spectulum)
útor, útī, úsus sum + abl., to use; enjoy, experience (abuse, disuse, peruse, usual, usurp, usury, utensil, utilize, utility, utilitarian; cp. útilis)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nisi quis plēbī opem celeriter referet auxiliumve prōmissum praebebit, nilia virōrum morientur.
2. Cum urbs plēna custōdiārum esset, non ausī estis suscipere scelera tam gravia quam voluerātīs.
3. Dic nunc cur velis te ad istam divitem et candidam conferre. Verè ac liberè loquere; nolî recúsâre!
4. Dīvītīs trādītis, heu, illī philosophī eādem nocte subītō profectī sunt in exsilium, unde numquam ēgredī potuerunt.
5. Nē patīāmur hanc antīquissīnam scientiām āmitū.
6. Fatoer mē vīnō merō apud mē ūsūrum esse.
7. Ab initiō nōn comprehendīstī quantus exercitūs nōs sequētur et quod elephantōs istī militēs sēcūm dūcerent.
8. Prīmō respondīt sē nōlle sequī duce mediocris virtūtis sapientiae, cum cīvītās in limine belli stāret.
9. Ex urbe subītō ēgressus, fērō suō morī semel cōnātus est.
10. Cum Aristotēlēs horērētur homīnēs ad virtūtem, tamen arbitrābātur virtūtem in hominibus nōn nāscī.
11. Mātēr paterque nunc rūstīcantur ut ā labōribus remissiōne suāvī úntantur.
12. Dā mihi, amābō tē, multum salis et vīnum aquamve, ut cēnā maxīmē útār.
13. They did not permit me to speak with him at that time.
14. We kept thinking (arbitror) that he would use the office more wisely.
15. If any one should use this water even once, he would die.
16. If those four soldiers had followed us, we would not have dared to put the weapons on the ships.
17. This dinner will be good, provided that you use salt.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Cedamus Phoebō et, monitī, meliōra sequāmur. (*Virgil.—Phoebus Apollo was god of prophecy.)
2. Nam nēmō sine vitīs nāscitur; optimus ille est qui minima habet. (Horace.)
3. Mundus est communis urbs deōrum atque hominum; hī enim sōlī, ratiōne úntentūs, iūre ac lēge vivunt. (Cicero.)
4. Tardē sed graviter vir sapiēns ērascitūr. (*Publilius Syrus.—tardus, -a, -um, slow, late.—irascor, ērascī, ēratūs sum, to become angry.)
5. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, ēgregēre ex urbe; patent portae; proficiscere; nōbiscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; id nōn ferām, nōn patiār. (Cicero.—Quae cum = Cum haec.—versor, versārī, versātūs sum, to stay.)
6. Cūra pecūniam crēscentem sequitur et dīves male dormit. (Horace.)
7. Si in Britanniam profectus essēs, nēmō in illā tantā īnsulā iūre perítior fuisset. (Cicero.—Britannia, -ae, Britain.—perītus, -a, -um + abl., skilled in.)
8. Nisi laus nova nāscitur etiam vetus laus in incertō iacet ac saepe āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)—vetus, gen. veteris, old.)
9. Spērō autem mē secūtum esse in libellīs mēs tālem temperantiam ut nēmō bonus dē ills querē possit. (Martial.—temperantia, -ae.—queror, querī, questus sum, to complain.)

10. Hōrae quidem et diēs et annī discēdunt; nec praeteritum tempus umquam revertitur, nec quid sequātur potest scīrī. (Cicero.—praetēritus, -a, -um, past.—revertor, revertī, reversus sum, to return.)

11. Nōvisti mōrēs mulierum: dum mōliuntur, dum cōnāntur, dum in speculum spectānt, annus lābitur. (Terence.—mulier, -eris, woman.—lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, to slip, glide.)

12. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās contīnet; nōn aquā, nōn igne in plūribus locīs ūtīmur quam amīcitiā. (Cicero.)

13. Homō stultus! Postquam dīvitiās habēre coepit, mortuus est! (Cicero.—postquam, conj., after.)

14. Ō passī graviōra, dabīt deus hīs quoque finem. (*Virgil.—Ō passī, voc. pl., O you who have . . . —hīs = hīs rēbus gravibus.)

**CLAUDIUS' EXCREMENTAL EXPIRATION**

Et ille quidem animalēm ēbulliit, et ex ēō dēsītī vívere vīderī. Exspīrāvit autem dum comoedōs audīt, ut scient mē nōn sine causā illōs timēre. Ultīma vōx eius haec inter homīnes audīta est, cum maiōrem sonītum ēmisisset illā parte quā facilius loquēbātur: “Vae mē, putō, concacāvī.” Quod an fēcerit, nescī—omnia certē concacāvit!

(*Seneca, Apocolocyntōsis 4; a satirical farce on the emperor Claudius' death and deification.—ēbulliō, -ire, ēbullii, to bubble out, + animalēm, comic for he died.—ex ēō, sc. tempore.—dēsīnō, -sinere, -sī, -sītum, to cease.—exspīrāre, to breathe out, die.—comoedōs, -ī, comic actor.—sonītus, -ās, sound.—ē + mittere.—illā parte, sc. ex, i.e., his bottom.—concacāre, to defecate upon.—quod = id.—an, whether, introducing an ind. quest.)
AND VICE IS NOT NICE!

Mentitur quī tē vitium, Zoile, dīcit:
non vitiosus homō es, Zoile, sed vitium!

(*Martial 11.92; meter: elegiac couplet.—mentior, mentīrī, mentitus sum, to lie, deceive.—vitiosus, adj. from vitium.—tē vitiosum, sc. esse, and remember that the verb sum, esse is often omitted in both prose and verse when it is readily understood from the context.—Zōilus, a Greek name.)

PRETTY IS AS PRETTY DOES

Bella es, nōvimus, et puella, vērum est,
et dīves—quis enim potest negāre?
Sed cum tē nimium, Fabulla, laudās,
nec dīves neque bella nec puella es!

(*Martial 1.64; meter: hendecasyllabic.)

ON LESBIA’S HUSBAND

Ille mī pār esse deō vidētur;
ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
quī, sedēns adversus, identidem tē
spectat et audit
5 dulce rīdentem, miserō quod omnīs
ēripit sēnsūs mihī: nam simul tē,
Lesbīa, aspexī, nihil est super mī,
[Lesbīa, vōcīs,]
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
flamma dēmānāt, sonīū sūōptē
10 tintinant aurēs, gēmiā teguntur
lūmina nocte.
Ōtium, Catulle, tibi molestum est;
ōtiō exsultās nimiumque gestūs;
ōtium et rēgēs prius et beātās
perdidit urbēs.

(*Catullus 51; meter: Sapphic stanza.—mī = mihi.—fās est, it is right.—dīvōs = deōs.—identidem, adv., again and again.—dulce, adv. of dulcis.—miserō . . .
mīhi, dat. of separation; the prose order would be quod omnīs (= omnēs) sēnsūs
mihī miserō ēripit.—quod, a circumstance which; the entire preceding clause is
the antecedent.—simul, adv., as soon as.—aspexī = spectāvī.—nihil, with vōcīs,
gen. of the whole, no voice; est super = superest, remains.—Lesbīa, vōcīs is an
editorial suggestion for a verse missing in the manuscripts.—torpēre, to grow
numb.—tenuis, with flamma, from tenuīs, -e, thin, slender.—artūs, -ūs, joint, limb
(of the body).—flamma, -ae, flame.—dēmānāre, to flow through.—sonītus, -ūs,
Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents

sound.—suōpte, intensive for suō.—tintināre, to ring.—tegō, -ere, to cover.—lūmen, -minis, light; eye.—molestus, -a, -um, troublesome.—exsultāre, to celebrate, exult (in), + ēōtō.—gestāre, to act without restraint, be elated or triumphant.—perdō, -ere, perdīdī, perditum, to destroy.)

ETYMOLOGY

“Sympathy” derives from Gk. syn (with) + pathos (suffering). What Latin-rooted word is the exact equivalent of “sympathy”?

Further words associated with sequor: execute, executive, executor, obsequious, prosecute, persecute, pursue, ensue, sue, suit, suite, sect, second. Related to sequor, besides secundus, is socīus (a follower, ally), whence: social, society, associate, dissociate.

In the readings

4. irate, irascible, irascibility. 5. Versārī literally means to turn (oneself) around: versatile, converse, conversant, conversation. 8. veteran, inveterate. 9. intemperance.—querulous, quarrel. 10. preterit, preterition, præteritio.—revert, reverse, reversible, reversion. “Claudius”: ebullient.—expire, expiration, expiration, expiry.—cp. sonus, -i, sound: sonic, sonar, resonate. “Lesbia”: divine.—aspect.—temuous, tenuity.—flammable, inflame, inflammatory, inflammation.—tintinnabulation.—luminary, lumination, illuminate.—molest, molestation.—exultant, exultation.—perdition.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÙTILIS!

Salvēte, meī discipulī discipulaeque! Quid agitis? (Spērō vōs valēre.) Now that you’ve begun to read more real, unadapted Latin literature (like the above selections from Martial, Seneca, and Catullus), you might appreciate the following remark: “Looking back on school, I really liked Latin. In my case, a little bit stuck: I ended up with a feeling for literature.”—Paul McCartney. So, how much Latin is enough?—quantum placēat, as much as gives one pleasure (close to quantum vīs, Ch. 32, and more, one hopes, than quantum satis, Ch. 30!).

Here are some Latin phrases that are by no means moribund: first, an unfortunate (and fortunately overstated!) old proverb, quem di diligunt, adulēscēns moritur; a reminder of one’s mortality is a mementō morī, freely “remember that you must die” (the -tō form is a relatively rare future imperative not formally introduced in this book but used not infrequently in ancient legal and religious texts); on sacrificing one’s life for one’s country, Horace wrote dulce et decōrum (from decōrus, -a, -um, fitting, proper) est prō patriā morī; another bleak proverb (but essential here, as it offers two deponents!) is the astronomer Manilius’ dictum, nascentēs morimur (even as we are) being born, we (begin to) die; and then there is Seneca’s version of “eat, drink, and be merry,” complete with a passive periphrastic, bibāmus, moriendum est, and the words addressed to the emperor by gladiators enter-
ing the arena, avē, Caesar: moritūri tē salutāmus, hail, Caesar: we (who are)
about to die salute you! To any who have suffered, not death, but defeat, one
might proclaim vae, victīs, woe to the conquered, a famous line from Livy's
account of the Gallic sack of Rome in 390 B.C.

Well, enough morbidity. Hīc sunt alia miscellānea ex vocābulāriō novō:
vōx populi; vōx clamantis in désertō, the voice of one calling out in the wilder-
ness (from the gospel of Matthew); crēscit amor nummī quantum ipsa pecūnia
crēvit, love of the coin grows as much as one's wealth itself has grown (Juvenal
14.139); sedente animō, with a calm mind. And here are some other depo-
nents: Maryland's state motto is crēscite et multiplicāminī (can you figure
that one out?); loquitur is a note in a dramatic text; and the legal phrase rēs
ipsa loquitur, the matter speaks for itself, we have seen before, but now you
understand the verb form. And how about this sequence: seq. is an abbrevia-
tion for sequēns/sequentēs, the following, once common in footnotes; a nōn
sequitur is a remark that does not follow logically from a prior statement (a
sequitur, of course, does!); sequor nōn inferior, I follow (but am) not inferior.
Will this exciting chapter have a sequel in the subsequent chapter? And, if
not, what will be the consequences? Stay tuned . . . et valete!
The dative case is in general employed to indicate a person or thing that some act or circumstance applies to or refers to "indirectly," as opposed to the accusative, which indicates the more immediate recipient or object of an action. The indirect object, e.g., is the person/thing toward which a direct object is "referred" by the subject + verb: "I am giving the book [direct object] to you [indirect object]" = "I am giving the book, not just to anyone anywhere, but in your direction, i.e., to you." Even in the passive periphrastic construction, the dative of agent indicates the person for whom a certain action is obligatory. A number of other dative case usages are distinguished by grammarians, but most are simply variants on this basic notion of reference or direction.

**DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES**

The dative with adjectives construction is one example which you have already encountered in your readings, though it has not yet been formally introduced. Simply stated, a noun in the dative case is employed with many Latin adjectives—particularly those indicating attitude, quality, or relation—to indicate the direction (literally or metaphorically) in which the ad-
jective applies; such adjectives are normally followed by “to,” “toward,” or “for” in English (e.g., “friendly to/toward,” “hostile to/toward,” “suitable to/for,” “useful to,” “similar to,” “equal to,” etc.).

Mors est similis somnō, death is similar to sleep.
Sciēbam tē mihi fidēlem esse, I knew that you were loyal to me.
Nōbīs est vir amīcus, he is a man friendly toward us.
Quisque sībī cārus est, each one is dear to himself.
Ille vidēitur pār esse deō, that man seems to be equal to a god.

**DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS**

Conceptually similar is the dative with special verbs construction. Many of these verbs (the most important of which are listed below) are actually intransitive and, like the adjectives that take the dative, indicate attitude or relationship, e.g., nocēre, to be injurious to, parcō, to be lenient toward, etc. Although these verbs are often translated into English as though they were transitive and the dative nouns they govern as though they were direct objects (e.g., tībi parcīt, he spares you; lit., he is lenient toward you), the datives again indicate the person (or thing) toward whom the attitude or quality applies.

Although a common rule for the dative with special verbs lists those meaning to favor, help, harm, please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, the list is cumbersome and involves some important exceptions (including iuvō, to help, and iubeō, to command, order, which take accusative objects). The best procedure at this point in your study of the language is simply to understand the concept and then to learn some of the commonest Latin verbs that take this construction.

In memorizing the following list, note carefully that the more literal translation, given first for each verb, includes English to and thus reminds you of the required dative; note as well that each verb conveys some notion of attitude toward a person or thing, again suggesting a dative, as discussed above.

- crēdō + dat., entrust to; trust, believe (crēdō tībi, I believe you)
- ignōscō + dat., grant pardon to; pardon, forgive (ignōscō virīs, I forgive the men)
- imperō + dat., give orders to; command (imperō militibus, I command the soldiers)
- noceō + dat., do harm to; harm (noceō hostibus, I harm the enemy)
Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds 247

nūbō + dat., be married to; marry (nūbō illī virō, I am marrying that man)
parcō + dat., be lenient to; spare (parcō vōbīs, I spare you)
pāreō + dat., be obedient to; obey (pāreō ducī, I obey the leader)
persuādeō + dat., make sweet to; persuade (persuādeō mihi, I persuade myself)
placeō + dat., be pleasing to; please (placeō patri, I please my father)
servīō + dat., be a slave to; serve (servīō patriae, I serve my country)
studeō + dat., direct one’s zeal to; study (studeō litterīs, I study literature)
Crēde amīcis, believe (trust) your friends.
Ignōse mihi, pardon me (forgive me).
Magistra discipulīs parcit, the teacher spares (is lenient toward) her pupils.
Hoc eīs nōn placet, this does not please them.
Nōn possum eī persuādēre, I cannot persuade him.
Variae rēs hominibus nocent, various things harm men.
Cicerō philosophiae studēbat, Cicero used to study philosophy.
Philosophiae servīre est libertās, to serve philosophy is liberty.

Some of these verbs, it should be noted, can also take a direct object (e.g., crēdō takes a dative for a person believed, mātrī crēdit, he believes his mother; but an accusative for a thing, id crēdit, he believes it); and some, like imperō and persuādeo, take a noun clause as an object, as we shall see in the next chapter.

**DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS**

A very similar dative usage occurs with certain verbs compounded with ad, ante, con- (=cum), in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum and re- (in the sense of against). The dative is especially common when the meaning of a compound verb is significantly different from its simple form, whether transitive or intransitive; conversely, if the meaning of the compound is not essentially different from that of the simple verb, then the dative is ordinarily not employed:

Sequor eum, I follow him.
Obsequor eī, I obey him.
Sum amīcus eīs, I am his friend.
Adsum amīcō, I support my friend (lit., I am next to my friend, i.e., at his side).
Vēnit ad nōs, he came to us.
Advēnit ad nōs, he came to us.
Often the dative appears to function essentially as a kind of object of the prepositional prefix, though the preposition would take another case if separate from the verb; thus *adsum amicō* above and the following examples:

Aliō praestānt, *they surpass the others* (lit., *they stand before the others*).

Praēserat exercituī, *he was in charge of the army* (lit., *he was in front of the army*).

If the simple verb is transitive, then the compound may take an accusative as object of the root verb as well as a dative:

Praeposéō eum exercituī, *I put him in charge of the army* (lit., *I put him in front of the army* [*praē- + exercituī*]).

Praeposéō pecūniam amīcitiae, *I preferred money to friendship* (lit., *I put money before friendship* [*praē- + amīcitiae*]).

Since there is such variability in the rules for dative with special verbs and with compounds, the best procedure is to understand the concepts involved and then, when encountering a dative in a sentence, to be aware of these possible functions; just as with the other cases, you should be maintaining a list of the dative uses you have learned (there have been five thus far) in your notebook or computer file, including definitions and representative examples.

**VOCABULARY**

aēstās, aestātīs, f., summer (estival, estivate, estivation; cp. aestus, -ūs, heat, aestuāre, to be hot, seethe, boil)

iānua, -ae, f., door (janitor, Janus, January)

pēctus, pectoris, n., breast, heart (pectoral, expectorate, parapet)

praēmium, -īn, n., reward, prize (premium)

īrātus, -a, -um, angry (irate; cp. īra, īrāscor, to be angry)

antepōnō, -pōnerē, -pōsuī, -pōsitum, to put before, prefer

fōveō, fōvere, fōvī, fōtum, to comfort, nurture, cherish (foment)

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat., to grant pardon to, forgive

imperō (1) + dat., to give orders to, command (imperative, emperor; cp. imperātor, imperium)

mīrōr, mīrāri, mīrātus sum, to marvel at, admire, wonder (admire, marvel, miracle, mirage; cp. mīrābilis, Ch. 38, mīrāculum, a marvel)

nōceō, nocēre, nōcuī, nōcitum + dat., to do harm to, harm, injure (innocent, innocuous, noxious, nuisance, obnoxious; cp. innocēns, blameless)

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, to cover, veil; + dat. (of a bride) to be married to, marry (nubile, connubial, nuptials; cp. nūptiae, marriage)

pārcō, pārceō, pepērēi, parsūrum + dat., to be lenient to, spare (parsimonious, parsimony)
Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

pārēō, pārēre, pārū + dat., to be obedient to, obey (apparent, appear)
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum + dat., to succeed in urging, persuade, convince (assuage, dissuade, suasion, suave; cp. suāvis)
plāceō, placēre, plācuī, plācitum + dat., to be pleasing to, please (complacent, placable, implacable, placate, placid, plea, plead, pleasure, displease; cp. placidus, kindly, agreeable, calm)
sāpiō, sāpere, sapīvī, to have good taste; have good sense, be wise (sapient, sapid, insipid, sage, savor; cp. sapiēns, sapientia)
sérviō, servīre, servīvī, servītum + dat., to be a slave to, serve (service, disservice, subserve, servile, servility, deserve, desert = reward, dessert; cp. servus, servītus; distinguish from servāre)
stūdeō, studēre, studūī + dat., to direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study (student; cp. studium, studiōsus, eager, diligent, scholarly)
subrīdeō, -rīdere, -rīsī, -rīsum, to smile (down) upon (cp. rīdeo, rīdīculus)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Minerva, filia lovis, nāta est plēna scientiae et ingenii.
2. Custōdiae sī cum duce nostrō liberē loquantur et huic tyrannō trādere cōnentur, sine periculo ex moeniIs urbis protinll possint.
3. Pārēre lēgibus acquis melius est quam tyrannō servīre.
4. Cum optimē honōribus ēsus esset et sibi cēvitātem semper antepōneret, etiam plēbs eī credebat et nōn invidēbat.
5. Diū passa, māter vestra fēliciter, sedēns apud amīcōs, mortua est.
6. Philosophē cōnsilium spectāvērunt et recūsāvērunt tālem rem suscipere mōlīrīve.
7. Cum dīves sīs atque dīvitiae crēscant, tamen opibus tuis parcerē vīs et nēmīnī assem offerēs.
8. Ab īlī īnsulā repente profectus, eādem nocte ad patriam nāve advēnit; tum, quae rēnōs remissiōnem animae, diū rūsticābātur.
9. Hīc mīles, cum imperātōrī vestrō nōn placērēt, heu, illa praemia prōmissa āmīsit.
10. Nisi mōrēs parēs scientiae sunt—id nōbīs fātendum est—scientia nōbīs magnopere nocēre potest.
11. Magistra tum rōgāvit duōs parvōs puerōs quot digitōs habērent.
12. Māter candida nātae cāriissimae subrīdet, quam maximē fōvet, et eī plūrima oscula suāvia dat.
13. Why does he now wish to hurt his two friends?
14. If he does not spare the plebeians, alas, we shall never trust him.
15. Since you are studying Roman literature, you are serving a very difficult but a very great master.
16. If they were truly willing to please us, they would not be using their wealth thus against the state.
SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Nēmō liber est qui corporī servit. (Seneca.)
2. Imperium habère vis magnum? Imperā tibi! (Publilius Syrus.)
3. Bonīs nocet quisquis pepercit malīs. (*Id.)
4. Cum tū omnia pecūniae postpōnās, mīrāris sī nēmō tibi amōrem praestat? (Horace.—post-pōnō.)
5. Frūstrā aut pecūniae aut imperīs aut opībus aut glōriae student; potius studiēnt virtūtī et honōrī et scientiāe et alicui artī. (Cicero.—frūstrā, adv., in vain.—potius, adv., rather.)
6. Virtūtī melius quam Fortūnae crēdāmus; virtūs nōn nōvit calamitātī cēdēre. (Publilius Syrus.—calamītās, -ātīs.)
7. Et Deus ait: “Faciāmus hominem ad imāginem nostram et praesīt piscibus marīs bēstīisque terrae.” (Genesis.—imāgō, -ginis, f.—praε-sum.—piscis, piscis, m., fish.—bēstia, -ae, beast.)
8. Omnēs arbitrātī sunt tē dēbēre mihi parcuere. (Cicero.)
9. Quid facere vellet, ostendit, et illus servō spē libertātīs magnīisque praemīs persuāsit. (Caesar.)
10. Sī cui librī Cicerōnis placent, ille sciat sē profrēcisse. (Quintilian.—prōficiō = prō + fació, to progress, benefit.)
11. In urbe nostrā mihi contigit docērī quantum irātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. (Horace.—contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, to touch closely, fall to the lot of.)
12. Alicui rogantī melius quam iubentī pārēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
13. Vivite fortiter fortiaque pectora rēbus adversīs oppōnite. (Horace.—oppōnō = ob + pōnō, to set against.)
14. Nōn ignāra malī, miserīs succurrere discō. (*Virgil.—ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant; ignāra is fem. because it agrees with Dido, exiled queen, who speaks these words to shipwrecked Aeneas.—suc-currō = sub + currō, to help.)
15. Ignōsce saepe alterī, numquam tibi. (Publilius Syrus.)
16. Quandō tē, deum meum, quaerō, vitam beātam quaerō; quaeram tē ut vīvat anima mea. (St. Augustine.)

OVID ASKS THE GODS TO INSPIRE HIS WORK

In nova fert animus mūtātās dīcere fōrmās corpora: dī, coeptīs—nam vōs mūtāstīs et illās—adspīrāte mēs prīmāque ab origine mundī ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen!

(*Ovid, Metamorphōsēs 1.1–4; meter: dactylic hexameter. Ovid’s *Metamorphōsēs* was an epic that recounted hundreds of stories of miraculous transformations, from the creation of the universe right down into his own times; the chal-
Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

length in translating this brief excerpt, as with much of Latin verse, is to connect the adjectives with the nouns they modify, so watch the endings!—nova, with corpora.—fert, compels (me).—coepīs . . . meis, dat. with the compound adspīrāte, my beginnings, i.e., the inception of my work.—mūtāstis = mūtāvistis; such contractions, with v and the following vowel dropped, are common in certain perfect tense forms.—et = etiam.—illās, sc. formās.—adspīrāre, to breathe upon, inspire.—origō, -ginis, f.—Note the interlocked word order of mea . . . tempora and perpetuum . . . carmen.—dē + dūcō.)

SORRY, NOBODY'S HOME!

Nāsīca ad poētam Ennium vēnit. Cum ad iānuam Ennium quaesīvisset et serva respondisset eum in casā nōn esse, sēnsit illam dominī iussū id dixisse et Ennium vērō esse in casā. Post paucoēs diēs, cum Ennius ad Nāsīcam vēnisset et eum ad iānuam quaereret, Nāsīca ipse exclāmāvit sē in casā nōn esse. Tum Ennium “Quid?” inquit, “Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?” Hic Nāsīca merō cum sale respondit: “Vae, homō es impudēns! Ego, cum tē quaerērem, servae tuae crēdidi tē nōn in casā esse; nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdis?”

(Cicero, Dē Ōrātōre 2.276.—Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a celebrated jurist.—Quintus Ennius, a famous early Roman poet.—iussū, at the command of.—exclāmāre, to shout out.—impudēns, gen. impudentis.)

"I DO. "I DON'T!"

Nūbere viē Prīsōc. Nōn mīror, Paula; sapīsti.
Dūcere tē nōn vult Prīscus: et ille sapit!

(*Martial 9.10; meter: elegiac couplet.—Priscus was an eligible bachelor, and probably a rich one; Paula was apparently not his type!—sapīsti = sapīvisti; see on mūtāstis above.—dūcere, i.e., in mātrimōnium.—et here, as often, = etiam.)

MARONILLA HAS A COUGH

Petit Gemellus nūptiās Marōnillae
et cupit et ōstat et precātur et dōnāt.
Adeōne pulchra est? Inmō, foedius nīl est.
Quid ergō in illā petitur et placet? Tussit!

(*Martial 1.10; meter: choliambic. Gemellus is a legacy-hunter, and Maronilla a rich old hag whose estate he hopes to inherit.—nūptiāe, -ārum, f. pl., marriage.—ōstāre, to press, insist.—precōr, precāri, precātus sum, to beg, entreat.—dōnāt = dat.—adeō = tam.—inmō, adv., on the contrary.—foedius = turpius.—nīl = nihil.—ergō = igitur.—tussāre, to cough.)
**SUMMER VACATION**

Ludi magister, parce simplici turbae:

aestate puell si valent, satis discunt.

(*Martial 10.62.1, 12; meter: choliambic.—simplex, gen. simplicis, here youthful.)

**ETYMOLOGY**


**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!**

Salvête, discipuli discipulaeque! Or perhaps now that you have learned the meaning of studēre you should be termed studentēs, since it is clearly your zeal for learning that has brought you this far in your study of Latin! So, studentēs, here is your praemium, more delectables for your cena Latina, once more ex novā grammaticā (grammar) atque vocabulāriō: if you remember that verbs signifying “favor . . . etc.” govern the dative, you can understand this first, fortuitously alliterative motto, fortūna favet fortibus; favēte linguis, lit. be favorable with your tongues, was an expression used in Roman religious rituals meaning “to avoid any ill-omened words, keep silent”; imperō obviously gives us “imperative,” but also the expression dividē (from dividere, to separate, divide) et imperā; a placēt is an affirmative vote, a placētum a judicial decision, and a “placebo” is an unmedicated preparation meant to humor a patient (what, literally, does the “medicine” promise to do?); secret meetings are held iānuās clausīs (from claudō, claudere, clausī, clausūm, to close, as in “recluse,” “closet,” etc.), but iānuae mentīs are the ones studying Latin will help you to open (aperīō, aperīre, aperūī, apertura is to open, as in “aperture”). Studēte Latīnae, aperīte mentēs, et semper valēte, studentēs!
Jussive Noun Clauses; Fīō

JUSSIVE NOUN CLAUSES

The “jussive noun clause” may be regarded as a kind of indirect command. As in the case of indirect statements (Ch. 25) and indirect questions (Ch. 30), the actual command (or request, or entreaty, etc.) is not quoted verbatim, via an imperative or a jussive subjunctive (Ch. 28) in a main clause, but is reported indirectly in a subordinate clause, i.e., not “he ordered them, ‘Do this!’” but “he ordered them to do this.” In Latin such clauses are usually introduced by either ut or nē and employ a subjunctive verb (usually present or imperfect tense), whereas in English, and therefore in translation, we ordinarily employ a present infinitive with no introductory word and no auxiliary such as may or might:

1. Hoc facite, do this (imperative). Direct command.
2. Hoc faciant, let them do this (jussive subj.). Direct command.
3. Imperat vobīs ut hoc faciātis, he commands you to do this.
4. Imperāvit eīs ut hoc facerent, he commanded them to do this.
5. Persuādet eīs ut hoc faciant, he persuades them to do this.
6. Petīvit ab eīs nē hoc facerent, he begged (from) them not to do this.
7. Monuit eōs nē hoc facerent, he warned them not to do this.
8. Hortātus est eōs ut hoc facerent, he urged them to do this.

These clauses are often confused with purpose clauses because in appearance they are identical, but a study of the examples given above reveals their essentially jussive nature. In contrast to purpose clauses, which function adverbially (answering the question “why?”), the jussive clauses under discussion function as noun objects of the main verbs which introduce them (answering the question “what . . . was ordered, requested, advised, etc.?”). The
following list includes some of the more common verbs that can introduce jussive noun clauses and also indicates the case (dative, accusative, etc.) employed for the person being ordered or requested to act:

hortor eum ut, I urge him to...
imperō eī ut, I order him to...
moneō eum ut, I advise him to...
ōrō eum ut, I beg him to...
persuādeo eī ut, I persuade him to... (or I persuade him that...)
petō ab eō ut, I beg (from) him to...
quaerō ab eō ut, I request (from) him to...
rogō eum ut, I ask him to...

Volō, nōlō, and mālō (Ch. 32) sometimes introduce such clauses (e.g., mālō ut, I prefer that...), although they also commonly are followed by infinitives; iubeō nearly always takes the infinitive construction.

**IRREGULAR Fiō, fierī, factus sum, to occur; happen; be done, be made**

The common irregular verb fiō, fierī, meaning to occur, happen, was used by the Romans in place of the passive of the present system of faciō and so, although active in form, also has the passive meanings to be done, be made. Conversely, its own perfect system was supplied by the perfect passive system of faciō.

In effect, then, we have a composite verb with the principal parts fiō, fierī, factus sum and with the range of related meanings occur, happen, become, be made, be done. In translating, when you see the active present system forms of fiō remember the passive force options be done, be made, and when you see the passive perfect system forms factus est, factus erat, factus sit, etc., remember the options has become, had occurred, etc.

The only new forms to be learned are those listed below; note that: the stem vowel -i- is long in all places except fit, fierī, and the imperfect subjunctive; otherwise, the forms of the present, future, and imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive follow the pattern of audiō; the imperfect subjunctive follows a predictable pattern, given the infinitive fierī.

---

Footnote:

1 This is true of the basic verb faciō (e.g., fit was used instead of factur for it is done, is made); the practice with compounds varied, e.g., perficitur, is completed, but calefit instead of calefacitur for is heated.
### Jussive Noun Clauses: Fiō

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. fiō</td>
<td>fiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fis</td>
<td>fiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fit</td>
<td>fiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fiāmus</td>
<td>fiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fiātis</td>
<td>fiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fiānt</td>
<td>fiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fierē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study carefully the following examples:

- Hoc facit (faciet), *he is doing or making this (will do or make).*
- Hoc fit (fiet), *this is done or made (will be done or made).*
- Hoc faciat, *let him do or make this.*
- Hoc fiat, *let this be done or made.*
- Dicunt eum hoc facere, *they say that he is doing this.*
- Dicunt hoc fierē, *they say that this is being done.*
- Perīculum fit gravius, *the danger is becoming graver.*
- Mox factī sunt fēlices, *they soon became happy.*

### VOCABULARY

- **cupīdō, cupīdīnis, f., desire, passion** (cupidity, Cupid; cp. cupīō, cupīdītās, cupīdus, Ch. 39)
- **lēctor, lēctorīs, m., and lēctrīx, lēctrīcis, f., reader** (lector; cp. legō, lectern, lection, lectionary, lecture)
- **vīnculum, -ī, n., bond, chain, fetter** (vinculum; cp. vincō, to bind)
- **cōtīdīē, adv., daily, every day** (quot + diēs; cotidian)
- **fortāsse, adv., perhaps** (cp. fortūna)
- **accēdō, -cēdere, -cēssi, -cēssum, to come (to), approach** (accede, access, accessible, accession, accessory; cp. cēdō, discēdō)
- **cārpō, cārpare, cārpī, cārptum, to harvest, pluck; seize** (carp at, excerpt, carpet, scarce; carpe diem: see Latina Est Gaudium, Ch. 22)
- **cōgō, cōgere, cōegī, cōactūm (cum + agō), to drive or bring together, force, compel** (cogent, coaction, coactive, coagulate; cp. cōgitō)
- **contēmnnō, -tēmnerē, -tēmpsī, -tēmpūm, to despise, scorn** (contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous)
- **contūndō, -tūndere, -tūdi, -tūsum, to beat, crush, bruise, destroy** (contuse, confusion; obtuse, from obtūndō, to beat, make blunt)
cūrō (1), to care for; attend to; heal, cure; take care (cure, curator, pro-
cure, proctor, accurate; cp. cūra)
dēcērnō, -cērnerē, -cēvī, -cētūm, to decide, settle, decree (decretal, de-
cretory)
ēxīgō, -īgere, -ēgī, -āctum (ex + agō), to drive out, force out, exact; drive
through, complete, perfect (exactitude, exigent, exigency, exigible)
fiō, fiērī, fāctus sum, to occur, happen; become; be made, be done (fiat)
oblēctō (1), to please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly (cp. dēlectō, dē-
lectātiō)
ōrō (1), to speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray (orator, oration, or-
acle, orison, adore, inexorable, peroration; cp. ōrātōr, ōrātiō, Ch. 38)
rēcreō (1), to restore, revive; refresh, cheer (recreate, recreation)
requīrō, -quisere, -quisīvi, -quisītum, to seek, ask for; miss, need, require
(requirement, requisite, requisition, prerequisite, request)
serēnō (1), to make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe (serene, serenity, ser-
enade)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Poterāsne etiam centum virīs persuādere ut viam virtūtis sine
praemia sequerentur?
2. Haec fēmina vult ex urbe ēgredī et ad illam īnsulam proficīscē ut sine
morā illī agricolae nūbat et semper rūsticētur.
3. Petēbant ā nōbīs ut etiam in adversīs rēbus huic ducē pārērēmus et
servīrēmus.
4. Haec ab fēminās facta sunt nē tantam occāsiōnem āmitterent.
5. Rogāmus tē ut honōre et opibus sapientius ātāris et hōs quīnque
amicōs semper loveās.
7. Rogāvit nōs cūr neque dīvitibus neque pauperibus placēre cōnāti es-
sēmus.
8. Arbitrābātur tālem vitam nōn ex dīvitīs sed ex animō plēnō vir-
tūtis nāscē.
10. Senātus duce imperāvit nē hostibus victīs nocēret sed eīs parceret et
remissionem poenae darent.
11. Ille ōrātōr vulgum īrātissimum vōce potenti serēnāvit atque, ut om-
nibus subrīsit, ēōs oblectāvit.
12. Ut parva puella per iānuam currēbat, subītō occidit et genua male
contudit.
14. That summer they urged that this be done better.
15. Provided that this is done, they will beg us to spare him.
16. That teacher wants to persuade her twenty pupils to study more
good literature.
17. Since his hope is becoming very small, let him confess that he com-
manded (use imperō) those two men not to do it.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Dixitque Deus: “Fiat lūx.” Et facta est lūx. (*Genesis.)
2. Fatendum est nihil dē nihilō posse fierī. (Lucretius.—nihilō, abl. of
nihilum, -ī, = nihil.)
3. Magnae rēs nōn sunt sine periculō. (Terence.)
4. Hīs rēbus cognītīs, ille suōs hortātus est nē timērent. (Caesar.)
5. Omnia fēnt quae fierī acquum est. (Terence.)
6. “Pater, órō tē ut mihi ignōscās.” “Fiat.” (Terence.)
7. Dum loquimur, fūgerit invītae aetās: carpe diem! (*Horace.—invi-
dus, -a, -um, envious.)
8. Carpāmus dulcia; post enim mortem cinis et fabula fiēs. (Persius.—
cinis, -neris, m., ashes.)
9. Ante senectūtem cūrāvī ut bene vīverem; in senectūte cūrō ut bene
moriar. (Seneca.)
10. Solōn dixit sē senem fierī cotīdiē aliiquid addiscēntem. (Cicero.—
Solōn, -lōnis.—ad-discō, -ere.)
11. Caret pectus tuum ināni ambitiōne? Caret ūrā et timōre mortis? Ig-
nōscis amīcis? Fīs lēniōr et melior, accēdente senectūte? (Horace.—
inānis, -e, empty, vain.—ambitiō, -ōnis.—lēnis, -e, gentle, kind.)
12. Hoc dūrum est; sed levius fīt patientiā quidquid corrigere est nefās.
(Horace.—patientiā, -ae.—corrīgō, -ere.—est nefās, it is wrong, con-
trary to divine law.)
13. Sapiāmus et cēdāmus! Leve fīt onus quod bene furtur. (Ovid.—onus,
oneris, n., burden.)
14. Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis—
vae illīs quī nullōs amīcōs habent! (Cicero.)
15. Petō ā vōbīs ut patiāmini mē dē studīs hūmānītātis ac litterārum
loquī. (Cicero.—hūmānītās, -tāsis, culture.)

THE QUALITY OF MARTIAL’S BOOK

Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plūra
quae legis hīc; aliter nōn fit, Avitus, liber.

(*Martial 1.16; meter, elegiac couplet.—aliter, adv., otherwise.—Avitus, -i, a
friend of the poet.)
I DON'T COOK FOR COOKS!

Lector et auditor nostrōs probat, Aule, libellōs,
sed quīdam exāctōs esse poēta negat.
Nōn nimium cūrō, nam cēnae fercula nostrae
mālim convīvīs quam placuisse cocīs!

(*Martial 9.81; meter: elegiac couplet.—quīdam, with poēta.—sc. eōs, = libellōs, as subject of the infin. in the indir. statement.—ferculum, -i, course [of a meal].—mālim, potential subj., I would prefer that.—The prose order would be: mālim fercula cēnae nostrae placuisse convīvīs quam cocīs.—quam, i.e., magis quam.—convīva, -ae, m., dinner-guest.—coccus, -i, cook.)

I LOVE HER... I LOVE HER NOT

Ōī et amō! Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
Nescio, sed fieri sentiō et excrucior.

(*Catullus 85; meter: elegiac couplet.—excruciāre, to crucify, torment.)

OH, I'D LOVE TO READ YOU MY POEMS... NOT!

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. Nōlō—
nōn audīre, Celer, sed recitāre cupis!

(*Martial 1.63; meter: elegiac couplet.—epigramma, -matis, n.)

WHO IS TRULY FREE?

Quis igitur vērō libēr est? Tantum vir sapiēns, qui sibi imperat, quem neque fortūna adversa neque paupertās neque mors neque vincula terrent, qui potest cupidinibus fortiter respondēre honōrēsque contemnere, cuīus virtūs cōtidiē crescit, qui in sē ipsō tōtus est.

(Horace, Sermōnēs 2.7.83ff; prose adaptation.)

TESTIMONY AGAINST THE CONSPIRATORS


(Cicero; in this adaptation from his third oration against Catiline, Cicero informs the Roman citizenry of the evidence against Catiline and the actions of the senate. See the earlier readings on Catiline in Chs. 11, 14, 20, and 30.—
In the readings

intrō-ducō, -ere.—Volturcius was a conspirator in Catiline’s band.—Gallus, -ī, a Gaul; Lentulus, the leading conspirator at Rome in Catiline’s absence, had been seeking to stir into rebellion against the Roman state the Gallic Allobroges, who had a delegation at Rome.—scīret: a subordinate clause that would ordinarily have an indicative verb often has instead a subjunctive when the clause occurs either within an indirect statement or, as here, within another subjunctive clause; in this latter instance the verb is often termed “subjunctive by attraction.”—mandātum, -ī, order.—quam primum, see Ch. 32.—equitātus, -ūs, cavalry.

ETYMOLOGY

8. cinerary, incinerator, incinerate. 11. inane, inanity.—ambitiō literally meant a going around by a candidate to individual citizens in quest of political support.—lenient, leniency, lenity. 12. correct, incorrigible. 13. onerous. 15. humanity, the humanities; cp. homō, hūmānus. “I Love Her”: excruciate; cp. crux, crucial, from crux, crucis, f., cross. “I’d Love to Read”: epigrammatic. “Testimony”:—mandate, mandatory, command, countermand, demand, remand.—equitation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvete, studentēs! Here are some fīō items: if you’ve found it easier to write a speech than a poem, you’ll believe the old saying nāscimur poētae, finus ōrātōres; a fiat (not the car) is a magisterial command, let it be done! From Publilius Syrus (the source of many of this book’s sententiae) comes repente dīvēs nēmō factus est bonus (like Juvenal’s nēmō repente fuit turpissimus, Ch. 30); also the legal expression regarding “consenting adults,” volenti nōn fit inūria, injury is not done to a willing person, and fiat ut petitur, let it be done as requested, the phrase used for granting a legal petition.

Et cētera ex hoc vocabulāriō: an accessit (lit., helē she approached, came close) is a recognition for second place or honorable mention in a competition; vinculum mātrimōniī is the bond of matrimony; and ā vinculō mātrimōniī is legal Lat. for an annulment; dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx, the law does not concern itself with trivialities, is another familiar legal maxim; there are numerous mottoes and familiar sayings from ōrāre, including ōrāre et spērāre and ōrā et labōrā; besides carpe diem, there is carpent tua pōma nepōrēs, your descendants will harvest your fruits. Carpāmus omnēs diēs, lēctōrēs et lēc­trīcēs!
Conjugation of Eō; Constructions of Place and Time

**IRREGULAR Eō, ĭre, ĭī, ĭtum, to go**

The irregular fourth conjugation verb eō, ĭre, ĭī, ĭtum, to go, is fully conjugated below; the verb is as common in Latin as “go” is in English, and so the conjugation should be learned thoroughly.

**INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ēō</td>
<td>ĭbām</td>
<td>ĭbō</td>
<td>ĭī</td>
<td>ĭeram</td>
<td>ĭerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. īs</td>
<td>ĭbas</td>
<td>ĭbīs</td>
<td>īsī</td>
<td>ĭerās</td>
<td>ĭerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. īt</td>
<td>ĭbat</td>
<td>ĭbit</td>
<td>īit</td>
<td>ĭerat</td>
<td>ĭerīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. īmus</td>
<td>ĭbāmus</td>
<td>ĭbīmus</td>
<td>ĭīmus</td>
<td>ĭerāmus</td>
<td>ĭerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ītis</td>
<td>ĭbātis</td>
<td>ĭbitis</td>
<td>ĭstīs</td>
<td>ĭerātis</td>
<td>ĭerītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēunt</td>
<td>ĭbant</td>
<td>ĭbunt</td>
<td>ĭerunt</td>
<td>ĭerant</td>
<td>ĭerīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ēam</td>
<td>ĭrem</td>
<td>ĭerīm</td>
<td>ĭssem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. īās</td>
<td>ĭrēs</td>
<td>ĭerīs</td>
<td>ĭsśēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ēat</td>
<td>ĭrēt</td>
<td>ĭerīt</td>
<td>ĭśset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Observatory on Eō

In the present system of eō there are two major difficulties:

1. The normal stem, i-, as derived from the present infinitive, becomes e- before a, o, and u; e.g., eō, eunt, eam. Give particular attention to the present indicative and the present subjunctive above. A similar change from i- to e- is seen in all forms of the present participle, except the nominative singular, and in the gerund (a form whose use is explained in Ch. 39).

2. The future of this fourth conjugation verb has the tense sign and endings of a first or second conjugation verb.

The perfect system is formed regularly except that ii- before s usually contracts to i-; e.g., issē, issē. Forms with -v-, such as ivē, are rare and do not appear in this book.

Only the active forms are here presented; the rare impersonal passive (e.g., ītur, ībātur) and the future and perfect passive participles (eundum, ītum) do not appear in this book. Transitive compounds such as adeō, to approach, commonly have passive endings (e.g., adeōr, adībātur, etc.), but those forms likewise are not employed in this book.

### Place Constructions

You have already learned how to use the proper prepositions and cases in the regular place constructions, but they are repeated here for review and for contrast with the special rules for the names of cities, towns, and small islands and for domus, humus, and rūs.
I. Regular constructions: prepositions + proper case.

(1) Place where: in or sub + ablative.

In illā urbe visus est, *he was seen in that city.*
Nihil sub sole est novum, *there is nothing new under the sun.*

(2) Place to which: in, ad, or sub + accusative.

In illam urbem ībit, *he will go into that city.*
Sub hastam hostis occidit, *he fell under the enemy's spear.*

(3) Place from which: ab, de, or ex + ablative.

Ex illā urbe ēt, *he went out of that city.*

II. With the actual names of cities, towns, and small islands, as well as the three nouns domus, humus, and rūs, no prepositions were employed in Latin, though they usually must be supplied in English translation (cp., however, Eng. "he ran home" for "he ran to his home").

(1) For place where with these particular words a special case was used in Latin, the “locative.” The locative is identical to the *genitive* for the singular of first and second declension nouns; elsewhere the locative is usually identical to the *ablative.*

*Visus est Rōmae, Ephesī, Athēnēs, et Carthāgine.*
*He was seen at Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.*

(2) Place to which: accusative without a preposition.

Ībit Rōmam, Ephesum, Athēnās, et Carthāginem.
*He will go to Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.*

(3) Place from which: ablative without a preposition.

Īt Rōmā, Ephesō, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.
*He went from Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.*

**Domus,** as seen in the vocabulary below, is a slightly irregular feminine noun, having some second declension endings and some fourth. In place constructions the commonest forms are as follows:

domī (locative), *at home*                  Domī visus est, *he was seen at home.*
domum (acc.), *home (= to home)*       Domum ībit, *he will go home.*
domō (abl.), *from home*                Domō ēt, *he went from home.*

The locative of **humus,** a feminine second declension noun, follows the rule: **humī,** *on the ground.* The locative of **rūs** is either **rūrī** or **rōre,** *in the country.*
TIME CONSTRUCTIONS

(1) You are already familiar with the ablative of time when or within which (Ch. 15); no preposition is used in Latin, but in English translation you must supply in, within, at, on, etc., depending on the particular noun:

Eōdem die iit, he went on the same day.
Pauīs hōrīs domum iībit, he will go home in a few hours.

(2) Newly introduced here is the accusative of duration of time, which indicates, not the time at or within which an action occurs, but for how long a period of time the action occurs. No preposition is employed in Latin; in English translation, the preposition for is sometimes used, sometimes omitted. The construction also commonly occurs with nātus to indicate a person’s age.

Multōs annōs vīxit, he lived (for) many years.
Pauca hōrās domūs manēbit, he will stay at home (for) a few hours.
Quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est, At the age of 25 (lit., having been born for 25 years), he became commander.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens (cp. athenaeum)
dōmōs, -ās (-Ī), f., house, home; dōmī, at home; dōmum, (to) home; dōmō, from home (domain, domicile, domestic, domesticate, dome, major-domo; cp. dominus, domina, Ch. 40)
hūmus, -ī, f., ground, earth; soil (humus, exhume, inhume, inhumation, posthumous; cp. humiliitate, humility, from humilīs, -e, on the earth, down-to-earth, humble)
itēr, itineris, n., journey; route, road (itinerant, itinerary; cp. ēō below)
rūs, rūris, n., the country, countryside (rustic, rusticity; cp. rūstīcor, rūsticus, rural)
Syraκūsae, -ārum, f. pl., Syracuse
ābsēns, gen. absēntis, absent, away (absence, absentee, absenteeism, in absentia; from absūm, abesse)
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful (grace, gracious, grateful, gratitude, gratify, gratis, gratuitous, gratuity, ingrate, ingratiate, agree, congratulate; cp. grātiās agō)
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting (immobile; cp. moveō)
fōrīs, adv., out of doors, outside (foreclose, foreign, forest, forfeit)
ēō, īre, ī, ītum, to go (ambition, circuit, concomitant, exit, initial, initiate, initiative, obituary, perish, preterit, sedition, transient, transit,
transition, transitive, transitory: many of these derive from the several compounds of ēō, including the seven listed below)

ābeō, -āre, -āi, -ātum, to go away, depart, leave
ādeō, -āre, -āi, -ātum, to go to, approach
ēxeō, -ēre, -ēi, -ētum, to go out, exit
īneō, -īre, -īi, -ītum, to go in, enter
ōbeō, -ōre, -ōi, -ōtum, to go up against, die
pereō, -pereō, -pēri, -pētum, to pass away, be destroyed, perish
rēdeō, -rēre, -rēi, -rētum, to go back, return
interficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, to kill, murder
licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal,1 it is permitted, one may; commonly with an infinitive as subject and a dative for the person permitted to act, e.g., licet tibi abire, you may leave, lit. it is permitted for you to leave (license, licentious, illicit, leisure, viz. = vidēlicet, sc. = scilicet)
peregrinōr, peregrināri, peregrinātus sum, to travel abroad, wander (peregrine, peregrinate, pilgrim, pilgrimage; from per + ager)
requiescō, -quiescere, -quievi, -quiefum, to rest (requiescat, requiem)
sōleō, sōlēre, sōlitus sum, to be accustomed (insolent, obsolete)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Dehinc petet ā frātre meō et sorōre ut occāsionem carpant et in urbem quam celerrīme ineant.
3. Nē levēs quidem timōres ferre poterātis; rūri, igitur, nōn in urbe semper vivēbātis.
4. Haec locūtī, lēctōribus et lēctrisibus persuādēbunt nē opēs cupīdinēsque praeūmis bona vītae antepōnant.
5. Multōs annōs eōs cīvitātī servīre coēgit, sed animōs numquam contudit.
6. At nōs, ipsis multa mala passī, cōnātī sumus eōs īrātīs persuādēre ut servōs vinculis liberārent et nē cui nocērent.
7. Si quis vult aliōs iuvāre, cūret ut ad eōs adeat plēnus sapientiae.
8. Philosophī cōtidiē requirēbant utrum illī discipuli nātūrae pārērent.
10. Omnēs solent mūrāri ea pulcherrima quae Athēnās vident.

1 Impersonal verbs have only third person (and infinitive) forms because they have as their subject, not a person, but an infinitive phrase or a clause or an indefinite "it" or "one"; e.g., licet abire lit. means to leave is permitted, though the idiomatic translation is it is permissible to leave or one may leave.
12. Fēmina candida ante speculum immōta stetit, sed sē spectāre recū-sāvit et animōs recreāre nōn potuit.
13. Paucās hōras duodecim pueri puellaeque humī sedēbant, ut magiistra, subrīdēns et eōs serēnāns, plūrimās fābulās nārrābat.
14. Si sapiēs et tibi imperāre poteris, fīēs grātior iūstiorque, parcēs miserīs ac amīcōs fovēbis.
15. They commanded that this be done in Rome for three days.
16. Unless he goes to Syracuse within five days, his father’s fear will become greater.
17. He thought that his brother would perhaps not go away from home that summer.
18. Nobody may speak freely in that country, as we all know.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Mortālia facta perībunt. (*Horace.)
2. Noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis. (*Virgil.—āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy.—Dīs, Dītis, Dīs, another name for Pluto, god of the dead.)
3. Annī eunt mōre modōque fluentis aquae. Numquam hōra quae prae-teriit potest redīre; ētāmur aetiīte. (Ovid.—praeterīre, to go by, pass.)
4. Heu, obī! Quid ego ēgī! Fīlius nōn rediit ā cēnā hāc nocte. (Terence.)
5. Frāter meus ōrat nē abēas domō. (Terence.)
6. Dīcit patrem ab urbe abīsse sed frātrem esse domī. (Terence.)
7. Tertiā hōrā foris ībam Sacrā Viā, ut meus mōs est. (Horace.—Sacrā Viā, abl. of means or way by which; the Sacred Way was the main street through the Roman Forum.)

The Roman Forum with remains of the temple of Castor and Pollux in the foreground and beyond it the Sacra Via

Rome, Italy
8. Denique Damocles, cum sīc beātus esse nōn posset, ὁρῶνt Dionysium tyrannum ut abīre ā cēnā licēret. (Cicero.)
9. Eō tempore, Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus multa Rōmam mīsit; Syrācūsīs autem multa atque pulcherriīre reliquit. (Cicero.)
10. Diēs multōs in eā nāve fuī; ita adversā tempestātē āūī sumus. (Terence.)
11. Īram populi ferre nōn poterō, sī in exsilium ierīs. (Cicero.)
12. Caesare interfectō, Brūtus Rōmā Athetaēs fūgit. (Cicero.)
13. Ipse Rōmam redīrem, sī satis cōnsilī dē hāc rē habērem. (Cicero.)
14. Nēmō est tam senex ut nōn putet sē ūnum annum posse vivere. (Cicero.)
15. Dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre; nox tibi longa venit, nec redivīra diēs. (*Propertiū.-sinō, -ere, to allow.-redītūra, sc. est, fut. act. periphrastic for redĭbit; diēs is sometimes fem.)

THANKS . . . BUT NO THANKS!
Candidius nihil est tē, Caeciliāne. Notāvī:
sī quandō ex nostrīs distīcha pauca legō,
prōtīmus aut Mārsī recitās aut scripta Catullī.
Hoc mihi dās, tamquam détēriōra legās,
ut collāta magis placeant mea? Crēdimus īstūd:
mālo tamen recitēs, Caeciliāne, tua!

(*Martial 2.71; meter: elegiac couplet.—notāre, to note, notice.—with nostrīs, sc. libellīs.—distīcha (a Gk. acc. ending), couplets, verses.—Domitius Marsus, like Catullus, was a popular Latin poet.—scriptum, -ī, writing, written works.—boc . . . dās, i.e., as a favor.—tamquam here introduces an imagined comparison, something like a condition, hence the verb is subj.—dētēriōra, sc. scripta, worse poetry.—collāta, with mea, compared, in comparison.—mālo [ut] recitēs; the conj. is often omitted in a jussive noun clause.)

TRIMALCHIO'S EPITAPH


(*Petronius, Satyricon 71–72; the boorish, nouveau-riche host Trimalchio asks his dinner-guests their opinion of his proposed epitaph.—inscripīō, -ōnis; the more usual order would be quoque vidē dīligenter sī haec inscripīō . . . —C. = Gaius.—Maecēnātiānus: Trimalchio, an ex-slave, takes this name to associate
himself with the famous Maecenas, a powerful and wealthy associate of Augustus.——Huic . . . absentī, i.e., in absentia from Rome.——sēvirātus, -īs, the post of sēvir Augustālis, a member of the six-man commission that supervised the cult of the emperor.——decūria, -ae, club; these were groups of ten men organized for both business and social purposes.——pius, -a, -um, devoted, dedicated.——ex parvō, i.e., from humble beginnings.—sestertium . . . trecentiēs, 30 million sesterces, a VERY hefty sum!——nec . . . audīvit, i.e., he "never even went to college!"——Et tū, sc. valē; epitaphs typically represented such "conversations": the deceased wishes the passerby "Farewell," and the passerby, reading the inscription, replies, "And you (likewise farewell)."——Haec ut = Ut haec.——flēre, to weep.——überrim, adv., profusely.——et = etiam.——Fortunata ("Lucky") and Habinnas were Trimalchio’s wife and a guest.——fūnus, -nerīs, n., funeral.——lamentātiō, -onis.—triclinium, -ī, dining room.——impleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, to fill.)

MĀRĆUS QUINTŌ FRĀTRĪ S.


(Cicero, Epistulæ ad Quintum Frātem 1.2.14; Marcus Cicero wrote this letter to his brother Quintus, who was at the time governor of Asia.—S. = salūtem dicit, says greetings.—Licinius, -i.—Aesōpus, -i, the leading tragic actor of Rome.—Patrō, -trōnis.—prō, as a.—Plato, an Epicurean from Sardis.—mul­tum, adv.—Ephesus, -ī, a city in Asia Minor.—re-dūco.—trāscor, trāscī, trātus sum, to be angry; cp. īra and īrātus.—recuperātiō, -onis, recovery.—fugitūvī, -ī.)

ETYMOLOGY

Videlicet, namely, derives from vidēre licet, lit., it is permitted to see, i.e., it is plain to see. In medieval manuscripts this long word was often con­tracted to vi-ēt, and one abbreviation for et resembled a z; hence the abbrevi­ation viz. From another compound of licet is the much more common abbre­viation sc. for scīlicet, namely, clearly (from scīre licet, you may understand), which we use as an instruction to supply some word or idea that has been omitted from a text but is readily understood (see the example above in the notes on "Trimalchio").
In the readings

7. Another famous street in Rome was Via Lāta. On the analogy of Sacra Via how is Via Lāta (lātus, -a, -um, broad) to be translated? “Thanks”: note, notation, notary.—script; from the fourth principal part of scribō.—deteriorate, deterioration.—collate, collation. “Trimalchio”: funereal.—lament, lamentable. “Mārcus”: irascible.—“Recover” and “recuperate” are cognates, both derived from recuperāre, to regain.)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvēte! These familiar words and phrases from eō are certainly going to interest you (notice how colloquial Eng. employs “go” as an auxiliary verb to indicate futurity, and cp. Latin’s use of īrī in those rare future passive infinitive forms): exit and exeunt omnēs are stage directions; to “perish” is to be “thoroughly gone” (from per + eō), i.e., to make one’s final “exit” from life’s stage, an exodus often marked by obiit on old tombstones or by the abbreviation O.S.P. for obiit sine prōle (he/she died without offspring, from prōlēs, prōlis, f., the source of “proletariate”); pereant qui ante nōs nostra dixerunt is a proverbial curse on folks who had all our best ideas before we had them ourselves (!); iter (lit. a going) is related to eō and also to the adv. obiter, which gives us obiter dicitum, something said along the way (or “in passing”), and likewise obiter scriptum; Monty Python fans will recall the Rōmānī, ite domum routine from the “Life of Brian”; and finally aut bibat aut abeat, let him either drink or go away, is an old Roman toast and the motto of our local tavern!

Et cētera: grātus is related to grātia, favor; kindness, gratitude, thanks, as in grātiās agere, to give thanks. Dei grātiā, by the grace of God, and also Eng. “gratis,” something done “for thanks” (grātis), i.e., without a fee. R.I.P., also found on tombstones (though not Trimalchio’s!), stands for requiēscat in pāce (remember the jussive subj. ?); rūs in urbe, a phrase from Martial, refers to a city park or garden or some other rustic setting or view that reminds one of the countryside. Well, enough for today: nunc domum eāmus!
Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

The type of relative clause you have encountered thus far provides some factual description of its antecedent, an actual person or thing, and thus has an indicative verb (Ch. 17); e.g., hic est discipulus qui Latinam amat, this is the student who loves Latin. The “relative clause of characteristic,” by contrast, describes some general quality of an antecedent that is itself either general, indefinite, interrogative, or negative, and accordingly has its verb in the subjunctive; e.g., hic est discipulus qui Latinam amat, this is a student (or the sort of student) who would love Latin.

The relative clause of characteristic is easily recognized, since its verb is subjunctive and its antecedent is often obviously general, negative, etc. (typical examples are sunt qui, there are people who; quis est qui, who is there who; nemo est qui, there is no one who); the auxiliary would is sometimes used in translating the subjunctive verb, and sometimes a phrase like the sort of or the kind of is employed in the main clause to make it clear that the antecedent is indefinite:

Quis est qui huic credat, who is there who trusts this man (of such a sort that he would trust this man)?
Nemo erat qui hoc sciret, there was no one who knew this.
Sunt qui hoc faciant, there are some who do this (of such a sort as to do this).
Is nōn est qui hoc faciat, he is not a person who does (would do) this.

Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt, this is the kind of book which all read (a book which all would read).

Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt, this is the book which all are reading (= a fact, hence the indicative).

Some relative clauses have the force of result (e.g., S.A. 4 below), purpose (see “Give Me a Figgy Sprig!” below), causal, or adversative clauses (i.e., clauses otherwise generally introduced by ut, cum, etc.) and so also have their verbs in the subjunctive.

**DATIVE OF REFERENCE OR INTEREST**

The dative case is often used to indicate a person (or a thing) to whom some statement refers, or from whose perspective it is true, or to whom it is of special interest. This “dative of reference or interest” (which should be compared to the dative uses discussed in Ch. 35) can sometimes be translated with “to” or “for,” but often some more elaborate phrase is required, depending upon the context, as you will see from the following examples; occasionally the function seems to be simply possessive (as in the second example below), but the intended force is generally more emotional.

Si quis metuēns vīvet, liber mihi nōn crit umquam.

*If anyone lives in fear; he will not ever be free—as I see it (mihi) or to my way of thinking.*

Caret tibi pectus inānī ambitiōne?

*Is your breast free from vain ambition—are you sure (tibi)?*

Nullīus culpae mihi cōncius sum.

*In my own heart (mihi), I am conscious of no fault.*

Claudia est sapiēns multīs, to many people Claudia is wise.

Remember to add the dative of reference or interest to your list of other dative case constructions (indirect object, dative of agent, dative with adjectives, dative with special verbs and compounds).

**SUPINES**

The “supine” is a defective fourth declension verbal noun, formed on the same stem as the perfect passive participle; only two forms were in common use, the accusative and ablative singular. The supines for our model
verbs are: acc. laudátum, abl. laudātū; mónitum, mónitū; áctum, áctū; audítum, auditū; cáptum, cáptū.

The ablative is used with the neuter of certain adjectives to indicate in what respect a particular quality is applicable: e.g., mūrābile dīctū, amazing to say (lit., amazing in respect to saying); facile factū, easy to do. The accusative (which must be carefully distinguished from the perfect passive participle) is used with verbs of motion to indicate purpose: e.g., ibant Rōmam rogātum pecūniām, they were going to Rome to ask for money; persuāsum amīcīs vēnērunt, they came to persuade their friends (note that the supine can take a direct object, a dative, or any other construction the basic verb can govern).

VOCABULARY

árbor, áboris, f., tree (arbor; Arbor Day, arboraceous, arboreal, arboriculture)
dignitās, dignitātīs, f., merit, prestige, dignity (indignity; cp. dignus, deign, dignify, ignominious, indignation)
dólor, dolóris, m., pain, grief (doleful, dolorous, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. dolo)
ódium, -ii, n., hatred (odium, odious, annoy, ennui, noisome; cp. ōdī)
ópus, óperis, n., a work, task; deed, accomplishment (opus, opera, operate, operative, inoperative, operand, operose, co-operate, uncooperative, inure, hors d'oeuvre, maneuver, manure)
órátiō, orationis, f., speech (oration; cp. ōrō, ōrātor)
pēs, pēdis, m., lower leg, foot (pedal, pedate, pedestal, pedestrian, pedigree, piedmont, pawn, peon, pioneer, biped, quadruped, impede, impediment, expedite, expedition, expeditious; cp. impediō below)
sātor, sātoris, m., sower, planter; begetter, farmer; founder (cp. serō, to plant, sow; serial, series, assert, desert, exert, insert)
firmus, -a, -um, firm, strong; reliable (firmament, affirm, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, farm, farmer)
infirmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble (infirm, infirmary, infirmity)
mūrābils, mūrāble, amazing, wondrous, remarkable (mirabilia, admirable, marvel; cp. mīrōr, miracle, mirador, mirage, mirror)
prīstinus, -a, -um, ancient; former, previous (pristine)
sublīmis, sublīme, elevated, lofty; heroic; noble (sublimate, sublime, sublimity; not subliminal)
ētsī, conj. with ind. or subj. according to rules for sī, even if (et -sī), although
ērgā, prep. + acc., toward
libēnter, adv., with pleasure, gladly (cp. the impersonal verb libet, it pleases, is pleasing; cognate with love)
impedīō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītum, to impede, hinder, prevent (impediment, impedimenta, impedance, impeach; see Lātīna Est Gaudium)
mētuō, metuere, mētuī, to fear, dread; be afraid for + dat. (cp. metu, meticulous)
quéror, quērī, quēstus sum, to complain, lament (querulous; cp. quarrel, from querēla, -ae, complaint)
recognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nĭtum, to recognize, recollect (recognition, recognitione, reconnoitring; cp. nōscō, cognōscō)
suspēndō, -pēndere, -pēnī, -pēnsum, to hang up, suspend; interrupt (suspense, suspension; cp. pendere, to hang, pendant, pendulum, expend)
vendō, vendere, vēndīdī, vēnditum, to sell (vend, vendor)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW
1. Regī persuasi ut sorōri frātrīque tuō grātiōra praemia libenter daret.
2. Deinde, ab ea insula nave profecta, visum amīcos Athenas iniit.
3. Eum hortāti sumus ut ad Caesarem sine timōre accēdere cōnāretur.
4. Solītī sunt eī crēdere quī philosophiae serviret, virtūtem sequērētur, et cupidīnēs superāret.
5. Sapiēns nōs ērat nē virīs sententiārum adversārum noceāmus.
6. In illīs terrīs nōn licet litterīs bonīs vērīisque studēre, ut sub tyrannō saepe fit; dēbēs, igitur, exīre et peregrināri.
7. Cūrēmus nē cīvitātem eīs trādāmus quī sē patriae antepōnant.
8. Sunt infirmī quī levia opera mūrentur et semper sibi ignōscant.
9. Iste dux, diū absēns, tam stultīs cōnsiliīs cīvitātī ütēbātur ut mīlia cūvim adversa patī cōgerentur atque multī bonī perīrent.
10. Haec locūtus, fassus est illos, quī odium immōtum ergā cīvitātem multōs annōs habēbant, Rōmae interfēctōs esse.
11. Initium operīs nōs saepe impedit.
12. Sator sublīmis hominum atque animāliōm omnibus nōbis animās dēdī; cum corpora obeant, animae numquam moriēntur.
13. Cum rūs redīimus, tum domī invenīmus—mīrābile visū!—plūrimōs amīcōs.
14. Cicero, who was the greatest Roman orator, was a consul who would obey the senate.
15. I shall persuade him to become better and to return to Rome, I assure you.
16. We begged them not to trust a man whom a tyrant pleased.
17. Wherefore, let that man who hesitates to defend our country depart to another land.

SENTENTIÆ ANTIQUÆ
1. Sē omnēs Caesāri ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. (Caesar.—prō-iaciō.)
2. Hīc in nostrō numerō sunt quī lēgēs contemnānt ac dē exitō hūius urbīs cōtīdiē cōgītent. (Cicero.)
3. Quis est cui haec rēs pūblica atque possessiō libertātīs nōn sint cārae et dulcēs? (Id.—possessiō, -ōnis.)

4. Quae domus tam stabilis est, quae cīvītās tam fīrma est quae nōn odioš, invidiā, atque insidiās possit contundī? (Id.—stabilis, -e.—quae . . . contundī; here the characteristic clause has the force of result.)

5. Quārē, quid est quod tībi iām in hāc urbe placēre possit, in quā nēmō est quē tē nōn metuat? (Id.)

6. Quis enim aut eum diligere potest quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? (Id.)

7. Tībi sōlī necēs multōrum cīvium impūnītāe ac līberae fuērunt. (Id.—nex, necis, f., murder.—impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished.)

8. Habētis autem eum cōnsulem quī exigere officium et pārēre vestris décrētûs nōn dubitēt atque vōs défendēre possit. (Id.—dēcrētum, -ī, decree.)

9. Ille mihi semper deus eri!. (Virgil.)

10. Nūllus dolor est quem nōn longinquītās temporis mimat ac molliat. (*Cicero.—longinquītās, -ōs, length.)

11. Parāvisse divītīs fuit multīs hominibus nōn fīnis sed mūtātiō ma-lōrum. (Epicurus quoted by Seneca.—mūtātiō, -ōnis, change.)

12. Nīhil est opere et mantī factum quod tempus nōn cōnsūmat. (Cicero.)

13. Vīribus corporis dēficientibus, vigor tamen animā dūrāvit illī ad vītæ finem. (Pliny.—dēficīō, -ere, to fail.—vīgor, -gōris.—dūrāre, to last.)

14. Nunc est bibendum; nunc pede līberō pulsanda tellus. (*Horace; from his ode celebrating the death of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.—sc. nōbīs as dat. of agent with both pass. periphrastics.—pulsāre, to strike, beat; with pulsanda, sc. est, should be struck, i.e., danced upon.—tellūs, -lūris, f., = terra.)

NOTE ON A BOOK BY LUCAN

Sunt quīdam quī mē dīcant nōn esse poētan; sed quī mē vēndīt bibliopōla putat.

(*Martial 14.194; meter: elegiac couplet. In this note from a gift copy of Lucan’s poetry, the author is himself imagined as speaking.—bibliopōla, -ae, m., book-dealer, antecedent of qui.)

TWO EXAMPLES OF ROMAN WIT

Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig!

Cum quīdam, querēns, dīxisset uxōrem suam dē fīctū suspendisse sē, amīcus illūs “Amābō tē,” inquit, “dā mihi ex istā arbore surculūs quōs seram!”

(Cicero, Dē Ĭrātōre 2.278.—ficus, -ūs, f., fig tree; nouns for trees are usually feminine.—surculus, -ī, shoot, sprig.—quōs = ut eōs, rel. clause of purpose.—serō, -ere, to plant, sow.)
The Most Pitiful Speech I’ve Ever Heard!

Cun quidam órator sè misericordiam óratiōne fortasse móvisse putāret, rogāvit Catulum vidērētur/n misericordiam móvisse. “Ac magnam quidem, mihi,” inquit, “putō enim nēminem esse tam dúrum cui óratiō tua nōn vísa sit digna misericordiā!”

(Cicero, Dē Órātōre 2.278.—misericordia, -ae, pity: an important objective for the ancient orator, and one for which he was trained, was to arouse the audience’s emotions.—Catulus, -ī.—vidērētur/e: the -ne, whether, signals an ind. quest.—magnam, sc. misericordiam móvisstī!—cui = ut eī, rel. clause of result.)

TWO LETTERS TO CICERO

Gn. Magnus Prōcōnsul Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātorī


Caesar Imperātor Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātorī

Cum Brundīsium celerius adeam atque sim in itinere, exercitū iam prae­missō, dēbeō tamen ad tē scribere et grātīās idōneās tibi agere, etsī hoc fēcī saepe et saepius factūrus vīdeor; ita dignus es. Imprīmēs, quoniam crēdō mē celerīter ad urbēm ventūrum esse, ā tē petō ut tē ibi videam ut tuō cōnsiliō, dignītāte, ope ūtū possim. Festīnātiōnī meae brevitātīque litterārum ignōscēs; cētera ex Furniō cognōscēs.

(Cicero, Epistulae ad Atticum 8.11 and 9.6; in these letters, two of hundreds that survive from Cicero’s correspondence, both Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, “Pompey the Great,” and Julius Caesar bid for the statesman’s support in the civil war that followed Caesar’s crossing of the Rubicon in 49 B.C.—prōcōnsul, -sulis, proconsul, governor (of a province).—salūte commūnī, here the public welfare.—Apulia was a district in south Italy.—viā Appiā, abl. of route, a common construction; the Via Appia, built in the 4th century B.C., was the highway leading south from Rome and, ultimately, to Brundisium, the port of departure for Greece.—praē-mittō, -ere.—imprīmēs, adv., especially.—festīnātiō, -ōnis, haste, rush.—brevitās, -tātis.—Furnius, the name of an associate.)

ASK ME IF I CARE

Nīl nimium studeō, Caesar, tibi velle placēre, nec scīre utrum sīs albus an āter homō!

(*Catullus 93; meter: elegiac couplet.—nīl = nōn.—albus, -a, -um, white.—āter, ātra, ātrum, black.)
ETYMOLOGY

The use of *opus* in the titles of musical works is well known; e.g., Beethoven’s “Symphony No. 5 in C Minor, Opus 67.” “Opera,” on the other hand, comes to us through Italian from *opera, -ae, effort, pains, work*, which clearly has the same root as *opus*. Finally, we have the term *magnum opus*, which is most commonly used in the literary field.

A few Romance derivatives follow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dolor</td>
<td>dolore</td>
<td>dolor</td>
<td>douleur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odium</td>
<td>odio</td>
<td>odio</td>
<td>odieux (odiōsus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pēs, pedis</td>
<td>piede</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td>pied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the readings


LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

*Salvete*! Have you noticed that we like to *ad lib.* in this section of each chapter? *Ad libitum, at one’s pleasure, is connected with libenter, which is how Latin should be both taught and learned: gladly!* So, *libenter carpite diem et hās rēs novās*: first, note that *impedīō* is from *in + pēs*; when you’re “impeded,” you’ve got something *on your feet* (like “fetters,” from the same base as “foot”), so perhaps you should consult a podiatrist (*pod-* is the Gk. cognate of Lat. *ped-*) and ask him to “expedite” your treatment (*expedīre* is essentially “to de-fetter,” the opposite of *impedīre*; cp. “implicate” and “explicate” from *implicāre/explicāre*); otherwise, just give up your pedestrian ways and start pedaling. *Odium* means *rivalry* as well as *hatred*; guess who the rivals are in *odium medicum, odium scholasticum, and odium theologicum*? And speaking of odious types, the emperor Tiberius (A.D. 14–37) is said to have remarked of his subjects, *oderint dum metuant, let them hate (me), so long as they fear me!* The abbreviation *op. cit.* is from *opere citātō, in the work cited,* and *opera omnia* are an author’s complete works. An old legal prescript provides that *vendēns eandem rem duōbus est falsārius* (*fraudulent*); such a swindle would be *infra dignitātem, beneath one’s dignity,* so remember the familiar admonition *caveat emptor, let the buyer beware!* *Iterum tempus fūgit: valeātis, amīcī et amīcae!*
Gerund and Gerundive

THE GERUNDIVE

You are already familiar with the gerundive, or future passive participle, a verbal adjective formed with the endings -ndus, -nda, -ndum (Ch. 23). Besides functioning occasionally as a simple adjective (liber legendus, a book to be read), the gerundive is commonly employed in the passive periphrastic conjugation (Ch. 24: hic liber legendus est, this book should be read); some further uses are examined in this chapter.

THE GERUND

The “gerund” is a verbal noun formed like the gerundive, except that it has only four forms, the neuter singular of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. These forms are identical to the corresponding cases of the gerundive, but are active in meaning and correspond to the English gerund in “-ing” (legendī, of reading, as in magnum amōrem legendī habet, he has a great love of reading).

DECLENSION OF THE GERUND

Following are the complete gerund declensions for some representative Latin verbs:

Gen. laudāndī dūcēndī sequēndī audiēndī
(of praising, leading, following, hearing)
Since the gerund is a verbal noun, it can be modified as a verb and used as a noun in the various cases. Having no nominative case, however, the gerund was not used as a subject, a function performed instead by the infinitive, another of Latin's verbal nouns (i.e., Latin could say errare est humanum, to err is human, but not erring is human); likewise the accusative was ordinarily employed as an object of ad and certain other prepositions, not as a direct object (a function again performed by the infinitive, e.g., iussit eos venire, he ordered them to come: see Appendix, p. 445). The following sentences illustrate typical uses of the gerund in its four cases:

studium vivendi cum amicis, fondness of (for) living with friends.
Operam dat vivendō bene, he gives attention to living well.
Athenās it ad vivendum bene, he went to Athens to live well.
Fēliciōrēs fīmus vivendō bene, we become happier by living well.

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Remember these distinctions between gerund and gerundive: 1) the gerundive is a verbal adjective (liber legendus, a book to be read), the gerund a verbal noun (amor legendi, love of reading); 2) as an adjective, the gerundive has a full set of masculine, feminine, and neuter endings, both singular and plural, for all cases, whereas the gerund has only neuter singular forms and only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, i.e., a total of only four forms altogether; 3) the gerundive is passive in meaning, the gerund active.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PHRASES

As a verbal noun, the gerund may take the case construction required by its verb:

studium legendi libris, fondness of reading books.
Discimus legendō libris, we learn by reading books.

In actual practice, however, when the gerund would be followed by a noun in the accusative as a direct object, the Romans preferred to put this noun in the case in which the gerund would otherwise appear and to use the gerundive in agreement with the noun. The translation is the same no matter which construction is used, since English idiom requires the gerund construction rather than the unidiomatic gerundive. In the examples which fol-
low, those marked A are what we should expect on the basis of English idiom; those marked B are the regular gerundive phrases which the Romans actually preferred:

A. studium legendi librōs (acceptable)
B. studium librōrum legendōrum (preferred)
   *fondness of reading books (not fondness of books to be read, which is unidiomatic)*

A. Operam dat legendō librōs.
B. Operam dat librōs legendīs.
   *He gives attention to reading books.*

A. Discimus legendō librōs.
B. Discimus librōs legendīs.
   *We learn by reading books.*

A. Hoc locūtus est dē legendō librōs.
B. Hoc locūtus est dē librōs legendīs.
   *He said this about reading books.*

Quite common was the use of *ad* + an accusative gerundive (or gerund) phrase and postpositive *causā* + a genitive phrase to indicate *purpose*:

A. Vēnit ad legendum librōs.
B. Vēnit ad librōs legendōs.
   *He came to read books.*

A. Otium petit legendī librōs causā.
B. Otium petit librōrum legendōrum causā.
   *He seeks leisure for the sake of reading books.*

Remember that purpose can be expressed in Latin, not only with gerundive/gerund phrases, but also with *ut/nē* + the subjunctive and, after a main verb of motion, the accusative supine: *venit ut hōs librōs legat* and *venit hōs librōs lectum* both mean *he is coming to read these books.*

**VOCABULARY**

- *aedificium*, -ī, n., *building, structure* (edification, edifice, edify, aedile)
- *iniūria*, -ae, f., *injustice, injury, wrong* (injurious; cp. *iūdex, iūdicium, lūs, iūstus*, Ch. 40)
- *mulier*, *mulieris*, f., *woman* (muliebrity)
- *transītus*, -ūs, m., *passing over; transit; transition* (cp. *frānseō* below)
- *vēntus*, -ī, m., *wind* (vent, ventilate, ventilation, ventilator)
- *cupidus*, -a, -um, *desirous, eager, fond*; + gen., *desirous of, eager for* (cp. *cupiō, cupiditās, cupīdō*)
Gerund and Gerundive 279

liberaldís; liberaldís, of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal; generous (liberal arts, liberality; cp. liber, liberó)

nécésse, indecl. adj. used as nom. or acc., necessary, inevitable (necessitate, necessitous, unnecessary; cp. cédó)

vétus, gen. vétéris, old (veteran, inveterate, veterinary, veterinarian)

quási, adv. or conj., as if, as it were (quasi; = quam + sī)

ámbuló (1), to walk (amble, ambulance, ambulate, ambulatory, perambulate, preamble, somnambulist)

expércior, -períri, -pértus sum, to try, test; experience (experiment, expert, inexpert, inexperience; cp. perículum)

libó (1), to pour a libation of; on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently (libation)

opértet, oportère, opórtuit, impel's"), it is proper, right, necessary

oppúgnó (1), to fight against, attack, assault, assail (oppugn; cp. pugnó)

órnó (1), to equip, furnish, adorn (adornment, ornate, ornament, ornamental, ornamentation, suborn, subornation)

perñctó (1), to spend or occupy the night (nocturnal, nocturne; cp. nox)

tránseó, -íre, -íi, -ítum, to go across, cross; pass over; ignore (transit, transitive, intransitive, transitory, trance)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Caesar eós cótidiē órābat nē fāta adversa metuerent.
2. Et sī hoc fiat, illī militēs urbem oppugnātum fortasse accēdant et multī cīvēs obeant.
3. Sī licēbit, septem diēbus domum íbimus ad nostrōs amīcōs videndōs.
4. Amīcus liberaldissimus noster, quōcum pernoctābāmus, dīs vīnum ante cēnam libāvit, et deinde mēnsam ōrnāvit.
5. Cōnsul, vir maximae dignitātis, ōtium cōnsūmpsit in operibus sublimibus scribendīs.
7. In rē pūblīca gerendā ɪstī nōn dubitant praemia grāta sibi requīrēre, officia suspendere, atque honōrem suum vēndere.
8. Lēctrīx docissima mox surget ad trīa carmina recitanda, quae omnēs audītorēs oblectābunt atque animōs serēnābunt.
10. Nīsi vincula patī ac sub pedibus tyrannōrum humī contundī volumus, libertātī semper studeāmus et eam numquam impediāmus.
11. Pauca opera mihi sedendō fiunt, multa agendō et experiendō.
12. Illa mulier mīrābilis frūctūs amōrīs libenter carpsit et virō grā-tissimō nūpsit.
13. They are going to Rome to talk about conquering the Greeks.
14. By remaining at Rome he persuaded them to become braver.
15. Who is there who has hope of doing great works without pain?
16. We urged the consul to serve the state and preserve our dignity by attacking these injustices.

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Coniuratiōnem nāscen tem nōn crēdendō corroborāvērunt. (*Cicero.—coniūratiō, -onis, conspiracy.—corrōborāre, to strengthen.)
2. Malī dēsīnant insidiās reī pūblīcāe cōnsulīque parāre et ignēs ad īnflammandam urbem. (Cicero.—dēsīnō, -ere, to cease.—īnflam-māre, to set on fire.)
3. Multī autem propter glōriāe cupiditātem sunt cupidī bellōrum gerendōrum. (Cicero.)
4. Veterem iniūriam ferendō īnvītāmus novam. (Publilius Syrus.)
5. Cūrēmus nē poena maiore sit quam culpa; prohibenda autem maximē est īra in pūniendō. (Cicero.—pūnīre, to punish.)
6. Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus aedificīs omnibus sīc pepercit—mīrā-bile dictū—quasi ad ea dēfendenda, nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. (Cicero.)
7. Rēgulus laudandus est in cōnservandō iūre iūrandō. (*Cicero.—Regulus, prisoner of the Carthaginians, swore to them that he would return to Carthage after a mission to Rome.—īūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath.)
8. In ērātiōne meā dīcam dē mōribus fīrmīs Sēstīi et dē studīō cōnservandā salūtīs commūnis. (Cicero.—Sēstius, -ii.)
9. Trānsitus ad senectūtem nōs ōvocat ā rēbus gerendīs et corpus facit īnfirmiōs. (Cicero.)
10. Cum recreandae vōcis īnfirmae causā necesse esset mīhi ambulāre, hās litterās dictāvi forīs ambulāns. (Cicero.—dictāre, to dictate.)
11. Semper metuendō sapiēns vītāt malum. (Publilius Syrus.)
12. Haec virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdentia. (Cicero.—prōvi-dēre.—prūdentia = prō-videntia.)
13. Fāma vīrēs acqūirit eundō. (Virgil.—acquirō, from ad-quae rō, to ac-quire.)
14. Haec vicissitūdinēs fortūnēs, etsī nōbīs iūcundae in experiēndō nōn fuērunt, in legendō tamen erunt iūcundae. Recordātiō enim pra-teritiī dolōris dēlectatiōnem nōbīs habet. (Cicero.—vicissitūdō, -dinis.—recordātiō, -onis, recollection.—praeteritus, -a, -um, past.)
PROMISES, PROMISES!

Nullī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle
quam mihi, nōn sē sē lūppiter ipse pētat.
Dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,
in ventō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā.

(*Catullus 70; meter: elegiac couplet.—Nullī and mihi are both dat. with nūbere,
and quam = magis quam; the prose order would be mulier mea dīcit sē nullī quam
mihi nūbere mālle.—amantī, lover.—Note the separation of adj. from noun in
cupidō . . . amantī and rapidā . . . aquā, a common feature of Latin verse used
here to emphasize the nouns that are delayed; the prose order: sed quod mulier
amantī cupidō dīcit.—rapidus, -a, -um.)

PAETE, NŌN DOLET

Casta suō gladium cum trāderet Arria Paetō,
quam de viscерibus strīnxerat ipsa suīs,
"Si qua fidēs, vulnus quod feci nōn dolet," inquit,
"sed quod tū faciēs, hoc mihi, Paete, dolet."

(*Martialis 1.13; meter: elegiac couplet.—Caecina Paetus was compelled to com-
mitt suicide in 42 A.D., because of the role he had played in a conspiracy against
the emperor Claudius; his courageous and devoted wife Arria, choosing to die
with him, stabbed herself before passing the sword to her husband and assuring
him that the pain of the wound itself would be slight. See below, L.I. 39.—
The prose order of the first verse would be: Cum Arria casta Paetō suō gladium
trāderet.—castus, -a, -um, loyal, chaste.—gladius, -i, sword.—viscera, -cerum, n.
pl., vital organs, abdomen.—stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, to draw tight, tie; pull,
draw out.—si qua [= quae, indef.] fidēs, i.e., if you have any faith in me, if you will
trust me.)

HANNIBAL AND THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, filius Hamilcaris, Carthaginē nātus est. In adulēscentiā prūstium
odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc firmē cōnservāvit ut numquam id dē-
pōneret. Cum patre exīt Carthaginē et in Hispāniam longō itinere prōfectus
est; et post multōs annōs, Hamilcar interfecit, exercitūs eī imperium trādi-
dit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Trī-
bus annōs nōn requīēvit, sed omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitū-
tūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ünum in Āfrikan mēsīt, alterum cum frātre in
Hispānīa rēliquīt, tertium in Itāliam sēcum dūxit.

Ad Alpēs adīt, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Populōs
cōnāntēs prohibēre eum trānsitū necāvīt; loca patefēcit; et cum multīs elephantīs
militibusque in Itāliam inītī. In hōc itinere tam gravi
morbō oculōrum adefactus est ut posteā numquam dextrō oculō bene ūtī
possē. Multōs ducēs, tamen, exercitūsque Rōmānōs vīcit, et propter illum imperātōrem mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum periērunt.

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, excerpts; see L.A. 8.—Hannibal, general who led the Carthaginians against the Romans in the Second Punic War, 218–02 B.C.—Hāmilcar, -carīs.—dē + pōnō.—Hispānia, -ae, Spain.—Āfrica, -ae.—Alpēs, Alpium, l. pl., the Alps.—adficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum, to affect, afflict, weaken.)

---

*The Oath of Hannibal, Johann Heinrich Schoenfeld, 17th century
Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, German*

**ETYMOLOGY**

The terms “gerund” and “gerundive” derive ultimately from the stem *gerund-* (= *gerend-*) of *gerō*. The gerund indicates “doing” (action); the gerundive indicates what is “to be done.”

In late Latin the ablative of the gerund was used with increasing frequency as the equivalent of a present participle. From this usage derive the Italian and the Spanish present participles, which end in -ndo and are invariable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Gerund</th>
<th>It. Participle</th>
<th>Sp. Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dandō</td>
<td>dando</td>
<td>dando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciēndō</td>
<td>facendo</td>
<td>haciendo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicēndō</td>
<td>dicoendo</td>
<td>diciendo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pōnēndō</td>
<td>ponendo</td>
<td>poniendo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribendō</td>
<td>scrivendo</td>
<td>escribiendo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. conjuration; cp. coniūrātī.—corroborate, corroborate; cp. rōbur, rōboris, n., hard wood, oak. 2. inflammation, inflammatory. 5. punitive, impunity; cp. poena. 10. dictator. 14. In re-cordātiō you see the stem of cor, cordis, heart. This shows that formerly the heart was regarded not only as the seat of the emotions but also as the mind and the seat of the memory, a belief reflected in our own phrase “learn by heart.” Cp. record, accord, concord, discord, cordial, cordate, courage. Eng. “heart” is cognate with Lat. cord-. “Promises”: rapid, rapidis, rapidity; cp. rapiō. “Paete”: chaste, chasten, chastity, chastise.—gladiator, gladiatorial, gladiola, gladiolus.—viscera, visceral, eviscerate.—stringency, stringendo, stringent, astringent, strict, constriction, restrict. “Hannibal”: deponent, depose, deposit, deposition.—affect, affection.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī, discipulaeque; haec sunt discenda: Cato’s definition of an orator, as quoted by the 1st cen. A.D. educator Quintilian (Institūtiōnēs Ōrātōriae 12.1.1), is quite well known, and you can easily translate it now that you’ve studied gerunds (and with the explanation that peritus, -a, -um + gen. = experienced in): ōrātor est vir bonus dicendi peritus. Here are some more familiar items with gerunds and gerundives: New Mexico’s state motto, crēscit eundō (review Ch. 37, if you have trouble with that one!); docendō discimus; spectēnur agendō, let us be judged by what we do (lit., by our doing); modus vivendi and modus operandi (“m.o.” to you detective show buffs!); onus probandī, the burden of proof (lit., of proving); then, of course, there are these many “things to be done”: agenda, addenda, corrigenda, referendum.

Et duo cētera ex vocabulāriō novō: iniūria nōn excūsat iniūriam, (one) injury does not excuse (another) injury, is an old legal tenet, and expertō crēdite is still good advice. Habēte fēlicem modum vivendi, studentēs, et valēte!
-Ne, Num, and Nōnne in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description

As we have already seen, a Roman could ask a direct question in a variety of ways, by beginning a sentence with an interrogative pronoun (quīs, quīd) or such other interrogatives as ubi or cūr, or by suffixing -ne to the first word of the sentence (often the verb, or some other word on which the question hinged). But “leading questions” can also be asked in Latin: if the speaker expected “yes” as an answer, the question was introduced with nōnne (a construction already encountered, though not formally discussed); if a negative reply was anticipated, num was the introductory word.

Quīs venit? *Who is coming?*
Cūr venit? *Why is he coming?*
Venitne? *Is he coming?*
Nōnne venit? *He is coming, isn’t he? or Isn’t he coming?*
Num venit? *He isn’t coming, is he?*
Scrīpsistīne illās litterās? *Did you write that letter?*
Nonne illās litterās scripsistī? You wrote that letter, didn’t you? or Didn’t you write that letter?
Num illās litterās scripsistī? You didn’t write that letter, did you?

FEAR CLAUSES

Verbs denoting fear or apprehension often take subjunctive noun clauses introduced by nē (that) or ut (that . . . not; occasionally nē nōn was employed instead of ut); the conjunctions are just the opposite of what might be expected, because in origin the clauses they introduced were essentially independent jussive clauses (i.e., timeō nē abēās, I fear that you may go away, = Timeō. Nē abēās! I’m afraid—Don’t go away!). Auxiliaries commonly employed in translating include will or may (in primary sequence) and would or might (in secondary sequence), as indicated in the following examples:

Timeō nē id crēdant, I fear that they will (may) believe this.
Vereor ut id crēdant, I am afraid that they will (may) not believe this.
Timuērunt nē amīcōs amitterent, they feared that they might (would) lose their friends.
Metuisī ut mulierēs ex casā exīssent, you were afraid that the women had not left the house.

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

A noun in either the ablative or genitive case plus a modifying adjective may be employed to modify another noun; both the ablative of description and the genitive of description (already encountered in the readings) might describe a noun by indicating its character, quality, or size, although the ablative usage was especially common in describing physical traits. Like adjectives, these descriptive phrases usually follow the nouns they modify.

fēmina magnae sapientiae, a woman of great intellect
pāx in hominibus bonae voluntātis, peace among men of good will
cōnsilium eius modi, a plan of this kind
Diligō hominem antiquā virtūte, I esteem a man of old-fashioned morality.
mīles firmā manū, the soldier with the strong hand
Es mōribus bonīs, you are a person of good character.
VOCABULARY

aes, aéris, n., bronze (era; cp. aerarium, -i, treasury; aereus, -a, -um, made of bronze)

dóminus, -i, m., master (of a household), lord, and dómina, -ae, f., mistress, lady (dominate, dominant, domineer, dominion, domain, dominino, domine, don, dungeon, belladonna, madonna, dame, damsel, danger; cp. domus)
lácrima, -ae, f., tear (lacrimon, lacrimation)
méta, -ae, f., turning point, goal; limit, boundary
monumnéntum, -i, n., monument (monumental, monumentalize; cp. monéō)
násus, -i, m., nose (nasal, nasalize, nasogastric; cp. nostril, nozzle)
sáxum, -i, n., rock, stone (saxatile, saxifrage, saxicolous; cp. secō, to cut, saw, saxon)
vítlus, -ús, m., countenance, face
iústus, -a, -um, just, right (justice, injustice, unjust, justify, justification, adjust, adjustment, readjust; cp. iús, iúdex, iúriā)
tot, indecl. adj., so many (cp. quot; totidem, indecl. adj., the same number; totiēns, adv., that number of times, so often)
praéter, prep. + acc., besides, except; beyond, past (preterit, preterition, pretermit, preternatural; cp. prae)
nónne, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer “yes.”
num, interrog. adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer “no”; (2) introduces indirect questions and means whether.
ominō, adv., wholly, entirely, altogether (cp. omnis)
postrémum, adv., after all, finally; for the last time (cp. post)
quīn, adv., indeed, in fact
explicō (1), unfold; explain; spread out, deploy (explicate, inexplicable; implicate, implication, from implicō, to enfold, interweave)
fatigō (1), to weary, tire out (fatigue, indefatigable)
for, fārī, fātus sum, to speak (prophetically), talk, foretell (affable, ineffable, infant, infantry, preface; cp. fābula, fāma, fātum)
opīnor, opīnāri, opīnātus sum, to suppose (opine, opinion)
repēriō, reperiēre, répperī, repértum, to find, discover, learn; get (repertoire, repertory; cp. parēns and parīō, to give birth to)
vécor, verēri, véritus sum, to show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear (revere, reverend, reverent, reverential, irreligious)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nónne Rómulus, sator huius urbis, fuit vir mìrábilis virtūtis et fideī pristinae?
2. At postremum vereor, heu, ut a viris parvae sapientiae hoc studium vetus intellegi possit.
3. Non oportet nos transire haec liberalia humanaque studia, nam praemia eorum certe sunt maxima.
4. Dignitas illius orationis dux omnino idonea occasiogn.
5. Equi eius, cum fatigati essent et ventus esset eis adversus, ad metam tamen quam celeberrim currebat.
6. Vir corpore infirmo id non facere poterat.
7. Etsi tres filii sunt cupidii magnorum operum faciendorum, eis non licet domo abire.
8. Domina firma acerbiter querebatur plurimos servosuisse absentibus —vaee illis miseris!
9. Mirabile rogue, num istam mulierem amas, mi amice?
10. Nonne timent ne el Romae et urbi magni tumultius sint?
11. Num opinariis tot hominibus iustos omnino errare?
12. Recognovistine, ut illa aedificia visum ambulabas, mulierem sub arbore humi requiescentem?
13. I am afraid, in my heart, that few things can be accomplished now even by trying.
14. You do not hesitate to say this, do you?
15. They supposed that, after all, he was a man of very little faith.
16. You do recognize how great the danger is, do you not?

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Quattuor causas reperio cur senectus misera videatur. Videamus quam iusta quaeque earum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Vereri videntur ut habeam satis praeidii. (*Cicero.—praesidium, -ii, guard*).
3. Necesse est enim sit alterum de duobus: aut mors sensus omnino auert aut animus in alium locum morte abit. Si mors somno similis est sensusque exstinguuntur, dhi boni, quid luceri est mori! (Cicero.—necesse est may be followed by the subjunctive.—auert = ab-fert.—exstinguo, -ere.—lucrum, -i, gain, profit.)
4. Aetatis semper transitum et aliquid novi auert. (Terence.)
5. Nonne unum exemplum luxuriae aut cupiditatis multum malii facit? (Seneca.—luxuria, -ae.)
6. Miror tot milia virorum tam pueriliter identidem cupere currentes equos videre. (Pliny.—pueriliter, adv., based on puer, childishly.—identidem, adv., again and again.—currentes, i.e., in the races.)
7. Nonne videss etiam guttis, in saxa cadendo, pertundere illa saxa? (Lucretius.—gutta, -ae, drop [of water].—pertundo, -ere, to bore a hole through, erode.)
8. Metuō nē id cōnsilī cēperimus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus. (*Cicero.—cōnsilī, gen. of the whole with id.)
9. Antōnius, ūinus ex inimiōcis et vir minimae clementiae, iussit Cicerō-nem interficēt et caput eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrōs pōnī. (Livy. —inimiōcus, -ī, from in + amīcus, personal enemy.—Rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, the speaker’s stand in the Roman Forum.)
10. Omnēs quī habent aliquid nōn sōlum sapientiae sed etiam sānītātis volūnt hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse. (*Cicero.—sānītās, -tātis.)
11. Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō nec bellō pede nec nigrīs ocellīs nec longīs digitīs nec ĵre siccō! (*Catullus.—niger, nigra, nigrum, black, dark.—occulus, diminutive of oculus. —siccus, -a, -1m, dry.)
12. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī aliēnum ā me puto. (Terence.—aliēnus, -a, -um + ab = foreign to.)
13. Amīcus animum amīcī ita cum suō miscet quasi facit ūnum ex duō-bus. (Cicero.)
14. Sex diēbus fēcit Dominus caelum et terram et mare et omnia quae in eōs sunt, et requievit diē septimō. (Exodus.)
15. Misit legātum Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem. (Caesar.—legātus, -ī, ambassador.—Valerius Procillum.—hūmānitās, -tātis.)
16. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam, sī negās; videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam quā tecum ūnā fūrunt. Õ di immortālēs! (*Cicero.—quid, here = why?—con + vincō, to prove wrong, convict; sc. tē.—ūnā, adv., together, in concert.)
17. Nunc timeō nē nihil tibi praeter lacrimās queam reddere. (*Cicero—queam = possīm.—reddō, -dere, to give back, return.)

**JUPITER PROPHESIES TO VENUS THE FUTURE GLORY OF ROME**

Olli subrīdēns hominum sator atque deörum
255 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēsque serēnāt,
oscula lībāvit nātae, dehinc tālia fātur:
“Parce metū, Cytherēa; manent immōta tuōrum
fāta tībī. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavēnī
moenia subūlīmenque fērēs ad sīdera caeli
magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertīt.

... Bellum ingēns geret Ítaliā populōsque fērōcēs
contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet.

... Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcit.
His ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:
imperium sine fine dēdī. Quīn aspera ĩūnō,
quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatīgat,
cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque favēbit
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātam.”

(*Virgil, Aeneid 1.254ff; meter: dactylic hexameter. — Ollī = illī, here Venus, who has come to her father Jupiter to ask whether his intentions have changed toward her son, the Trojan prince Aeneas, or if he is still destined to found a new Trojan nation in Italy.—vultū, abl. of means with subrēdens.—ōscula libāvit, i.e., he kissed her in ritual fashion.—nātae, ind. obj.—dēhinc, scanned here as a monosyllable.—metū, an alternate form of the dat. metūi.—Cytherēa, -ae, the Cytherean, i.e., Venus, so-called for the Aegean island of Cythera, which was sacred to her.—immōta, pred. adj., after manent.—tuōrum, i.e., Aeneas and his Trojan followers.—Lavinium, -īi, Lavinium, the town Aeneas was destined to found in Latium, near the future city of Rome.—subīmēn, in the predicate with Aenēan (a Gk. acc. form), you will carry Aeneas on high.—neque ... vertīt, i.e., I have not changed my mind; but what is the literal translation?—geret ... pōnet: Aeneas is subject of all three verbs.—Italiā, sc. in; prepositions usual in prose were commonly omitted in verse.—ferōcīs = ferōcēs, acc. pl.—Through a device known as zeugma, pōnet has different senses with its two objects, institute with mōrēs and build with moenia.—Māvortius, -a, -um, of Mars, so-called because of the legend that Mars was father of Romulus, Rome’s first king.—rērum, of their affairs, i.e., for their empire.—tempora, time limits.—cōnsilia ... referet, i.e., will change her attitude for the better; Juno had sided with the Greeks in the Trojan war and had continued to resist Aeneas’ mission.—tōgātus, -a, -um, togaed, toga-clad.)
THE VALUE OF LITERATURE

Si ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnīum neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscentiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlāciōm praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnāntur, rūstīcantur.

(*Cicero, Prō Archīā 7.16.—hanc, sc. esse.—iūdīcāre, to judge, consider.—cēterae, sc. remissiōnēs.—take omnīum with all three descriptive genitives, temporum, aetātum, and locōrum.)

A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius.

... Non omnis moriār, multaque pars mēī vītābit Libītīnam.

(*Horace, Odes 3.30.1, 6–7; meter: first Asclepiadean. See L.I. 28.—perennīs, -e, lasting [throughout the years].—multā, here = magna.—Libītīna, -ae, goddess of funerals; death.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. presidium, preside, president, presidency. 3. extinguish, extinct.—lucrē, lucrative. 6. puerīle, puerility. 7. “gtt.,” medical abbreviation for “drops.” 9. inimical, enemy. 11. denigrate, desiccate. 12. Aliēnus literally means belonging to another (alīus): alien, alienate, alienation, inalienable. 15. legate, legation, delegate.—humanity, humanities, humanitarian; cp. hūmānus, homō. 16. convince, convict, conviction. “Jupiter”: Connected with for, fārī, fātus sum is the noun fātum; what Jupiter has prophesied is one’s “fate.” “Value of Literature”: adjudicate. “A Monument”: “perennials” are outdoor plants that survive through the years, i.e., from one year to the next; and Latin, dear friends, is a perennial language!

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ĂUTILIS!

Salvēte postrēnum, discīpulī et discīpulae! Here are some rēs novae ex hoc capite ultimō: dominus illūminātiō mea, the Lord is my light, is the motto of Oxford University; lacrīna Christī is a well known Lat. phrase for the tear of Christ (and also the name of a sweet Italian wine). An oft quoted line from Virgil’s Aeneid comes as the hero Aeneas, shipwrecked in North Africa, gazes upon a Carthaginian mural that depicts the suffering of both his own people and the Greeks in the Trojan war: hīc etiam... sunt lacrīmae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt. The Latin works better than a literal En-
English translation (which you can now easily provide for yourself), but a free rendering would be: even here there are tears for the ways of the world, and man's mortality touches the heart.

Not to be so lacrimose (or “lachrymose,” an alternate spelling), let’s move to some more upbeat items: remember how to make masculine agent nouns from verbs?—e.g., from reperiō is repertor, discover. Well, the feminine agentive suffix is -trīx, -trīcis (cp. Eng. “aviator” and “aviatrix,” and lēctor/lēctrīx, which we’ve seen before), hence this proverb: paupertās omnium artium repertīx, something like our “necessity is the mother of invention” (but what is the literal meaning?). Vultus est index animī, the face is an indication of the soul, it has often been said. And speaking of faces, to “stick your nose up in the air” and to “look down your nose” on someone are not wholly modern idioms for viewing others critically or with disdain; the Neronian satirist Persius says of his predecessor Horace, in a brilliant and not wholly complimentary metaphor, that he hung the people from his well-blown nose (excussō populum suspendere nāsō). Nāsō, by the way, was the “nickname” or cognōmen of the Augustan poet Ovid: the Romans often gave their children names that focussed on physical or mental traits and they were frequently passed on from generation to generation (our friend Marcus Tullius, mīrāibile dictū, was stuck with the name Cicerō, garbanzo bean, because of a peculiar growth on an ancestor’s nose!).

May your love of Latin be aere perennius: ridēte, gaudēte, carpite omnēs diēs vestrōs, atque postrēnum, lēctōrēs et lēctrīcēs dulcēs, valēte!
Although these passages chosen from ancient authors have been adapted to meet the linguistic experience of first-year students, they have been edited as little as possible; the language and the thoughts are those of the ancient writers. In the case of poetry, one or more verses have been omitted from each excerpt but the verses actually presented here have not been altered. In the case of a prose passage, some words or sentences may have been omitted or the wording has been somewhat simplified at one point or another.

Students should find the perusal of these varied *Locī Antīqui* interesting per se and should also find satisfaction and a sense of accomplishment in being able to translate passages of such maturity at their stage of Latin study. Words appearing here that have not been introduced in the 40 chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and especially important words are listed in the “Vocabulary” following the glosses to each passage; most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference.

1. DISILLUSIONMENT

Miser Catulle, dēsinās1 ineptīre,2 et quod vīdēs perīsse perditum3 dūcās.
Fūsēre4 quondam candidī tībī sōlēs,
cum vēntītābās5 quō6 puella dūcēbat,
amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.

---

1 METER: choliambic.
2 dēsinō, -erc, -sī, -sītum, cease (dēsinās = juss. subj. for dēsine)
3 perdō, -erc, -didī, -ditum, destroy, lose
4 fulgeō, -ere, fulsi, shine (fulsēre = fulsērunt)
5 ventītō (1), frequentative form of venīō, come often
6 quō, adv., whither, where
Fulsēre vērē candidī tībī sōlēs. 
Nunc iam illa nōn vult; tū quoque, impotēns, nōlī; 
nec quae fugit sectāre nec miser vive, 
sed obstinātā mentе perfеr, obdūrā. 

Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat, 
nec tē requēret nec rogābit invītam; 
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla. 
Scelestа, vae tē! Quae tībī manet vita! 

Vale, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat, 
nеe tē requīret nеe rogabit invītam; 
at tū dolebis, cum rogaberis nīlla. 
Scelesta, vae tē!
Quae tībī manet vita!

1 Quis nunc te adībit? Cui videbēris bella?
2 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?

2. HOW DEMОСТHENES OVERCAMЕ HIS HANDICAPS

Oрāтор imitētur illum cui summa vis dicendi concēditur. Dē-
mosthenem, in quō tantum studium fuisse dicitur ut impedimenta nātūrae
diligentiā industriaque superāret. Nam cum ita balbus esset ut illius ipsīus
artis cui studeret primam litteram non posset dicere, perfecit meditandō
ut nēmō plānius loquerētur. Deinde, cum spūritus eius esset angustior,
spūritū continentō multum perfecit in dicēndo; et coniecīt in ōs calculīs,
summā vōce versūs multōs ūnō spūritū prōnūntiāre cōnsuēscēbat; neque id
facciēbat stāns ūnō in locō sed ambulāns. (Cicero, Dē Ōrātōr 1.61.260–61)

3. THE TYRANT CAN TRUST NO ONE

Multōs annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānorum fuit Dionysius. Pulcherrimam
urbem servitūte oppressam tenuit. At ā bonīs auctōribus cognōvimus eum
fuisse hominem summæ temperantiae in vīctū et in rebus gerendīs
et industrium; eundem tamen malum et iniūstum. Quārē, omnibus viṁs
bene vēritātem quaerentibus hunc vidērī miserrimum necesse est, nam
nēminī crēdere audebat. Itaque propter iniūstam cupiditätēm dominātūs quasi in carcerem ipse sē inclúmerat. Quīn etiam, nē tōnsōrī collum committeret, fīliās suās artem tōnsōriām docuit. Ita hae virginēs tondēbant barbam et capillum patris. Et tamen ab hīs ipsīs, cum iam essent adultae, ferrum remōvit, eīsque imperāvit ut carbōnibus barbam et capillum sibi adūrerent. (Cicero, Tusculānāe Disputātiōnēs 5.20.57–58)

4. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES


5. DERIVATION OF "PHILOSOPHUS" AND SUBJECTS OF PHILOSOPHY

Eī quī studia in contemplātiōne rērum pōnēbant "sapientes" appellābantur, et id nōmen ūsque ad Pythagorae aetātem mānāvit. Hunc aiunt doctē et cōpiōsē quaedam cum Leonte disputāvisse; et Leōn, cum illīus

VOCABULARY: temperantia, iniūstus, inclūdō.

1 assentātor, -ōris, m., flatterer, "yes-man"
2 Dāmoclēs, -is, m.
3 commemorō (1), mention, recount
4 maiestās, -tātis, f., greatness
5 abundantia, -ae
6 quisquam, quidquam, anyone, anything
7 dēgustō (1), taste, try
8 aureus, -a, -um, golden
9 lectus, -i, couch
10 col-locō, place
11 argentum, -i, silver
12 aurum, -i, gold
13 ex quaesitus, -a, -um: ex quaesitus
14 supra, adv. and prep. + acc., above
15 saēā equīnā, by a horsehair
16 dēmittō, let down
17 aliquī, -qua, -quod, adj. of aliquis
18 impendeō, -ere, hang over, threaten

VOCABULARY: quisquam, collocō, aurum, supra.
ingenium et eloquentiam\(^7\) admiratus esset,\(^8\) quasēvit ex eō quā arte maximē üterētur. At ille dīxit sē artem nūllam scire sed esse philosophum. Tum Leōn, admiratus novum nōmen, quasēvit quī essent philosophī. Pythagorās respondit multōs hominēs glorīae aut pecūnīae servīre sed paucōs quōsdam esse quī cētera prō nihilō\(^9\) habērent sed nātūram rērum cognōscere cuperent; hōs sē appellāre "studiōsōs\(^10\) sapientiae," id est enim "philosophōs."\(^11\) Sīc Pythagorās huius nōminis inventōr\(^12\) fuit.

Ab antiquā philosophiā üsque ad Sōcratem\(^13\) philosophiā numerōs et stīdera tractābant\(^14\) et unde omnia orīrentur\(^15\) et quō discēderent. Sōcratēs autem prīmus philosophiām dēvocāvit ē caelō et in urbibus hominibusque collocāvīt et coēgit eam dē vitā et mōribus rēbusque bonīs et malīs quaerēre.

(Cicero, Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs 5.3.8–9; 5.4.10)

6. CICERO ON THE VALUE AND THE NATURE OF FRIENDSHIP

Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis. Sentīō equidēm,\(^1\) exceptā\(^2\) sapientiā, nihil melius hominī ā deīs immortālibus datum esse. Dīvītīās alīi antepōmnunt; alīī, salūtem; alīī, potestātēm; alīī, honōrēs; multī, etiam volūptātēs. Illa autem incerta sunt, positā nōn tam in cōnsilīōs nostrīs quam in fortūnāe vicissitudinibus.\(^4\) Quī autem in virtūte summum bonum pōmnunt, bene illī quidēm faciunt; sed ex ipsā virtūte amīcitia nāscitur nec sīne virtūte amīcitia esse potest.

Dēnique cēterae rēs, quae petuntur, oppōrtūnāe\(^5\) sunt rēbus singulīs\(^6\): dīvītīae, ut eīs útāris; honōrēs, ut laudāris; salūs, ut dolōre careās et rēbus corporīs útāris. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās contīnet; nūllō locō exclūditur\(^7\); numquam intempestīva,\(^8\) numquam molestā est. Itaque nōn aquā, nōn igne in locīs plūribus utīmor quam amīcitia; nam amīcitia secundās rēs clāriōrēs facit et adversās rēs levīrēs.

Quīs est quī velīt in omnībus rērum abundantīā itā\(^9\) vivere ut neque dīligat quemquam\(^11\) neque ipse ab ūllō dīligātur? Haec enim est tyrannōrum vitā, in quā nūllā fidēs, nūllā cāritās,\(^12\) nūllā benevolentia\(^13\) potest esse; omnia semper mutuuntur, nūllus locus est amīcitiae. Quīs enim aut eum dīligat\(^14\) quem metuatur aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? Multī autem sī cecidērunt, ut

---

\(^7\) eloquentia, -ae
\(^8\) admiror (1), wonder at, admire
\(^9\) nihilum, -ī, = nihil
\(^10\) studiōsus, -a, -um, fond of
\(^11\) philosophus: Greek philos, fond of, + sophia, wisdom
\(^12\) inventor, -ōris, m., cp. inveniō
\(^13\) Sōcratēs, -is
\(^14\) tractō (1), handle, investigate, treat
\(^15\) orīor, -īri, oritus sum, arise, proceed, originate
\(^16\) quō, adv., where

VOCABULARY: admiror, orīor, quō.

---

\(^6\) equidēm, adv., indeed
saepe fit, tum intellegunt quam inopēs\textsuperscript{15} amīcōrum fuerint. Quid vērō stultius quam cētera parāre quae parantur pecūniā sed amīcōs nōn parāre, optimam et pulcherrimam quasi supellectilem\textsuperscript{16} vitae?

Quisque ipse sē dīligit nōn ut aliam mercēdem\textsuperscript{17} sē ipse petat sed quod per sē quisque sibi cārūs est. Nisi idem in amīcitiam trānsferētūr, vērūs amīcus numquam reperīētur. Amīcus enim est is qui est tamquam alter idem.

Ipse sē dīligit et alterum quaeīrit cuīus animum ita cum suō misceat ut faciat ūnum ex duōbus. Quīd enim dulcius quam habēre quīcum\textsuperscript{19} audeās sēc loqui ut tēcum? (Cicero, De Amīcītiā, excerpts from Chs. 5, 6, 15, 21)

7. CICERO ON WAR

Quaedam officia sunt servanda etiam adversus\textsuperscript{1} cēs a quibus iniūriam accēpimus. Atque in rē públicā maximē cōnservanda sunt ūra belli. Nam sunt duo genera dēcertandī: ūnum per disputātiōnem,\textsuperscript{3} alterum per vim. Illud est proprium\textsuperscript{4} hominis, hoc bēluārum; sed bellum vī gerendum est sī disputātiōne ūti nōn licet. Quārē suspicienda quidem bella sunt ut sine iniūriā in pāce vivāmus; post autem victōriām eī cōnservandī sunt quī nōn crūdēlēs,\textsuperscript{6} nōn dūrī in bellō fuērunt, ut maiōrēs nostri Sabīnōs\textsuperscript{7} in cīvitātem etiam accēpērunt. At Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt; etiam Corinthum sustulērunt—quod nōn approbō\textsuperscript{8}; sed crēdō hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad bellum faciendum hortārī possēt. Meā quidem sententīā,\textsuperscript{9} pāx quae nihil īnsidiārum habeat semper quaeerenda est. Ac aequitās\textsuperscript{10} belli fētiālī\textsuperscript{11} īūre pōpuli Rōmānī perscrīpta est.\textsuperscript{12} Quārē potest intellegē nūllum bellum esse nisi quod aut rēbus repetītīs\textsuperscript{13} gerātur aut ante dēnūntiātum sit.\textsuperscript{14}

Nūllum bellum dēbet suspiciēā cīvitāte optimā nisi aut prō fidē aut prō salūte. Iīa bella sunt inīūsta quae sine causā sunt suscepta. Nam extrā\textsuperscript{15} ulciscendi\textsuperscript{16} aut prōpulsandōrum\textsuperscript{17} hostium causam nūllum bellum cum aequitāte gerī potest. Noster autem populus sociūs\textsuperscript{18} défendendīs terrārum\textsuperscript{19}

\textsuperscript{15} inops, -opis, bereft of
\textsuperscript{16} supellex, -lectilis, f., furniture
\textsuperscript{17} mercēs, -ēdis, f., pay, reward
\textsuperscript{18} trāns-fērō, transfer, direct
\textsuperscript{19} habēre quīcum = habēre cum cum quō

**VOCABULARY:** equidem, potestās, trānsfērō.

\textsuperscript{1} adversus, prep. + acc., toward
\textsuperscript{2} dēcērtō (1), fight (to a decision)
\textsuperscript{3} disputātiō, -onis, f., discussion
\textsuperscript{4} proprius, -a, -um, characteristic of
\textsuperscript{5} bēluā, -ae, wild beast
\textsuperscript{6} crūdēlis, -e, cruel
\textsuperscript{7} Sabīnī, -ōrum

\textsuperscript{8} approbō (1), approve
\textsuperscript{9} sententīā: abl. here expressing accordance
\textsuperscript{10} aequitās, -tātis, f., fairness, justice
\textsuperscript{11} fētiālis, -e, fētial, referring to a college of priests who were concerned with treaties and the ritual of declaring war
\textsuperscript{12} per-scrībō, write out, place on record
\textsuperscript{13} re-pētō, seek again
\textsuperscript{14} dēnūntiō (1), declare officially
\textsuperscript{15} extrā, prep. + acc., beyond
\textsuperscript{16} ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, avenge, punish
\textsuperscript{17} prōpulsō (1), repel
\textsuperscript{18} sociūs, -i, ally
\textsuperscript{19} terrārum: depends on potitus est
omnium potitus est. (Cicero, De Officiis 1.11.34-36 and De Re Publica 3.23.34–35)

8. HANNIBAL; THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, filius Hamilcaris, Carthaginiae natus est. Odium patris erga Rōmānōs sic consērvavit ut numquam id dēpōneret. Nam post bellum Pūnicum, cum ex patria in exsilium esset, nōn reliquit studium bellī Rōmānīs inferendī. Quārē, cum in Syriam vēnisset, Antiochō' rēgī haec locūtus est ut hunc quoque ad bellum cum Rōmānīs indūcere posset:

“Mē novem annōs nātō, pater meus Hamilcar, in Hispāniam imperātor proficiēns Carthaginiae, sacrificium dis fēcit. Eōdem tempore quaeśīvit ā mē vellemne sēcūm proficiēscī. Cum id libenter audīvissem et ab eō petere coepiūsem nē dubitāret mē dūcere, tum ille ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘si mihi fīdem quam quaerō dederis.’ Tum mē ad āram11 dúxit et mē iūrāre12 iussit mē num quam in amīcitia cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id iūs iūrandum13 patrī datum úsque ad hanc aetatem ita consērvāvi ut nēmō sit quī plūs odī erga Rōmānīs habeat.”


Ad Alpēs vēnit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercītū trānsierat. Alpīcōs cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsītū occidīt; loca patefēcit; itinera mūnīvit; effecit ut1 elephamus īre posset quā ante23 ūnus homō vix poterat rēpere. Sic in Italian pervēnit et, Scīpiōne superātō, Etrūriam

VOCABULARY: dēcertō, proprius, crūdēlis, potior.

8

1 Hannibal, -alis, m., illustrious general who led the Carthaginian forces against the Romans in the Second Punic (= Carthaginian) War, 218–202 B.C.
2 Hamilcar, -aris, m.
3 dē-pōnō
4 Pūnicus, -a, -um
5 bellum īn-ferō, make war on
6 Syria, -ae
7 Antiochus, -i
8 īn-dūcō
9 Hispānīa, -ae, Spain
10 sacrificium, -iī
11 āra, -ae, altar
12 iūrō (1), swear
13 iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrāndī, n., oath
14 Hasdrubal, -alis, m., next in command after Hamilcar
15 África, -ae
16 Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., the Alps
17 Alpīcū, -ōrum, men of the Alps
18 occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum, cut down
19 mūniō (4), fortify, build
20 efficiō, bring it about, cause
21 ut... posset: noun cl. of result, obj. of effecit
22 quā, adv., where
23 anteā, adv., before, formerly
24 vix, adv., scarcely
25 rēpō, -ere, rēpūs, rēptum, crawl
26 Scīpiō, -onis, m., father of the Scipio mentioned below
27 Etrūria, -ae, district north of Rome, Tuscany
petivit. Hoc in itinere tam gravii morbo\textsuperscript{28} oculorum affectus est\textsuperscript{29} ut postea numquam dextr\textit{o} ocul\textit{ù} bene uleretur.

Mult\textit{o} s duct\textit{e}s exercitusque R\textit{o}m\textit{à}n\textit{ò}s super\textit{à}vit; longum est omnia proelium\textsuperscript{30} enumerare.\textsuperscript{31} Post Cann\textit{è}nse\textsuperscript{32} autem pugnam n\textit{è}m\textit{ò} e\textit{i} in aci\textit{è} in Italii restitit.\textsuperscript{34} Cum autem P. Se\textit{c}pi\textit{ò} in Africam invasisset,\textsuperscript{36} Hannibal, ad patriam defendendam revocatus, Zamae\textsuperscript{37} victus est. Sic post tot ann\textit{ò}s R\textit{ò}m\textit{àn}n\textit{ì} s pericul\textit{o} P\textit{ù}nic\textit{o} liberav\textit{è}runt. (Nepos, Hannibal, excerpts)

\textbf{9. AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL NOTES BY HORACE}

Nulla fons\textsuperscript{1} mihi t\textit{è}, Maec\textit{è}na\textit{à}s,\textsuperscript{2} obtulit: optimus Vergilius et post hunc Varius\textsuperscript{3} dix\textit{è}runt quid esset. Ut ad t\textit{è} v\textit{è}n\textit{i}, singultim\textsuperscript{4} pauc\textit{à}s locutus (nam pudor\textsuperscript{5} prohibebat plur\textit{à} profar\textsuperscript{6}), ego non dixi me cl\textit{à}ro patre natum esse sed narr\textit{à}v\textit{ì} quod eram. Respondes,\textsuperscript{7} ut tuus mas est, pauca. Abeo et post nonum m\textit{è}n\textit{è}m\textsuperscript{8} m\textit{è} revoc\textit{à}s iubesque esse in am\textit{è}kor\textit{ù}m numer\textit{o}. Hoc magn\textit{ù}m esse d\textit{ù}c\textit{o}, quod\textsuperscript{9} placu\textit{ì} tibi, qui bonos a turpibus secernis\textsuperscript{10} non patre clar\textit{ò}s sed vita et pectore puro.\textsuperscript{11}

Atqui\textsuperscript{12} si mea n\textit{à}t\textit{ù}ra est mendosa\textsuperscript{13} vitius mediocribus ac pauc\textit{à}s sed ali\textit{ò}qui\textsuperscript{14} rect\textit{à}s,\textsuperscript{15} si neque av\textit{à}r\textit{è}tiam neque sord\textit{ès} quisquam\textsuperscript{16} mihi obiciet,\textsuperscript{18} si p\textit{à}rus sum et ins\textit{ò}s\textsuperscript{19} (ut m\textit{è} laudem!) et viv\textit{ò}s car\textit{ù}s am\textit{è}cs, causa fuit pater meus. Hic enim, cum pauper in parvo agr\textit{è}s esset, tamen noluit me puerum in ludum Fl\textit{à}vi\textsuperscript{20} mittere sed aus\textit{ù}s me Romam ferre ad artes discend\textit{à}s quae sen\textit{à}t\textit{è}r\textit{è}s\textsuperscript{21} su\textit{o}s filios docent. Ipse mihi paedagogus incorruptissimus\textsuperscript{22} erat. M\textit{è} liberum serv\textit{à}vit non solum ab omn\textit{à} mort\textit{ù}o sed etiam 15 ab turp\textit{i} opprobri\textit{o}.\textsuperscript{24} Qu\textit{à}r\textit{è}s laus illi a me debetur et gratia\textsuperscript{25} magna.

---

\textsuperscript{28} morbus, -\textit{i}, disease
\textsuperscript{29} ad\textit{-fiicio}, afflict
\textsuperscript{30} proelium, -\textit{i}, battle
\textsuperscript{31} \textit{è}numer\textit{o} (1)
\textsuperscript{32} Cann\textit{è}nis pugna, battle at Cannae, where in 216 B.C.
\textsuperscript{33} aci\textit{ès}, -\textit{èi}, battle line
\textsuperscript{34} resist\textit{ò}s, -\textit{è}-\textit{stù}t\textit{i}, + dat., resist
\textsuperscript{35} tandem, adv., at last, finally
\textsuperscript{36} inv\textit{à}d\textit{o}, -\textit{è}-v\textit{à}si, -v\textit{à}sum, go into, invade
\textsuperscript{37} Zama, -ae, city south of Carthage in North Africa

\textbf{VOCABULARY:}
occid\textit{o}, effici\textit{o}, (lOa, antea, "ix, proe-
\textit{lium}, tandem.

9
\textsuperscript{1} fors, fortis, f., chance, accident
\textsuperscript{2} Maec\textit{è}n\textit{à}s, -\textit{à}t\textit{i}s, m., Augustus' unofficial prime minister and Horace's patron
\textsuperscript{3} Varius, -\textit{i}, an epic poet
\textsuperscript{4} singult\textit{im}, adv., stammering
\textsuperscript{5} pudor, -\textit{ò}ris, m., bashfulness, modesty
\textsuperscript{6} profor (1), speak out

\textsuperscript{7} respond\textit{ès}, abe\textit{ò}, revoc\textit{à}s, iubes: in vivid narration the pres. tense was often used by the Romans with the force of the perf. This is called the "historical pres."
\textsuperscript{8} m\textit{è}n\textit{è}s, -\textit{i}s, m., month
\textsuperscript{9} quod, the fact that
\textsuperscript{10} secerno, -ere, -crevi, -cretum, separate
\textsuperscript{11} p\textit{à}rus, -\textit{à}, -\textit{um}
\textsuperscript{12} atqui, conj., and yet
\textsuperscript{13} mend\textit{ò}sus, -\textit{à}, -\textit{um}, faulty
\textsuperscript{14} ali\textit{ò}qui, adv., otherwise
\textsuperscript{15} rect\textit{s}, -\textit{a}, -\textit{um}, straight, right
\textsuperscript{16} sord\textit{ès}, -i\textit{ù}, filth
\textsuperscript{17} quisquam, anyone
\textsuperscript{18} ob\textit{ici\textit{o}}, cast in one's teeth
\textsuperscript{19} ins\textit{ò}s, gen. -ontis, guiltless
\textsuperscript{20} Fl\textit{à}vi\textsuperscript{20}, -\textit{i}, teacher in Horace's small home town of Venusia
\textsuperscript{21} sen\textit{à}tor, -\textit{ò}ris, m.
\textsuperscript{22} paedagog\textit{ù}s, -\textit{i}, slave who attended a boy at school
\textsuperscript{23} in\textit{corrupt}i\textit{s}, -\textit{à}, -\textit{um}, uncorrupted
\textsuperscript{24} opprobri\textit{o}, -\textit{i}, reproach
\textsuperscript{25} gratia, -ae, gratitude
Sic Rómae nūtrītus sum atque doctus sum quantum itūtus Achilles Graecīs nociisset. Deinde bonae Athēnae mihi plūs artis adīcērunt, scīlīcet ut vellem rēctum a curvō distinguere atque inter silvās Acadēmī quae erētām. Sed dūra tempora mē illō locō grātō ēmōvērunt et aēstus civīlis bellī mē tulīt in arma Brūtī. Tum post bellum Philippēnse dimissus sum et audāx paupertas mē humilem et pauperem coëgit versus facere. (Horace, Saturae 1.6 and Epistulae 2.2; excerpts in prose form)

10. HORACE LONGS FOR THE SIMPLE, PEACEFUL COUNTRY LIFE ON HIS SABINE FARM

Ô rūs, quandō tē aspiciam? Quandō mihi licēbit nunc librīs veterum auctōrum, nunc somnō et ōtiōūtū sine cūrīs sollicitae vítae? Ō noctēs cēnaque deōrum! Sermō oritur nōn dē villīs et domibus aliēnīs; sed id quae rimus modīgō ad nōs pertinet et nescīre malum est: utrum dīvītīs an virtūte homīnēs fiant beāti; quid nōs ad amīcitiam trahat, ūsus an rēctum; et quae sit nātūra bonī et quae sit summum bonum.

Inter haec Cervius fābulam narrat. Mūs rūsticus, impulsus ab urbānō mūre, domō rūsticā ad urbem abīt ut, dūrā vītā relictā, in rēbus incūndīs cum illō vīveret beātus. Mox, autem, multa perēcula urbāna expertus, rūsticus “Haec vīta,” inquit, “nōn est mihi necessāria. Valē; mihi silva cavusquē ab īnsidiīs placēbit.” (Horace, Saturae 2.6, excerpts in prose form)

VOCABULARY: secerno, quisquallī, gratia, silva, audāx.
11. WHY NO LETTERS?

C. Plinius Fabii2 Suō S.3


Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 1.11)

12. WHAT PLINY THINKS OF THE RACES

C. Plinius Calvisius2 Suō S.


13. PLINY ENDOWS A SCHOOL


VOCABULARY:

S. = salūtem (dīcit)

vel, or, an optional alternative; aut means or without any option

sufficiō, suﬃce, be suﬃcient

lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsum, play, jest

sēriō, adv., seriously

vel, sufficiō.

VOCABULARY: vel, suﬃciō.

11

1 C. = Gāius

2 Fabii, -ī

3S. = salūtem (dīcit)

4 epistula, -ae, letter

5 vel, or, an optional alternative; aut means or without any option

6 suﬃciō, suﬃce, be suﬃcient

7 lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsum, play, jest

8 sēriō, adv., seriously

12

1 Calvisius, -ī

2 tabella, -ae, writing pad

3 quiēs, -ētis, f., quiet

4 quem-ad-modum, adv., how

5 Circēnsēs (lūdī), games, races in the Circus Maximus

6 spectāculum, -ī

7 varius, -a, -um, different

8 pueriliter, adv., based on puer

9 identidem, adv., repeatedly

13

1 Cōmi, -i, Como, Pliny's birthplace in N. Italy

2 salūtō (1), greet

3 Mediolānī, -ī, Milan

4 liberī, -orum, children

5 nōndum, adv., not yet

VOCABULARY: liberī, nōndum.
14. LARGE GIFTS—YES, BUT ONLY BAIT

“Munera\(^1\) magna tamen misit.” Sed misit in hâmö\(^2\);
et piscâtorem\(^3\) piscis\(^4\) amâre potest? (Martial 6.63.5–6)

15. THE LORD’S PRAYER

Et cum ôrâtis nôn eritis sicut\(^5\) hypocrita,e\(^6\) qui amant in synagôgâs\(^7\) et in
angulis\(^8\) plateârum\(^9\) stantês ôrâre ut videantur ab hominibus: âmën\(^10\) dícô
vóbis, recépârunt mercêdêm\(^11\) suam. Tu autem cum ôrâbis, intrâ\(^8\) in cubiculum\(^9\) tuum et,
clausô\(^10\) ôstîô\(^11\) tuô, ôrâ Patrem tuum in absconditô\(^12\); et Pater
tuos quî videt in absconditô reddet\(^13\) tibi. . . . Sic ergô\(^14\) vós ôrâbitis: Pater
noster qui es in cælis, sanctificetur\(^15\) nômen tuum; adveniat regnum\(^16\) tuum;
fiât voluntás\(^17\) tua in terrâ. Pânen\(^18\) nostrum supersubstantiâlem\(^19\) dâ nóbis hodiê,
et dîmitte\(^20\) nóbis débita\(^21\) nostra, sic et nós dimit¬
timus débitóribus\(^22\) nostris; et nê inducâs nós in temptâtiônem\(^23\): sed libera
nós a malô. (Vulgâte, Matthew 6.5–6, 9–13)

16. CAEDMON’S ANGLO-SAXON VERSES
AND THE DIFFICULTIES OF TRANSLATION

Cum Caedlôn\(^1\) corpus somnô dedisset, angelus\(^2\) Dominê eì dormientî
“Caedmon,” inquit, “canta\(^3\) mihi principium creatûrûm.”\(^4\) Et statîm\(^5\) coe¬
pit cantare in laudem Deî créâtôris\(^6\) versus quos numquam audîverat,
quû
hîc est sênsus: “Nunc laudare auctorem regni” caelestis,\(^8\) po-

---

1. munus, muneris, n., gift
2. hâmus, -i, hook
3. piscâtôr, -ôris, m., fisherman
4. piscis, -is, m., fish
5. platea, -ae, street
6. âmên, adv.: truly, verily
7. mercês, -ôdis, f., wages, reward
8. intrâ (1), enter
9. cubiculum, -i, bedroom, room
10. claudô, -ere, clausi, clausum, close
11. ôstium, -ii, door
12. in absconditô, in (a) secret (place)
13. red-dô, -dere, -didî, -ditum, give back, answer, re¬
quite
14. ergô, adv., therefore
15. sanctifico (1), treat as holy
16. regnum, -i, kingdom
17. voluntas, -atis, f., will, wish
18. et, also
19. pânis, -is, m., bread
20. supersubstantialis, -e, necessary to the support of
life
21. dî-mittô, send away, dismiss
22. débitum, -i, that which is owing, debt (figura
tively) = sin
23. débitör, -ôris, m., one who owes something, one who
has not yet fulfilled his duty
24. temptâtio, -onis, f.

VOCABULARY: sicut, claudô, reddô, ergô, regnum, volutâs.
testātem\(^9\) creatōris et cōnsilium illius, facta Patris gloriae, quī, omnipotēns\(^10\) custōs\(^11\) humānī generis, filīs hominum caelum et terram créavit.” Hic est sēnsus, nōn autem ōrdō\(^12\) ipse verbōrum quae dormiēns ille cantāvit; neque enim possunt carmina, quamvis\(^13\) optimē composita,\(^14\) ex aliā in aliā linguām ad verbum\(^15\) sine dētrimentō\(^16\) suī decōris\(^17\) ac dignitātīs trānsferī.\(^18\) (Bede, Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum 4.24; 8th cen.)

17. WHO WILL PUT THE BELL ON THE CAT'S NECK?


Sic saepe hominēs, cum quendam āmovendum esse arbitrantur et contrā eum insurgere\(^12\) volunt, inter sē dicunt: “Quis appōnet sē contrā eum? Quis accūsābit\(^9\) eum?” Tum omnēs, sibi timentēs, dicunt: “Nōn ego certē! Nec ego!” Sic illum vīvere patiuntur. (Odo de Cerinton, Narrātiōnēs, 12th cen.)

18. THE DEVIL AND A THIRTEENTH-CENTURY SCHOOLBOY

In illā ecclesiā\(^1\) erat scholāris\(^2\) parvus. Cum hic diē quādam\(^3\) versūs compōnere ex ea māteriā\(^4\) ā magistrō datā nōn posset et trīstis sedēret, diabolus\(^5\) in fōrmā hominis vēnit. Cum dīxisset: “Quid est, puer? Cur sīc trīstis sedēs?” respondit puer: “Magistrum meum timeo quod versūs compōnere nōn possum dē themate\(^6\) quod ab eō recepī.” Et ille: “Visne mihi servīre sī ego versūs tibi compōnam?” Puer, nōn intellegēns quod\(^7\) ille esset diabolus, respondit: “Etiam, domine, paratus sum facere quidquid iussēris—dummodo versūs

\(⁹\) potestās, -tātis, f., power
\(¹⁰\) omnipotēns
\(¹¹\) custōs, -fōdis, m., guardian
\(¹²\) ōrdō, -īnis, m., order
\(¹³\) quamvis, adv. and conj., although
\(¹⁴\) compōnō, put together, compose
\(¹⁵\) ad verbum, to a word, literally
\(¹⁶\) dētrimentum, -ī, loss
\(¹⁷\) decor, -ōris, m., beauty
\(¹⁸\) trānsferō

VOCABULARY: statim, régnum, potestās, custōs, ōrdō, compōnō.

\(¹\) mūs, mūris, m.lf., mouse
\(²\) cattus, -ī (late Lat. for fēles, -is), cat
\(³\) ligō (1), bind
\(⁴\) campānā, -ae (late Lat. for tīntimābulum), bell
\(⁵\) collum, -ī, neck
\(⁶\) audāx, -ācis, daring, bold
\(⁷\) appropinquō (1), + dat., approach
\(⁸\) insurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up
\(⁹\) accūsō (1)

VOCABULARY: audāx, appropinquō.

18

\(¹\) ecclesiā, -ae, church
\(²\) scholāris, -is, m., scholar
\(³\) diē quādam: diēs is sometimes f., especially when referring to a specific day.
\(⁴\) māteriā, -ae, material
\(⁵\) diabolus, -ī, devil
\(⁶\) thema, -atīs, n., theme, subject
\(⁷\) quod, that, introducing an ind. state., common in Medieval Lat.
habeam et verbera\textsuperscript{8} vitem." Tum, versibus statim\textsuperscript{9} dictatis,\textsuperscript{10} diabolus abiit. Cum puer autem hōs versūs magistrō suō dedisset, hic, excellentiam\textsuperscript{11} versum mīrātus, timuit, dūcēns scientiam in illīs divīnam,\textsuperscript{12} nōn hūmānam. Et ait: "Dīc mihi, quis tibi hōs versūs dictāvit?" Prīmum puer respondīt: "Ego, magister!" Magistrō autem nōn crēdente et verbum interrogātiōnis\textsuperscript{13} saepius repetente, puer omnia tandem\textsuperscript{14} confessus est.\textsuperscript{15} Tum magister "Fili," inquit, "ille versificātor\textsuperscript{16} fuit diabolus. CARISSIME, semper illum sēductōrem\textsuperscript{17} et eius opera cavē.\textsuperscript{18}" Et puer diabolum eiusmod operae reliquit. (Caesar of Heisterbach, Mirācula 2.14; 13th cen.)

\textbf{VOCABULARY:} statim, tandem, cōnfiteor, caveō.
The **Locī Immūtātī** are offered for those who may finish all the **Locī Antīquī** and wish to try their wits on some unaltered classical Latin.

These passages are straight Latin, unchanged except for omissions, which have been regularly indicated by three dots. Naturally this genuinely literary material had to be rather heavily annotated, but more in the matter of vocabulary than in other respects. As in the case of the **Locī Antīquī**, words appearing here that have not been introduced in the regular chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference. New grammatical principles have been treated as they occur, either by a brief statement in the notes or by reference to the Appendix.

1. **A DEDICATION**

Cui dōnō¹ lepidum² novum libellum
āridō³ modo⁴ pūmice⁵ expōlitum⁶?
Cornēlii⁷ tibi, namque⁸ tū solēbās
meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,⁹
iam tum cum ausus es unus Italōrum¹⁰

---

¹ dōnō (1), (=do), present, dedicate
² lepidus, -a, -um, pleasant, neat
³ āridus, -a, -um, dry, arid
⁴ modo, adv., just now
⁵ pūmex, -icis, m., pumice stone. The ends of a volume were smoothed with pumice.
⁶ expōliō (4), smooth, polish
⁷ Cornelius Nepos, biographer and historian; see Intro.
⁸ strong form of nam = for (indeed, surely)
⁹ nūgac, -ārum, trifles, nonsense
¹⁰ Italī, -ōrum, the Italians; initial i- long here for meter. This work, now lost, was apparently less annalistic than most histories by Romans.
omne aevum\textsuperscript{11} tribus explicāre\textsuperscript{12} chartīs,\textsuperscript{13}
doctīs—Iuppiter!—et labōrīōsīs.\textsuperscript{14}
Quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī\textsuperscript{15}
quālecumque,\textsuperscript{15} quod, Ō patrōna\textsuperscript{16} virgō,
plus ūnō maneat\textsuperscript{17} perenne\textsuperscript{18} saeclō.\textsuperscript{19}

\textit{(Catullus 1)}

\section*{2. HOW MANY KISSES\textsuperscript{1}}}

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs\textsuperscript{2}
tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superqüe.\textsuperscript{3}
Quam magnus numerus Libyssae\textsuperscript{4} harēnae\textsuperscript{5}
laserpīciferīs\textsuperscript{6} iacet Cyrēnīs,\textsuperscript{7}

\begin{quotation}
aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
fūrtīvōs\textsuperscript{8} hominum vident amōrēs,
tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre\textsuperscript{10}
vēsānō\textsuperscript{11} satis et super Catullō est.
\end{quotation}

\textit{(Catullus 7.1–4, 7–10)}

\section*{3. DEATH OF A PET SPARROW}

Lūgēte,\textsuperscript{1} Ō Venerēs\textsuperscript{2} Cupīdinēsque\textsuperscript{3}
et quantum est hominum\textsuperscript{4} venustōrum\textsuperscript{5}
Passer\textsuperscript{6} mortuus est meae puellae,
passer, déliciae\textsuperscript{7} meae puellae,

\begin{quotation}
... such as it is.
\end{quotation}

\begin{quotation}
\textit{This poem is obviously a companion piece to Catullus 5 (see ch. 31).}
\end{quotation}

\begin{quotation}
\textit{gener. of whole: how much of people there is = all the people there are}
\end{quotation}

\begin{quotation}
\textit{charms, graceful; more charming (than ordinary men)}
\end{quotation}

\begin{quotation}
\textit{birds which, incidentally, was sacred to Venus}
\end{quotation}

\begin{quotation}
\textit{delight, darling, pet}
\end{quotation}

\textsuperscript{1}aevum, -ī, time
\textsuperscript{2}explicō (1), unfold, explain
\textsuperscript{3}charta, -ae, leaf of (papyrus) paper; here = volume
\textsuperscript{4}labōrīōsus, -a, -um, laborious
\textsuperscript{5}libellī, gen. of whole; lit. whatever kind of book this is of whatsoever sort; i.e., this book such as it is.
\textsuperscript{6}quālecumque, quālecumque, of whatever sort or kind
\textsuperscript{7}patrōna, -ae, protectress; protectress maiden (virgō) = Muse
\textsuperscript{8}perennis, -e, lasting, perennial
\textsuperscript{9}saeculum, syncopated form of saeculum, -ī, age, century
\textsuperscript{10}basīare (1), to kiss kisses = to give kisses; basīare is subject of est satis.
\textsuperscript{11}vēsānus, -a, -um, mad, insane
\textsuperscript{12}METER: Phalaecean.
\textsuperscript{13}Venus, -eris, f., Venus; here pl. as Cupīdinēs is.
\textsuperscript{14}Cupīdō, -inis, m., Cupid, often in the pl. as is Greek Eros and as we see in art.
\textsuperscript{15}gen. of whole with quantum: how much of people there is = all the people there are
\textsuperscript{16}Passer, -eris, m., sparrow (a bird which, incidentally, was sacred to Venus)
306  Wheelock's Latin

5 quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
Quem mellītus4 erat, suanque nōrat9
ipsam10 tam bene quam puella mātem;
nece sēsē11 ā gremiō12 illius movēbat,
scend circumsiliēns13 modo hūc14 modo illūc15
10 ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.16
Quī17 nunc it per iter tenebrīcosum18
illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.19
At vōbis male sit, malae tenebrae20
Orcūs,21 quae omnīa bella dēvorātis;22
tam bellum mihi23 passerem abstulistis.24
qui25 nunc operā27 meae puellae
flendō28 turgidul29 rubent30 ocellī.31
(Catullus 3)

4. FRĀTER AVĒ, ATQUE VALĒ
Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora2 vectus3
advenīō hās miserās, frāter, ad īnferiās,4
ut tē postrēmō5 dōnārem6 mūnerc7 mortis
et mūtān8 nēquīquam9 adloquerer10 cinerem,11

8 mellītus, -a, -um, sweet as honey
9 contracted form = nōverat (from nōscō)
10 suam . . . ipsam, its very own (mistress)
11 sēsē = sē (acc.)
12 gremium, -ī, lap
13 circumsiliō (4), jump around
14 hūc, adv., hither, to this place
15 illūc, adv. thither, to that place
16 pīpiō (1), chirp
17 quī = et hīc, conjunctive use of the rel. at the beginning of a sent.
18 tenebrīcosus, -a, -um, dark, gloomy
19 L. A. 4 n. 6.
20 tenebrae, -ārum, darkness
21 Orcus, -i, Orcus, the underworld
22 dēvorō (1), devour, consume
23 dative of separation
24 auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away
25 lō, exclamation of pain, oh! or of joy, hurrah!
26 misellus, -a, -um, diminutive of miser, wretched, poor, unhappy; a colloquial word
27 tūa operā, thanks to you: opera, -ae, work, pains, effort
28 fleō, -ère, ἔφευ, ἐφτυμ, weep
29 turgidulus, -a, -um, (somewhat) swollen
30 rubēō, -ère, be red
31 ocellus, -i, diminutive of oculus

4

METER: elegiac couplet.
1 Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memnus, the governor, apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funerary rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.
2 aequor, -oris, n., flat surface, the sea
3 vehō, -cre, vexī, vectum, carry
4 īnferiās, -ārum, offerings in honor of the dead
5 postrēmās, -a, -um, last
6 dōnō (1), present you with; cp. the idiom in L. I. 1 line 1.
7 mūnus, -eris, n., service, gift
8 mūtus, -a, -um, mute, silent
9 nēquīquam, adv., in vain
10 ad-loquor, address
11 cinis, -cris, m. but occasionally f. as here, ashes (cp. incinerator)
5 quandoquidem\textsuperscript{12} fortūna mihi\textsuperscript{13} tētē\textsuperscript{14} abstulit\textsuperscript{15} ipsum, heu miser indignē\textsuperscript{16} frāter adempste\textsuperscript{17} mihi. Nunc tamen intereā\textsuperscript{18} haec,\textsuperscript{19} priscō\textsuperscript{20} quae mōre parentum trādita sunt trīsi mūnere ad inferiās, accipe frāternō\textsuperscript{21} multum\textsuperscript{22} mānantia\textsuperscript{23} flētū,\textsuperscript{24} atque in perpetuum,\textsuperscript{25} frāter, avē\textsuperscript{26} atque valē. (Catullus 101)

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION\textsuperscript{4} OF THE LEADER OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

Quō ēisque\textsuperscript{2} tandem abūtēre,\textsuperscript{3} Catilīna, patiēntiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam fūror\textsuperscript{4} iste tuus nōs ēlūdet\textsuperscript{5}? Quem ad finem sēsē\textsuperscript{6} effrēnāta\textsuperscript{7} iactābit\textsuperscript{8} audācia\textsuperscript{9}? Nihilne\textsuperscript{10} tē nocturnum\textsuperscript{11} praesidium\textsuperscript{12} Palātium,\textsuperscript{13} nihil urbīs vigiliae,\textsuperscript{14} nihil timor populi, nihil concursus\textsuperscript{15} bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus\textsuperscript{16} habendī senātus locus, nihil horūla\textsuperscript{17} orītus\textsuperscript{18} vulū fabēque movērant? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam\textsuperscript{18} iam omnium hūrum scientiā tēnērī coniurātōnem\textsuperscript{19} tuam nōn videś? Quid proximā,\textsuperscript{20} quid superiore\textsuperscript{21} nocte egēfīs, ubi uerīs, quos convocāverīs,\textsuperscript{22} quid consilī ceperīs, quem nostrum\textsuperscript{23} ignōrāre\textsuperscript{24} arbitrāris?

Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum³⁷ in tē, Catīlīna, vehemēns³⁸ et grave. Nōn deest³⁹ rē pūblīcae cōnsīlium, neque auctōritās⁴⁰ huius ārdinis⁴¹, nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē,⁴² cōnsūlēs dēsumus... At nōs vīcēsimum⁴³ īam diem patimur hebēscere⁴⁴ aiciem⁴⁵ hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim eius modī⁴⁶ senātūs cōnsultum,...

Quaēdē cum īta sint, Catīlīna, perge⁶⁹ quo... coepistī. Ėgredior⁷¹ alii...
quamó 

verum regie, 

quorum autem imperiti, 


dissimulá 

esset esse dicerent. Nunc intellego, sī iste, quō intendit, in Maniliana castra pervenerit, nēminem tam stultum fore quī nōn videat consūrātiōnem esse factam, nēminem tam improbus quī nōn fateatur.

Hoc autem ūnō interfecit, intellegō hanc reī publicae pestem paulisper

reprimi, nōn in perpetuum comprimi posse. Quod si sē éciecerit, sēcumque suōs ēdúxerit, et eōdem cēterōs undique collectōs naufragós adgregárit. est quī non modo haec tam adulta reī publicae pestis, vērum etiam stirps ac sēmen malōrum omnium. Quod si ex tantō latrōcinio ineptum esse tolléatur, vidēbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī; perīculum autem residēbit...
Quārē sēcēdant\textsuperscript{119} improbī; sēcernant\textsuperscript{120} sē ā bonīs; ūnum in locum con-
gregentur\textsuperscript{121}; mūrö dēnique (id quod saepe iam dīxī) sēcernantur ā nōbīs; dēsinant\textsuperscript{122} īnsidiātī\textsuperscript{123} domī suae\textsuperscript{124} cōnsulī, circumstārē\textsuperscript{125} tribūnāl\textsuperscript{126} prae-
tōris urbānī,\textsuperscript{127} obsidēre\textsuperscript{128} cum gladīs cūriām,\textsuperscript{129} malleolōs\textsuperscript{130} et facēs\textsuperscript{131} ad īnflammandam\textsuperscript{132} urbem comparāre\textsuperscript{133}; sit dēnique īnscriptum\textsuperscript{134} in frontē\textsuperscript{135} ūnus cuiusque quid dē rē publicā sentiat. Pollicēor\textsuperscript{136} hoc vōbis, patrēs cōnscripītī,\textsuperscript{132} tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus fore\textsuperscript{136} diligentiam,\textsuperscript{137} tantam in vōbīs auctorītātem,\textsuperscript{40} tantam in equītibus\textsuperscript{138} Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnībus bonīs cōnsēnsīōnem,\textsuperscript{139} ut Catilīnae profectionē\textsuperscript{140} omnia patefacta, illūs-
strāta,\textsuperscript{141} oppressa, vindicātā\textsuperscript{142} esse videātīs.

Hīscē\textsuperscript{143} ōminibus,\textsuperscript{144} Catilīna, cum summā re ā publicae salūte,\textsuperscript{145} cum
tuā peste ac perrnicē\textsuperscript{146} cümque eōrum exitīō qui sē tēcum omnī scelere parricidīōque\textsuperscript{147} īnāxērunt, proficīscere ad impium\textsuperscript{148} bellum ac nefārium.\textsuperscript{149}

Tū, Iuppiter, qui ēısıdem\textsuperscript{150} quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulī\textsuperscript{151} es cons-
stitūtūs,\textsuperscript{152} quem Statōrem\textsuperscript{153} huius urbs atque imperī īrē nōminā-
mus,\textsuperscript{154} hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterīisque templīs,\textsuperscript{155} ā tēctīs\textsuperscript{156} urbīs ac moēnis, ā vītā fortūnīisque civīum arcēbīs\textsuperscript{157}, et hōminēs bonōrum inīmī-
cōs,\textsuperscript{158} hostēs patriae, latrōnēs\textsuperscript{159} Italīae, scelerum foedes\textsuperscript{160} inter sē ac ne-

\textsuperscript{119} sē-cēdō (sē = apart, away). \textit{Why subj.?}
\textsuperscript{120} sēcernō, -ere, -cēvī, -cretum, separate
\textsuperscript{121} congregō (1), gather together
\textsuperscript{122} dēsinō, -ere, -sēvī, -sētum, cease
\textsuperscript{123} īnsidior (1), plot against + dat.
\textsuperscript{124} domī suae, loc.\lq\rq Caribbean had tried to have Civīco as-
sassinated.
\textsuperscript{125} circum-stō, -āre, -stēfī, stand around, surround
\textsuperscript{126} tribūnāl, -ālis, n.
\textsuperscript{127} practor urbānus, judicia magistrates who had charge of civil cases between Roman citizens
\textsuperscript{128} obsidēnō, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssum, besiege, beset
\textsuperscript{129} cūria, -ae, senate house
\textsuperscript{130} malleolus, -ī, firebrand
\textsuperscript{131} fax, facēs, f., torch
\textsuperscript{132} inflammō (1), set on fire
\textsuperscript{133} īlārē
\textsuperscript{134} in-scribō
\textsuperscript{135} frōns, frontis, f., forehead
\textsuperscript{136} pollicēor, -ērī, -licitus sum, promise
\textsuperscript{137} diligentia, -ae
\textsuperscript{138} eques, equītis, m., horseman, knight. \textit{Here the equi-
tēs are the wealthy business class in Rome.}
\textsuperscript{139} cōnsēsiō, -ōnis, f., agreement, harmony
\textsuperscript{140} profectionō, -ōnis, f., departure; \textit{cp. profectionē}
\textsuperscript{141} illūstrō (1), bring to light
\textsuperscript{142} vindicō (1), avenge, punish
\textsuperscript{143} hīs-ce = ħis + intensive enclitic -ce; abl. case with ōminibus
\textsuperscript{144} ōmen, ōnīnīs, n., omen; with these omens or with these words which I have uttered as omens, abl. of attendant circumstance without cum.
\textsuperscript{145} cum . . . salūte (peste, exitīō) abl. of attendant circumstance with cum, here indicating the result: to the safety of state, to your own destruction . . .
\textsuperscript{146} perrnicēs, -ī, disaster, calamity
\textsuperscript{147} parricidium, -iī, murder
\textsuperscript{148} impius, -a, -um, wicked, disloyal
\textsuperscript{149} nefārius, -a, -um, infamous, nefarious
\textsuperscript{150} ēısıdem auspiciīs quibus haec urbs (cōnstitūtā est); auspicia, -ōrum, auspices
\textsuperscript{151} Rōmulī, -i, the founder of Rome
\textsuperscript{152} cōnstitūtō, -ere, -stitūt, -stitūtum, establish
\textsuperscript{153} Stator, -āris, m., the Stayer (of flight), the Supporter, Iuppiter Stator
\textsuperscript{154} nōminō (1), name, call (\textit{cp. nōmen})
\textsuperscript{155} templum, -ī, temple
\textsuperscript{156} tēctum, -ī, roof, house
\textsuperscript{157} arceō, -ērē, -uit, ward off
\textsuperscript{158} inimicus, -ī, personal enemy; inimīcōs, hostēs, etc. are in opposition with bonusēs.
\textsuperscript{159} latrō, -ōnis, m., robber, bandit
\textsuperscript{160} foedus, -crīs, n., treaty, bond
6. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF THE CONSPIRATORS

Rem publicam, Quirītēs, 2 vitamque omnium vestrum, bona, 4 fortūnās, coniugēs liberōsque 6 vestibōs, atque hoc domicilium 7 clarissimī imperī, fortūnātissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō 8 die deorum immortalium summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsilīs, periculus meīs, ē flamma 9 atque ferrō ac paene 10 faucibus 11 ūtri ēreptam et vōbis ōnservātam ac restitu­
tam 12 vidētis 13. . . Quae 14 quoniam in senātū illūstrāta, patefacta, comperta 15 sunt per mē, vōbis iam expōnam breviter, Quirītēs, ut 16 et 17 quanta 18 et qua 19 rationē investigāta 19 et comprehēnsa sint, vōs, quī ignōrātis et expectātis, scīre possītis, Principiō, ut 20 Catīlīna paucis ante diēbus 21 ērupti 22 ex urbe, cum sceleris suī sociōs, huiusce 23 nefāriī belli ācerrimōs ducēs, Rōmae reliquisse, semper vigilāvī 24 et prōvidī 25 Quirītēs, quem ad modum 26 in tantīs et tam ab­sconditīs 27 insidīs salvī esse possēmus. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catīlīnam ēciēbam (nōn enim iam vereor huius verbi) invidiam, cum illā 28 magis 29 sit

1 Cicero here tells how, shortly after his first speech against Catiline, he secured the written evidence necessary for the trial and conviction of the conspirators.
2 fellow-citizens, an old word of uncertain origin
3 The Romans regularly used the sg. even when referring to a number of people; we use the pl. "lives."
4 n. pl., good things = goods
5 coniūnx, -iugis, f., wife (cp. coniungō)
6 liberi, -ōrum, children
7 domicilium, -iī, home (cp. domus)
8 hodiernus diēs, this day, today (cp. hodiē)
9 flamma, -ae, flame
10 paene, adv., almost
11 faucēs, -ium, f. pl., jaws; a narrow passage
12 restituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, restore
13 The outline of the sent. is this: Rem publicam (... urbem) amōre deorum (. . . periculiis meīs) ē flamma (... faucibus ūtri) ēreptam (... restitu­
tam) vidētis.
14 conjunctive use of the rel.; n. nom. pl.
15 compērio, -ire, -perī, -pertum, find out
16 introduces possitīs
17 et ... et
18 nom. n. pl., subject of comprehēnsa sint
19 investigō (I), track out, investigate
20 ut + ind., here = ever since
21 before by a few days (abl. of degree of difference, see S.S.) = a few days ago; actually some three weeks before
22 ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst forth
23 hūitus + ce, an intensifying suffix
24 vigilō (I), watch, be vigilant
25 pró-vidēo, foresee, make provision
26 quem ad modum, how
27 abscendītus, -a, -um, hidden
28 illa (invidia)
29 compar. of magnopere
timenda, quod vivus exierit—sed tum cum illum exterminavit volēbam, aut reliquam coniurātorum manum simul aut eos qui restitissent. Ínfirmōs sine illō ac débilēs fōre putābam. Atque ego, ut vidērī, quōs maximō furōre et scelere esse inflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nóbiscum esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eō omnēs diēs noctēsque consūmpsi ut quid agerent, quid mōfīrentur, sentīre ac vidīre. . . . Itaque, ut comperī légātōs Allobrogum bellī Trānsalpīnī et tumultūs Gallicī excitāndī causā, ā P. Lentulō esse sollicitātōs, ēsque in Galliam ad suōs civēs ēodemque itinere cum litterīs mandātīisque ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitemque eīs adīunctum esse. T. Volturciūm, atque huic esse ad Catilīnam datās litterās, facultātem mihi oblātām putāvī ut—quod erat difficīlimum quodque ego semper optābam ab diēs immortālibus—tōta rēs nōn sōlum ā mē sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbis manifestō déprehenderētur.

Itaque hesternō die L. Flaccum et C. Pompīnūm praetōrēs, fortissimōs atque amantissimōs atque amāntissimos rei publicae viros, ad placēret ostendī. Īlī autem, quī omnia dē re pública praeclāra atque egregia sentīrent, sine recūsātiōne ac sine illā morā negotīōm suscepērunt et, cum advesperāsceret, occultō ad pontem Mulvium per-

30 This cl. is a noun cl. in opposition with illa (invidia).
31 tum cum, mere repetition of tum cum above as Cicero starts the sent. over again.
32 exterminō (1), banish (ex + terminus, boundary)
33 aut . . . exitūram (esse) aut . . . fōre putābam
34 reliquis, -a, -um, remaining, the rest of
35 simul, adv., at the same time
36 ex-eō; exitūram (esse)
37 restō, -āre, -stitō, stay behind, remain
38 débilis, -e, helpless, weak
39 = fūtūros esse
40 in eō ut sentīrem et vidīrem quid . . . mōfīrentur: in this that I might see . . . ; the ut-cl. of purpose is in opposition with eō.
41 légātus, -ā, ambassador
42 Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe whose ambassadors had come to Rome to make complaints about certain Roman magistrates.
43 Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, Transalpine
44 tumultūs, -ās, m., uprising
45 Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic
46 excitō (1), excite, arouse
47 Publius Lentulus after having been consul in 71 B.C. was removed from the Senate on grounds of moral turpitude. He was now one of the leading conspirators and at the same time he was holding the office of praetor.
48 sollicitō (1), stir up
49 Gallia, -ae, Gaul
50 mandātum, -i, order, instruction
51 comes, -itis, m., companion
52 ad-iungō
53 Titus Volturcius, an errand-boy for Lentulus
54 facultās, -ātis, f., opportunity
55 quod, a thing which. The antecedent of quod is the general idea in the ut-cl.
56 optō (1), desire
57 manifestō, adv., clearly
58 déprehendō (cp. comprehendō), detect, comprehend
59 hesternō die, yesterday
60 Though praetors were judicial magistrates, they did possess the imperium by which they could command troops.
61 most loving of the state = very patriotic
62 obj. gen.; see App.
63 fīeri, subject of placēret (it was pleasing) used imperially
64 praeclārus, -a, -um, noble
65 egregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished
66 subj. in a characteristic cl.
67 recūsātiō, -ōnis, f., refusal
68 negotīōm, -ī, business, matter
69 advesperāscīt, -erē, -perāvit, impers. inceptive, it is approaching evening (ep. vespers)
70 occultē, adv., secretly
71 pōns, pontis, m., bridge; the Mulvian bridge across the Tiber near Rome
vēnērunt atque ibi in proximīs villīs\textsuperscript{72} ita bipertītō\textsuperscript{73} fuērunt ut Tiberis\textsuperscript{74} inter eōs et pōns interest.\textsuperscript{75} Eōdem\textsuperscript{76} autem et ipsī sine cuiusquam suspiciōne\textsuperscript{77} multōs fortēs virōs ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā\textsuperscript{78} Reātīnā\textsuperscript{79} complūrēs\textsuperscript{80} dēlectōs\textsuperscript{81} adulēscentēs, quōrum operā\textsuperscript{82} ētōr assiduē\textsuperscript{82} in rē publicā, prae-
sidēs\textsuperscript{84} cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim,\textsuperscript{85} tertiā fērē\textsuperscript{86} vigilīā\textsuperscript{87} exactā, cum iam postem Mulvium magnō comitātū\textsuperscript{88} lēgātī Allobrogum ingredi\textsuperscript{89} inciperent ānāque\textsuperscript{88} Volūrtcius, fit in eōs impetus\textsuperscript{91}; ēducuntur\textsuperscript{92} et ab illīs gladiī et ā nostrīs.\textsuperscript{93} Rēs praetōribus erat nōta sōlis, ignōrabātur ā cēterīs. Tum inter-
ventū\textsuperscript{94} Pomptīnī atque Flaccī pugnā\textsuperscript{95} sēdātur.\textsuperscript{96} Litterae, quae cum erant in eō comitātī, integrē\textsuperscript{97} erant in eō comitātī, integrē\textsuperscript{97} signīs praetōribus trāduntur; ipsī, com-
prehēnsī, ad mē, cum iam diūcēsscerēt,\textsuperscript{99} ēducuntur. Atque hōrum om-
nium scelerum improbissīmum\textsuperscript{100} māchinātōrem,\textsuperscript{101} Cimbrum Gabīnīum,\textsuperscript{102} statīm\textsuperscript{103} ad mē nihildum\textsuperscript{104} suspicantem,\textsuperscript{105} vocāvī. Deinde item\textsuperscript{106} acesso-
sīt\textsuperscript{107} L. Statilius, et post eum C. Cēthēgus. Tardissimē\textsuperscript{108} autem Lentulus vēnīt . . .

Senātum frequentēm\textsuperscript{109} celeriter, ut vidītīs, coēgī. Atque interē\textsuperscript{110} statīm admonitū\textsuperscript{111} Allobrogum C. Sulpicium praetōrem, fortēm virum, mīsī quī ex aedibus\textsuperscript{112} Cēthēgī, sī quid tēlorum\textsuperscript{113} esset, efferret\textsuperscript{114}; ex quibus\textsuperscript{115} ille
maximum sīcārum\textsuperscript{116} numerum et gladiōrum extulit.\textsuperscript{117}

Intrōdūxī\textsuperscript{118} Volūrtcius sine Gallīs; fidem pūblicam\textsuperscript{119} iussū\textsuperscript{120} senātūs

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{72} villa, -ae, country house
\item \textsuperscript{73} bipertītō, adv., in two divisions
\item \textsuperscript{74} Tiberīs, -is, m., the Tiber
\item \textsuperscript{75} inter-sum, be between
\item \textsuperscript{76} eōdem, adv., to the same place
\item \textsuperscript{77} suspiciō, -onis, f., suspicion
\item \textsuperscript{78} praefectūra, -ae, prefecture, a city of the Roman al-
lies governed by a Roman prefect
\item \textsuperscript{79} Reātīnus, -a, -um, of Reate, a Sabine town about forty
miles from Rome.
\item \textsuperscript{80} complūrēs, -a, pl. adj., very many
\item \textsuperscript{81} dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select
\item \textsuperscript{82} opera, -ae, help; why abl.?
\item \textsuperscript{83} assiduē, adv., constantly
\item \textsuperscript{84} praesidiō, as a guard, dat. of purpose (S.S.)
\item \textsuperscript{85} interīn, adv., meanwhile
\item \textsuperscript{86} fērē, adv., about, almost; usually follows the word it
modifies
\item \textsuperscript{87} vigilīa, -ae, watch. The night was divided into four
watches.
\item \textsuperscript{88} comitātūs, -ūs, company, retinue. The abl. of accom-
paniment may be used without cum in military ex-
pressions.
\item \textsuperscript{89} ingredior, -gressum, enter on
\item \textsuperscript{90} and together with (them)
\item \textsuperscript{91} impetus, -ūs, attack
\item \textsuperscript{92} ēducuntur . . . gladiī, swords were drawn
\item \textsuperscript{93} nostrīs (virīs)
\item \textsuperscript{94} interventūs, -ūs, intervention
\item \textsuperscript{95} pugna, -ae, fight
\item \textsuperscript{96} sēdō (1), settle, stop (not to be confused with sēdō, sit)
\item \textsuperscript{97} quācumque, quaequecumque, quodcumque, whoever,
whatever
\item \textsuperscript{98} integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole
\item \textsuperscript{99} dilūcēscit, -ere, -lūxit, it grows light, dawn comes
\item \textsuperscript{100} improbus, -a, -um, wicked
\item \textsuperscript{101} māchinātōr, -ōris, m., contriver, plotter
\item \textsuperscript{102} Cimber Gabīnīus
\item \textsuperscript{103} statīm, adv., immediately
\item \textsuperscript{104} nihildum, nothing yet
\item \textsuperscript{105} suspicor (1), suspect
\item \textsuperscript{106} item, adv., likewise
\item \textsuperscript{107} accessor, -ere, -tī, -tum, summon
\item \textsuperscript{108} tardē, adv., slowly
\item \textsuperscript{109} frequentūs, gen. -entīs, crowded, full
\item \textsuperscript{110} interē, adv., meanwhile
\item \textsuperscript{111} admonitus, -ūs, warning, suggestion
\item \textsuperscript{112} aedēs, -ium, f. pl., house
\item \textsuperscript{113} telum, -i, weapon; tēlorum is gen. of whole with quid:
anything of weapons = any weapons
\item \textsuperscript{114} rel. cl. of purpos.: quī = ut is
\item \textsuperscript{115} Antecedent is aedēbus.
\item \textsuperscript{116} sēca, -ae, dagger
\item \textsuperscript{117} effectō: ex-ferō
\item \textsuperscript{118} intro-dūcō = Eng. introduce
\item \textsuperscript{119} promise of protection in the name of the state
\item \textsuperscript{120} iussus, -ūs, command
\end{itemize}
dedī, hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret. Tum ille dīxit, cum vix122 sē ex magnō timōre recreāsset,123 ā P. Lentulo sē habēre ad Catilinam mandāta et litterās ut servōrum praesidio āterētur,124 ut ad urbem quam primum125 cum exercitiō accēderet; id126 autem eō cōnsiliō ut,127 cum urbem ex128 omnibus partibus, quem ad modum129 discrīptum distribūtumque erat,130 incendissent131 caedere132 infinitum133 cīvīm fecissent, praestō134 esset ille135 quī et fugiēntēs exciperet136 et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus consiungeret.137

Introductī autem Gallī iūs iūrandum138 sībi et litterās ab Lentulo, Cethēgō, Statiliō ad suam gentem datās esse dīxērunt atque īta sībi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praescrīptum139 ut equitātum140 in Italiam quam primum mittērent141... Ac nē longum sit.142 Quirītēs, tabellās143 prōferri144 iussimus quae ā quōque dīcēbantur datae.145 Primum ostendimus Cethēgō signum; cognōvit. Nōs īnum146 incīdimus147, īlegimus. Erat scripĭum ipsūs148 manū Allobrogum senātūr et populō sēscī149 quae eōrum lēgātūs cōnfīrmāsset150 factūrum esse; ōrāre ut ītem īlli facerent quae sībi eōrum lēgātī recēpissent. Tum Cethēgus (quī paulō151 ante aliquid tamen dē gladiōs ac sīcis, quae apud ipsum erant...
Loci Immortalī
deprehēnsa, respondisset dixissetque sē semper bonōrum ferrāmen-
tōrum studīōsum (fuisse) recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus atque abiectus cōnsciēntiā, repente conticuit.

Introductus est Statīlius; cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātēs sunt tabellae in eandem fērē sententiam; cōnssessus est.

Turn ostendī tabellas Lentulō, et quaesīvī cognoscerelne signum. Ad-
nuit ... Leguntur eadem ratione ad senatum Allobrogum populumque litterae. SI quid de hiīs dIcere velī, fCell, potestatem. Atque iīl prīnlo quīm negavit. Poste autem aliquanto, toto iam indicio exposito atque edito, surrexit; quaesīvīt a Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs, quam ob rem domum suam venissent, itemque a Volturciō. Qui cum illi breviter constanterque respondissent per quem ad eum quotiens venissent, quaesissent ab eo nihilne secum de rans Sibyllīnīs locutus, tum ille subitē, scelere quanta conscientiae vis esset ostendit. Nam cum id posset infiēri, repente praeter opfnionem omniī confessus est ...

Gabīnius deinde introductus, cum prīmō impudenter respondere coe-
pisset, ad extremum nihil ex eīs quae Gallīnsimulabant negavit.

Ac mihi quīm, Quīrītēs, cum ilīa certissīmā visā sunt argumenta atque indicia scelerīs, tabellae, signa, manūs, dēnique īnīs cuiusquī confessio, tum multō certiora iīa, color, ocūlī, vultūs, taciturnitas. SIC
enim obstupuerant, sē terram intuebantur, sē fūrim non numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliis indicārī sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

Indicīūs expositūs atque ēditūs. Quīrītēs, senātum cōnsulūm dē summmā rē públicā quid fieri placēret. Dictae sunt ā prīncipibus ācerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, qūs senātus sīneūs sīneūs varietāte dēscūtus . . .

Quibus prō tantūs rēbus, Quīrītēs, nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis, nūllum īsignē honōris, nūllum monumentum laudīs postulō praeter quam huius diēī memoriam sempiternam . . .

Vōs, Quīrītēs, quoniam iam est nox, venerāt Ilovem illum custōdēm huius urbīs urbīs urbīs ac tectā discēdite; et ea, quamquam iam est perficulum dēpulsum, tamen aeque ac priōre nocte custōdīs vigilīsque défendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit ut in perpetuā pāce esse possītīs prōvidēbō. (Cicero, In Catilīmān Orātiō III, excerpts)

Dé VĪTĀ ET MORTE (7–9)

7. SOCRATES’ “EITHER-OR” BELIEF

Quae est igitur eius orātiō quī facit eum Plató ēsum apud iūdicēs iam morte multātum?

“Magna mē,” inquit “spēs tenet iūdicēs, bene mīhi ēvenīre quod mittar ad mortem. Necesse est enim sit alterum dē dūbōs, ut aut sēnsus omnēs omnēs mors auferat aut in alium quendam locum ex hīs locīs morte migrētur. Quam ob rem, sīve sēnsus exstinguētur morsque eī somnō similēs est quī nōn numquam etiam sīne vīsī somniōrum plācātissimam quiē-

obstupēscō, -ere, -stupūt, become stupefied, be thunderstruck
intueor, -ēri, -tūtus sum, look at
indicō (1), accuse (ep. indicium, n. 165 above)
cōnsulō, -ere, -sulū, -sultum, consult, ask advice of highest interest of the state
varietās, -ātēs, f., variation
īsigne, -is, n., sign, symbol
postulō (1), request, demand except
 sempiternus, -a, -um, eternal
 vēnerō (1), worship
tēctum, -ī, roof; house
quamquam, conj., although
dēpellō, drive off, avert
equally as = just as

“Apology,” Socrates’ defense of his life before the jury that finally condemned him to death.
quā . . . ēsum, which Plato represents him as using; quā, abl. with the participē ēsum
multā, (1), punish, sentence
cē-venīō, turn out; impers. inf. in ind. state.
subordinate cl. in ind. state.
necesse, indecl. adj., (it is) necessary
Supply ut before sit: that there be one of two possibilities, with the ut . . . migrētur cl. in apposition with dūbōs
aut . . . aut
migrō (1), depart, migrate; migrātur as impers. pass., one departs
quārē
vīsum, -ī, vision
somnium, -īi, dream
plācētus, -a, -um, peaceful

As part of his demonstration that death is not an evil, Cicero cites Socrates’ views as given in Plató’s
tem adfert, dī bonī, quid lucrī est ēmōri\textsuperscript{15}? Aut quam multī diēs reperītī post-
unt quī tāli nocī antepōnantur? Cui sī similis futūra est\textsuperscript{16} perpetuitās\textsuperscript{17}
onmis cōnsequentis\textsuperscript{18} temporis, quīs\textsuperscript{19} mē beātior?

"Sin\textsuperscript{20} vēra\textsuperscript{21} sunt quae dicuntur, migrātiōnem\textsuperscript{22} esse mortem in cās órās\textsuperscript{23}
quās quī\textsuperscript{24} ē vitā excessērunt\textsuperscript{25} incolunt,\textsuperscript{26} id multō\textsuperscript{27} iam beātīus est . . . Haec
peregrīnātiō\textsuperscript{28} mediocris vōbis vidērī potest? Ut vērō colloqui\textsuperscript{29} cum Orpheeō, Mūsaēō,\textsuperscript{30} Homērō, Hēsiodō\textsuperscript{31} liceat, quantī\textsuperscript{32} tandem aestimātīs\textsuperscript{33}. . . . Nec
enim cuīquam\textsuperscript{34} bonā māli\textsuperscript{35} quīcquām ēvenīre potest nec vīvō nec mortuō\textsuperscript{36} . . .

"Sed tempus est iam hinc\textsuperscript{37} abīre mē, ut moriar, vōs, ut vitam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī ilnmo rīes
sciunt; hominem quidem scīre arbitrārī nēminem."\textsuperscript{(Cicero, Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs 1.40.97–1.41.99, ex-
cerpts)}

\textbf{8. A MORE POSITIVE VIEW ABOUT IMMORTALITY\textsuperscript{1}}

Artīor\textsuperscript{2} quam solēbat\textsuperscript{3} somnus (mē) complexus est\textsuperscript{4} . . . (et) Āfrīcānus sē
ostendit ea ēormā\textsuperscript{5} quae mihi ex imagīne\textsuperscript{6} eius quam ex ipsō erat notōr.\textsuperscript{7}
Quem ubi agnōvī,\textsuperscript{8} equidem cohörresco,\textsuperscript{9} . . . quaesīvī tamen vīleretne ipse et
Paulus\textsuperscript{10} pater et aliī quos nos exstīnctī\textsuperscript{11} arbitrārī mur.

"Immō vērō," inquit, "hī vitvunt quī ē corporum vincīs tamquam ē car-

1. In these excerpts Scipio Africanus Minor (the Younger, hero of the Third Punic War in 146 b.c.)
tells how the deceased Scipio Africanus Maior (the Elder, hero of the Second Punic War who defeated
Hannibal in 202 b.c.) appeared to him in a dream and discoursed on the nature of life here and here-
after.

2. artus, -a, -um, deep (sleep); narrow

3. solēbat (esse)

4. compōector, -i, -plexus sum, embrace

5. abl. of description

6. imagō, -inis, f., image; here = portrait mask of an
ancestor. The Imagīniēs of a Roman patrician's an-
cestors were displayed in the atrium of the house.

7. nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar

8. cognoscō (cp. cognōscō), recognize

9. cohorresco, -ere, -horrui, shudder

10. L. Aemilius Paulus, father of Africanus Minor

11. extīnctōs (esse): extīnctūō
cere\textsuperscript{13} ēvolāvērunt\textsuperscript{13}; vestra vērō quae dicitur vita mors est. Quīm\textsuperscript{14} tū aspicis ad tē venientem Paulum patrem?"

Quem ut vīdī, equidem vīm\textsuperscript{15} lacrimārum prōfūdī. Ille autem mē complexus\textsuperscript{16} atque õsculāns\textsuperscript{16} fērē\textsuperscript{17} prohibēbat. Atque ego ut prīmum\textsuperscript{18} fētū\textsuperscript{19} repressō\textsuperscript{20} loqui posse coepī, "Quaesō,\textsuperscript{21} inquam, "pater sānctissime\textsuperscript{22} atque optīme, quoniam haece est vita, ut Africanum audiō dicere, quid moror\textsuperscript{23} in terrīs? Quīm\textsuperscript{24} hūc\textsuperscript{25} ad vōs venīre properō\textsuperscript{26}?

"Nōn est ita,\textsuperscript{27} inquit ille. "Nisi enim deus is,\textsuperscript{28} cūius hoc templum\textsuperscript{29} est omne quod cōspicis,\textsuperscript{30} istīs tē corporis custōdiōs līberāverit, hūc tībi aditus\textsuperscript{31} patēre nōn potest. Hominēs enim sunt hāc lēge\textsuperscript{32} generātī,\textsuperscript{33} quī tuērentur\textsuperscript{34} illum globum\textsuperscript{35} quem in hōc templō medium vidēs, quae terra dicitur; īisque animus datus est ex illīs semipternīs ignibus quae sidera et stellās vocātīs . . .

Quārē et tībi, Pūblī,\textsuperscript{37} et piēs omnībus retīnedus\textsuperscript{38} est animus in custōdiā corporis, nec iniussū\textsuperscript{39} eius ā quō ille\textsuperscript{40} est vōbīs datus ex hominum vītā mi-grandum est, nē mūnus\textsuperscript{41} hūmānum adsignatūm\textsuperscript{42} ā dēo dēfugisse\textsuperscript{43} videāminī . . . Iūstitiam\textsuperscript{44} cole\textsuperscript{45} et pietātem,\textsuperscript{46} quae cum sit magna\textsuperscript{47} in parentibus et propinquīs,\textsuperscript{48} tum\textsuperscript{49} in patriā maxima est. Ea vīta via est in caelum et in hunc coetum\textsuperscript{50} eōrum quī iam vīxerunt et corpore laxātī\textsuperscript{51} illum incolunt locum . . . quem vōs, ut ā Graīs accēpistis, orbem lacteum,\textsuperscript{52} nuncupātis.\textsuperscript{53} . . .

\textsuperscript{12} carcer, -eris, n., prison
\textsuperscript{13} ē-volō (1), fly away; not to be confused with volō, velle
\textsuperscript{14} quīn aspicis: why, don’t you see?
\textsuperscript{15} vim = cōpiam
\textsuperscript{16} õsculor (1), kiss
\textsuperscript{17} hēvō, -ēre, hēvē, hēvum, weep
\textsuperscript{18} ut prīmum, as soon as
\textsuperscript{19} fētūs, -īs, noun of fētō, n. 17 above
\textsuperscript{20} re-prīmō (prenō)
\textsuperscript{21} quaesō, -ere, commonly exclamatory: I beg you!, pray tell!, please
\textsuperscript{22} sānctus, -a, -um, holy
\textsuperscript{23} moror (1), delay, wait
\textsuperscript{24} hūc, adv., to this place, here
\textsuperscript{25} properō (1), hasten
\textsuperscript{26} order = is deus
\textsuperscript{27} templum, -ī, sacred area, temple
\textsuperscript{28} cūius . . . cōspicis: whose this temple is or to whom belongs this temple—everything which you behold. Apparently, as he says hoc templum, he makes a sweeping gesture with his arm to indicate the universe and then adds omne quod cōspicis to make this even clearer. cōspiciō = aspicīō
\textsuperscript{29} aditus, -ās, approach, entrance
\textsuperscript{30} abl. of accordance: in accordance with this law, on this condition
\textsuperscript{31} generō (1), create
\textsuperscript{32} iucor, -ēri, tūitus sum, watch, protect. Why subj.?
\textsuperscript{33} globus, -ī, sphere, globe
\textsuperscript{34} i.e., hominibus
\textsuperscript{35} Pūblīus, praenomen (first name) of Africam Minor
\textsuperscript{36} re-tineō, retain, preserve
\textsuperscript{37} iniussū, abl. as adv., without the command (of); cp. iussū
\textsuperscript{38} ille (animus)
\textsuperscript{39} mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service
\textsuperscript{40} adsignō (1), assign
\textsuperscript{41} dē-fugiō, flee from, avoid
\textsuperscript{42} iūstitia, -ae, justice (cp. iūstus)
\textsuperscript{43} colō, -ere, -ui, cultum, cultivate, cherish
\textsuperscript{44} pietās, -tātis, f., loyalty, devotion
\textsuperscript{45} important
\textsuperscript{46} propinquīs, -ī, relative
\textsuperscript{47} here = surely
\textsuperscript{48} coetus, -ūs, gathering, company
\textsuperscript{49} laxō (1), set free
\textsuperscript{50} orbīs (-īs) lactēs (-ī), m., the Milky Way (orb), which Cleero here says is a term received from the Greeks (ut ā Graīs, i.e. Graecis, accēpistis), who called it galaxias kyklos (= lactēs orbīs); cp. our word galaxy.
\textsuperscript{51} nuncupātis (1) = appellō
Et ille, "Tū vērō . . . sīc habētō nōn esse tē mortālem, sed corpus hoc; nec enim tuīs es quem fōra īsta dēclārat, sed mēns cuiusque est quisque, nōn ea fīgūra quae digitō dēmōnstrārī potest. Deum tē igitur scītō esse; siquidem deus est qui viget, qui sentit, qui meminit, qui prōvidet, qui tam regit et moderatūr et movet id corpus cui praepositus est quām hunc mundum ille prīnceps deus." (Cicero, excerpts from Somnium Scipionis 2ff. = Dē Rē Pūblickā 6.10 ff.)

9. ON CONTEMPT OF DEATH

Sed quid ducēs et prīncēs nōminem cum legiōnēs scribit Catō sæpe alacres in eum locum profectus unde rēditurās. Se non arbitrarentur?


... Admoneō ut aliquid etiam de hūnā hōmūl et sepulcrā dicendum . . . Sōcratēs, rogatus a Ćritōn quem ad modum sēlpandi vellet, "Multam vero," inquit, "operam, amīcī, frūstrā consūmpsi.
Critónē enim nostrō nōn persuāsī mē hinc āvolātūrum,32 neque meī33 quicquam relictūrum34 . . . Sed, mihi crēde, (Critō), nēmō mē vestrum,35 cum hinc excesserō,36 cōsequētur.37 . . .

15 Dūrior Diogenēs38 Cynicus prōici39 sē iußit inhumātūm.40 Tum amīcī, "Volucribusne41 et ferīs42?" "Minimē43 vērō," inquit; "sed bacillum44 prop­ter45 mē, quō abīgam,46 pōnitōte.47" "Quī48 poteris?" illī; "nōn enim sentiēs." "Quid igitur mihi fērārum laniātūs49 oberit50 nihil sentiēntī51?" (Cicero, Tus­culānae Disputationēs 1.42.101–43.104, excerpts)

10. LITERATURE: ITS VALUE AND DELIGHT'

Quaerēs ā nōbīs, Grattī, cūr tantō opere2 hōc hominē dēlectēmur.3 Quia4 suppeditāt5 nōbīs ubī6 et animus ex hōc fōrēnsī7 strepītā8 relictūtā9 et aūrēs conviciō10 dēfessae11 conquisca­12 . . . Quārē quis tandem mē repre­hendat,13 aut quis mihi ūrē14 suspēn­3 seat, with prōici understood
45 here = near
46 abīgā, -ere, -ēgī, -ēctum, drive away; sc. volucrēs et ferās. Why subj.? 47 fut. imperative = you shall put
48 quī, adv., how?
49 laniātūs, -ās, lacerating
50 obsum, -esse, - fuī, - futūrus, be against, hurt. Why does oberit have the dat. mihi?
51 sentiēntī modifies mihi and has nihil as its obj.
10
1 In the course of a speech defending the citizenship of the poet Archias against the charges of a certain Grattius, Cicero pronounced one of the world's fin­est encomiums on the inestimable value and delight of literature.
2 tantō opere, so greatly (cp. magnopere)
3 homine, the poet Archias.

aliōs voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt; tempestivōs convivīs; quantum dēnique alveōlō, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sūmpserō? Atque hoc ideō mihi concēdentum est magis quod ex hīs studiīs haec quo crēscit orātiō et facultās, quae, quantacumque est in mē, numquam amītōrum periculis dēfuit . . .

Pλēnī omnēs sunt libri, plēnae sapientium vocēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebris omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet. Quam multās nobīs imaginēs—nōn sōlum ad intuendum, vērum etiam ad imitandum—fortissimōrum virōrum expressās scriptōres et Graecī et Latīnī reliquitur! Quōs ego mihi semper in administrandā re pública proponens rectorum quantumumque, quantumque, quantumque, however exemplum; exemplorum lúmen, vetustās; quae iacerent in alveolō, tenuīs, ball tribuo, concedo, verum, equītās, etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum Vītorum doctrinae, tum illud nesciō quid praecellārum ac singularē solēre exsistere . . .

21 requīes, -ētis, acc. requītem or requiem, rest  
22 concēdō, grant, concede  
23 tribuō, -ere, -ērī, -ērum, allot  
24 tempestivus, -a, -um, timely; here = early, beginning in the afternoon so as to be conveniently prolonged.  
25 convivium, -iī, banquet  
26 alveolus, -ī, gaming board  
27 pīla, -ae, ball (cp. pilē)  
28 tanton (temporum) . . . quantum, as much . . . as  
29 ego-met, emphatic form of ego  
30 re-colō, -ere, -ōrī, -cultum, renew  
31 sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmpsum, take  
32 ideō, adv., for this reason, therefore  
33 facultās, -tātis, f., skill. Combine with orātiō and translate: this oratorical skill.  
34 quantacumque, -acumque, -uncumque, however great  
35 dē-sum, be lacking  
36 exemplum, -ī, example; exemplōrum also goes with plēnī and plēnae.  
37 vetustās, -ītis, f., antiquity  
38 tenebrae, -ārum, darkness  
39 lūmen, -inis, n., light  
40 imāgō, -īnis, f., portrait, picture  
41 intueor, gaze on, contemplate  
42 vērum, conj., but  
43 imitōr (1), imitate  
44 ex-primo (prēmō), describe, portray  
45 administrō (1), manage  
46 pró-pōnō, put forward, set before; próponēns has quās as direct obj. and mihi as indirect obj.  
47 cōgitātiō, -onis, f., thought; cp. cōgitō  
48 excellēns, gen. -entis, superior, remarkable  
49 cōnfirmō (1), mold  
50 quīspiam, quaequīs, quidquīs, someone  
51 prōdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum, transmit, reveal  
52 doctrīna, -ae, instruction  
53 efferō, -ferre, extulit, elītum, lift up, extol  
54 erūdiō (4), educate, train  
55 cōnfirmō (1), assert  
56 valuīse ad laudem, to be powerful toward praise = to have led to praise; inf. in ind. state.  
57 idem ego, I the same person = I also  
58 maintain  
59 eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary  
60 illustris, -e, noble, brilliant  
61 accēdō here = be added  
62 cōnfirmātiō, -onis, f., molding, shaping  
63 nesciō quis, nesciō quid, indef. pron., lit. I know not who/what = some (uncertain) person or thing; the nesciō remains unchanged in this phrase.  
64 singularis, -e, unique, extraordinary  
65 existō, -ere, -stītī, arise, appear, exist
Quod si non hic tautus fructus ostenderetur, et si ex his studiis delictatio sula peteretur, tamen, ut opinor, hanc animi remissionem humainissam ac liberalinganam iudicaretis. Nam ceterae neque temporalis neque aetatis omnium neque locorum; at haec studia adulcetiam alunt, sennectatem oblectant, res secundas ornant, adversis perfugium ac solacium praebent, delectant domi, non impediant foris, pernoctant, rusticantur. (Cicero, Pro Archia 6.12–7.16, excerpts).

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO (11-15)

11. DEATH OF A PUPPY (EXAMPLE OF AN Omen)


12. TOO CONSCIENTIOUS (AN EXAMPLE OF IRONY)

Est huic finitimum dissimulatio cum honesto res appellatur: ut cum Afridinus censors tribus lovebat eunum centurionem qui in...
Paulī pugnā nōn adfuerat,9 cum ille sē custōdiae causā diceret in castrīs10 remānsisse quaereretque cūr ab eō notārētur11: “Nōn amō,” inquit, “nīmium diligentēs.” (Cicero, Dē Orātōre 2.67.272)

13. QUAM MULTA NŌN DESĪDERŌ!

Sōcratēs, in pompā1 cum magna vīs2 aurī3 argentīque4 fērretūr, “Quam multa nōn désiderō!” inquit.

Xenocratēs,5 cum légātī ab Alexandrō6 quīnquāgintā7 eī talentā8 attulissent (quaerat pecūnīa temporibus illīs, Athēnīs praesertim,9 maxima), ab-dūxīt légātōs ad cēnām in Acadēmīam10; īs apposuit11 tantō quod satis esset, nūlō applicātū.12 Cum postrīdī13 rogāret eum cui numerārī14 iūberet, “Quid? Vōs hesternā,”15 inquit, “cēnālū16 nōn intellectus mē pecūnīā nōn egere?” Quōs cum trīstōrēs vidisset, trīgintā17 minās18 accēpit nē aspernārī19 rēgis liberālītātem20 vidēretur.

At vērō Diogenēs21 līberius,22 ut23 Cynicus, Alexandrō rogantī ut diceret sī quid opus24 esset: “Nunc quidem paululum,”25 inquit, “a soie. 26” Offerērat27 vidēlicet28 aprīcántī.29 (Cicero, Tusculānæ Disputationes 5.32.91-92)

14. WHAT MAKES A GOOD APPETITE

Dārēus1 in fuga2 cum aquam turbidam3 et cadāveribus4 inquinatam5 bi-bisset, negāvit umquam sē bibisse inuacyndius. Numquam vidēlicet sitiēns6

---

8 pugna, -ae, battle
9 ad-sum, be present
10 castra, -ōrum, camp
11 notō (1), mark, here with the nota censōria placed opposite a citizen’s name to indicate his removal from the citizen list in disgrace.

13
1 pompa, -ae, parade
2 vīs here = quantity (cp. cōpia)
3 aurum, -i, gold
4 argentum, -i, silver
5 Xenocratēs, -is, pupil of Plato and later head of the Academy
6 Alexander, -drī
7 indecl. adj., fifty
8 talentum, -ī, a talent, a large sum of money
9 praesertim, adv., especially
10 Acadēmīa, -ae, the Academy, a gymnashium in a grove just outside of Athens; Here Plato established his school, which might be called the first European university
11 ap-pōnō, place near, serve
12 apparātus, -ūs, equipment, splendor
13 postrīdī, adv., on the next day
14 numerō (1), count, pay out; sc. pecūnīam as subject of numerārī
15 hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday
16 cēnāla, -ae, diminutive of cēna
17 indecl. adj., thirty
18 mīna, -ae, a Greek coin
19 aspernōr (1), spurn, despise
20 liberālītas, -tātis, f. generosity
21 L.l. 9 n. 38
22 līberus, adv., freely, boldly
23 as a Cynic, being a Cynic
24 opus (indecl.) est, is necessary: if he needed anything
25 paululum, adv., a little
26 i.e., you are blocking my sunlight
27 officiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum + dat., be in the way, obstruct
28 vidēlicet, adv. (you may see), clearly, evidently
29 aprīcor (1), sun oneself

14
1 Dārēus III, defeated by Alexander the Great in 331 B.C. The spelling Dārēus reflects later Greek pronunciation.
2 fugā, -ae, flight
3 turbidus, -a, -um, turbid, roiled
4 cadāver, -eris, n., corpse (cp. cadaverous)
5 inquinatūs, -a, -um, polluted
6 sitiō (4), be thirsty
biberat. Nec ēsuriēns 7 Ptolemaeus 8 ēderat, 9 cuī peragranti 10 Aegyp-
tum, 11 comitibus 12 nōn cōnsecūtis 13 cibārius 14 in casā pānis datus esset, nihil
vīsum est īllo pāne iūcundius. Sōcratem ferunt, 15 cuī usque ad vesperum
contentius 16 ambulāret quaesītumque esset 17 ex eō quārē id faceret, re-
spondisse sē, quī 18 melius cēnāret, obsōnāre 19 ambulandō fāmēm. 20

Quid? Vīctum 21 Lacedaemoniārum in philitiās 22 nōnne vidēmus? Ubi 23
cum tyrannus cēnāvisset Dionysius, negāvit sē iūrō 24 ēllo nigrō quod cēnē 25
caput erat dēlectātum. 26 Tum īs quī illa coxerat, 27 “Minimē mīrum 28;
condimenta 29 enim dēfuērunt. 30” “Quae tandem?” inquit ille, “Labor in
vēnātūrō, 31 sūdō, 32 cursus ad Eurotām, 33 famēs, sītīs. 34 Hīs enim rēbus Lacedae-
moniārum epulae 35 condituntur. 36”

Cōnfer sūdantēs, 37 ructantēs, 38 refertōs 39 epulīs tamquam opīmōs
bovēs. 40 Tum intellegēs quī voluptātem maximē sequantur, eōs minimē cōn-
sequī 41; iūcunditātemque 42 vīctus 43 esse in desiderio, 44 nōn in sātietāte. 45 (Cic-
ero, Tusculānae Disputātōnēs 5.34.97–98 and 100, excerpts)

15. THEMISTOCLES; FAME AND EXPEDIENCY

Themistocēs fertur1 Seriphio2 cui dam in
iīrgiō 3 respondisse, cum ille
dīxisset nōn eum suā sed patriae gloriā splendōrem 4 assecutum 5; “Nee her-

7 ēsuriō (4), be hungry
8 Which Egyptian king of this name is unknown.
9 edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, cat (cp. edible)
10 per-agrō (1), wander through
11 Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt
12 comes, -itis, m., companion
13 cōn-sequor
14 cibārius ... pānis, ordinary (coarse) bread; pānis, -is, m.
15 ferō here = report, say
16 contentē, strenuously, adv. from contendō, struggle
17 it had been asked of him, he had been asked
18 quō, regularly used instead of ut to introduce a purp.
containing a compar.
19 obsōnō (1), buy provisions, here = provide (an ap-
petite)
20 famēs, -is, f., hunger
21 vīctus, -ūs, living, mode of living, food
22 philitia, -ōrum, public meals (for Spartan citizens of
military age)
23 ubi = among the Lacedaemonians
24 iūs, iūris, n., soup
25 dat. of purp. (S.S.)
26 dēlectātum (esse)
27 coquō, -ere, coxi, coctum, cook (cp. concoct)
28 mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising
29 condimentum, -i, seasoning, condiment
30 dē-sum, be lacking
31 vēnātus, -ūs, hunting
32 sūdō, -ōris, m., sweat
33 at the Eurotas (Eurotās, -ae, m., river on which
Sparta was located)
34 sītīs, -is, f., thirst
35 epulae, -ārum, banquet
36 condō (4), season, spice
37 sūdō (1), sweat
38 ructō (1), belch
39 refertus, -a, -um, stuffed, crammed, + abl.
40 opīnus, -a, -um, fertile, fat; bōs, bovis, m., ox
41 cōn-sequor, follow up, gain
42 iūcunditās, -tātis, f., pleasure, charm
43 n. 21 above; here = food
44 dēsiderium, -iī, desire
45 sātietās, -tātis, f., abundance, satisfy

15

(For more about Themistocles and Aristides see selections 19 and 20 below.)
1 is said, is reported
2 Seriphius, -iī, inhabitant of Seriphos, a small island in
the Aegean Sea.
3 iūrgium, -iī, quarrel
4 splendor, -ōris, m., distinction, honor
5 as-sequor = ad-sequor, gain, attain
cule, inquit, "si ego Seriphus essen, nec tū, si Athēniensis essēs, clārus umquam fuissēs." (Cicero, Dē Senectūte, 3.8)

Themistocles, post victoriām eius bellī quod cum Persēs fuit, dixit in cōntīōne sē habēre cōnsilium reō publicae salutātēs, sed id scīrī nōn opus esse. Postulāvit ut aliquem populus daret quīcum communicaret. Datūs est Aristidēs. Huic ille (dixit) classem Lacedaemoniorum, quae subjecτa esset ad Gythēum, clam posse, quō facto frangē Lacedaemoniorum opēs necesse esset. Quod Aristidēs cum audīisset, in contiōnem magna exspectātiōne vēnit dīxitque perutilis esse consilium quod Themistocles adferret, sed minime honestum. Haque Athenienses, quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem pulverunt, totanque eam rem, quam nē audierant quidem, auctōre Aristidē repudiāverunt. (Cicero, Dē Officiīs 3.11.48-49)

16. GET THE TUSCULAN COUNTRY HOUSE READY

Tullius Terentiae Suae


---

6 hercule, a mild oath, by Hercules
7 Athēniensis, -e, Athenian
8 Persae, -ārum, m., the Persians
9 cōntīōne, -ōnis, f., assembly
10 salūtāris, -e, salutary, advantageous; modifies cōnsilium
11 opus est, it is necessary
12 postulō (1), demand, request
13 quīcum, qui = old abl. form + cum, with whom
14 communicō (1), communicate, share
15 huic = the last mentioned, Aristides
16 clāssis, -is, f., fleet
17 sub-dūcō, beach; subj. because subordinate cl. in ind. state. (see S.S.). Because of their shallow draft and small size, ancient ships were more often beached than anchored.
18 Gythēum, -i, the port of Sparta
19 clam, adv., secretly
20 incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set on fire, burn
21 frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, crush
22 necesse (indecl. adj.) est, it is necessary
23 exspectātiō, -ōnis, f., expectation, abl. of attendant circumstance
24 per-ūtiles, -e, very useful, advantageous
25 auctōre Aristidē, abl. abs.
26 repudiō (1), reject

1 A homely little letter which serves as an antidote to Cicero's usually lofty concerns.
2 Tullius (Cicero)
3 salūtem dicit
4 Terentia, -ae, wife of Cicero
5 Tusculānum, -i, Tuscan estate (praedium) southeast of Rome in Latium
6 ventūros (esse)
7 Nonēs, -arum, the Nones were the seventh day in March, May, July, October; the fifth day in other months:
8 postrīdē, adv., the day after
9 cura, ut, take care that
10 Plūrēs, several people
11 fortasse, adv., perhaps
12 com-moror (1), remain
13 lābrum, -i, a wash basin or a bath
14 balneum, -i, bathroom
15 (cura) ut
16 item, adv., likewise
17 valētudō, -inis, f., health
18 necessārius, -a, -um = Eng
19 Kalendēs Octōbrībus, on the Kalends of October = October 1st
20 Sent from his estate at Venusia, in Apulia. The year is said to be 47 B.C.
17. LIVY ON THE DEATH OF CICERO

M. Cicerō sub adventum2 triumvirōrum3 cesserat urbe... Prīmō in Tusculānum4 fūgit; inde trānsversī5 itineribus in Formiānum,6 ut ab Caītā7 nāvem cōnsēnsūrus,8 proficiscit. Unde aliiquotēns9 in altum10 pro-vectum,11 cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem12 nā-vis... paτī nōn possēt, taeedium13 tandem eum et fugae14 et vítae cēpit, regressusque15 ad superiōrem villam... “Morīam” inquit, “in patriā saepe servātā.” Sātis cōnstat16 servōs fortīter fidēlīterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmican-dum,17 ipsum dépōnī lectīcam18 et quīetōs19 paτī quod sors20 īnqua21 cōgeret iussisse. Prōminēntī22 ex lec-fīcā praebentīque immōtām cērīcem23 caput praecīsum est.24

Manūs quoque, scripsisse in Antōnium aliiquid exprobrantēs,25 praecidē-runt. Ita relātum caput ad Antōnium, iussūque eis inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs positum,26 ubi ildo cōnsul, saepe cōnsūlāris,27 ubi ēō ipsō annō adversus28 Antōnium... (quanta nūlla umquam hūmāna vōx29) cum ad-mirātiōne30 eloquentiae31 auditus fuerat. Vix attollentēs32 prae lacrimīs oculōs, homīnēs intuerī33 trucīdāta34 membra35 eis poterant. Vīxit trēs et sexāngintā36 annōs... Vir magnus, ācer, memorābilis37 fuit, et in cuius laudēs persequendās38 Cicerōne laudātōre opus39 fuerit.40 (Livy 120.50)

17

1 In 43 B.C.
2 adventum, -īs, arrival
3 triumvirī, -ōrum, commission of three men, the second triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus
4 his Tuscan villa
5 trānsversus, -a, -um, transverse, crosswise
6 Formiānum, -ī, estate near Formiae, which was nearly 100 miles south of Rome on the Appian Way near the sea
7 Caītā, -ae, a sea-coast town not far from Formiae
8 as he was going to board ship (cōnsēndō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, ascend)
9 aliiquotēns, adv., several times
10 altum, -ī, the deep, the sea
11 prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward; propectum (having sailed out) goes with ēum below
12 iactātiō, -ōnis, f., tossing
13 taeedium, -ī, weariness, disgust
14 fugā, -ae, flight; fugāc depends on taeedium
15 regredior, -i, -gressus sum, go back
16 cōnstat, it is agreed
17 dīmico (1), fight (to the finish)
18 lec-fīcā, -ae, litter
19 (cōs) quīetōs, them quiet, subject of pātī; but we say: them quietly. (quīetūs, -a, -um)
20 sors, sortīs, f., lot
21 īnqua, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust (in-aequus)
22 prōminēntī, -ēre, -ūi, jut out, step forth; (ē) prōminēntī, for him stepping forth = as he stepped forth, dat. of ref. or interest
23 cervīx, -īcis, f., neck
24 praecidē-runt
25 exprobrō (1), reproach, charge: (militēs, exprobrantēs (manūs) scripsisse aliiquid, manūs praecidē-runt
26 posītum, sc. est
27 cōnsūlāris, -īs, m., ex-consul
28 adversus, prep. + acc., against
29 quanta... vōx (fuerat), how great no voice had been = greater than any voice had been
30 admirātiō, -ōnis, f. = Eng.
31 eloquentia, -ae, f.; eloquentiae, obj. gen. (S.S.)
32 attollō, -ere, raise, lift
33 intucor, -ēri, -tuitus sum, look at
34 trucīdā (1), cut to pieces, butcher
35 membrum, -ī, member (of the body), limb
36 indecl. adj., sixty
37 memorābilis, -e, remarkable, memorable
38 per-sequor, follow up, set forth
39 opus est + abl. = there is need of (Cicero)
40 fuerit, perf. subj., potential subj., there would be need of
18. MILTIADES AND THE BATTLE OF MARATHON

Eisdem temporibus Persarum rex Dārēus, ex Asia in Europam2 exercitū trāiectō,3 Scythīs4 bellum inferre5 dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in Histrō6 flūmine, quā7 cōpiās trādürceret.8 Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset,9 custōdēs10 reliquit principēs quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide11 dūxerat; quibus singulārum12 urbium perpetua dēderat imperia. Sic enim facillimē putavit sē13 Graecā lingvā loquentēs14 quī Asia m incoherent15 sub suā reten tūrum16 potestāte, sī amīcis suīs oppida17 tuenda18 trādidisset.19 In hōc20 fuit tum numerō Milti adēs.21 Hic, cum crēbrī22 adferrent nūntīi23 male rem gerere Dārēum prēmiqve ā Scythīs, hor tātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā Fortūnā34 datam occāsiōnem liberandae Graeciae dīmittenerent.25

Nam sī cum eīs cōpiās, quās sēcum trānsportārat,26 interīsset Dārēus, nōn sōlum Europam fore27 tūtam,28 sed etiam eōs quī Asia m incoherent Graecī genere29 liberās ā Persārum futūrōs dominiātiōnem30 et perīculō. Id facile efficiēt31 posse32; ponte enim rescissō33 rēgem vel34 hostium fērō vel inopia35 paucīs diēbus interītūrum. Ad hoc consilium cum plērīque36 ac-

---

1 490 B.C., the first major battle of the Persian wars and one of the most illustrious victories in the apparently unending conflict between democracies and autocracies (despotisms): the relatively few Athenians, practically alone, against the hordes of the Persian autocracy.

2 Europā, -ae, Europe

3 trāiectō, -ere, -ēcti, -iectus, transfer

4 Scythae, -ārum, m., the Scythians, a nomadic people of southeastern Europe; Scythīs, dat. with compound vbs.

5 bellum in-ferō (-ferre, -tuī, -lātus), make war upon, + dat.

6 Hister, -trī, the Damube

7 quī, rel. adv. instead of rel. pron., where, by which, referring to pontem

8 trā (= trāns)-duācō. Why the subj. in the rel. cl.?

9 ab-sum, be away, be absent; abcesset, subj. of implied ind. state., the thought in his mind being: “while I shall be away”

10 as guards

11 Ionia and Aeolis, Greek sections of Asia Minor

12 singuli, -ae, -a (pl.), separate, one each

13 sē, acc., subject of reten tūrum (esse)

14 the Greek-speaking peoples, obj. of reten tūrum

15 incolō, -ere, -ūi, inhabit

16 reten tūrum (esse); re-tīneō

17 oppidum, -i, town; occasionally city

18 tuenda, (the towns) to be protected = the protection of the towns (tueor, -ēri, tūtus sum, look at, protect)

19 fut. more vivid condition in ind. state.: eōs retīnebō sī amīcis oppida trādürerō.

20 hōc modifies numerō. Note carefully that a characteristic of Nepos’ style is the fondness for separating modifiers from the words which they modify. Be sure to match up such separated words accurately according to the rules of agreement.

21 Miltiādes, -is, m., Miltiades, Athenian general, hero of Marathon, who many years before the Battle of Marathon had been sent by the Athenians to rule over the Thracian Chersonesus, a peninsula west of the Hellespont.

22 crēber, -hra, -brum, numerous

23 nūntius, -ī, messenger

24 Fortūna is here regarded as a person (deity). Why is ā used?

25 dī-mittō, let go, lose

26 trānsportō (1), transport, take across; trānsportārat = trānsportāverat

27 ind. state. depending on the idea of saying in hortātus est of the preceding sent.; direct form: sī Dārēus interierit, Europā eōs tūta. inter-eō, perish

28 tūtus, -a, -um

29 abl. of specification (S.S.), Greek in race or by race

30 dominiātiōnem, -onis, f. = Eng. dominion

31 ef-ficiō, accomplish

32 still ind. state.

33 rescindō, -ere, rescīdī, rescissum, cut down

34 vel ... vel, either . . . or

35 inopia, -ae, need, privation

36 plērīque, -ārumque, most people, very many (plērusque, -āque, -ānumque, the greater part, very many)
cēderent, Histiaeus37 Mīlēsius . . . [dīxit] adeō38 sē abhorrēre39 ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsīs utilius quam confirmārī40 rēgnum41 Persārum. Huius cum sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miliadēs . . . Chersonēsum reliquit ac rūrsum42 Athēnās dēmigrāvit.43 Cuius44 ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen magnopere est laudanda cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redīset, hortantibus amīcis ut Graeciam redigeret45 in suam potestātem, classem quīngentārum46 nāvium comparāvit47 ēique48 Dātim praefecit49 et Artaphernem,50 ēisque ducentā51 (milia) pedītum,52 decem equītum53 mīlia dēdit—causam interserēns54 sē hostem esse Athēnēniābus quod ēorum auxiliō Iōnes55 Sardīs56 expugnās• sent57 suaque58 prae sistā interfēcissent. Illī praefect59 rēgī,60 classe ad Eu boeam61 appulsā62 celerer Eretriam63 cēpērunt, omēisque eius gentis civēs abreptōs64 in Asiam rēgem mīsērunt. Inde65 ad Atticam66 accessērunt ac suās cópiās in campūm57 Marathōna68 dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō cī citer69 mīlia passuum70 decem.

Hoc tumultū71 Athēnēniēs tam propinquō72 tamque magnō permōtī73 auxiliūm nūsquam74 nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt Phīdippumque,75 cursōrem eius generis quī hemerodromoe76 vocantur, Lacedaemonem77 mīsē-
runt ut nuntiaret quam celerrimō opus esse auxiliō. Domī autem creant decem prætorēs, qui exercitu praecessent, in ipsis Miltiadem; inter quōs magnā fuit contentiō utrum moenibus sē défenderent an obviām furent hostibus aciēque décernerent. Únus Miltiādēs maximē nītēbātur ut prīmō tempore castra fierent.

Hoc tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēnīensibus auxiliō fuit præcter Plataēn­sēs; ea milē mīsīt milītum. Itaque hōrum adventū decem milīa armā­tōrum completā sunt, quae manus mūrabili flagrābat flagrābat pugnāndi cupidī­tāte; quō factum est ut plūs quam collēgae Miltiādēs valēret.


78 opus est + abl. (of means), there is need of, an impers. construction in which opus remains indecl.; opus esse, inf. in ind. state. with auxiliō in abl.
79 creant, historical pres.
80 prætor, -ōris, m., called stratēgoi, generals, by the Athenians
81 praes-sum + dat., in charge of; why subj.?
82 contentiō, -onis, f., controversy
83 obviām (adv.) ire + dat., go to meet
84 aciēs, -ēī, line of battle
85 alone, i.e., of the ten generals
86 nītor, -ī, nīxus sum, strive labor
87 that a camp should be made = to take the field
88 dat. of purp. (S.S.)
89 Plataēn­sēs, -ium, m. pl., the men of Plataea, a city in Boeotia just over the border from Attica
90 milē here = a noun with gen. of whole milītum. This is regular with milīa but uncommon with milē.
91 adventus, -ūs, approach
92 armātī, -ōrum, armed men
93 compleō, -ēre, -plevi, -pletum, fill out, complete
94 mūrābilis, -e, wonderful, extraordinary; modifies cupidī­tāte
95 flagrō (1), burn, be excited
96 because of which = and because of this
97 it happened that
98 collēga, -ae, m., colleague
99 plūs . . . valēret, he had power more than = he had more power or influence than, he prevailed over.
100 valēret, why subj.?
101 locō, place where, no prep. necessary with locō
102 dein = deinde
103 posterō, -a, -um, next following
104 rādīx, -īcis, f., root, base
105 regiō, -onis, f., region
106 instrūtō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctum, draw up (battle line)
107 interlocked word order: aciē instrūtā (in) regiōne nōn aperīssimā; apertūs, -a, -um, open
108 namque, conj., more emphatic form of nam
109 rārus, -a, -um, scattered: there were scattered trees
110 proelium committere, join battle
111 altītūdō, -inis, f., height
112 tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum, cover, protect
113 tractus, -ūs, dragging
114 equitātus, -ūs, cavalry
115 multitūdō, -inis, f., large number
116 claudō, here enclose, surround
117 locum (esse) nōn acquum suēs
118 frētus, -a, -um, + abl., relying on
119 consēgnerēt, -ere, -flixi, -flictum, fight (cp. conflict)
120 eō, adv., on that account
121 prīusquam and antequam, before, + indic. denote an actual fact; + subj. denote anticipation as here: before they could come
122 dat.
Itaque in aciem peditum centum (milia), equitum decem milia prōdūxit proeliumque commīsit. In quō\textsuperscript{123} tantō\textsuperscript{124} plūs\textsuperscript{125} virtūte valuērant Athēniēnēs ut decemplicem\textsuperscript{126} numerum hostium prōfigārint,\textsuperscript{127} adeōque eōs perterrērunt ut Persae nōn castra sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pugnā nihil adhēc\textsuperscript{128} existit\textsuperscript{129} nōbilius\textsuperscript{130}, nūllā enim umquam tam exigua\textsuperscript{131} manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.\textsuperscript{132} (Nepos, Miliādēs 3–5, excerpta)

19. THEMISTOCLES AND THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS\textsuperscript{1}

Themistoclēs\textsuperscript{2} ad (bellum Corcyraeum\textsuperscript{3}) gerendum praetor a populō factus, nōn sōlum praeuerī\textsuperscript{4} bellō sed etiam reliquō tempore fērocīōrem redidit cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia publica, quae ex metallīs\textsuperscript{6} ređībat, largītiōne\textsuperscript{7} magistrātuum\textsuperscript{8} quotannis\textsuperscript{9} interīret,\textsuperscript{10} ille persuāsit populō ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificāretur.\textsuperscript{11} Quā\textsuperscript{12} celerer effectā, prīnum Corcyraeōs frēgit,\textsuperscript{13} deinde maritimōs praedōnēs\textsuperscript{14} cōnsectandō\textsuperscript{15} mare tātum reddidit. In quō\textsuperscript{16} . . . perfūssimōs\textsuperscript{17} bellī nāvālis\textsuperscript{18} fēcit Athēniēnēs. Id quantae salūtī\textsuperscript{19} fuerit universae\textsuperscript{20} Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Persicō.\textsuperscript{21} Nam cum Xerxēs\textsuperscript{22} et māri et terrā\textsuperscript{23} bellum universae īnferret Eũro-pae, cum tantās cōpīs eam invāsīt\textsuperscript{24} quantās neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam. Huius enim classis mīlē et ducentārum nāvium longārum\textsuperscript{25} fuit,
quam duo milia onerariarum sequèbantur. Terrestris autem exercitus septingenta (milia) peditum, equitum quadringenta milia fuèrunt.

Cuius dè adventù cum fâma in Graeciam esset perlàta et maximè


Huius consilii plerisque civitatis dissìpcèbat et in terrâ dimicâr magis placèbat. Itaque missì sunt délecti cum Leònidà, Lacedaemoniorum rège, quì Thermopylàs occupàrent longiusque barbaròs prò-

26 onerariì, -ae (nāvis), transport
27 terrestris exercitus, land army
28 septingentì, -ae, -a, seven hundred
29 quadringentì, -ae, -a, four hundred
30 Though the subject, exercitus, is sg, fuèrunt is pl. according to the idea of plurality which precedes it.
31 adventus, -ùs, approach, arrival
32 per-féò
33 acc. of place to which. At Delphi was the famous oracle of Apollo.
34 acc. supine of cónsulò to express purp. = to consult
35 quìsnam, quidnam, who or what in the world
36 both ind. quest. and deliberative subj.
37 déliberò (1), deliberate; (eòs) déliberantibus, dat.
38 Pythìa, -ae, the Pythian priestess, who gave the response of Apollo
39 ligneus, -a, -um, wooden
40 mūnìo (4), fortify, defend
41 respònsum, -ī, the noun of respondeò, subject of valèret
42 quò (adv) valèret, lit. in what direction this was strong or valid = in what way this applied or what this meant
43 esse. The inf. shows that this is ind. state. with persuádeo and not the more common passive noun cl. introduced by ut: he persuaded (them) that it was the advice of Apollo that they should betake . . .
44 sua, their things = their possessions
45 cum mūrum ligneum, that wooden wall (= the ships)
46 significò (1), signify, mean; significārì, ind. state, depending on a vb. of saying understood
47 ad-dō, -dere, -didì, -ditum, add
48 totidem, indecl. adj., just as many
49 trirèmès, -e, having three banks of oars
50 partim, adv., partly
51 Salamìs, -inis, acc. Salamīna, f, Salamis, island on west coast of Attica; acc. of place to which (islands as well as cities and towns)
52 Troezèn, -ēnīs, acc. Troezènà, f, Trozen, southeastern part of Argolis, across the Saronic Gulf from Athens.
53 déportò (1), carry off
54 the acropolis of the city of Athens.
55 maiòres nātū, those greater in respect to birth = old men, elders
56 sacer, -era, -crum, sacred; sacra, n. pl. sacred vessels, or rites
57 pròcûrò (1), take care of
58 i.e., Themistocles
59 plerisque civitatis, i.e., the allies of the Athenians; dat. with dissìpcèbat
60 dis-placeò
61 dimicārì, imper. pass., lit. that it be fought, but translate that the war be fought. The inf. dimicārì is subject of placèbat.
62 délecòtus, -a, -um, chosen, picked; chosen men
63 Leònidès, -ae, m., Leonidas
64 Thermopylàe, -àrum, Thermopylae, a mountain pass near the southern border of Thessaly
65 occupò (1), seize
66 barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, uncivilized, barbarian (commonly applied by a kind of ethnocentrism to those not of the Greek and Roman civilization)
At classis commune Graeciae trecentarum nāvium, in quā ducentae nāvium adversāriōrum et quī saxa nāvium adversāriōrum Euboeam superasset, ancipitis pretium periculi. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisio discederent et ex adversum Athenas apud Salaminam classem suam constituerent.

At Xerxes, Thermopylēs expugnātus, prōtinus accessit, idquē, nullis dēfendentibus, interfecit sacerdotibus quos in arce invenerat, incendio quem Theō̆misio quemque terrae, cum manere non auderent, et primum hortarentur ut domos suas discederent moenisque se defendant, Themistocles unus restitit et universos esse possent, dispersos testimōnia speciem rebus, idque Eurybiades, regis Lacedaemoniōrum, qui tum summam imperii praeerat, adfirmabat. Quem cum minus quam vellet lovere, noctū de servis suis quern habuit fidélissimum ad regem misit ut eī nūntiaret suis adversāriōrum, quō classiarīs cum manere non sustinerent, eque locō omnēs interiūrent.

Ad classis commune Graeciae trecentarum nāvium, in quā ducentae nāvium adversāriōrum et quī saxa nāvium adversāriōrum Euboeam superasset, ancipitis pretium periculi. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisio discēderent et ex adversum Athenas apud Salaminam classem suam consti tuerent.

At Xerxes, Thermopylēs expugnātus, prōtinus accessit, idquē, nullis dēfendentibus, interfecit sacerdotibus quos in arce invenerat, incendio quem Theō̆misio quemque terrae, cum manere non auderent, et primum hortarentur ut domos suas discederent moenisque se defendant, Themistocles unus restitit et universos esse possent, dispersos testimōnia speciem rebus, idque Eurybiades, regis Lacedaemoniōrum, qui tum summam imperii praeerat, adfirmabat. Quem cum minus quam vellet lovere, noctū de servis suis quern habuit fidélissimum ad regem misit ut eī nūntiaret suis adversāriōrum, quō classiarīs cum manere non sustinerent, eque locō omnēs interiūrent.

332 Wheelock's Latin
20. ARISTIDES THE JUST

Aristidēs,1 Lēsīmachus2 filius, Athēniēnsis, aequeālis3 fērē fuit Themistoclī4 atque cum eō dē prīncipātūrī5 contendit . . . In hīs autem cognitum est quantō6 anūstāret7 ēloquentia innocentiaēst8. Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat9 Aristidēs abstinentiā10 ut ūnus post hominum memoriam . . . cognōmine11 "Īūstus" sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle collabefactus12 testulā13 illā14 exsilīō15 decem annōrum16 multātus est.17

---

1 Aristidēs, -is, m., Athenian statesman and general
2 Lēsīmachus, -i, Lysimachus
3 aequeālis, -is, m., an equal in age, a contemporary
4 Themistoclī, here gen. of possession
5 prīncipātūrī, first ci,
6 abl. of degree of difference (S.S.) depending on the idea of comparison in antūstāret: how much
7 anti-stō, -āre, -stētī, stand before = excel
8 innocentiā, -ae, harmlessness; integrity. Why dat.?
9 excellēbat, -ere, -ui, -cclsum, excel; excellerat: note that quamquam (although) is used with the indic.
10 abstinentiā, -ae, self-restraint, especially in matters involving public funds, uprightness; abstinentiā, abl. of specification (S.S.).
11 cognōmen, -minis, n., here = epithet, appellative. Of the three regular Roman names (praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen) the cognōmen (cp. cognōscō) seems to have originated as a kind of nickname.
12 collabefatūrī, -fēriē, -factūsum, be overthrown, be ruined
13 testulā, -ae, little potsherder; ostracism; testulā abl. of accordance or perhaps means. Look up the interesting history of ostracism, a political safety valve against tyranny.
14 illā, in the unusual position of following its noun = that famous
15 exsilīō, abl. of penalty (= a form of abl. of means)
16 decem annōrum, gen. of description
17 multō (1), punish
Quī quidem cum intellegere hanc reprimī multitudinem nōn posse, cēdensque animadvertisset quendam scribentem ut patriā pellerētur, quæsissent ab eō dēcitur quærē id faceret aut quid Aristidēs commississet cur tantā poenā dignus ducerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre Aristidēn, sed sibi nōn placēre quod tam cupidē labōrāsset ut praeter cēterōs "īustus" appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum legitimām poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxes in Graeciam dēscendit, sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus, populi scītō in patriam restitūtus est.

Interfuit autem pugnae nāvāī apud Salamīna quae facta est priusquam poenā liberārētur. Idem prætor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās in proeliō quō fūsus est (est) barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque interfectus est. Huius aequitāte factum est, cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā (quō duce Mardonius erat fugātus), ut summā imperīi maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs transferretur ad Athēniēnsēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā dūces erant Lacedaemoniī. Tulum autem et intertempérantīā Pausaniae et iūstitiā factum est Aristidēs ut omnēs ferē cīvitātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium societātem sē applicarent et adversus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent sibi.

Quōs faciēs repellerent, sī forte bellum renovāre cōnārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūsque comparandōs quantum pecūniae quaeque cīvitās daret, Aristidēs dēlēctus est quī cōnstituēt, eiusque

18 re-primō, -ere, -pressā, -pressum, press back, check
19 concītām (1), arouse, excite
20 jussive noun cl., writing that he should be driven out
21 eō, i.e., the quendam above
22 (what he had committed) that
23 ignōro (1), not know, be unacquainted with
24 sibi nōn placēre (impers.), it was not pleasing to him = he was displeased (because . . .
25 legitimus, -a, -um, fixed by law, legal
26 postquam, conj. + perf. ind., after
27 dēscendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēsum, descend, march on
28 quam = postquam; post sometimes omitted after an ordinal number in the abl. of time construction
29 scītum, -ī, decree (cp. plebiscite)
30 restituō, -ere, -stītū, -stītum, restore
31 inter-sum + dat., be present at, take part in
32 prīsum + subj.
33 the same man = he also
34 Plataeae, -ārum, Plataea
35 fūdō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour out, rout
36 Mardonius, -ī, Mardonius, Persian general under Xerxes in command of the "barbarians"
37 aequitās, -tātis, f., equity, fairness; aequitātēs, abl. of cause (S.S.)
38 factum est . . . ut summa imperīi transferretur, it happened that the chief command was transferred; ut . . . transferretur, noun cl. of result used as subject of factum est
39 Pausaniaes, -ae, m., Pausanias, a Spartan, victor over the Persians at Plataeae 479 B.C. but a person whose selfish ambition was too great to permit his continuing long as commander-in-chief of the united Greek forces
40 abl. abs.
41 fugō (1), put to flight, rout; not to be confused with fugō
42 L.I. 19 n. 97–98
43 intertempérantia, -ae, intertemperance, arrogance
44 societās, -tātis, f., confederacy, alliance
45 applicō (1), attach
46 dēligō, -ere, dēligi, -lēctum = legō
47 = barbarōs
48 L.I. 14 n. 18
49 re-pellō
50 forte, adv., by chance
51 If novus is new, what must the vb. re-novō (1) mean?
52 Both gerundive phrases belong in the quantum cl.
53 quaeque cīvitās: quaeque, f. adj. form of quisque
54 cōnstituō, -ere, -stītū, -stitūtum, establish, decide; qui cōnstituēt, rel. cl. of purp., which has as its obj. the quantum . . . daret cl.
arbtríō\textsuperscript{55} quadringēna\textsuperscript{56} et sexāgēna talenta quotannis Dēlum\textsuperscript{57} sunt conlāta; id enim commune aerārium\textsuperscript{58} esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō\textsuperscript{59} tempore Athēnās trānslāta est. Hic quā\textsuperscript{60} fuerit\textsuperscript{61} abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium\textsuperscript{62} quam quod,\textsuperscript{63} cum tantīs rēbus praeferuisset,\textsuperscript{64} in tantā pau­pertāte décessit,\textsuperscript{65} ut qui\textsuperscript{66} effertērunt vix reificerit. Quō\textsuperscript{67} factum est ut filiae eius públicē\textsuperscript{68} alerentur et dé commune aerāriō dōtibus\textsuperscript{69} datīs collocā­rentur.\textsuperscript{70} (Nepos, Aristidēs, excerpts)

21. TIMOLEON\textsuperscript{1}

Dīōne\textsuperscript{2} Syrācūsās interfectō, Dionysiōs\textsuperscript{3} rūsrus Syrācūsārum poītus est.\textsuperscript{4} Cuius adversāriī opem ā Corinthiīs\textsuperscript{5} petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ěte­rentur, postulārunt. Hīc Timoleōn\textsuperscript{6} missus incredibilē\textsuperscript{7} fēlicitātē\textsuperscript{8} Dionyiōsim tōtā Siciliā dēpulit.\textsuperscript{9} Cum (eum) interfericē posset, nōluit, tūtōque\textsuperscript{10} ut Co­rinthum\textsuperscript{11} pervenīre efficit,\textsuperscript{12} quod utrōrumque\textsuperscript{13} Dionysiōrum opibus Corin­thiī saepe adiūtī fuerant . . . eamque praeclāram victoriam dūcēbat in quā plūs esset clēmentiae quam crudēlītātis\textsuperscript{44} . . .

Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs,\textsuperscript{15} cum propīr diūtūrītātem\textsuperscript{16} bellī nōn sōlum regiōnēs\textsuperscript{17} sed etiam urbēs dēser­tās\textsuperscript{18} vidēret, conquīsīvit\textsuperscript{19} . . . colōnōs.\textsuperscript{20}

Cīvibus veteribus suā\textsuperscript{21} restituit, novīs\textsuperscript{22} bellō vacuēfactās\textsuperscript{23} possessīōnēs\textsuperscript{24}

\textsuperscript{55} arbitrium, -ī, judgment, decision; arbitriō, what kind of abl?

\textsuperscript{56} quadringēna et sexāgēna (distributive numerals) talenta quotannis, 460 talents each year

\textsuperscript{57} Dēlos, -ī, f. Delos, small island in the center of the Cyclades in the Aegean

\textsuperscript{58} aerārium, -ī, treasury

\textsuperscript{59} posterus, -a, -um, coming after (post), later

\textsuperscript{60} quā abstinentiā, abl. of description, of what integrity

\textsuperscript{61} perf. subj., ind. quest. depending on indicium

\textsuperscript{62} indicium, -ī, indication, proof

\textsuperscript{63} the fact that

\textsuperscript{64} prae-sum + dat., be in charge of

\textsuperscript{65} dē-cēdō, depart, die

\textsuperscript{66} quī = old form of abl.: with effertērunt = by which he might be buried = enough to bury him

\textsuperscript{67} quō, adv., wherefore

\textsuperscript{68} públicē, adv., at public expense

\textsuperscript{69} dōs, dōtis, f., dowry

\textsuperscript{70} collocō (1), place, settle in marriage

1 Timoleon, who came from a noble family at Corinth, was a great champion of liberty against tyranny. By 334 B.C. he was in Sicily fighting the Carthaginians, expelling tyrants, and establishing democracies.

2 Dīōn, Dīōnis, m., Dion, relative and friend of the tyrant Dionysius the Elder. With the aid of Plato he tried—but in vain—to give a noble pattern to the life of Dionysius the Younger, who followed his father in tyranny. After finally exiling Dionysius the Younger from Syracuse, he himself ruled tyrannically and was assassinated in 333 B.C.

3 Dionysiōs, -ī, Dionysius the Younger

4 potior + gen. or abl.

5 Corinthiī, -orum, Corinthians

6 Timoleōn, -onis, m., Timoleon

7 incredidībīs, -e, incredible

8 fēlicitās, -tātis, f., happiness, good fortune

9 dē-pellō

10 tūtō, adv., safely

11 Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth, on the Isthmus of Corinth

12 L. A. 8 n. 20–21

13 uterque, utraque, utrōnque, each; here = both

14 crudēlītās, -tātis, f., cruelty

15 These words refer not only to the expulsion of Dionysius, but also to a great victory over the Carthaginians in Sicily as recounted in the omitted passages.

16 diūtūrītās, -tātis, f., long duration

17 regiō, -ōnis, f., region; here = country districts

18 désertus, -a, -um, deserted

19 con-quīrō, -ere, -quisīvi, -quisītum (quaerō), seek out, gather together

20 colōnus, -i, settler, colonist

21 sta, n. pl.

22 novīs (colōnīs)

23 vacuē-faciō, make empty

24 possessīō, -onis, f., possession, property
divisit; urbium moenia disiecta fānaque dētecta refecit; cīvitātibus lēgēs libertātemque reddidit. Cum tantās esset opibus ut etiam invītīs imperāre possent, tantām autem amōrem habēret omnium Siculorum ut nūllō recīsante rēgnum obtinēre licēret, nāluīt sē dīligī quam metuī. Itaque, cum prīmum potuit, imperium dēposuit ac prīvātus Syrācūsīs... vīxit. Neque vērō id imperītē fēcit, nam quod cēterī rēgēs imperiō potuērunt, hic benevolentia tenuit.

Hic cum aetāte iam prōvectus esset, sine nūllō morbō lūmina ocultūrum āmīsit. Quam calamitātem ita moderātē tuliū ut... (nēmō) eum querentem audierit. Nihil unquam neque īnsolēns neque glōriōsum ex ārē exiūs exīt. Quī quīdem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī, numquam aliu didixit quam sē in eā īrī maximē dis agere grātiās... quod, cum Siciliam recreāre cōstituissent, tum sē potissimum ducem esse voluissent. Nihil enim rērum hūmanārum sine deōrum nūmine gerī putābat...

Proelia maxima nātālī suō diē fēcit omnia; quō factum est ut... eius diem nātālem fēustum habēret universa Sicilia...

Cum quīdam Dēmaenetus in cōntione populī dē rēbus gestīs eius dētrahere coepissent ac nōnnūlla inveheńtur in Timoleonta, dīxit nunc dēnum sē votī esse damnātum; namque hoc ā dis immortālibus semper precātum ut tālem libertātem restitueret Syrācūsānīs in quā cuivīs licēret dē quō vellet impulse dicere.

---

25 dividō, -ere, diviśi, diviśum, divide, distribute
26 dis-iciō, throw apart, scatter
27 fānum, -ī, shrine, temple (cp. profāne, fanatic, fan = devotee)
28 dē-tegō, -ere, -texi, -tectum, unroof, uncover (cp. detect)
29 re-ficō
30 tantās... opibus: abl. of description
31 (Siculīs) etiam invītīs, (the Sicilians) even against their will
32 tantum... licēret: cum, although, introduces this cl. as well as the preceding one.
33 Siculī, -ōrum, the Sicilians
34 obtīnēo, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, occupy, hold
35 cum prīnum, as soon as
36 prīvātus, -ī, private citizen; as a private citizen, he...
37 imperītē, adv., unskillfully, ignorantly
38 benevolentia, -ae, good-will, kindness
39 prō-vēhō, -ere, -vēxi, -vēctum, carry forward
40 jūnēn, -ēnis, n., light; sight
41 calamitās, -ātis, f., misfortune
42 moderātē, adv., with moderation
43 perf. subj. in historical sequence
44 īnsolēns, gen. -entis, arrogant, insolent
45 glōriōsus, -a, -um, here = boastful
46 praedicō (1), declare, relate
47 aliu quām, other than
48 potissimum, adv., especially, above all
49 nūmen, -ēnis, n., divine power, command
50 nātālis diēs, nātālis diē, m., birthday
51 quō... ut, L.L. 20 n. 38, 67
52 fēstus, -a, -um, festive
53 Dēmaenetus, -ī, Dēmaenetus, an enemy of Timoleon
54 cōntīnō, -ōnis, f., assembly
55 rēs gestae, rērum gestārum (lit. things done), exploits, deeds
56 dē-trahō, detract, disparage
57 nōnnūlla is n. acc. pl.— invehor, -ī, vectus sum (deponent form of in-vēhō), + in + acc., make an attack on, inveigh against: nōnnūlla inveheńtur in, he made some attacks on
dēnum, adv., at last
59 damnō (1) + gen., condemn on the charge of; vōtī damnāri, to be condemned to pay a vow = to have a vow or prayer granted
60 precō (1), beseech
61 dat. of quī-vīs, qua-e-vīs, quid-vīs (quod-vīs), indef., anyone at all, anything at all
62 impulse, adv., with impunity
63 dicere, subject of licēret
Hic cum diem suprēnum obisset, pūblicē⁶-four Syrācūsānīs in gymnasiō,⁶-five quod Timoleontēum⁶-six appellātur, tōtā celebrante⁶-seven Siciliā, sepultus est.⁶-eight (Neapos, Timoleōn 2–5, excerpts)

22. HORACE'S "CARPE DIEM"

Tū nē quaesierīs—one scīre nefās—quem mihi, quem⁴-three tibi finem dī dederint, Leuconoē,⁴-four nec Babylonios temptārīs⁵-numerōs.⁶-Ut melius,⁷-quidquid erit, patē.

... Spem longam⁸-resecēs,⁹-Dum loquimur, fūgerit invidā⁴-ten aetās. Carpe diem, quam minimum¹¹-crédula¹²-posterō.¹³

(Horace, Odes 1.11, excerpts)

23. INTEGER VĪTAE

Integer¹-vītæ scelerisque pūrūs²-nōn eget Maurīs³-iaculis⁴-neque arcū⁵-nec venēnātūs⁶-gravidā⁷-sagitās,⁸-Fusēs,⁹-pharetrā.¹⁰

... METER: Greater Asclepiad.

1 nē quaesierīs (= quaesiverīs): nē + perf. subj. = a colloquial prohibition (negative command), do not seek
2 nefās, n. indecl., wrong, sin; nefās (est), it is wrong
3 quem... quem, modifies finem
4 Leuconoē, -es, f., Leuconoē, a Gk. name
5 temptō (1), try; temptārīs = temptāverīs, another neg. command
6 numerōs, calculations employed by astrologers in casting horoscopes; "Babylonian" because astrology was associated with the East. With the decay of belief in the old-time religion in Rome during the first cen. n.c., astrology and superstitions prospered. Apparently Leuconoē had visited a fortune teller.
7 ut melius (est), how (much) better it is
8 i.e., projected too far into the future
9 resecēs, -āre, -secui, -sectum, cut off, prune back; resecēs, poetic use of the pres. subj. (jussive) for the pres. imper.
10 invidus, -a, -um, envious
11 minimum, adv. = minimē
12 crédules, -a, -um, believing in, trusting + dat.; crédules, nom. f. sg. agreeing with the subject of carpe, i.e. Leuconoē
13 posterō (diet), dat.

23

METER: Sapphic stanza.

1 integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, blameless; (vir) integer vītæ (poetic gen. of specification), the person blameless in his life
2 pūrūs, -a, -um, pure, free from; sceleris, poetic gen. of separation or specification
3 Mauri, -a, -um, Moorish (= Mauritanian)
4 iaculum, -i, missile, javelin (cp. iaciō)
5 arcus, -ūs, bow
6 venēnātūs, -a, -um, poisonous, dipped in poison
7 gravidus, -a, -um, laden (with); cp. gravis
8 sagitta, -ae, arrow
9 Fuscus, -i, Fuscus, a literary man and a close, sometimes waggish, friend of Horace
10 pharetrā, -ae, quiver
5 Namque mē silvā lūpus\(^{11}\) in Sabīnā\(^{12}\)
dum meam cantō\(^{13}\) Lalagēn\(^{14}\) et utrā
termīnum\(^{15}\) cūrīs vāgor\(^{16}\) expeditīs\(^{17}\)
 fugīt\(^{18}\) inermem.\(^{19}\)

... Pōne mē pigrīs\(^{20}\) ubi nālla campūs

10 arbor aestīvā\(^{21}\) recreātūr aurā,\(^{22}\)
quod\(^{23}\) latus mundī nebulae\(^{24}\) malusque\(^{25}\)
Iūpiter urget;\(^{26}\)
pōne sub currū\(^{27}\) nimium propinquī
sōlis in terrā domibus negāta:

15 dulce\(^{28}\) rīdentem Lalagēn amābō
dulce loquentem.

(Horace, Odes 1.22.1-4, 9-12, 17-24)

24. AUREA MEDIOCRĪTĀS—THE GOLDEN MEAN

Rēctus\(^1\) vivēs, Licini,\(^2\) neque altum\(^3\)
semper urgendō\(^4\) neque, dum procellās\(^5\)
cautus\(^6\) horrēscis,\(^7\) nimium premendō
lītus\(^8\) inīquum.\(^9\)

\(^{11}\) lūpus, -ī, wolf

\(^{12}\) Sabīnus, -ī, -um, Sabine; cp. L. A. 10

\(^{13}\) cantō (1), sing about; dum + historical pres. to de-
note continued action in past time: while I was
singing about

\(^{14}\) Lalagēn, -ēs, acc. Lalagēn (Gk. noun), f., Lalage, name
of a girl—a most mellifluous name!

\(^{15}\) termīnum, -ī, boundary (cp. terminūs, term, terminate)

\(^{16}\) vāgor (1), wander, ramble (cp. vagary, vagabond)

\(^{17}\) expeditō (4), disentangle, set free; cūrīs expeditīs,
abl. abs.

\(^{18}\) Note the interlocked word order of this stanza, which
is so characteristic of Lat. poetry: mē (obj. of fugīt)
at the beginning modified by inermem at the end;
silvā in Sabīnā, place where phrase interrupted by
lūpus subject of fugīt; all this separated from the
main vb. by a double dum cl.

\(^{19}\) inermis, -e, unarmed; cp. integer vítae . . . nōn eget
jaculis.

\(^{20}\) piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, sluggish, torpid (because fro-
zen), modifying campūs (campus, -ī, field) in a
place-where phrase without a prep. (the omission of
a prep. is common in poetry). The order of the
thought is: pōne mē (in) pigrīs campūs ubi . . .

\(^{21}\) aestīvus, -a, -um, summer (cp. aestās)

\(^{22}\) aura, -ae, breeze

\(^{23}\) = (or put me) in ēō laterē mundī quod . . . ; latus,
-eris, n., side, region

\(^{24}\) nebula, -ae, mist, fog

\(^{25}\) malus = inclement, because Jupiter is here god of
the weather

\(^{26}\) urgeō, -ere, urge, press, oppress

\(^{27}\) currus, -īs, chariot

\(^{28}\) dulce, poetic for dulciter. These exquisitely melliflu-
ous last lines somewhat onomatopoetically suggest
the dulce timbre of Lalage's voice and laugh.

24

METER: Sapphic stanza.

\(^1\) rēctus, adv., rightly, well, suitably

\(^2\) Licini, voc. of Licinius, a person who seems to have
been wanting in the virtue of moderation

\(^3\) the deep (sea)

\(^4\) i.e., heading out to the deep

\(^5\) procella, -ae, storm, gale

\(^6\) cautus, -a, -um, cautious, circumspect; with dum . . .
horrēscis, while you in your caution . . .

\(^7\) horrēscō, -ere, horrū, begin to shudder at, begin to
dread

\(^8\) altum and lītus = extremes

\(^9\) inīquus, -a, -um, unequal; here = treacherous
Loci Immutati 339

5 Auream 10 quisquis mediocritatem 11 diliget, tatus 12 care solelti 13 sordibus 14 tecti, care invidend 15 sobrius 16 aula. 17

Saepius ventis agitaturl 18 ingens

10 pinus 19 et celsae 20 gravior e casu 21 decidunt 22 tures 23 feruntque 24 summos fulgura 25 montes.

Sperrat 26 infestus, 27 metuit secundis 28 alteram 29 sortem 30 bene praeparatum 31

15 pectus, 32 Infomnes 33 hiemnes 34 reduit

1stuppiter 35; idem 36

37 N6n, si male 38 nunc, et 6lim 39 sic erit: quondam 40 cithara 41 tenient Apollo, 42

45 Apollo, -inis, m., Apollo, god of the sun, prophecy, poetry, and music; also god of archery, pestilence, and medicine. Apollo has two aspects: happy and constructive (Musa); unhappy and destructive (arcum).

46 r6bus angustis, abl. abs., when things are narrow (= difficult), i.e., in adversity

47 anim-6sus, -a, -um (-6sus, suffix = full of), spirited
fortis appárĕ, sapienter ēdem
contrahēs ventō nimium secundō
turgidā velā.

(Horace, Odes 2.10)

25. LĀBUNTUR ANNĪ

Éheu! fugācēs, Postume, Postume,
lābuntur annī; nec pietās moram
rūgis et īnstantē senectae
adferet indomitaēque mortī.

5 Frāstrā cruentō Mārtē carēbimus
frāctīsque raucīs flūctibus Hadriae;
frāstrā per autumnōs nocentem
corporibus metuēmus Austrum.

Vīsendus āter flūmine languidō

10 Cōcētōs errāns et Danaī genus
īnflāmē damnātusque longī
Sisyphus Aeolidēs labōris.

---

48 appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, show one’s self; appārē, analyze the form carefully.
49 here = if you are wise
50 see n. 36 above
51 con-trahō, draw in, shorten
52 turgidus, -a, -um, swollen
53 velum, -i, sail

25 METER: Alcaic stanza.
1 eheu, cp. heu. This sigh is emphasized by the repetition of Postumus’ name.
2 fugāx, gen. -ācis, fleeting
3 lābor, -ī, āpsus sum, slip, glide
4 pietās, -ātis, f.; loyalty, devotion, piety
5 rūga, -ae, wrinkle (cp. corrugated)
6 īnstantēs, gen. -antis, pressing, urgent
7 senecta, -ae = senectūs
8 indomitus, -a, -um, untamable, invincible
9 frāstrā, adv., in vain. What is the significance of its emphatic position?
10 cruentus, -a, -um, bloody
11 Mārs, Mārtīs, m., Mars, god of war; Mārte, what abl.?
12 frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, break
13 raucus, -a, -um, hoarse, noisy
14 flūctus, -ūs, wave; frāctīs flūctibus, broken waves = breakers
15 Hadriā, -ae, m., Adriatic Sea
16 autumnus, -ī, autumn, unhealthy part of the year because of the Sirocco
17 depends on nocentem
18 āster, -trī, the south wind, the Sirocco blowing from the Sahara
19 visō, -ere, visī, visum, visit; vīsendus (est)
20 āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, modifying Cōcētōs
21 languidus, -a, -um, sluggish, weak
22 Cōcētōs, -ī, m., Cōcētus, the river of wailing, one of the rivers surrounding Hades; Cōcētōs, Gk. nom.
23 Danaī genus, the offspring of Danaīs, whose 49 daughters murdered their husbands and in Hades were punished by having to pour water eternally into a sieve
24 infāmis, -ē, infamous
25 damnō (1) condemn
26 Sisyphus, -ī, Sisyphus, who was condemned eternally to roll up a hill a stone which rolled down again—an exquisite nightmare
27 Aeolidēs, -ae, m., son of Aeolus
28 After vbs. of accusing, condemning, and acquitting the gen. can be used to express the charge or the penalty involved.
Lincenda\textsuperscript{29} tellūs\textsuperscript{30} et domus et placēns
uxor, neque hārum, quās colis, arborum
15 tē praeter invisīs\textsuperscript{31} cupressōs\textsuperscript{32}
ūlla\textsuperscript{33} brevem dominum\textsuperscript{34} sequētur.

(Horace, Odes 2.14.1–4, 13–24)

26. A SENSE OF BALANCE IN LIFE

Vīvit\textsuperscript{1} parvō bene cui\textsuperscript{2} paternum\textsuperscript{3}
splendet\textsuperscript{4} in mēnsā tenuī\textsuperscript{5} salīnum,
 nec levēs\textsuperscript{6} somnōs timor aut cupidō
sordidus\textsuperscript{7} auferit.\textsuperscript{8}
5 Quid\textsuperscript{9} brevī iaculāmur\textsuperscript{10} ievō multa? Quid\textsuperscript{11} terrās aliō calentēs
sōle mútāmus? Patriae quis exsul\textsuperscript{13}
sē quoque fūgit?\textsuperscript{14}
Scandit\textsuperscript{15} aerātās\textsuperscript{16} vitiōsa nāvēs
10 cūra nec turmās\textsuperscript{17} equītum relinquit,
ōciōr\textsuperscript{18} cervī\textsuperscript{19} et agentе nimbōs\textsuperscript{20}
ōciōr Eurō.\textsuperscript{21}

\textsuperscript{a}auferō (ab-ferō)
\textsuperscript{9}cūr
\textsuperscript{10}fortēs (virī) brevī aevō (aevum, -i, time, life)
\textsuperscript{11}iaculor (1), aim at
\textsuperscript{12}Quid ... mútāmus, lit. why do we exchange lands
warmed by another sun? The expression is poetic
and in pari illogical but the sense is clear: why do
we exchange our lands for those warmed by an-
other sun? “The pasture is always greener...”
\textsuperscript{13}exsul, exsulis, m., exile; with patriae quis, who an ex-
ile of (from) his native land
\textsuperscript{14}fūgit, perf., has ever fled
\textsuperscript{15}scandō, -ere, scandī, scānsum, climb up
\textsuperscript{16}aerātus, -a, -um, fitted with bronze, probably referring
to the bronze beaks of the men-of-war (longae
nāvēs), which were faster than the ordinary ships—
though even these cannot outstrip anxiety.
\textsuperscript{17}turma, -ae, a troop of cavalry (equītum, L.I. 18 n.
53). A person cannot ride fast enough to escape
care.
\textsuperscript{18}ōciōr, -ius, adj. in compar. degree, swifter, agreeing
with cūra
\textsuperscript{19}cervus, -i, stag
\textsuperscript{20}nimbus, -I, rain cloud
\textsuperscript{21}Eurus, -I, wind (from the southeast)
Laetus\textsuperscript{22} in praesēns\textsuperscript{23} animus quod ultrā est ōderit\textsuperscript{24} cūrāre et amāra\textsuperscript{25} lentō\textsuperscript{26} temperet\textsuperscript{27} rūsī\textsuperscript{28}; nihil est ab omnī parte\textsuperscript{29} beātum.

\textit{(Horace, Odes 2.16.13–28)}

27.\textit{ Diēs Fēstus}

Hic diēs\textsuperscript{1} vērē mihi fēstus ātrās eximet\textsuperscript{2} cūrās: ego nec tumultum nec morī per vim metuam tenente Caesare\textsuperscript{3} terrās.

5 Í, pete unguentum,\textsuperscript{4} puer,\textsuperscript{5} et corōnās,\textsuperscript{6} et cadum\textsuperscript{7} Mārs\textsuperscript{8} memorem\textsuperscript{9} duellī, Spartacum\textsuperscript{10} sī quā\textsuperscript{11} potuit vagantem fallere\textsuperscript{12} testa.\textsuperscript{13}

\textit{(Horace, Odes 3.14.13–20)}

28.\textit{ A Monument More Lasting Than Bronze}

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius\textsuperscript{1} rēgālique\textsuperscript{2} sitū\textsuperscript{3} pyramīdum\textsuperscript{4} altius,\textsuperscript{5} quod non imbēr\textsuperscript{6} edāx,\textsuperscript{7} non Aquilō\textsuperscript{8} impotēns\textsuperscript{9} possit dīruere\textsuperscript{10} aut innumerābilis\textsuperscript{11}

\textit{METER:} Sapphic stanza.

\textsuperscript{1}Hic diēs, refers to Augustus' return from the campaign of 27–25 B.C. in Spain
\textsuperscript{2}eximō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēmptum, take away
\textsuperscript{3}Caesār = Augustus. When C. Octavius was adopted by his great-uncle, C. Iulius Caesār; his name became C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, to which the senate added the title of Augustus in 27 B.C.
\textsuperscript{4}unguentum, -ī, ointment, perfume
\textsuperscript{5}puer = slave; cp. Fr. garçon
\textsuperscript{6}corōna, -ae, crown, wreath
\textsuperscript{7}cadus, -f, wine jar
\textsuperscript{8}Mārs, -a, -um, Marsian; duellum = old form of bellum: Marsī duellī, of the Marsian, or Social, War of 91–88 B.C., by which the sociī (allies) of Rome in Italy gained full citizenship; i.e., a 65-year-old wine
\textsuperscript{9}memor, gen. -ōris, mindful
\textsuperscript{10}Spartacus, -ī, Spartacus, the gladiator who led the slaves in revolt against Rome, 73–71 B.C.
\textsuperscript{11}qua, adv., anywhere or in any way
\textsuperscript{12}fallō, -ere, fecellī, falsum, deceive, escape the notice of
\textsuperscript{13}testa, -ae, jug

28

\textit{METER:} Lesser Asclepiad.

\textsuperscript{1}perennis, -e, lasting (throughout the year)
\textsuperscript{2}rēgālis, -e, royal
\textsuperscript{3}situs, -ūs, site, situation; here = structure
\textsuperscript{4}pyramīd, -ūs, f., pyramid
\textsuperscript{5}altius, -a, -um, high; altius agrees with monumentum.
\textsuperscript{6}imbēr, -bris, m., storm
\textsuperscript{7}edāx, gen. edacīs, greedy, destructive
\textsuperscript{8}aquīlō, -ōnis, m., north wind
\textsuperscript{9}impotēns, gen. -ūtis, powerless (to injure my monument)
\textsuperscript{10}dīruō, -ere, -ruī, -rūtum, raze, destroy
\textsuperscript{11}in-numerābilis, -ī = Eng
5 annorum serieś et fuga temporum. 
Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī 
vitābit Libitinam ... 

(Horace, Odes 3.30.1-7)

29. THE OTHER PERSON'S FAULTS AND OUR OWN

Pērās imposuit Luppiter nōbīs duās: 
propriūs replētam vitēs post tergum dedit, 
aliēnīs ante pectus suspendit gravem. 
Hāc rē vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus; 
aliī simul delinquunt, cēnsörēs sumus. 

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 4.10)

30. SOUR GRAPES

Famē coācta vulpēs altā in vīnea ūvam appetēbat, summiō saliēns vīribus. 
Quam tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:  
"Nōndum matōra est; nōlō acerbam sūmere." 

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 4.3)

31. THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

Persōnam tragicam forte vulpēs viderat. 
"Ō quanta speciēs," inquit, "cerebrum nōn habet!"

meter: Iambic trimeter.
Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.

12 serieś, -ei, succession 
13 Libiīnā, -ae, Libiīna, goddess of funerals; death

29

meter: Iambic trimeter.
Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.

1 pēra, -ae, wallet 
2 im-pōnō, + dat., put on 
3 proprius, -a, -um, one's own, here = our own 
4 repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill; (pēram) replētam 
5 tergum, -i, back 
6 dedit, here = put 
7 aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another; aliēnīs (vitēs), abl. with gravem 
8 sc. nostrum 
9 (alteram pēram) gravem ... suspendit 
10 simul = simul ac, as soon as 
11 delinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, fail, commit a crime 
12 cēnsor, -ōris, m., censor; censurer, severe judge

30

meter: Iambic trimeter.

1 famēs, -is, abl. -e, appetite, hunger 
2 vulpēs, -is, f., fox 
3 vīnea, -ae, vineyard 
4 ūvam, -ae, bunch of grapes 
5 appētō (= ad-pētō), reach toward, desire (cp. appe-
tēte); appetēbat, note the force of the impf. 
6 salō, -ire, -ui, saltum, jump 
7 quam = ūvam 
8 matōrus, -a, -um, ripe 
9 sūnō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūptum, take 
10 compl. inf. with possunt 
11 ēlevō (1), disparage, weaken 
12 ad-scribo, assign

31

meter: Iambic trimeter.
Persōna, -ae, mask worn by actors 
2 tragicus, -a, -um, tragic 
3 forte, adv., by chance 
4 speciēs, -ēs, appearance, form 
5 cerebrum, -i, brain
Hoc illis dictum est quibus honorem et gloriam
Fortuna tribuit, sēnsum communem abstulit.

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 1.7)

32. THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Ad fontem cervus, cum bibisset, restitit, et in liquōre vīdit effigiem suam.
Ibi dum rāmōsa mīrāns laudat cornua, erūrumque nimiam tenuitātem vituperat,
vēnantum subītō vōcibus conterrītus,
per campum fugere coepit, et cursū levī canēs sēlūsit.
Silva tum excēpit fērum, in qua retentīs impeditūs cornibus, lacerārī coepit mortibus saevīs canum.

Tunc moriēns vōcem hanc ēdidisse dīcitur:
"Ō mē infālicem quī nunc dēmum intellegō utilia mihi quam fuerint quae dēspexeram, et quae laudāram, quantum lūctū habuerint."

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 1.12)

33. THE FOX GETS THE RAVEN’S CHEESE

Quī sē laudārī gaudet verbīs subdolīs, ferē dat poenas turpī paenitentiā.
Cum dē fenestrā corvus raptum cāseum comēsse vellet, celsā residēns arbore,

6 tribūō, -ere, -ūī, -ūum, allot, assign, give

32

METER: Iambic trimeter.
1 fōns, fontīs, m., spring
2 restō, -āre, -restī, remain (standing)
3 liquor, -ōris, m., liquid
4 effigīēs, -ēī, image, likeness
5 rāmōsus, -a, -um, branching
6 mīrōr (1), marvel at, wonder
7 crūs, crūris, n., leg
8 nimius, -a, -um, excessive
9 tenuitās, -tātīs, f., thinness
10 vituperō (1), blame, find fault with
11 vēnor (1), hunt; vēnantum, gen. pl. of pres. part.
12 conterritus
13 canis, -īs, m.f., dog
14 ēlūdō, -ere, -ūās, -ūsum, evade
15 fērus, -ī, wild animal
16 re-tentūs, -a, -um, held back, held fast
17 lacerō (1), tear to pieces (cp. lacerate)
18 morsus, -ūs, bite
19 saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage
20 ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, eat up, utter
21 mē infālicem, acc. of exclamation.
22 dēmum, adv. at last
23 utilia . . . quam = quam utilia
24 (ea, those things) quae
despiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, despise
26 laudāveram
27 lūctus, -ūs, grief, sorrow

33

METER: Iambic trimeter.
1 subdolus, -a, -um, deceitful
2 paenitentia, -ae, repentance
3 corvus, -ī, raven
4 cāseus, -ī, cheese
5 comedō, comedere or comēsse, -ēdī, -ēsum, eat up
6 resideō, -ēre, -sedī, -sessum, sit, be sitting
hunc vīdit vulpēs; deinde sēc coepit loquī:
"Ö qui tuārum, corve, pennārum7 est nitor8!
Quantum decōris9 corpore et vultū geris!10
Sī vocem habērēs, nūlla prior11 ales12 foret.13
At ille stultus, dum vult vocem ostendere,
ēmīsit14 ore cāseum, quem celeriter
dolōsa15 vulpēs avidīs16 rapit dentibus.17

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 1.13.1–10)

34. THE ASS AND THE OLD SHEPHERD

In principātu1 in commūtānā2 cīvium
nil praeter dominī nōmen mūtant pauperēs.
Id esse vērum parva haec fābella3 indicat.
Asellum4 in prātō5 timidos6 pāscēbat7 senex.

Is, hostium clamōrē8 subitō9 territus,
suādēbat10 asinō fugere nē possent capī.
At ille lentus:11 "Quaesō,12 num bīnās13 mīhi
citellās14 impositūrūm15 victōrem16 putās?"
Senex negāvit. "Ergō quid rēfert meā17
cui serviam citellās dum portem18 meās?"

(Phaedrus, Fābulae 1.15)

35. THE TWO MULES AND THE ROBBERS

Mūlus1 gravātī2 sarcīnās3 ibant duō.
Ūnus ferēbat fiscōs4 cum pecūniā;

34

METER: iambic trimeter.
1 principātus, -ūs, rule, dominion
2 commūtā (l), change
3 fābella, -ae, fable
4 asellus, -i, a little ass, diminutive of asinus, -i, an ass
   (verse 6)
5 prātum, -ī, meadow

35

METER: iambic trimeter.
1 mūlus, -i, mule
2 gravō (l), load, burden
3 sarcīna, -ae, bundle, pack
4 fiscus, -i, basket
alter tumentēsquam multō saccōs hordeō.
Ille onere dives, celsā cervicēs ēminēns
clārumque collō iactāns tintinnābulum; comes quiētō sequitur et placidō gradū. Subītō latrōnēs ex īnṣidiās advolant, interque caedem ferrō mūlum lancingant
Spoliātus igitur Caesārum suōs, "Equidem," inquit alter, "me eontemptum gaudeō.
Nam nihil āmīsī, nec sum laesus vulnere."

36. DELIGHTS OF THE COUNTRY

C. PLINIUS CALPURNIŌ MACRŌ SUŌ S.

Bene est mihi quia tibi est bene. Habēs uxōrem tēcum, habēs filium; frueris mari, fontibus, viridibus, agrō, villā amoenissimā. Neque enim dubitō esse amoenissimam, in quā sē componerat homō felīcior antequam "felīcissimus" fieret. Ego in Tusciē et vēnōrum et studeō, quae inter-

5 tumeō, -ēre, swell, be swollen
6 saccus, -i, sack
hordeum, -i, barley
8 onus, -eris, n., burden, load
9 cervix, -vīcis, f., neck
ēminō, -ēre, -minui, stand out, be conspicuous
collum, -i, neck
iactō (1), toss
13 tintinnābulum, -i, bell, a delightfully onomatopoetic word
comes, comitis, m./f., companion
quiētus, -a, -um, quiet
placidus, -a, -um, placid, gentle
gradus, -ūs, step
latrō, -ōnis, m., bandit, robber
advolō (1), fly, hasten
lancinō (1), mangle
diripō, -ere, -ripū, -reptum, plunder
nummus, -i, currency, money
vīls, -e, cheap
spoliō (1), rob
cāsus, -ūs, accident
lacūdō, -ere, laesūris, laesum, injure
tenuītās, -tātis, f., poverty
periculum, -i, early Lat. form, used instead of periculum in classical Lat. poetry whenever it was metrically convenient

29 obnoxius, -a, -um, subject to, exposed to

1 L. A. 11 n. 1 and 3
2 Calpurnius Macer
3 it is
4 quia, conj., because
5 fruer, -i, fructus sum + abl., enjoy (cp. fructus, -ūs)
6 viridis, -e, green; viridīum, n. pl. as a noun, green things, greenery
7 amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant
8 amoenissimam, agreeing with villam understood as subject of esse
9 sē compōnere, to compose oneself, to rest
10 the man, apparently referring to a former owner who had been happier (felīcior) on this estate as an ordinary person (homō) before he could realize his ambition of becoming “most happy” (felīcissimus), i.e., before he could achieve some very high position which did not give him supreme happiness after all.
11 antequam + subj.
12 lit. in the Tuscans = on my Tuscan estate
13 vēnō (1), hunt
14 quae, n. pl. referring to vēnōr and studeō as antecedents
5 dum15 alternis,16 interdum simul17 faciō; nec tamem adhuc18 possum prōnuntiāre utrum sit difficilius capere aliquid an scribere. Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 5.18)

37. C. PLINIUS CANINIÖ1 SUÖ S.

Studēs an2 piscāris3 an vēnāris an simul omnia? Possunt enim omnia simul fierī ad Lārium4 nostrum. Nam lacus5 piscem,6 ferās7 silvac quibus lacus cingitur,8 studia altissimus iste sēcessus9 adfatim10 suggerunt.11 Sed sīve12 omnia simul sīve aliquid facis, nōn possum dīcere “invidēo”; angōr13 tamēn . . . Numquam . . . Numquam, putō. Nam veteribus negōtiīs16 nova accrēscunt,17 nec tamem priōra peraguntur18; tot nexibus,19 tot quasi catēnīs20 maius in diēs21 occupātiōnum22 agmen23 extenditur.24 Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 2.8, excerpts)

38. HAPPY MARRIED LIFE

C. PLINIUS GEMINÖ SUÖ S.

Grave vulnus Macrinus noster aecēpit: āmīsit1 uxorēm singulāris2 exemplī . . . Vixit cum hāc trīgintā novem annīs3 sine iūrgīo,4 sine offēnsā.5 Quam illa reverentiam6 mariūs7 suō praestitit, cum ipsa summam merērētur18 Quot quantāsque virtūtes ex diversīs8 aëritis9 sumptas collegit et miscilI Habel quid em Macrinus grande10 grandis, quod Ian tum bonum tam diu tenuit; sed hinc11 magis exacrēbātur12 quod āmīsit. Nam fruendīs volup-

---

15 interdum, adv., sometimes, at times
16 alternis, adv., alternately, by turns
17 simul, adv., at the same time, simultaneously. In another letter (1.6), Pliny tells how he combined hunting and studying in one operation.
18 adhuc, adv., thus far, till now
37
38
tātibus crēscit carendī dolor. Erō ergō suspēnsus13 prō homine amīcissimō dum14 admittere15 āvocāmenta16 et cicātricem17 patī possit, quam nihil aequē ac18 necessitās19 ipsa et diēs20 longa et satietās21 dolōris inducit.22 Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 8.5, excerpts)

39. FAITHFUL IN SICKNESS AND IN DEATH

C. PLINIUS NEPŌTĪ SUŌ S.

(. . . Fannia4) neptis2 Arriae3 illius4 quae marītō5 et sōlācium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referēbat6 aviae7 suae nōn minōra hōc,8 sed obscūriōra,9 quae tibi exīstimō tam mūrābilia legentī10 fore11 quam mihi auditentī fuērunt.

5 Aegrotābat12 Caecīna Paetus, marītus eius, aegrotābat et filius, uterque mortiferē,13 ut vidēbātur. Filius dēcessit14 exīmiā15 pulchritūdine,16 parī verēcundīā,17 et parentibus nōn minus ob18 alia cārūs quam quod filius erat. Huic illa ita fānus19 parāvit . . . ut ignōrāret marītus. Quīn immō,20 quotiēns21 cubiculum22 eius intrāret,23 vīvere filium atque etiam commodōrem24 esse simulābat25; ac persaepe26 interrogantī27 quid ageret puer respondebat, "Bene quīēvit,28 libenter cibus29 sūmpsit." Deinde, cum dīū cohibītāe30 lacri-
mae vincerent prōrumpentque, 31 ēgrediēbātur; tunc sē dolōrī dabat. Satiāta, siccīs 32 oculīs, compositō vultū redībat, tamquam orbitātem 33 forīs re-liquisset. 34 Praeclārum quidem illud 35 eiusdem: ferrum stringere, 36 perfodere 37 pectus, extrahere 38 pugīōnem, 39 porrigere 40 marītō, addere 41 vō-cem immortālem ac paene 42 dīvīnam, 43 “Paete, nōn dolet.” . . Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 3.16, excerpts)

40. A SWEET, BRAVE GIRL

C. PLINIUS MARCELLINUS SUO S.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī filīā minōre defūnctā, 1 quā puellā 2 nihil umquam fēstivius, 3 amābilius, 4 nec longiōre vitā . . . dignius vīdī. Nōndum annōs trēdecim implēverat, 5 et iam illī 6 anīlis 7 prūdentia, mātrōnālis 8 gravitās 9 erat, et tamen suāvitās 10 puellāris 11 . . . Ut 12 illa patris cervīcibus 13 inhaerēbat 41 ! Ut nōs, amīcīs paternōs, 15 et amanter 16 et modestē 17 compлектēbātur! 48 Ut nūtrīcēs, 19 ut paedagogōgōs, 20 ut praeceptōrēs 21 prō suō quemque officio dīligēbat! Quam studiōsē, 22 quam intelligenter 23 lēcitā-bat 24 ! . . .

Quā illa temperantīa, 25 quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantīa 26 novissi-mam valērūdīnem 27 tulīt! Medicīs obsequēbatur; 28 sorōrem, patrem adhortā-batur 29; ipsamque se destitutam corpore 30 vigore 31 susti-nēbat

---

31 prōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst forth
32 siccus, -a, -um, dry; siccīs oculīs abl. abs.
33 orbitās, -tātis, f., bereavement, loss
34 What kind of condition in the tamquam cl.? 35 that deed; sc. fuit
36 stringō, -ere, -strīxī, strictus, draw; stringere, inf. in apposition with illud
37 perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, pierce (lit. dig through)
38 ex-trahō
39 pugīō, -onis, m., dagger
40 porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, hold out, extend
41 ad-dō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum, add
42 paene, adv., almost
43 dīvīnus, -a, -um = Eng. Divi
40
41 dēfungor, -i, -fūnctus sum, finish or complete life, die.
42 puellā, abl. of comparison
43 fēstivus, -a, -um, pleasant, agreeable
44 amābilis, -e, lovable, lovely
45 impleō, -ere, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up, complete
46 dat. of possession (S.S.)
47 anīlis, -e, of an old woman
48 mātrōnālis, -e, of a matron, matronly
49 gravitās, -tātis, f., seriousness, dignity
50 suāvitās, -tātis, f., sweetness
51 puellāris, -e, girlish
52 how
53 cervīx, -īcis, f., usually pl. (cervīcēs) as here, neck
54 inhaerō, -ere, -haecī, -haesium, cling
55 paternus, -a, -urn, paternal, of a father
56 amanter, adv. of amāns
57 modestē, adv., modestly
58 complector, -i, -plexus sum, hold in the arms, embrace
59 nūtrīx, -īcis, f., nurse
60 paedagogōgus, -i, tutor (slave who escorted children)
61 praeceptōr, -ōris, m., teacher (in a school, not a private tutor)
62 studiōsē, adv. of studiōsus, full of studium
63 intellegenter, adv. of intellegēns
64 lēcitō (1), read (eagerly)
65 temperantia, -ae, self-control
66 cōnstantia, -ae, firmness
67 valērūdō, -inis, f., here = bad health, illness
68 ob + sequor, obey
69 adhortor = hortor
70 dēstituō, -ere, -stitū, -stitūtum, desert, abandon
71 vigōr, -ōris, m., vigor; vigōre, abl. of means with susti-nebat
41. PLINIUS VALERIÓ PAULÍNÓ SUÓ S.

C. PLINIUS VALERIÓ PAULÍNÓ SUÓ S.

Videò quam molliter¹ tuòs² habeàs³; quó simplicius⁴ tibi cónfitèbor quòr indulgentià⁵ meós træctem.⁶ Quod si essèm náturà asperiør et dúrior, frangèrèt mè tamen ínfìrmitàs⁷ libertà⁸ meì Zòsimì,⁹ cui tantò maior húmánítàs¹⁰ exhibènda¹¹ est, quantò nunc illà magìs eget. Homò probus,¹² officiósus,¹³ litteràtus¹⁴; et ars quidem eius et quasi ìnscripțió¹⁵—còmoedes . . . Útitur et

---

Note: The text provided is a translation and includes Latin phrases and words with their meanings as part of the translation.
citharā perītē.16 Ídem tam commodē17 orātiōnēs et historiās18 et carmina legit ut hoc sōlum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō19 exposuī quō magis scīrēs quam multa ūnis mihi et quam iūcunda ministeriā20 praestāret. Accēdit longa iam cāritās21 hominis, quam ipsa perīcula auxerunt22 ... Ante aliquot23 annōs,24 dum intente in­­stanterque25 prōnuntiāt, sanguinēm26 reiecit27; atque ob hoc in Aegyptum28 missus ā mē, post longam peregrinatōriānem29 cōnfirma­tum30 reddit nūper. Deinde ... veteris īnfirmitātis31 tussicula32 admonitus,33 ro­rsus sanguinem reddidit.34

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN (42–43)

42. C. PLINIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Libertus tuus, cui suscēnsēr1 tē dīxerās, vēnit ad mē ... Flēvit multum, multum rogāvit, multum etiam tacuit; in summā,2 fēcit mihi fidem paenitentiae.3 Vērē cōrdēō ēmundātum4 quia deliquisse5 sē sentit. Īrāsceris, sció; et īrāsceris meritō,6 id quoque sció; sed tunc praecipua7 mānsuētūdinīs8 laus cum īrae causa īūstissima est. Amāsti9 hominem et, spērō, amābis; interim10

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN (42–43)

16 perītē, adv., skillfully
17 commodē, adv., fitly, satisfactorily
18 historiā, -ae = Eng.
19 sēdulō, adv., carefully
20 ministeriām, -ām, service
21 cāritās, -ātis, f., dearness, affection (cp. cārus)
22 augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase
23 aliquot, indecl. adj., several, some
24 ante ... annōs, several years ago
25 earnestly and emphatically
26 sanguis, -inis, m., blood
27 re-iciō, reject, spit out
28 Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt
29 peregrinātiō, -onis, f., travel or sojourn abroad
30 cōnfirmaō (1), strengthen
31 īnfirmitās, -ātis, f., weakness, sickness
32 tussicula, -ae, slight cough
33 ad-mōnitās = monitus
34 reddidit = reiecit
35 dēstinō (1), intend, resolve
36 praedīum, -ī, country seat
37 Forum Iūliī, Forō Iūliī, Forum of Julius, modern Frejus, a coastal town of southern France; Forō, place where
38 possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, own
39 āër, āeris, m., air; āera = Gk. acc. sg.
40 salūbris, -e, healthful; still so regarded
41 lac, lactīs, n., milk; i.e., for the milk cure
42 īrātīō, -onis, f., cure
43 accommodātus, -a, -um, suited
44 (ut) scribās: ut is sometimes omitted in such cls.
45 tuīs, your servants
46 ut villa (pateat), ut domus pateat: i.e., he is to have
access to the great house itself as well as to the estate.

42.

1 suscēnsēō, -ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsum, + dat., be angry with
2 summa, -ae, sum
3 paenitentia, -ae, repentance
4 ēmundō (1), correct; (eum) ēmundātum (esse)
5 delinquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctum, fail (in duty), commit a crime
6 meritō, adv., rightly (with merit)
7 praecipuus, -a, -um, special; ac est
8 mānsuētūdinīs, -inis, f., gentleness, mildness
9 contracted form = amāvisī
10 interim, adv., meanwhile (cp. interēā)
sufficit\textsuperscript{11} ut exôrâ\textsuperscript{12} tē sinās\textsuperscript{13} . . . Nē torserīs\textsuperscript{14} illum, nē torserīs etiam tē; 
torquēris\textsuperscript{15} enim, cum tam lēnis\textsuperscript{16} irâsceris. Vereor nē videar nōn rogāre sed 
cögere, sī precibus\textsuperscript{17} eius meās iūnxeōō. Iungam tamen tantō plēnius\textsuperscript{18} et 
effusius,\textsuperscript{19} quantō\textsuperscript{20} ipsum\textsuperscript{21} acrius sevēriusque\textsuperscript{22} corripui\textsuperscript{23} . . . Valē. (Pliny, 
\textit{Epistulæ} 9.21, excerpts)

43. C. PLINIUS SABINIĀNŌ SŪO S.

Bene fēcistī\textsuperscript{24} quod līberum\textsuperscript{2} aliquandō\textsuperscript{3} tibi cārum redūcentibus\textsuperscript{4} epist-
ulīs\textsuperscript{5} meās in domum,\textsuperscript{6} in animum recēpistī. Iuvābit hoc tē, mē certē iuvat; 
prīnum,\textsuperscript{7} quod tē tam trāctābilem\textsuperscript{8} videō ut in īrā regī possīs; deinde, quod 
tantum mihi tribuis\textsuperscript{9} ut vel\textsuperscript{10} auctōritātī meae pāreās vel precibus indulgeāš.\textsuperscript{11}

5 Igitur laudō et grātiās agō . . . Valē. (Pliny, \textit{Epistulæ} 9.24, excerpts)

44. SELECTION OF A TEACHER

C. PLINIUS MAURICŌ SŪO S.

Quid ā tē mihi iūcundius potuī iniungi\textsuperscript{1} quam ut praeceptōrem frātris 
tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō\textsuperscript{2} tuō in scholam\textsuperscript{3} redeō et illam dulcis-
simam quasi 
resūmī 
Sedeō inter iuvenes, ut solebam, atque eiiam 
experior quantum apud 
illas auctaritās 5 
proximō\textsuperscript{6} frequentō\textsuperscript{7} auditorium\textsuperscript{8} inter 
selēriā 
nullīm ordinīs II 
nostī clāre\textsuperscript{11}

\textsuperscript{11} sufficit, subject = ut-cl.
\textsuperscript{12} ex-ôrō, stronger form of ôrō
\textsuperscript{13} sinū, -ere, sīvi, sītum, allow, permit
\textsuperscript{14} torquēō, -ere, torsī, tortum, twist, torture; nē torserīs,
\textit{L.I.} 22 n. 1
\textsuperscript{15} torquēris, you are tormented = you torment your-
self (reflexive use of the pass.)
\textsuperscript{16} lēnis, -e, gentle, kind; agreeing with subject of 
irasceris: you, such a gentle person
\textsuperscript{17} prēx, preces, f., prayer
\textsuperscript{18} plēnē, adv. of plēnus
\textsuperscript{19} effusē, adv., profusely, unrestrainedly
\textsuperscript{20} tantō . . . quantō, the more . . . the more, abl. of de-
gree of difference (S.S.)
\textsuperscript{21} (lībertum) ipsum
\textsuperscript{22} sevērē, adv., seriously, severely
\textsuperscript{23} cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripū, -reptum, seize, accuse, blame

\textsuperscript{1} you did well because = thank you for
\textsuperscript{2} līberum, in thought, the obj. of both redūcentibus 
and recēpisti
\textsuperscript{3} aliquandō, adv., once
\textsuperscript{4} re-dūcō
\textsuperscript{5} epistulīs, here pl. of a single letter (the preceding one) 
on the analogy of litterae, -ārum
\textsuperscript{6} Both prepositional phrases, connected by et under-
stood, depend on recēpisti
\textsuperscript{7} prīnum, adv., first
\textsuperscript{8} trāctābīlis, -ē, tractable, compliant
\textsuperscript{9} tribuō, -ere, -buī, -buītum, attribute, ascribe
\textsuperscript{10} vel . . . vel, either . . . or
\textsuperscript{11} indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsi, -dultum, yield to, gratify

44

1 in-iungō, enjoin, impose
2 beneficiō tuō, thanks to you
3 schola, -ae, school
4 re-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum, resume
5 gen. with quantum
6 proxi-mē, adv., very recently
7 frequentēs, gen. -entis, crowded
8 audītoriōrum, -i, lecture room, school; audītoriō, place 
where without a prep.
9 cōram, prep. + abl., in the presence of
10 i.e., the senatorial order
11 clāre (adv. of clārus), here = loudly
loquēbantur: intrāvē, conticuĕrunt; quod nōn referrem, nisi ad illōrum magis laudem quam ad meam pertinēret . . . Cum omnēs quī profiten
tur audiverō, quid dē quōque sentiam scribam efficiamque, quantum ta-
men epistolā cōsequī poterō, ut ipse omnēs audīsse videāris. Dēbēō enim

45. THE OLD BOY DYED HIS HAIR

Mentīrisiuvenem tīntūs, Laetīne, capillīs, tam subītō corvus quī modo cycnus erās.
Nōn omnēs fallīs; scīt tē Prōserpina canum:
persōnam capitū détraheō illā tuō.
(Martial 3.43)

46. WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Cinnam, Cinnamon, tē iubes vocāri.
Nōn est hic, rogo, Cinna, barbarismus?
Tū sī Furius ante dictus essēs,
Für3 īstā ratiōne dīcerēris.
(Martial 6.17)
47. FAKE TEARS

Āmissum1 nōn flet cum sōla est Gellia2 patrem;
qui quis adest, iussae3 prōsiliunt4 lacrimae.
Nōn lūget5 quisquis laudāri, Gellia, quaerit;
ille dolet vērē quī sine teste6 dolet.

(Martial 1.33)

48. EVEN THOUGH YOU DO INVITE ME—I'LL COME!

Quod convīvāris1 sine mē tam saepe, Luperce,2
invēnī noceam quā ratiōne tibi.
Īrāscor: licet3 āaque vocēs mittāsque4 rogēsque—
“Quid faciēs?” inquis. Quid faciam? Veniam!

(Martial 6.51)

49. PRO-CRAS-TINATION

Crās tē vīctūrum1 crās dīcis, Postume,2 semper.
Dīc mīhi, crās istud3 Postume, quando venit?
Quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum4?
Numquid5 apud Parthōs Armeniōsque6 latet7?
Iam crās istud habet Priamī8 vel Nestoris9 annōs.
Crās istud quanti10 dīc mīhi possit emī11?
Crās vīvēs? Hodī iam vīvere, Postume, sérum12 est.
Ille sapit quisquis, Postume, vīxit herī.

(Martial 5.58)

47

METER: Elegiac couplet.

1āmissum patrem
2Gellia, -ae, Gellia
3at her bidding; how literally?
4prōsiliō (4), leap forth
5lūgeō, -ēre, lūxi, lūctum, mourn
6testis, -is, m., witness

48

METER: Elegiac couplet.

1convīvō (1), to feast
2Lupercus, -i, Lupercus
3licet āque (ut) vocēs (it is even permitted that you
call), you may even invite me, or even though you
invite me
4i.e., send a slave as a special messenger

49

METER: Elegiac couplet.

1vīctūrum, sc. esse
2No doubt Martial intended to have us think of Hor-
ace’s Postumus in L.1. 25 above.
3crās istud, that “tomorrow” of yours, subj. of venit
4petendum (est)
5numquid latet, it does not lie hidden, does it?
6among the Parthians and Armenians, i.e., at land’s
end in the East
7latēo, -ēre, -ui, lie hidden
8Priamus, -i, Priam, aged king of Troy
9Nestōr, -oris, Nestor, Greek leader famed for his
years and wisdom
10quantī, gen. of indef. value: at what price, for how
much can that tomorrow be bought
11emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmpītum, buy
12sērus, -a, -um, late; sērum, pred. adj. in n. to agree
with hodī vīvere, which is subject of est
50. ISSA

Issa est passere\textsuperscript{2} nēquior\textsuperscript{3} Catullī:
Issa est pūrior ōsculō columbae;\textsuperscript{4}
Issa est blandior\textsuperscript{5} omnibus puellīs;
Issa est cārior Indicīs\textsuperscript{6} lapillis\textsuperscript{7};
Issa est déliciae\textsuperscript{8} catella\textsuperscript{9} Públi.\textsuperscript{10}

Hanc tū, si queritur,\textsuperscript{11} loquī putābis.
Sentit trīstitiamque\textsuperscript{12} gaudiumque.

...\textsuperscript{13}

Hanc nē lūx rapiat suprēma\textsuperscript{13} tōtam,
pictā\textsuperscript{14} Públius exprimī\textsuperscript{15} tabellā
in quā tam similem vidēbis Issam\textsuperscript{16}
ut sit tam similis sibī nec\textsuperscript{17} ipsa.
Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā:
aut utramque putābis esse vēram
aut utramque putābis esse pictam.

(Martial 1.109)

METER: Hendecasyllabic.

1 Issa, colloquial and affectionate form for Ipsa and here used as the name of a pet dog
2 passer Catullī, see L. I. 3
3 nēquam, indecl. adj.; compar. nēquior, -ius, worthless, good for nothing, mischievous
4 columba, -ae, dove
5 blandus, -a, -um, flattering, caressing, coaxing
6 Indicus, -a, -um, of India
7 lapillus, -i, precious stone, gem
8 see L. I. 3
9 catella, -ae, little dog
10 Públi = Públii, gen. sg. of Públius
11 here = whimper
12 trīstitia, -ae, sadness
13 lūx (dīēs) suprēma = mors
14 pingō, -ere, pīnxi, pictum, paint; pictā tabellā, by a painted tablet = in a painting
15 exprimō, -ere, -pressi, pressum, express, portray
16 tam similem ... Issam: an Issa (of the painting) so similar (to the real Issa)
17 nec here = not even
Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises

These optional exercises have been included in the hope of enriching the potential of this book for its various types of users.

1. *Repetítio est māter memoriae.* In language study the value of repetition is indisputable. To the already large amount of repetition achieved in the regular chapters these exercises add even more of this practice. The phrases and sentences have deliberately been made simple so that the immediate points in forms and syntax may stand out strikingly. The words are purposely limited to those of the formal lesson vocabularies, which obviously should be memorized before turning to these tutorial exercises. As a result of their very nature and purpose, such sentences can make no claim to inspiration. Some hints of the worthwhile reading matter for which one studies Latin are to be found in the *Sententiae Antīqua* and the reading passages from the ancient authors, which are the heart of this book; but if one wants additional repetitious drill by which to establish linguistic reflexes, one can find it here in these self-tutorial exercises. As has been suggested elsewhere, be sure always to read aloud every Latin word and sentence—carefully, for such a practice enables one to learn through the ear as well as the eye and can provide many of the benefits of a language laboratory.

2. To students enrolled in a regular Latin course these exercises with their keys can prove valuable for review and self-testing and can be helpful in preparation for examinations.

3. Also to the private individual who wishes to learn or review Latin independently, these exercises are certain to be valuable, since they can be used as self-tests which can be corrected via the key. Likewise, completing
these practice exercises with benefit of key will provide greater confidence in tackling the regular exercises of the book.

4. All students can test themselves in simple Latin composition by translating the English sentences of the key back into Latin and checking this work via the corresponding Latin sentences of the exercises.

5. In the translations ordinarily only one of the various meanings of a word given in the vocabulary will be used in any specific instance. If at times the translations are somewhat formal, the reason is that they can in this way follow the Latin more closely; and certainly these particular sentences are intended to provide practice in understanding Latin rather than practice in literary expression. Polished literary expression in translation is most desirable and should be practiced in connection with the other exercises in this book.

6. The answer keys have been placed by themselves after the exercises to facilitate self-testing and so that the exercises may be used for practice in class when the instructor wishes. It hardly need be added that the surest way to test oneself is to write out the answers before turning to the key.

7. Finally, let it be emphasized once again that for maximum value you must say aloud all the Latin words, phrases, and sentences, and that you must have studied the text of each lesson carefully through the vocabulary before turning to these exercises.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 1

1. Give the English pronouns equivalent to each of the following Latin personal endings: (1) -t, (2) -mus, (3) -ō, (4) -nt, (5) -s, (6) -tis.

2. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) monère, (2) vidēre, (3) valēre, (4) dēbēre.

3. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocāre, (2) servāre, (3) dare, (4) cōgitāre, (5) laudāre, (6) amāre, (7) errāre.

4. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocā, (2) servā, (3) dā, (4) cōgitā, (5) laudā, (6) amā, (7) monē, (8) vidē, (9) valē.

5. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocāte, (2) servāte, (3) date, (4) cōgitāte, (5) laudāte, (6) amāte, (7) monēte, (8) vidēte, (9) valēte.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 2

1. Give the Latin for the definite article “the” and the indefinite article “a.”

2. Name the Latin case for each of the following constructions or ideas:
   (1) direct object of a verb; (2) possession; (3) subject of a verb; (4) means; (5) direct address; (6) indirect object of a verb.

3. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the first declension: (1) -ās; (2) -a; (3) -am; (4) -ae (pl.).

4. Name the case(s) and number indicated by the following endings, and wherever possible name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with them: (1) -ārum; (2) -ā; (3) -ae; (4) -īs.

5. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) puellam; (2) puella; (3) puellās; (4) puellae (plural form); (5) patriās; (6) patriam; (7) patria; (8) patriae (pl.); (9) pecūniam; (10) pecūnia; (11) poenās; (12) poenam.

6. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case endings: (1) puellae (sg.); (2) puellārum; (3) Ō patria; (4) patriae (sg.); (5) pecūniā; (6) pecūniāe (sg.); (7) poenīs; (8) poenā; (9) poenārum.

7. Given the following nominative singular forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) multa pecūnia in the genitive and the accusative singular; (2) magna fāma in dat. and abl. sg.; (3) vita mea in gen. sg. and nom. pl.; (4) fortūna tua in acc. sg. and pl.; (5) magna patria in gen. sg. and pl.; (6) fortūna mea in abl. sg. and pl.; (7) magna poena in dat. sg. and pl.; (8) multa philosophia in dat. and abl. pl.

8. Translate each of the following phrases into Latin according to the case either named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) by much money; (2) of many girls; (3) to/for my country; (4) great life (as direct object of a verb); (5) by your penalties; (6) many countries (subject of a verb); (7) to/for many girls; (8) of my life; (9) Ō fortune; (10) girl’s; (11) girls’; (12) girls (direct address); (13) the girls (direct object of a verb); (14) the girls (subject of a verb).

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 3

1. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of masculines of the 2nd declension: (1) -um; (2) -i (pl.); (3) -us; (4) -ōs; (5) -e.

2. Name the case(s) and number of the following endings, and name the English preposition which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī (sg.); (4) -īs.

3. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) filīōs; (2) filī (pl.); (3) filium; (4) populum; (5) popule; (6) populus; (7) vir; (8) virōs; (9) virī (pl.); (10) virum; (11) amīcē; (12) amīcī (pl.); (13) amīcōs; (14) amīcum.

4. Translate the following in accordance with their case endings: (1) filīōrum meōrum; (2) filīō meō; (3) populī Rōmānī (sg.); (4) populō Rōmānō; (5) virīs; (6) virī (sg.); (7) virōrum; (8) amīcōrum paucōrum; (9) amīcīs paucīs; (10) amīcō meō; (11) amīcī meī (sg.); (12) multīs puerīs.

5. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) populus Rōmānus in gen. and abl. sg.; (2) magnus vir in acc. and abl. pl.; (3) puer meus in dat. and abl. pl.; (4) magnus numerus in dat. and abl. sg.; (5) magnus vir in voc. sg. and pl.; (6) filius meus in gen. sg. and pl.

6. Translate the following phrases into Latin according to the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) of many boys; (2) to/for the Roman people; (3) my sons (object of verb); (4) O my sons; (5) a great number (obj. of verb); (6) by the great number; (7) O great man; (8) to/for many boys; (9) the great man (subj. of verb); (10) of the Roman people.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 4

1. A 2nd-declension neuter has the same forms as the regular 2nd-declension masculine except in three instances. Name these three instances and give their neuter endings.

2. Name the case(s), number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the 2nd-declension neuter nouns: (1) -a; (2) -um.

3. Name the case(s) and number of the following 2nd-declension neuter endings and name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī; (4) -īs.

4. Translate the following neuter nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) bella; (2) bellum; (3) officium; (4) officia; (5) perīcula.

5. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings: (1) bellōrum malōrum; (2) bellō malō; (3) bellī malī; (4) bellīs malīs; (5) officīnā magnī; (6) officīnōs magnōs; (7) perīculō parvō.

6. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) bellum parvum in nom. and acc. pl.; (2) ōtium bonum in acc. sg. and pl.; (3) perīculum magnī in gen. sg. and pl.; (4) officium vērum in acc. and abl. sg.

7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) O evil war; (2) to/for great duty; (3) by the great danger; (4) good leisure (object of verb); (5) by many wars; (6) of good leisure; (7) by the dangers of many wars; (8) small wars (subject of verb); (9) small wars (obj. of verb); (10) O foolish wars; (11) the small war (subj.)


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 5

1. Identify the personal endings of the future and imperfect tenses of the first two conjugations.

2. Are these the same as the endings of the present tense? If not, point out the differences.
3. Identify the future and imperfect tense signs in the first two conjugations.

4. How, in effect, can the following verb endings be translated: (1) -bāmus; (2) -bit; (3) -bitis; (4) -bō; (5) -bunt; (6) -bat?

5. When an adjective of the 1st and 2nd declensions has the masculine ending in -er, how can you tell whether the e survives in the other forms or is lost?

6. How do English words like liberty, pulchritude, and nostrum help with the declension of Latin adjectives?

7. Translate the following forms: (1) manebant; (2) manebit; (3) manebimus; (4) dabam; (5) dabitis; (6) dabit; (7) vidēbis; (8) vidēbimus; (9) vocābant; (10) vocābis; (11) habēbis; (12) habēbant.

8. Translate into Latin: (1) we shall give; (2) you (sg.) were remaining; (3) they will see; (4) we shall call; (5) he was calling; (6) you (pl.) will see; (7) I shall see; (8) they were saving; (9) we shall have; (10) we were having; (11) he will have; (12) he has.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 6

1. What connection can be traced between the spelling of complementary in the term complementary infinitive and the syntactical principle?

2. In the verb sum and its compounds what do the following personal endings mean: (1) -mus; (2) -nt; (3) -s; (4) -t; (5) -ō; (6) -m; (7) -tis?

3. If the verb possum is composed of pot + sum, where among the various forms is the t changed to s and where does it remain unchanged?

4. Translate the following random forms: (1) erat; (2) poterat; (3) erit; (4) poterit; (5) sumus; (6) possumus; (7) poterāmus; (8) poterimus; (9) poteram; (10) eram; (11) erō; (12) poterō; (13) erunt; (14) poterunt; (15) poterant; (16) esse; (17) posse.

5. Translate into Latin: (1) we are; (2) we were; (3) we shall be; (4) we shall be able; (5) he is able; (6) he will be able; (7) he was able; (8) to be able; (9) they were able; (10) they are able; (11) they will be able; (12) they are; (13) to be; (14) I was able.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 7

1. In the 3rd declension do the case endings of feminine nouns differ from those of masculine nouns as they do in the 1st and 2nd declensions already learned?

2. Do neuter nouns of the 3rd declension have any case endings which are identical with those of neuter nouns of the 2nd declension? If so, name them.

3. Name the gender(s) and case(s) indicated by each of the following endings in the 3rd declension: (1) -ēs; (2) -a; (3) -em.

4. Name the case(s) and number of the following 3rd-declensional endings: (1) -ibus; (2) -ī; (3) -e; (4) -em; (5) -am; (6) -is; (7) -ēs.

5. To indicate the gender of the following nouns give the proper nominative singular form of magnum, -a, -um with each: (1) tempus; (2) virtūs; (3) labōr; (4) cīvitās; (5) mōs; (6) pāx; (7) rēx; (8) corpus; (9) vēritās; (10) amor.

6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings wherever possible; where they are nominative or accusative so state: (1) labōre multō; (2) labōrī multō; (3) labōris multī; (4) labōrēs multī; (5) pācis perpetua; (6) pāce perpetua; (7) pāci perpetua; (8) cīvitātum parvārum; (9) cīvitātem parvam; (10) cīvitātēs parvās; (11) cīvitātēs parvae; (12) cīvitāte parvā; (13) tempora mala; (14) tempus malum; (15) temporī malō; (16) temporum malōrum; (17) temporis malī; (18) mōrī tuō; (19) mōre tuō; (20) mōris tuī; (21) mōres tuī; (22) mōres tuōs; (23) mōrum tuōrum.

7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition: (1) to/for great virtue; (2) great virtue (subject); (3) great virtues (object of verb); (4) of great virtues; (5) with great courage; (6) our time (obj. of verb); (7) our times (subj.); (8) our times (obj.); (9) to/for our times; (10) to/for our time; (11) of our time; (12) of our times; (13) my love (obj.); (14) my loves
Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises 363

(15) to/for my love; (16) by my love; (17) of my love; (18) of my loves.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 8

1. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the stem vowel e?
   (2) Can you think of some mnemonic device to help you remember this important point?

2. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the vowels i, ō, u?
   (2) What mnemonic device may help here?

3. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following 3d conjugation endings: (1) -imus; (2) -ēs; (3) -unt; (4) -et; (5) -ētis; (6) -ēmus; (7) -ē; (8) -ent; (9) -ēt; (10) -ētis; (11) -ēs; (12) -ēm; (13) -ēbant.

4. What form of the verb does each of the following endings indicate: (1) -ē; (2) -ere; (3) -ite?

5. Given the verbs mittō, mittere, send; agō, agere, do; scribō, scribere, write, translate each of the following forms according to its ending: (1) mittēbant; (2) mittit; (3) mittunt; (4) mittam; (5) mitte; (6) mittimus; (7) mittēbātis; (8) mittis; (9) mittite; (10) mittitis; (11) mittet; (12) mittēmus; (13) agit; (14) agent; (15) agunt; (16) agētis; (17) agēbāmus; (18) agam; (19) agēmus; (20) agis; (21) agitis; (22) scribet; (23) scribunt; (24) scribam; (25) scribēbam; (26) scribitis; (27) scribēmus; (28) scribit; (29) scribis; (30) scribent; (31) scriēbe.

6. Given pōnō, pōnere, put, translate the following phrases into Latin: (1) they were putting; (2) we shall put; (3) put (imperative sg.); (4) he puts; (5) they will put; (6) I shall put; (7) you (sg.) were putting; (8) you (pl.) will put; (9) put (imper. pl.); (10) we put; (11) you (pl.) are putting; (12) he will put.

cet. 17. Puerī magistrō grātiās nōn agunt. 18. Pauci cīvitātī nostrae grā-
tiās agēbant. 19. Tyrannus magnās cōpiās ex cīvitāte nostrā dūcet.
20. Magna cōpiā pecūniāe hominēs ad sapientiam nōn dūcit. 21. Librīne
bonī multōs ad ratiōnem dūcent? 22. Dūcimusne sāpec hominēs ad ratiō-
 nem? 23. Ratiō hominēs ad bonam vītam dūcere potest. 24. Agītīne bo-

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 9

1. Explain the term demonstrative pronoun and adjective.
2. Translate each of the following according to case(s) and number, indicat-
ing also the gender(s) in each instance:

   (1) illī (10) illīs (19) huius (28) īnā
   (2) illa (11) illō (20) hunc (29) tōtī
   (3) illīus (12) illārum (21) hōs (30) tōtīs
   (4) ille (13) hōc (22) huic (31) tōta
   (5) illā (14) hoc (23) hōrum (32) tōtum
   (6) illud (15) haec (24) īs (33) nullīus
   (7) illūrum (16) hae (25) īs (34) nullī
   (8) illae (17) hāc (26) īnīus (35) nūlla
   (9) illōs (18) hanc (27) īnī (36) nūllōs

3. How can the presence of a noun be helpful in determining the form of
   a modifying demonstrative?
4. Translate the following phrases into Latin in the declensional forms indi-
cated:

   (1) this girl (nom.) (16) to/for that boy alone
   (2) these girls (nom.) (17) to/for that girl alone
   (3) these times (acc. pl.) (18) of that girl alone
   (4) to/for this time (19) of tyrants alone
   (5) to/for this boy (20) the whole state (acc.)
   (6) of this time (21) of the whole country
   (7) of that time (22) to/for the whole country
   (8) by this book (23) of no reason
   (9) by that book (24) no reason (acc.)
   (10) that girl (nom.) (25) no girls (nom.)
   (11) those times (nom.) (26) to/for no book
   (12) those times (acc.) (27) no books (acc.)
   (13) that time (nom.) (28) to/for one state
   (14) to/for this state alone (29) to/for one girl
   (15) of this state alone (30) of one time

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 10

1. Name the conjugation indicated by each of the following endings:
   (1) -ere; (2) -ere; (3) -ere; (4) -äre.

2. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following endings from the 4th conjugation and the -īō 3d: (1) -iunt; (2) -īēs; (3) -īs; (4) -ībāmus; (5) -īmus; (6) -ī; (7) -īētis; (8) -ītē; (9) -īūs; (10) -īō; (11) -īt; (12) -e; (13) -īēbās.

3. State three points at which -īō verbs of the 3d conjugation differ from verbs of the 4th conjugation.

4. Translate the following in accordance with their specific forms:
   (1) veniet  (6) audīētis  (11) venīre  (16) faciunt
   (2) venit   (7) audīētis  (12) facit   (17) facis
   (3) veniunt (8) venitē  (13) faciet  (18) faciam
   (4) venient (9) veniēs (14) faciēmus (19) faciēs
   (5) audīs  (10) venī  (15) facimus (20) facere

5. Given sentiō, sentīre, feel, and iaciō, iacēre, throw, translate the following phrases into Latin:
   (1) I shall feel (8) feel (imper. sg.) (15) throw (imper. sg.)
   (2) we shall feel (9) he will feel (16) you (pl.) are throwing
   (3) he feels  (10) we feel (17) we shall throw
   (4) you (pl.) feel (11) he is throwing (18) throw (imper. pl.)
   (5) they will feel (12) he will throw (19) to throw
   (6) they do feel (13) I shall throw (20) you (sg.) are throwing
   (7) to feel  (14) we are throwing


**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 11**

1. Name the nominative singular and plural of the following:
   - (1) 3d personal pronoun; (2) 1st per. pron.; (3) 2nd per. pron.
2. Translate the following pronouns in accordance with case(s) and number; where a form is nom. or acc. so specify.
   - (1) vōbīs; (2) nōbīs; (3) nōs; (4) vōs; (5) tuī; (6) meī; (7) mihi; (8) tībī; (9) tē; (10) mē.
3. Translate the following third-person pronouns in accordance with their gender(s), number(s), and case(s): (1) eōs; (2) eās; (3) eōrum; (4) eārum; (5) eius; (6) eā; (7) ea; (8) eō; (9) eī; (10) eīs; (11) eae; (12) id.
4. Give the Latin for the following:
   - (1) his
   - (2) her (possess.)
   - (3) their (masc.)
   - (4) their (fem.)
   - (5) them (fem.)
   - (6) them (masc.)
   - (7) them (neut.)
   - (8) its
   - (9) to him
   - (10) to her
   - (11) by/w.fr. her
   - (12) by/w.fr. him
   - (13) to/for you (pl.)
   - (14) to/for you (sg.)
   - (15) they (masc.)
   - (16) they (neut.)
   - (17) they (fem.)
   - (18) to/for it
   - (19) it (neut. acc.)
   - (20) you (emphatic nom. pl.)
   - (21) you (emphatic nom. sg.)
   - (22) you (acc. pl.)
   - (23) us
   - (24) we
   - (25) to/for us
   - (26) I (emphatic form)
   - (27) to/for me

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 12

1. Name the principal parts of a Latin verb in their regular sequence.
2. Give the principal parts of mittō, labeling and translating each one.
3. What is the major difference between the perfect and imperfect tenses?
4. You must be able to tell from what verb any specific verb form comes.
   Practice on the following list by naming the first principal part of each of the verbs in the list.

   (1) misérunt  (6) actum  (11) remánserant  (16) díxérunt
   (2) laudáveram  (7) est  (12) scripsimus  (17) erat
   (3) vincébamus  (8) dédimus  (13) fuit  (18) víxi
   (4) dictum  (9) futúrum  (14) fécit  (19) faciébás
   (5) fécísti  (10) égimus  (15) fugere  (20) vísum

5. Translate the following endings of the perfect system according to person, number, and tense in each instance, using these conventions: -i = I (perfect) . . . ; -éram = I had . . . ; -erō = I shall have . . . ; (1) -istis; (2) -it; (3) -érunt; (4) -ísti; (5) -imus; (6) -erat; (7) -erimus; (8) -eramus; (9) -erās; (10) -erint; (11) -erant; (12) -erit; (13) -ératis.

6. Translate the following in accordance with the person, number, and tense of each:

   (1) vidiébant  (10) víxísti  (19) fugit  (28) remánсимus
   (2) viderant  (11) víxérunt  (20) fugit  (29) remánserámus
   (3) vidiísti  (12) vincet  (21) fugiunt  (30) vénit
   (4) fécit  (13) vícit  (22) fugérunt  (31) vení
   (5) faciébat  (14) vícimus  (23) servávit  (32) veniébátis
   (6) fécéramus  (15) vícimus  (24) serváverunt  (33) vénístis
   (7) fécimus  (16) déstísti  (25) servávístis  (34) vénérunt
   (8) faciémus  (17) dederátis  (26) serváverat  (35) vénient
   (9) fécérunt  (18) dédimus  (27) serváverent  (36) vénérant

7. Illí fügerant (fugient; fugiunt; fugiébant; fügérunt).
8. Hí remánśerunt (remanent; remánebant; remánserant).
9. Rēx Asiam vicerat (vincit; vícit; vincet).
10. Rēgēs Asiam vicerunt (vincet; vincunt; vícérant).
11. Rēgēs Asiam habuérunt (habent; habébunt; habuerant).
12. Caesar in eandem terram vénérat (vénit; venit; veniet).
13. Caesar eadem dixit (dícit; díxerat; dícerat).
14. Vōs nóbīs pācem déstitis (dabitis; dabátis; dederátis).
15. Tū litterās ad eam misísti (mittēs; mittis; misérās).
16. Eōs in eādem viā vidēmus (vidēmus; viderámus).
17. Diū vixerat (vixit; vivet).
18. Id bene fécerās (faciēs; fécísti; facis).
19. Cīvitātem eōrum (eius) servāvī (servābō; servābam; servāveram).
20. Eum in eōdem locō invēnérunt (invēnerant; invēnient).
21. Deus hominibus libertātem dederat (dedit; dat; dabat).
22. Mihi grātiās ēgérunt (agent; agēbant; ēgerant; agunt).
23. Vōs fuístis (erátis; estis; eritis; fuerátis) virī liberī.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 13

1. State the essential nature of reflexive pronouns, showing how, as a logical consequence, they differ from other pronouns.
2. Explain why the declension of reflexive pronouns begins with the genitive rather than with the nominative.
3. In what reflexive pronouns is the spelling the same as that of the corresponding simple pronoun?
4. Translate the following reflexive forms in accordance with their case(s) and number(s): (1) mihi; (2) tē; (3) nōbīs; (4) sībī; (5) vōs; (6) sē; (7) vōbīs.
5. Explain why the singular of suus can mean their own as well as his own, and the plural can mean his own as well as their own.
6. Explain why eōrum always means their and eius always means his (her, its) regardless of whether the nouns on which they depend are singular or plural.
7. Although sē and ipse can both be translated into English by himself, explain the basic difference between the Latin words.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In what specific case ending of all i-stem nouns does the characteristic i appear?
2. What are the other i-stem peculiarities of neuters in -e, -al, and -ar?
3. Translate each of the following according to its case(s) and number; when a form is nom. or acc. label it as such.

(1) arte
(9) corporum
(17) regum
(25) virōs

(2) artium
(10) partis
(18) régī
(26) virī

(3) artēs
(11) partibus
(19) nōmina
(27) virēs

(4) marī
(12) partium
(20) animālia
(28) virīs

(5) maribus
(13) urbe
(21) animālī
(29) vīs

(6) mare
(14) urbī
(22) animālis
(30) vim

(7) maria
(15) urbi
(23) animālium
(31) vīribus

(8) corpora
(16) urbēs
(24) vīrium
(32) vī

4. Of the forms in #3 above, list those which are i-stem forms.

5. Translate the following phrases into Latin:

(1) by/w.fr. great force
(8) many seas (nom.)

(2) great man (acc.)
(9) by/w.fr. a great sea

(3) of great strength
(10) a great sea (acc.)

(4) to/for great force
(11) great force (acc.)

(5) of many citizens
(12) of many men (vir)

(6) by/w.fr. a good citizen
(13) by/w.fr. great strength

(7) to/for many citizens
(14) great strength (acc.)

6. What kind of idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives?

(1) cum rēge; (2) oculīs meīs; (3) cum cūrā; (4) labōre meō.

7. Translate each of the following verb forms and name the verb from which each comes:

(1) cucurrērunt;
(2) currēbamus;
(3) cucurristī;
(4) trāxeramus;
(5) trahēt;
(6) trahunt;
(7) gerēbat;
(8) gerīt;
(9) gerunt;
(10) gerēmus;
(11) tenent;
(12) tenēbunt;
(13) tenuerunt;
(14) tenuimus.


22. Name the type of ablative found in each of the following sentences above: 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 15

1. State the difference between cardinal and ordinal numerals.
2. What cardinals are declined?
3. What ordinals are declined?
4. State the form or possible forms of each of the following: (1) duōbus; (2) mīlle; (3) tria; (4) duo; (5) quīnque; (6) mīlia; (7) decem; (8) duābus; (9) centum; (10) trium; (11) vīgintī; (12) octō.

5. Why is the genitive of the whole so called?

6. What construction did the Romans use after cardinal numerals?

7. Translate each of the following phrases.

   (1) ūnus civis
   (2) decem civēs
   (3) pars civium
   (4) trēs civēs
   (5) trēs ex sex civibus
   (6) quīnque ex civibus
   (7) quīnque civēs
   (8) centum civēs
   (9) centum ex civibus
   (10) mīlle civēs
   (11) tria mīlia civium
   (12) quīd novī
   (13) multum laudis
   (14) satis pecūniāe
   (15) nihil aquae

8. When the Romans put a word of time in the ablative case without a preposition, what kind of ideas did they express?

9. Study the ablatives in the following sentences. Then translate the sentences and name the type of ablative found in each one.

   (1) Cum amīcis veniebat.
   (2) Unā hōra veniet.
   (3) Eadem tempore venit.
   (4) Pauels horās librīm scrīpsit.
   (5) Illō tempore librīm scrīpsit.
   (6) Cum ĉūrā librīm scrībēbat.

10. Illō tempore sōlō illa trīa periculo tīmuīt; sed mortem semper tīmēbat.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 16

1. If one has carefully learned the declension of civis and mare one can easily decline the 3d-declension adjective fortis, forte with the exception of one form. What is that form?
2. (1) Adjectives of the 3d declension may be classified as adjectives of 3 endings, 2 endings, or 1 ending. Which type is by far the most common? (2) In what one case do adjectives of 1 and 3 endings differ from those of 2 endings?

3. Cite and label three endings in which adjectives of the 3d declension show themselves to be i-stems.

4. Of the endings of the 3d-declension adjectives none is likely to cause recognition difficulty except perhaps the ablative singular. What is the normal ending of the ablative singular in all genders?

5. Can 3d-declension adjectives be used with nouns of the 1st or the 2nd declension?

6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case(s) and number: When they are nom. or acc., so indicate.


**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 17**

1. Define the terms “antecedent” and “relative pronoun.”

2. (1) What determines the case of the Latin relative pronoun? (2) What determines the gender and the number of the relative pronoun?

3. State in what ways a relative agrees with its antecedent.

4. Name (1) the English relative pronoun which refers to persons and (2) the one which refers to anything else. (3) Since in Latin the one relative pronoun serves both purposes, what two English meanings does it have?

5. Translate the following in accordance with their case(s) and number(s).
When a form is nom. or acc., so indicate if the translation does not make the point clear.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>quōs</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>(9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 18**

1. Define the term “passive voice” by explaining the etymology of “passive.”
2. What is the difference between the ablative of means and the ablative of agent in both meaning and construction?
3. (1) What one letter occurs in 5 of the 6 passive personal endings and can thus be regarded as the peculiar sign of the passive?  
   (2) Does this characteristically passive letter occur in any of the corresponding active personal endings?
4. Give the English pronoun by which each of the following passive endings can be translated: (1) -mur; (2) -tur; (3) -r; (4) -ntur; (5) -ris; (6) -mini.
5. (1) Name the tense signs of the imperfect and the future in the passive voice of the 1st and 2nd conjugations.  
   (2) Are these the same as the tense signs in the active voice?
6. If -bar can be translated “I was being . . .” and -bor, “I shall be . . .,” translate each of the following: (1) -bimur; (2) -bāmini; (3) -bātur; (4) -beris; (5) -buntur; (6) -bāmur; (7) -bitur; (8) -bāris; (9) -bāmini; (10) -buntur.
7. Mē terrent; ab eīs terreor; vī eōrum terreor. 8. Tyrrannus hanc urbem dē-

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 19

1. Name the two basic verbal elements (1) of which the perfect passive indicative of all verbs is composed, and (2) of which the pluperfect passive indicative is composed.

2. In translation how does (1) vir missus est differ from vir mittitur, and (2) vir missus erat, from vir mittēbātur?

3. What is the use of the interrogative pronoun?

4. In what forms does the interrogative pronoun differ conspicuously in spelling from the relative?

5. By what two syntactical criteria can the interrogative pronoun be distinguished from the relative even when both have the same spelling?

6. Translate the following in accordance with their forms:

   (1) movētur
   (2) mōtus est
   (3) mōtum erat
   (4) movēbātūr
   (5) delētī erant
   (6) delēbātūr
   (7) delētī sunt
   (8) tenēmur
   (9) tentī sumus
   (10) tentī erāmus
   (11) tenēbāmur
   (12) mútātus erat
   (13) mútātus est
   (14) mútātūr
   (15) mútābātur

7. Translate the following forms of the interrogative pronoun: (1) cuius?; (2) quem?; (3) quī?; (4) quid?; (5) quōrum?; (6) cui?; (7) quās?; (8) quis?; (9) quae?


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 20

1. Indicate the force of the following masculine and feminine endings of the 4th declension: (1) -um; (2) -uum; (3) -ū; (4) -us; (5) -us; (6) -ūī.

2. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case forms:

   (1) manus  (2) manus  (3) manuum  (4) manū  (5) manūs
   (6) fructibus (7) fructum  (8) fructūs (9) fructuum (10) fructū

3. (1) What gender predominates in the 4th declension?
   (2) Name the noun which is the most common exception to this rule.

4. (1) Explain the difference of idea between the ablative of place from which and the ablative of separation.
   (2) Which of the two is regular with verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving?
   (3) Which of the two is regular with verbs of motion?

5. State any differences of construction between them.

26. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives, respectively? 

tempore (6), patria (7), eō (8), virō (9), metū (10), nōbis (12), patriā (13), 
sceleribus (14), metū (15), studiō (16), manibus (17), cōpiā (22), aetāte 
(23), metū (24).

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 21

1. Give the passive personal endings of the present and future tenses.

2. Repeat aloud the present and future passive of the model verbs agō, 
audiō, and capiō.

3. How can the present passive infinitive be distinguished from the active 
in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations? Illustrate by changing the following 
active infinitives into passive ones: (1) sentire; (2) movere; (3) servāre; 
(4) scīre; (5) tenēre. Translate each.

4. What is exceptional about the form of the present passive infinitive of 
the 3d conjugation? Illustrate by changing the following active infinitives 
into passive ones: (1) mittere; (2) iacere; (3) tangere; (4) trahere. Trans­
late each.

5. Translate each of the following in accordance with its form:

(1) mittar  (7) rapitur   (13) raperis  (19) tangēmini
(2) mitteris (8) rapiētur  (14) rapiēris (20) sciēris
(3) mittēris (9) rapī     (15) tanguntur (21) sciūris
(4) mīttī    (10) rapimur  (16) tangentur (22) sciūitur
(5) mittuntur (11) rapientur (17) tangi   (23) sciū
(6) mittor   (12) rapiuntur (18) tangeris (24) sciūrī

6. Quis mittitur (mittētur, mittēbātur, missus est)?  7. Ā quō hae litterae mit­
tentur (missae sunt, mittuntur)?  8. Cuius manū illae litterae scrip­tae sunt (scribentur)?  9. Quid dictum est (dīcēbātur, dīcētur, dīcitur)?  10. “Quis rapi­
legēris/neglegēmini (neglēctus es/neglēctī estis).  13. Post multās hōrās 
liberātī sumus (liberābimur).  14. Čivītātis causā cum rapī iussērunt.  
15. Libertātīs causā civitās nostra ab alterō virō geri dēbet.  16. Animus eius 
pecūniā tangī nōn poterat.  17. Amor patriae in omnī animō sentiēbātur 
(sentīētur, sentītur, sensus est).  18. Amōre patriae cum aliīs civibus iungīmur 
(iungēbāmur, iungēmur).  19. Amīcitia nōn semper intellegitur, sed 
sentītur.  20. Sapientia et vēritās in illīs duōbus hominibus nōn inveniuntur 
inveniuntur, inventae sunt).  21. Sapientia etiam multā pecūniā nōn para­
tur (parābitur, paraītā est).  22. Vēritās saepe nōn scītur (sciētur, scīta est), 
quod studium eius est difficile.  23. Nōn sine magnō labōre vēritās inveniē­
tur (inventa est, potest invenīri).  24. Aliī studiō pecūniāe atque laudis tra­
huntur, nōs dēbēmus amōre vēritātis sapientiaeque trahī.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 22

1. As u is characteristic of the 4th declension, what vowel is characteristic of the 5th declension?

2. List the case endings of the 5th declension which are enough like the corresponding endings of the 3rd declension that they can be immediately recognized without difficulty.

3. (1) What is the gender of most nouns of the 5th declension?
   (2) Name the chief exception.

4. Translate each of the following in accordance with its case(s) and number(s). Where a form is nom. or acc., so state.

   (1) spēl (6) fidē (11) diēbus (16) reī
   (2) spērūm (7) fidem (12) rem (17) ignium
   (3) speb (8) fidēis (13) rērum (18) ignem
   (4) spēbus (9) diērum (14) rē (19) ignibus
   (5) spēs (10) diēs (15) rēbus (20) ignēs

5. Name the type of adverbial idea in each of the following, and then translate the sentence.

   (1) In urbe remānsit. (4) Cum eīs vēnit. (7) Illud igne factum est.
   (2) Ūnā hōrā veniet. (5) Ex urbe vēnit. (8) Id ab eīs factum est.
   (3) Eō tempore vēnit. (6) Ignē carent. (9) Id cum fidē factum est.

6. Concerning each of the following adverbial ideas, state whether in Latin the ablative alone expresses the idea, or whether the Romans used a preposition with the ablative, or whether a preposition was sometimes used and sometimes not. Base your answers on the rules learned thus far.

   (1) personal agent (5) means
   (2) accompaniment (6) manner
   (3) separation (7) place from which
   (4) place where (8) time when or within when

7. Eō tempore libertātem illōrum decem cīvium cum fidē cōnservāvit.
22. Bona fides et amor huius rei publicae possunt nos conservare. 23. Tottam vitam huic rei publicae dedisti.

24. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives? (The numbers refer to the sentences.) (7) tempore, fide; (8) cura; (9) cura; (10) urbe; (11) die, spe; (13) diebus, periculō; (14) metu; (15) fructibus; (16) virtute; (17) aetate, tyrannis; (18) re publica, metu; (19) manū, diē; (21) fide.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 23

1. State what Latin participle is indicated by each of the following endings and give the English suffix or phrase which can be used as an approximate equivalent in each instance: (1) -tus; (2) -ns; (3) -sūrus; (4) -ntem; (5) -tūrūs; (6) -ndus; (7) -sus; (8) -ntēs; (9) -sī; (10) -tis. Such forms should be practiced aloud until you have an immediate linguistic reflex to each one. These reflexes can be tested in the following exercise.

2. Translate the following participles in accordance with their tense and voice.

(1) futūrus   (7) versus   (13) faciendus   (19) datī
(2) pressūrus  (8) versūrus  (14) rapientēs  (20) datūrōs
(3) premēns   (9) dictus    (15) raptūrōs   (21) dantem
(4) pressus   (10) dīcēns   (16) cupīta     (22) mōtus
(5) premendus (11) dictūrus (17) cupientēs (23) moventem
(6) vertēns   (12) factus   (18) dandum     (24) mōtūrī

3. Translate the following participles or participial phrases into Latin in their nom. sg. masc. form.

(1) (having been) seen   (10) (having been) conquered
(2) seeing               (11) about to conquer
(3) about to see         (12) conquering
(4) to be written        (13) about to join
(5) about to write       (14) joining
(6) (having been) written (15) (having been) dragged
(7) sending              (16) dragging
(8) (having been) sent   (17) about to throw
(9) about to send        (18) (having been) thrown


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 24

1. (1) What are the two essential parts of a regular ablative absolute in Latin?
   (2) Can the noun or pronoun of an ablative absolute also appear as the subject or the object of the verb?

2. (1) Explain the term “absolute.”
   (2) Guided by the examples in Chapter 24, p. 156, tell what punctuation usually indicates an ablative absolute, and show how this harmonizes with the term “absolute.”

3. Should the ablative absolute always be translated literally? Explain.

4. Name five subordinating conjunctions in English which may be used to translate the ablative absolute depending on the requirements of the context.

5. State whether the Romans would have regarded any or all of the following sentences as incorrect, and explain why. (Examples in Chapter 24 will help you.)
   (1) Urbe captā, Caesar eam dēlēvit.
   (2) Caesar, urbem captum, eam dēlēvit.
   (3) Caesar urbem captam dēlēvit.
   (4) Urbe captā, Caesar multās gentēs dēlēvit.

6. (1) What idea is expressed by the -ndus participle (gerundive) + sum?
   (2) Explain the agreement of the -ndus, -nda, -ndum participle.
   (3) What Latin verb + the infinitive expresses a similar idea?

7. (1) Explain the syntax of mihi in the following sentence: Cīvitās mihi cōnservanda est.
   (2) Fill out the blank in the following sentence with the Latin for “by me” and explain the construction: Cīvitās—cōnservāta est.

1. Review the present active and passive infinitives of all four conjugations.
2. If -tūrus (-sūrus) marks the future active participle, what form logically is -tūrus (-sūrus) esse?
3. If -tus (-sus) marks the perfect passive participle, what form logically is -tus (-sus) esse?
4. With what do the participal elements of the above infinitives (the -tūrus, -tūra, -tūrum and the -tus, -a, -um) agree?
5. To what English verb phrase is the Latin ending -isse equivalent? Repeat this sufficiently so that when you see -isse your linguistic reflex automatically and instantly gives you the proper tense and voice of the infinitive.
6. Now try your reflexes by translating the following forms in accordance with their tense and voice.

(1) movisse (11) sustulisse (21) quaesītum esse
(2) mōtus esse (12) trāxisse (22) expulsum esse
(3) mōtūrus esse (13) tetigisse (23) relictōs esse
(4) movērī (14) amāvisse (24) data esse
(5) dīcī (15) vīcisse (25) datūra esse
(6) scīrī (16) vīxisse (26) versūrum esse
(7) servārī (17) trāctōs esse (27) pressūrōs esse
(8) rapī (18) višam esse (28) raptūrōs esse
(9) mittī (19) raptum esse (29) iussūrum esse
(10) crēdidisse (20) missōs esse (30) tāctūrōs esse

7. Explain the difference between a direct and an indirect statement.
8. Indicate what verbs in the following list may introduce an indirect statement and give their meanings.
9. In what four main categories can we list most verbs which introduce indirect statements?

10. In English the indirect statement most often appears as a “that” clause, though an infinitive with subject accusative is sometimes used (“I believe that he is brave”; “I believe him to be brave”). What is the form of the indirect statement in classical Latin?

11. In what case did the Romans put the subject of an infinitive?

12. In Latin indirect statement does the tense of the infinitive depend on the tense of the verb of saying? In other words, must a present infinitive be used only with a present main verb, a perfect only with a perfect main verb, etc.?

13. What time relative to that of the main verb does each of the following infinitive tenses indicate: (1) perfect; (2) future; (3) present?


17. Crēdimus eōs ventūros esse (vēnisse, venire). 18. Crās audīet (A) eōs venire (i.e., crās); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., heri); (C) eōs ventūros esse (e.g., paucīs diēbus).

19. Hodī audīt (A) eōs venire (hodī); (B) eōs vēnisse (herī); (C) eōs ventūros esse (mox, soon).

20. Herī audīvit (A) eōs venire (herī); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., prīdiē, the day before yesterday); (C) eōs ventūros (paucīs diēbus).


25. Scītis illōs esse (futūros esse, fuīisse) semper fidēlēs.

26. Scīvisīs illōs esse (futūros esse, fuīisse) semper fidēlēs. 27. Putābant tyrannum sībi expellendum esse.

28. Crēdimus pācem omnibus ducibus quaerendam esse.


31. Hostēs spērant sē omnēs rēs pūblīcās victūros esse. 32. Bene sciō mē multa nescīre; nēmō enim potest ommia scīre.

33. All infinitives except one in the above sentences are infinitives in indirect statement. Name that one exception.

34. Explain the syntax of the following words by stating in each instance (A) the form and (B) the reason for the form: (14) tē; fēcisse; (16) eōs; (17) ventūros esse; (21) eum; (22) hoc; (23) eō; (24) hostibus; (25) fidēlēs; (27) sībi; (28) pācem; ducibus; (29) ducibus; (30) pācem; (31) rēs pūblīcās.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) In the comparison of adjectives, to what English ending does the Latin -ior correspond?
   (2) What mnemonic aid can be found in their superficial similarity?
2. (1) To what English adjectival ending does -issimus correspond?
   (2) Can any mnemonic device be found here?
3. (1) To what part of an adjective are -ior and -issimus normally added?
   (2) Illustrate by adding these endings to the following adjectives: turpis; vēlōx, gen. vēlōcis, swift; prūdēns, gen. prūdentis, prudent.
4. If acerbus means harsh give (1) three possible forces of the comparative acerbior and (2) two possible forces of the superlative acerbissimus.
5. Give the meaning of quam (1) with the comparative degree (e.g., hic erat acerbior quam ille) and (2) with the superlative (e.g., hic erat quam acerbissimus).
6. What case follows quam, than?
7. (1) Do most adjectives of the third declension have consonant stems or i-stems?
   (2) Do comparatives have consonant stems or i-stems?


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 27

1. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of adjectives in which the masculine of the positive degree ends in -er?
   (2) Does this hold for adjectives of any declension or only for those of the 1st and 2nd declension?
2. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of facilis?
   (2) Do all adjectives in -lis follow this rule? Be specific.
3. Some of the most common adjectives are the most irregular in their comparison. To illustrate how helpful English can be in learning these
irregular forms, write each of the following Latin words on a separate line:

parvus, malus, bonus, (prō), magnus, superus, multus;

and then, choosing from the following list, write opposite each of them the English words which suggest the comparative and the superlative respectively:

pessimist, prime, minus, ameliorate, summit, maximum, supreme, optimist, plus, superior, pejorative, prior, major, minimum.

4. Translate the following:

(1) bellum minus
(2) bellum pessimum
(3) bellum maius
(4) bella priōra
(5) liber simillimus
(6) liber difficilior
(7) puer minimus
(8) puer melior
(9) puella pulcherrima
(10) puella pulchrior
(11) puellae plūrime
(12) fidēs maior

(13) fidēs minima
(14) mare minus
(15) in mari minore
(16) maria maiōra
(17) fructūs optimī
(18) fructus peitor
(19) hominēs acerrimī
(20) hominēs aciōrēs
(21) hominēs plūrēs
(22) labor difficilimus
(23) labor suprēmus
(24) plūs labōris
(25) plūrēs labōrēs
(26) ducēs optimī
(27) ducēs maiōrēs
(28) ducēs meliōrēs
(29) dōna minima
(30) dōna plūra
(31) dōna prīma
(32) plūs laudīs
(33) plūrēs laudēs
(34) civēs pessimī
(35) civēs meliōrēs
(36) civēs liberrimī


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 28

1. What does the subjunctive usually indicate in Latin—a fact or something other than a fact?

2. Is the subjunctive more or less common in Latin than it is in English?

3. What vowel is the sign of the present subjunctive (1) in the first conjugation and (2) in the other conjugations?

4. When the verb of the main clause is in the subjunctive, what is the force of this subjunctive?
5. What idea is expressed by the subjunctive in a *subordinate clause* introduced by *ut* or *ne*?

6. In this chapter when *ne* is used with a *main verb* in the subjunctive, what kind of subjunctive is it?

7. Did the Roman prose-writers of the classical period use the infinitive to express purpose as we do in English?

8. Whenever in the following list a form is subjunctive, so label it, indicating also its person and number. The indicative forms are to be translated in accordance with their person, number, and tense.

```
(1) mittet (11) audiēmur (21) liberēminī
(2) mittat (12) audiāmur (22) liberābiminī
(3) mittit (13) audiūmur (23) dēlentur
(4) det (14) ēripiās (24) dēleantur
(5) dat (15) ēripis (25) vincēris
(6) crēdant (16) ēripiēs (26) vincēris
(7) crēdunt (17) sciuntur (27) vincāris
(8) crēdent (18) scientur (28) dicimus
(9) movent (19) sciuntur (29) dicēmus
(10) moveant (20) liberāminī (30) dicāmus
```


24. Explain the syntax of the following words (i.e., copy the words each on a new line, state the form, and give the reason for that form): (9) veniat; (10) discēdant, vivāmus; (11) faciānt; (12) prae stat, amētur; (13) discēdātis; (14) faciāmus; (15) date, armīs, careant; (16) ēōs, factūrōs esse, vītent; (17) parēmus, tollātur; (18) armīs, ēripiētur; (19) scribānt; (20) accipiēmus; (21) faciāt, agat; (22) narrā, scribāntur; (23) quae rāmus.

**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 29**

1. What is the easy rule for the recognition and the formation of the imperfect subjunctive active and passive?
2. Does this rule apply to such irregular verbs as sum and possum?
3. The indicatives in the following list are to be translated according to their forms. The subjunctives are to be so labeled, with indication also of their tense, person, and number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Indicative Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāret</td>
<td>(1) dīcat</td>
<td>(21) possīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inveniērent</td>
<td>(12) dīcat</td>
<td>(22) essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viderēmus</td>
<td>(13) dīcit</td>
<td>(23) accipiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcerem</td>
<td>(14) sint</td>
<td>(24) accipiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēriperēs</td>
<td>(15) posset</td>
<td>(25) acciperēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servet</td>
<td>(16) possit</td>
<td>(26) expellēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servārētis</td>
<td>(17) discēderent</td>
<td>(27) expellerēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videat</td>
<td>(18) discēdent</td>
<td>(28) expellāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inveniēs</td>
<td>(19) discēdant</td>
<td>(29) movērentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inveniās</td>
<td>(20) dēmus</td>
<td>(30) moventur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. How can the idea of result be expressed in Latin?
5. How can result clauses be distinguished from purpose clauses?
6. When and where is the imperfect subjunctive used?

7. Optimōs librōs tantā cum cūrā lēgērunt ut multum sapientiae discerent.
8. Bonōs librōs cum cūrā legēbāmus ut sapientiam discerēmus.
10. Sapiēntissimī auctōrēs plūrēs librōs scībant ut omnēs gentēs adiūvāre possint.
11. Animē plūrēmōrum homīnum tam stultī sunt ut discere nōn cupiānt.
12. At multae mentēs ita ācrēs sunt ut bene discere possint.
13. Quīdam magistrī discipulōs tantā cum arte docēbant ut ipsī discipulī quīdem discere cuperent.
15. Omnēs cīvēs sē patriāe dent nē hostēs libertātem tollant.
17. Dūcimusne aliās gentēs tantā cum sapientiā et virtūte ut libertās cōnservētur?
18. Tanta beneficīa faciēbātis ut omnēs vōs amārent.
19. Tam dūrus erat ut nēmō eum amāret.
20. Mīlia cīvīum ex ēa terrā fugiēbant nē a tyrannō opprimerentur.

22. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) discerent; (8) discerēmus; (9) discant; (10) scībant, possint; (11) cupiānt; (12) possint; (13) cuperent; (14) posset; (15) dent, tollant; (16) vincerent; (17) cōnservētur; (18) amārent; (19) amāret; (20) opprimerentur; (21) vincerentur.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 30

1. As the form of the imperfect subjunctive active is the present active infinitive plus personal endings, how can the pluperfect subjunctive active be easily recognized?
2. As the pluperfect indicative passive is the perfect passive particle + eram (i.e., the imperfect indicative of sum), what parallel rule holds for the pluperfect subjunctive passive?

3. If positus est is the perfect indicative passive, what most naturally is positus sit?

4. What forms of the active indicative do the forms of the perfect subjunctive active resemble in most instances?

5. State the tense, voice, person, and number of each of the following subjunctives:

   (1) poneretur  (5) posuerint  (9) darent  (13) dedissês
   (2) posuissem  (6) ponerêmus  (10) datê essêmus  (14) darêtur
   (3) posit sit  (7) posuisseâs  (11) det  (15) dederîmus
   (4) ponâmur  (8) positus esset  (12) datus sîs  (16) dedissent

6. (1) Name the primary tenses of the indicative.
   (2) Name the primary tenses of the subjunctive.
   (3) Name the historical tenses of the indicative.
   (4) Name the historical tenses of the subjunctive.

7. (1) What time does the present subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
   (2) What time does the imperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a historical main verb?
   (3) What time does the perfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
   (4) What time does the pluperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a secondary main verb?

30. Explain the syntax of the following: (15) posita esset; (16) fecerit; (17) fecisset; (18) venerit; (20) fugerit; (21) fugerent; (22) esse, conservarent; (23) fecissent, conservarent; (24) posset; (25) inventam esse; (26) sit; (27) esse; (28) agamus, sint; (29) expounat, comprehendatis, commissa sint.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 31

1. Name the three possible meanings of cum + the subjunctive.
2. When tamen follows a cum-clause, what does cum regularly mean?
3. (1) To what conjugation does ferō belong?
   (2) State the irregularity which the following forms of ferō have in common: ferre, fers, fert, fertis, ferris, fertur.
4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the rest according to their forms.

| (1) ferat | (6) ferunt | (11) fertis | (16) tulisse |
| (2) fert  | (7) ferent | (12) ferēris | (17) lātūrus esse |
| (3) ferret| (8) ferant | (13) ferris | (18) ferendus |
| (4) feret | (9) fertur | (14) fer  | (19) lātus esse |
| (5) ferre | (10) ferte | (15) ferrī | (20) tulisset |


20. Explain the syntax of the following words: (5) dixissēmus, oblātūrōs esse; (6) contulisset; (7) offerant; (8) esset; (9) offerantur; (10) exposuisset, peteret; (11) tulissent; (12) comprehendēmus; (13) cōnfer; (14) ferant; (15) nāvibus, lātūrōs esse; (16) vīcissent; (17) offerrent; (19) dīxisset.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 32

1. What is the regular positive ending (1) of adverbs made from adjectives of the first and the second declensions and (2) of adverbs made from adjectives of the third declension?

2. In English what adverbial ending is equivalent to the Latin adverbial -ē or -iter?

3. Do all Latin adverbs of the positive degree end in -ē or -iter?

4. (1) What is the ending of the comparative degree of an adverb in Latin?
   (2) With what form of the adjective is this identical?
   (3) In English how is the comparative degree of the adverb usually formed?

5. How does the base of the superlative degree of a Latin adverb compare with that of the corresponding adjective?

6. Translate each of the following adverbs in two ways: (1) liberius; (2) liberrimē.

7. Translate each of the following adverbs in accordance with its form.

   (1) iūcundē  (6) breviter  (11) minimē  (16) minus
   (2) iūcundius  (7) celerrimē  (12) magis  (17) facile
   (3) iūcundissimē  (8) peiūs  (13) diūtius  (18) maximē
   (4) melius  (9) fidēlius  (14) male  (19) gravissimē
   (5) fidēlissimē  (10) facilius  (15) miserius  (20) celerius

8. (1) What is the stem of volō in the indicative?
    (2) What is the stem of volō in the present and the imperfect subjunctive?

9. To what other irregular verb is volō similar in the present subjunctive?

10. Label the subjunctives in the following list and translate the other forms.

    (1) volēs  (7) mālēmus  (13) voluissē  (19) voluistū
    (2) velēs  (8) voluissēs  (14) volunt  (20) vellet
    (3) vīs  (9) volam  (15) voluimus  (21) nōlent
    (4) vellēs  (10) volēbant  (16) velle  (22) nōlet
    (5) māvult  (11) volet  (17) voluerat  (23) mālit
    (6) velīmus  (12) vultis  (18) voluērunt  (24) nōlet


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) What form of the verb is found in both clauses of a future less vivid condition?
   (2) Explain why this construction is called “less vivid” as compared with the simple future (or “future more vivid”)
2. (1) Name the specific type of condition (A) that has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses and (B) that has the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
   (2) In each of these conditions which part of the sentence is essentially the same in both Latin and English?
3. What is the regular negative of the conditional clause in Latin?
4. What type of Latin condition is translated by “should ... would” and hence can be called a “should-would condition”?
5. What is the meaning of quis, quid after sī, nisi, nē, and num?


39. Name in sequence the types of conditions found in sentences 6–10 and 21–26.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 34

1. State the chief peculiarity of deponent verbs.
2. Write a synopsis of the following verbs in the 6 tenses of the indicative and the 4 tenses of the subjunctive as indicated:
   (1) *cónor* in the 1st person plural.
   (2) *loquor* in the 3rd person singular.
3. (1) Write, label, and translate all the participles of *patior*.
   (2) Write, label, and translate all the infinitives of *patior*.
4. Using the proper form of *illud cōnsilium* fill in the following blanks to complete the idea suggested by the English sentence in each instance.
   (1) He will not follow that plan: nōn sequētur ______.
   (2) He will not use that plan: nōn utētur ______.
   (3) He will not permit that plan: nōn patiētur ______.
5. Explain the proper form of *illud cōnsilium* in #4 (2) above.
6. Name the active forms found in deponent verbs.
7. Give the imperative forms of (1) *cónor* and (2) *loquor*, and translate each one.
8. Translate the following participles: (1) locūtus; (2) mortuus; (3) cōnātus; (4) passus; (5) secūtus; (6) egressus; (7) profectus.
9. In the following list label any subjunctive forms and translate the rest:
   (1) utētur  (6) usus esset  (11) patī  (16) patitur
   (2) ātētur  (7) usūrūm esse  (12) passī sunt  (17) patiēmur
   (3) ātētur  (8) patiēris  (13) passum esse  (18) arbitrētur
   (4) āterētur  (9) paterīs  (14) patientēs  (19) arbitrārētur
   (5) āsus  (10) patere  (15) patiātur  (20) patiendum est
10. Arbitrātur haec mala patiēnda esse. 11. Cōnābimur haec mala patī.
28. Name the type of condition found above in each of the following sentences: 12, 16, 20, 26.
29. Explain the syntax of the following: (14) passūrōs esse; (17) verbīs; (18) locūtī, morerēmur; (19) cōnsiliō, arbitrārētur; (21) diē; (22) ūtāmur; (25) nocte; (26) libris.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 35

1. A certain number of verbs, which in English apparently take a direct object, in Latin take a dative. In lieu of a good rule to cover such verbs, what procedures can prove helpful?

2. Some other verbs also, when compounded with certain prepositions, may take a dative.
   (1) What is the concept that underlies this?
   (2) Do all compound verbs take the dative?

3. Copy each of the following verbs on a new line; after it write that one of the three forms ei, eum, eō which is in the case required by the verb; and then translate the whole expression, using the pronoun to mean “him” generally and “it” where necessary.

(1) cognōscunt (7) patiuntur (13) superant (19) persuādent
(2) ignōscunt (8) inveniunt (14) crēdunt (20) ūtuntur
(3) servīunt (9) nocent (15) caret (21) pellunt
(4) servānt (10) iuvant (16) student (22) parcent
(5) parāvī (11) placēnt (17) hortantur (23) imperant
(6) pārūī (12) iaciunt (18) sequuntur (24) iubent


24. Explain the syntax of the following: (5) ducī; (8) eum; (9) sībi; (11) exercitūrī; (12) hominibus; (13) fīliīs; (14) mihi; (15) fīde; (16) ducī, pāreāmus, servet; (17) civībus, vītae; (18) litterīs, amīcīs; (21) rēbus, libris, ūtāmur; (22) omnibus; (23) tuīs.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 36

1. We have already learned how the Romans expressed indirect statements (Chapter 25) and indirect questions (Chapter 30). Now after a verb having the connotation of command, how did the Romans express an indirect command?

2. List some common Latin verbs which can take an indirect command.

3. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

(1) fit  
(2) fit  
(3) fiat  
(4) fieret  
(5) fieri  
(6) fiunt  
(7) fiēbant  
(8) fiēs  
(9) factus esse  
(10) fierent  
(11) fīmus  
(12) fīent  
(13) fīs  
(14) fierem  
(15) fīant  
(16) faciendus  
(17) fīāmus


26. Explain the syntax of the following: (4) studēre; (5) studērent; (6) studērent; (7) studērent; (8) cognōscāmus; (9) parēs; (10) eōs, pācem; (11) hostibus; (13) fēcerīs; (14) faciās; (16) fācerem; (18) fīātīs; (22) lēgibus; (23) lēgibus; (24) futūram esse; (25) hortēmur.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 37

1. (1) Name the tenses and moods in which the stem of ēre is changed to e before a, o, and u.

(2) Otherwise, what is the stem of eō in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive?

2. State the nominative singular and the nominative plural of the present participle of eō.
3. Write a synopsis of *eo* in the 2nd singular and the 3d plural indicative and subjunctive active.

4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

   (1) iimus  (7) itūrus esse  (13) īī  (19) euntēs
   (2) īmus    (8) euntēm  (14) ībat  (20) ībō
   (3) īrēmus  (9) īrēunt  (15) ierant  (21) īit
   (4) ībimus  (10) eunt  (16) ierim  (22) ībāmus
   (5) īsēmus  (11) eunt  (17) īret  (23) īset
   (6) eāmus   (12) ībunt  (18) īse  (24) eat

5. State how the Romans regularly expressed the following place concepts and translate the English example into Latin:

   (1) place from which: from (out of) that land.
   (2) place where: in that land; on that island.
   (3) place to which: into (to) that land.

6. State the general rules for these place constructions when the name of a city is involved.

7. Define the locative case, and state the nature of the locative forms.

8. State how the Romans expressed each of the following time concepts and translate the English example:

   (1) time when: on the same day.
   (2) time how long: for many days.
   (3) time within which: in one day.

9. What is peculiar about the principal parts of *licit*? Explain. Translate into Latin “You may go.”

10. Translate each of the following words or phrases in accordance with the principles of this chapter.

    (1) ūnum diem  (7) paucīs diēbus  (13) domum
    (2) ūnō die  (8) eādem nocte  (14) Athēnīs
    (3) illō die  (9) multōs diēs  (15) domī
    (4) Rōmā  (10) in nāvem  (16) Athēnās
    (5) Rōmae  (11) in nāve  (17) domō
    (6) Rōmam  (12) ex nāve  (18) paucīs hōrās

Athēnās redīēs.  18. Si in finēs hostīum hōc tempore eat, paucīs hōrīs
pereat.  19. Negāvit sē velle in istā terrā multōs diēs remanēre.  20. Dīxistī tē
domum Athēnīs īnā hōrā redīērum esse.  21. Ā tē petō ut ex nāve ad īnsu-
lam brevī tempore redeās.  22. Eīs diēbus solitū sumus Athēnīs esse.  23. Si
amicēs eius Rōmam nociissent, Rōmam brevissimō tempore redīēset.
25. Rōmānī, sī quid mālī loquī volebant, saepe dīcēbant: "Abī in malam rem."  
26. Eis persuādet ut Latīnae studeant.  
27. Explain the syntax of the following words: (11) hōrīs, Rōmam; (12) do- 
mum; (13) Rōmā, Athēnās, āre; (14) domō; (15) Rōmam; (17) frātre; 
(18) tempore, eat, hōrīs; (19) velle, diēs; (20) domum, Athēnās, hōrā, re-
ditūrum esse; (21) tempore, redeās; (22) diēbus, Athēnās; (23) amīcīs, 
Rōmae, redīsset; (24) domī, terrās, domō; (26) studeant.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 38
1. What does a relative clause with the indicative tell about the antecedent?  
2. What does a relative clause with the subjunctive tell about its antecedent, 
   and what is the nature of the antecedent?  
3. What is the basic difference between the dative of indirect object and the 
   dative of reference?  
4. How are supines formed and what are their functions?  
5. Amīcus meus quī cōnsulem dēfendit ipse erat vir clārissimus.  
6. At nēmō erat quī istum hominem turpem dēfenderet.  
7. Quid est quod virī plūs metuant quam tyrannum?  
8. Quis est quī inter libertātem et imperium tyrannī dubitet?  
9. Rōmae antīquaerant quī pecūniam plūs quam rem pūblicam amārent.  
10. Abeat ā patriā iste homō malus quī oidiūn omnium cūvium 
   bonōrum passus est.  
11. Catilīna (= Catilīne), quī tantās ūnsidīās contrā 
   rem pūblicam fēcerat, ex urbe ā Cicerōne expulsus est.  
12. Istī dūciī in exsi-
   lium abeuntī quae víta potest esse iucunda?  
13. Quī est quī tantum do-
lōrem fēre possīt?  
14. Nisi quis iūcundus bonusque erit, vítam vērē fēlicem 
   mihi nōn vīvet.  
15. Cōnsulī nōn crēdent quī opera turpia faciat.  
16. Nōli 
   crēdere eī quī sit acerbus amīcīs.  
17. Cicerō erat cōnsul quī rem pūblicam 
   salūtī suae antepōneret.  
18. Scīvērunt quārē cōnsulem tam fortēm sequī 
   vellēmus.  
20. Ducem quaero quem ommēs laudēnt.  
22. Rōmānī, 
   quī decem rēs pūblicās Graecās exercitibus suīs cēperant, ipsī—mūrabile 
   dictū—Graecās artibus capī sunt!  
23. Virīs antīquīs nihil erat quod melius 
   esset quam virtūs et sapientia.  
24. Nihil metuendum est quod animō nocēre 
   nōn possīt.

25. Analyze the relative clauses in the following pair of sentences, showing 
   how they differ in their force: 5 and 6.  
26. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) metuant; (8) dubitet; 
   (9) Rōmae, amārent; (10) abeat, passus est; (11) fēcerat; (12) dūci, 
   potest; (13) possīt; (14) erit, mihi; (15) cōnsulī; (16) amīcīs; (17) salūtī, 
   antepōneret; (18) vellēmus; (19) mihi, possīt; (21) rogātum; (22) cēpe-
   rant, dictū; (23) virīs; (24) animō, possīt.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 39

1. (1) Define the term gerund.
(2) What is the ending of the gerund in English?
(3) How is the gerund declined in Latin?
(4) As a noun, what is the syntax of the gerund in Latin?
(5) What serves in place of the nominative of the gerund in Latin?

2. (1) What part of speech is the Latin gerundive?
(2) What mnemonic device may help you to remember this?
(3) As an adjective, what is the syntax of the gerundive?
(4) How is the gerundive declined?
(5) How can the gerundive be distinguished from the gerund in Latin usage (though not in English translation)?

3. (1) How is the Latin gerund to be translated?
(2) How is the gerundive in agreement with its noun to be translated?
(3) Translate:
   (A) Discimus legendō cum cūrā (gerund).
   (B) Discimus librīs legendīs cum cūrā (gerundive).


1) glōriae quaerendae. 2) belli gerendō. 3) pecūniae faciendae. 4) imperiō acciendō. 5) cōvitātibus delendīs. 6) huic ducē sequendō. 7) patriae servandae. 8) pācī petendae. 9) iniūris oppugnandīs. 10) librīs scribendīs. 11) librīs legendīs. 12) philosophiae descendīs. 13) litterīs Latinīs descendīs. 14) vēritātī interlegendae. 15) sapientiae quaerendae. 16) homīnibus adiuvandīs.

13. Rōmam vēnīt—

1) ad hoc opus susciendūm. 2) ad lūdōs Rōmānōs videndōs. 3) ad aedificia vetera videndā. 4) ad pācem petendam. 5) huius operis susciendī causā. 6) philosophiae descendēs causā. 7) novōrum librōrum legendōrum causā. 8) lūdōs vīsum.

14. Librum scripsit—

1) dē dolōre ferendō. 2) dē metū superandō. 3) dē bonā vītā vivendā. 4) dē rē publicā gerendā. 5) dē belli gerendō. 6) dē libertāte dēfendendā. 7) dē hostibus vincendīs. 8) dē dōnīs dandīs.
15. Sapientiores fimus—

(1) Latinis litteris legendi.
(2) philosophiā discenda.
(3) vitā experiendā.

(1) Latīnīs litterīs legendīs. (4) metū vincendō.
(2) philosophiā discenda. (5) vēritāte sequendā.
(3) vitā experiendā.

16. Nōs ipsōs adiuvāmus—

(1) bonīs librīs semper legendīs. (3) auxiliō offerendō.
(2) virīs miserīs metū liberandīs. (4) aliēs adiuvandīs.

17. Multum tempus cōnsumpsit—

(1) in cōgitandō (loquendō, currendō). (4) in exercitū parandō.
(2) in his operibus faciendīs. (5) in cōpis parandīs.
(3) in viā inveniendā.

18. Tempus huic librō sōlī scribendō habuit.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 40

1. Explain the essential differences involved in introducing questions with -ne, nōnne, and num.

2. What word is used to introduce a positive fear clause? a negative fear clause? Can you explain why this is the opposite of what one might expect?

3. In order for a noun to function as either a descriptive genitive or a descriptive ablative, what condition must be met?

Key to Exercises

KEY FOR CHAPTER 1
1. (1) he, she, it; (2) we; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.)

2. The forms are present active infinitives of the 2nd conjugation. (1) to advise/warn; (2) to see; (3) to be strong; (4) to owe.

3. The forms are present active infinitives of the 1st conjugation. (1) to call; (2) to save; (3) to give; (4) to think; (5) to praise; (6) to love; (7) to err.

4. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person singular of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.

5. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person plural of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.

6. (1) he/she/it calls, is calling, does call; (2) we think; (3) they love; (4) you (sg.) owe/ought; (5) he sees; (6) they see; (7) we owe/ought; (8) you (sg.) are strong; (9) you (pl.) err/are mistaken; (10) we see; (11) he/she/it loves; (12) you (pl.) see; (13) you (sg.) err; (14) they give; (15) we save; (16) he gives; (17) they love; (18) you (sg.) see.

7. They warn me if I err. 8. He warns me if they err. 9. Warn me if he errs.

10. You (sg.) ought to warn me. 11. You (pl.) ought to save me. 12. They ought not to praise me. 13. "What does he give?" "He often gives nothing." 14. They often call me and advise me. 15. I see nothing. What do you see? 16. Praise me, please, if I do not make a mistake. 17. If you (pl.) are well, we are well. 18. If he is well, I am well. 19. If he (she) loves me, he (she) ought to praise me. 20. Save me. 21. I ought not to err. 22. What ought we to praise? 23. He sees; he ponders; he advises.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 2
1. In classical Latin there was no regular definite or indefinite article. The words the and a have to be added in the English translation according to the sense of
a Latin passage. Thus *puella* may mean *the girl* or *a girl*, and *puellae* may mean *the girls* or *girls* according to the Latin context. Often in an isolated sentence *the* and *a* can be used interchangeably, or perhaps no article at all need be used.

2. (1) acc. case; (2) gen. case; (3) nom. case; (4) abl.; (5) voc.; (6) dat.
3. (1) acc. pl. as direct object of a verb; (2) nom. sg. as subject of a verb or voc. sg. for direct address; (3) acc. sg. as direct object; (4) nom. pl. subject, or voc. for direct address.
4. (1) gen. pl., of; (2) abl. sg., by/with/from, etc.; (3) gen. sg., of; dat. sg., to/for; nom. pl.; voc. pl.; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with/from, etc.
5. (1) girl, direct obj. of verb; (2) girl, subject or vocative; (3) girls, object; (4) girls, subj. or voc.; (5) countries, obj.; (6) country, obj.; (7) country, subj. or voc.; (8) countries, subj. or voc.; (9) money, obj.; (10) money, subj. or voc.; (11) penalties, obj.; (12) penalty, obj.
6. (1) of the girl, girl's, or to/for the girl; (2) of the girls, girls'; (3) O fatherland; (4) of or to/for the fatherland; (5) by/with, etc., money; (6) of or to/for money; (7) to/for or by/with, etc., penalties; (8) by/with etc., a penalty; (9) of penalties.
7. (1) multae pecuniae, multam pecuniam; (2) magnae famae, magnā fāmā; (3) vitae meae, vitae meae; (4) fortūnam tuam, fortūnās tuās; (5) magnae patriae, magnārum patriārum; (6) fortūnā meā, fortūnās meās; (7) magnae poenae, magnās poeniās; (8) multīs philosophīs, multīs philosophīs.
8. (1) multā pecūnīā; (2) multārum puellārum; (3) meae patriae; (4) magnam vitam; (5) tuās poeniās; (6) multāe patriae; (7) multās philosophīs; (8) meae vitae; (9) Ō fortūnā; (10) puellā; (11) puellārum; (12) puellae; (13) puellās; (14) puellae.

9. Farewell (goodbye), my native land. 10. The fortune of the girl (the girl's fortune) is great. 11. The girl is praising the fortune of your (sg.) country. 12. O girl, save your country. 13. Many girls love money. 14. You (pl.) are giving nothing to the girl, or you give nothing to a girl. 15. He sees the money of the girl, or the girl's money. 16. You (sg.) do not see the girls' money. 17. We ought to warn the girls. 18. They ought to praise the girl. 19. Life gives (good) fortune to many girls. 20. You (sg.) are saving my life by or with your money. 21. Fame is nothing without fortune. 22. You (pl.) do not like life without money. 23. A country is not strong without fame and fortune. 24. You (sg.) ought not to praise the anger of the girls. 25. We like a life without punishments. 26. We are not strong without philosophy. 27. What is life without philosophy?

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 3**

1. (1) acc. sg., obj.; (2) nom. pl. as subj., voc. pl. for direct address; (3) nom. sg., subj.; (4) acc. pl. obj.; (5) voc. sg., direct address.
2. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
3. (1) sons, obj.; (2) sons, subj. or direct address; (3) son, obj.; (4) people, obj.; (5) people, direct address; (6) people, subj.; (7) man, subj. or direct address; (8) men, obj.; (9) men, subj. or direct address; (10) man, obj.; (11) friend, direct address; (12) friends, subj. or direct address; (13) friends, obj.; (14) friend, obj.
4. (1) of my sons; (2) to/for my son, by/with, etc., my son; (3) of the Roman people; (4) to/for the Roman people, by/with, etc., the Roman people; (5) to/for the men,
by/with, etc., the men; (6) of the man; (7) of the men; (8) of a few friends; (9) to/for or by/with, etc., a few friends; (10) to/for or by/with, etc., my friend; (11) of my friend; (12) to/for or by/with, etc., many boys.

5. (1) populi Rōmānī, populū Rōmānō; (2) magnōs vīrōs, magnūs vīrōs; (3) puerūs meīs, puerūs meīs; (4) magnō numerō, magnū numerō; (5) magne vīrī, magnī vīrī; (6) filīī meī, filīorum meōrum.

6. (1) multōrum puerōrum; (2) populū Rōmānō; (3) filīōs meōs; (4) ō filīī meī; (5) magnum numerum; (6) magnū numerō; (7) ō vīr magne; (8) multīs puerūs; (9) vīr magnūs; (10) populi Rōmānī.

7. Good-bye, my friend. 8. The Roman people praise your (sg.) son’s wisdom. 9. Ō great man, save the Roman people. 10. The number of the Roman people is great. 11. Many boys love girls. 12. You (pl.) are giving nothing to my son. 13. I see men in the field. 14. You (sg.) see the friend of my son. 15. He does not see your (sg.) sons’ friend. 16. We ought to warn my sons. 17. They ought to praise your (sg.) son. 18. Life gives fame to few men. 19. You (sg.) consider me in the number (circle) of your friends. 20. Great men often have few friends. 21. My friend is always thinking. 22. The son of a great man is not always a great man. 23. We do not always see (understand) the wisdom of great men. 24. You (pl.) ought to praise philosophy, the wisdom of great men.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 4

1. Nom. sg. in -un; nom. and acc. pl. in -a. Actually the vocative should also be added here; but henceforth, since aside from the singular of 2nd-declension masculines in -us the vocatives follow the rule of having the same form as the nominative, little specific mention is made of the vocative.

2. (1) nom. pl. as subject; acc. pl. as obj.; (2) nom. sg. as subj.; acc. sg. as obj.

3. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.

4. (1) wars, subj. or obj.; (2) war, subj. or obj.; (3) duty, subj. or obj.; (4) duties, subj. or obj.; (5) dangers, subj. or obj. Of course any of these forms could also be vocative.

5. (1) of evil wars; (2) to/for evil war, by/with, etc., evil war; (3) of evil war; (4) to/for evil wars, by/with, etc., evil wars; (5) of great duty or service; (6) to/for great duties, by/with, etc., great duties; (7) to/for small danger, by/with, etc., small danger.

6. (1) bella parva, bella parva; (2) ōtium bonum, ōtia bona; (3) periculī magnī, periculōrum magnōrum; (4) officium vērum, officiō vērō.

7. (1) Ō bellum malum; (2) officiō magnō; (3) periculō magnō; (4) ōtium bonum; (5) multīs bellīs; (6) ōtī bonī; (7) periculīs multōrum bellōrum; (8) bella parva; (9) bella parva; (10) Ō bella stulta; (11) bellum parvum.

8. Peace (leisure) is good. 9. Many wars do not preserve peace. 10. The danger is great. 11. We are in great danger. 12. And leisure often has dangers. 13. Life is not without many dangers. 14. Good men love peace. 15. The foolish man praises the dangers of war. 16. Often we do not preserve the peace by war. 17. The Roman people do not always have good peace. 18. They often save the fatherland and
KEY TO EXERCISES

19. Many girls are pretty. 20. True friends are few. 21. My
d friend is a man of great service. 22. The duties of a teacher are many and great.
23. You (sg.) are a man of little leisure. 24. You (pl.) are men of great care. 25. We
ought to give attention to duty without delay. 26. Life is nothing without eyes.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 5

1. future: -ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt; imperfect: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.
2. They are the same in the future, but the imperfect has -m instead of -ō in the
first pers. sg.
3. future: -bi- (-b- in 1st pers. sg.; -bu- in 3d pers. pl.); imperfect: -bā- (with the -a-
shortened before -m, -t, and -nt).
4. (1) we were; (2) he will; (3) you (pl.) will; (4) I shall; (5) they will; (6) he was.
5. By learning the vocabulary form of the adjective: liber, libera, liberum, pulcher,
pulchra, pulchrum; and often by learning English derivatives.
6. They show whether the e of a masculine in -er survives throughout the rest of the
paradigm; liberty, liber, libera, liberum; pulchritude, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
7. (1) they were remaining, remained; (2) he will remain; (3) we shall remain; (4) I
was giving, I gave; (5) you (pl.) will give; (6) he will give; (7) you (sg.) will see;
(8) we shall see; (9) they were calling, called; (10) you (sg.) will call; (11) you
(sg.) will have; (12) they were having, had.
8. (1) dabimus; (2) manēbās; (3) vidēbunt; (4) vocābimus; (5) vocābat; (6) vidēbītis;
(7) vidēbō; (8) servābant; (9) habēbimus; (10) habēbāmus; (11) habēbit;
(12) habet.
9. Our teacher praises me and he will praise you tomorrow (sg.). 10. Free men were
overcoming our dangers. 11. Our sons love pretty girls. 12. Our friend will not
stay in the company (number) of fools. 13. We used to have many faults and always
shall have. 14. Great dangers do not overcome our courage. 15. Our beautiful
country is free. 16. You (pl.) are free men; you will have a beautiful country.
17. Free teachers were giving attention to duty. 18. Therefore, we shall overcome
evil men in our country. 19. If you (sg.) overcome (lit., will overcome) your anger,
you will overcome yourself. 20. Because of our courage many men are free.
21. Free fatherland, we always used to love you and we always shall love (you).
22. You (pl.) will not preserve wisdom by means of money. 23. Does your (sg.) soul
possess enough wisdom?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 6

1. See Ch. 6, p. 38, s.v. “Complementary Infinitive.”
2. (1) we; (2) they; (3) you (sg.); (4) he, she, it; (5) I; (6) I; (7) you (pl.).
3. See p. 38.
4. (1) he, she, it was; (2) he, etc., was able; (3) he will be; (4) he will be able; (5) we
are; (6) we are able; (7) we were able; (8) we shall be able; (9) I was able; (10) I
was; (11) I shall be; (12) I shall be able; (13) they will be; (14) they will be able;
(15) they were able; (16) to be; (17) to be able.
5. (1) sumus; (2) erāmus; (3) erimus; (4) potērimus; (5) potest; (6) poterit; (7) po-
terat; (8) posse; (9) poterant; (10) possunt; (11) poterunt; (12) sunt; (13) esse;
(14) poteram.
6. Your (pl.) country was free.  7. I was able to be a tyrant.  8. Your friend will be a tyrant.  9. Where (there) is a tyrant, there men cannot be free.  10. He could not remain in our country yesterday.  11. Tyrants will always have many faults.  12. We were not able to overcome the tyrants.  13. We ought to overcome our tyrant.  14. The tyrant was able to overcome (the) good men; but he will not be able to remain there.  15. You (pl.) will be able to see the dangers of a tyrant.  16. We cannot tolerate the faults of tyrants.  17. You (sg.) were not tolerating (did not tolerate) the treachery of the tyrant.  18. The peace in your (pl.) country cannot be perpetual.  19. You (sg.) ought to warn free men about tyrants.  20. Your (pl.) teacher always used to like (liked) fine books.  21. Good and true books were able to save the country.  22. You (pl.) will be able to save your country with good books.  23. Tyrants will not be able to overcome the wisdom of good books.  24. Bad men cannot tolerate good books.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 7

1. No.
2. Yes: nom. and acc. pl.
3. (1) nom. and acc. pl. of masc. and fem.; (2) nom. and acc. pl. neut.; (3) acc. sg. masc. and fem.
4. (1) dat. and abl. pl.; (2) dat. sg.; (3) abl. sg.; (4) acc. sg. masc. and fem.; (5) gen. pl.; (6) gen. sg.; (7) nom. and acc. pl. masc. and fem.
5. (1) magnum tempus; (2) magna virtùs; (3) magnus labor; (4) magna cívitás; (5) magnus mós; (6) magna pāx; (7) magnus rēx; (8) magnus corpus; (9) magna vēritās; (10) magnus amor.
6. (1) by/with much labor; (2) to/for much labor; (3) of much labor; (4) many labors (nom.); (5) of perpetual peace; (6) by/with perpetual peace; (7) to/for perpetual peace; (8) of small states; (9) a small state (acc.); (10) small states (acc.); (11) small states (nom.); (12) by a small state; (13) bad times (nom. or acc. pl.); (14) bad time (nom. or acc. sg.); (15) to/for a bad time; (16) of bad times; (17) of a bad time; (18) to/for your habit; (19) by your habit; (20) of your habit; (21) your character (nom.); (22) your character (acc.); (23) of your character.
7. (1) magnae virtūtēs; (2) magna virtūs; (3) magnās virtūtēs; (4) magnārum virtūtum; (5) magnā virtūte; (6) tempus nostrum; (7) tempora nostra; (8) tempora nostra; (9) temporibus nostrīs; (10) temporī nostrō; (11) temporis nostrī; (12) temporum nostrōrum; (13) amūrem meum; (14) amōrēs meōs; (15) amōrī meō; (16) amōre meō; (17) amōris meī; (18) amōrum meōrum.
8. My time for leisure is small.  9. Your (sg.) courage is great.  10. Money is nothing without good character.  11. The virtues of many human beings are great.  12. The character of a good man will be good.  13. They will give a letter to the man.  14. We were able to see many men in the great state.  15. We used to see (saw, were seeing) a great love of money in many men.  16. Few men give attention to excellence.  17. Our state will give peace to many men.  18. Peace cannot be perpetual.  19. Without good peace the states of our times will not be strong.  20. Times are bad after many wars.  21. In many states and lands peace could not be strong.  22. Without great labor the man will have nothing.  23. The beautiful
maiden loves friends of good character. 24. Men of great courage were daring to overcome tyrants. 25. Love of country was strong in our state.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 8**

1. (1) Future. (2) See Ch. 8. Perhaps a better device is found in the fact that our word “future” ends in -e: futur/e. The -a- in diicam is the only exception among six forms.

2. (1) Present. (2) See Ch. 8.

3. (1) 1st pers. pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 3d pl. pres.; (4) 3d sg. fut.; (5) 2nd pl. pres.; (6) 1st pl. fut.; (7) 1st sg. pres.; (8) 3d pl. fut.; (9) 3d sg. pres.; (10) 2nd pl. fut.; (11) 2nd sg. pres.; (12) 1st sg. fut.; (13) 3d pl. impf.

4. (1) imper. sg.; (2) pres. inf.; (3) imper. pl.

5. (1) they were sending; (2) he is sending; (3) they are sending; (4) I shall send; (5) send (sg.); (6) we are sending; (7) you (pl.) were sending; (8) you (sg.) are sending; (9) send (pl.); (10) you (pl.) send; (11) he will send; (12) we shall send; (13) he does; (14) they will do; (15) they are doing; (16) you (pl.) will do; (17) we were doing; (18) I shall do; (19) we shall do; (20) you (sg.) are doing; (21) you (pl.) are doing; (22) he will write; (23) they are writing; (24) I shall write; (25) I was writing; (26) you (pl.) are writing; (27) we shall write; (28) he is writing; (29) you (sg.) are writing; (30) they will write; (31) write!

6. (1) pōnēbant; (2) pōnēmus; (3) pōne; (4) pōnit; (5) pōnet; (6) pōnam; (7) pōnēbās; (8) pōnētis; (9) pōnite; (10) pōnīmus; (11) pōnitis; (12) pōnet.

7. What are they doing? What will you (pl.) do? 8. They were leading the man to me. 9. Lead (sg.) the man to me, and I shall thank the man. 10. While the tyrant leads the troops, we can do nothing. 11. He is writing a letter to the maiden. 12. You (sg.) were writing a great book. 13. You (sg.) will write good books. 14. We shall write books about peace. 15. Do you (pl.) have an abundance of good books? 16. The teacher teaches many boys. 17. The boys do not thank the teacher. 18. Few men were thanking our state. 19. The tyrant will lead great forces out of our state. 20. A great abundance of money does not lead men to wisdom. 21. Will good books lead many men to reason? 22. Do we often lead men to reason? 23. Reason can lead men to a good life. 24. Are you (pl.) leading a good life? 25. Always thank (pl.) a good friend.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 9**

1. See p. 55.

2. (1) to/for that (m., f., n.); those (nom. m.)
   (2) that (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.)
   (3) of that (m., f., n.)
   (4) that (nom. m.)
   (5) by that (f.)
   (6) that (nom./acc. n.)
   (7) of those (m., n.)
   (8) those (nom. f.)
   (9) those (acc. m.)
   (10) to/for by/w./fr. those (m., f., n.)
   (11) by that (m., n.)
   (12) of those (f.)
   (13) by this (m., n.)
   (14) this (nom./acc. n.)
   (15) this (nom. f.); these (nom./acc. n.)
   (16) these (nom. f.)
   (17) by this (f.)
(18) this (acc. f.)  (29) to/for the whole (m., f., n.);
(19) of this (m., f., n.)   whole (nom. pl. m.)
(20) this (acc. m.)  (30) of the whole (m., f., n.)
(21) these (acc. m.)  (31) the whole (nom. f.);
(22) to this (m., f., n.)   whole (nom./acc. pl. n.)
(23) of these (m., n.)  (32) the whole (acc. m.; nom./acc. n.)
(24) these (acc. f.)  (33) of no (sg. m., f., n.)
(25) to/for these; by these (m., f., n.)  (34) to/for no (sg. m., f., n.); no (nom. pl. m.)
(26) of one (m., f., n.)  (35) no (nom. sg. f.; nom./acc. pl. n.)
(27) to/for one (m., f., n.)   (36) no (acc. pl. m.)
(28) by one (f.)

3. See text and examples on p. 56.

4. (1) haec puella  (12) illa tempora  (23) nūllius ratiōnis
(2) haec puellae (13) illud tempus  (24) nūllam ratiōnem
(3) haec tempora  (14) huic cīvitātī sōliī  (25) nūllae puellae
(4) huic temporī (15) huius cīvitātīs sōliūs  (26) nūlli librō
(5) huic puerō (16) illī puerō sōliī  (27) nūλūs librōs
(6) huius temporīs  (17) illī puellae sōliī  (28) uūn cīvitātī
(7) illīus temporīs  (18) illius puellae sōltūs  (29) uūn librōe
(8) hōc librō  (19) tyrannōrum sōltūrūm  (30) uūnus temporis
(9) illō librō  (20) tōtām cīvitātem  (31) uūnus bellī
tio
(10) illa puella  (21) tōtīs patriae  (32) alterī librō
(11) illa tempora  (22) tōtī patriae  (33) aliō librō

5. These men will lead (lead, were leading) the whole state.  6. That man will see (sees, was seeing/saw) these things in that land.  7. In that book he will write (I shall write, I was writing) those things about this man.  8. One man is leading (will lead) those forces into this land.  9. The teacher gives these things to the other boy.  10. We are writing (shall write) this book about another war.  11. The whole country thanks (will thank, was thanking) this man alone.  12. They are now giving their entire attention to that plan.  13. This man's friend will save this state by that plan.  14. The other friend will lead (his) entire life in another land.  15. This man alone was able to warn me about the faults of this tyrant.  16. You (pl.) had no forces in the other land.  17. Those men alone see no dangers in this plan.  18. You (sg.) dare to praise not only the character but also the treachery of that man.  19. In fact, on account of the treachery of one man this state was not strong.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 10

1. (1) 3d; (2) 2nd; (3) 4th; (4) 1st.
2. (1) 3d pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 2nd sg. pres.; (4) 1st pl. impf.; (5) 1st pl. pres.;
(6) imper. sg.; (7) 2nd pl. fut.; (8) imper. pl.; (9) 2nd pl. pres.; (10) 1st sg. pres.;
(11) 3d sg. pres.; (12) imper. sg. (13) 2nd sg. impf. Note: nos. 3, 5, 6, 8, 9 are 4th only; 12 is 3d only. The chief difference is the -ī- of the 4th and the -ī- of the 3d. See p. 64.
3. (1) pres. inf.; (2) imper. sg.; (3) short stem vowels in 2nd sg. and 1st and 2nd pl. of pres. ind. and in the imper. pl.
4. (1) he will come
(2) he is coming
(3) they are coming
(4) they will come
(5) you (sg.) hear
(6) you (pl.) will hear
(7) you (pl.) hear
(8) come (pl.)
(9) you (sg.) will come
(10) come (sg.)

(11) to come
(12) he makes/does
(13) he will make/do
(14) we shall make
(15) we are making
(16) they make
(17) you (sg.) make
(18) I shall make
(19) you (sg.) will make
(20) to make

5. (1) sentiam
(2) sentiēmus
(3) sentit
(4) sentītis
(5) sentient

(6) sentiunt
(7) sentire
(8) sentīt
(9) sentiet
(10) sentīmus

(11) iacit
(12) iaciet
(13) iaciām
(14) iacimus
(15) iace
(16) iacitis
(17) iaciēmus
(18) iacite
(19) iacere
(20) iacis

6. We were fleeing from this land. 7. Flee (sg.) with your daughter. 8. They will flee into that place. 9. Time flees; the hours flee; old age is coming. 10. Come (pl.) with your friends. 11. They were coming into your country. 12. O great man, come into our state. 13. You (sg.) will find your daughter in that state. 14. They can find little money in the streets. 15. The tyrant is finding a way into this state. 16. You (pl.) will capture those men there with (their) friends. 17. We are coming to you with great forces. 18. Will he find much fame and glory there? 19. That man was always making war. 20. Those men (of yours or such men) will not make peace. 21. Many men do those things but do not do these things. 22. We are doing and will do our duty. 23. I shall make a great supply of books. 24. The boys were living with that good man. 25. In the books of ancient men you (pl.) will find much philosophy and wisdom.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 11

1. (1) is, ea, id and eī, eae, ea; (2) ego and nōs; (3) tū and vōs.
2. (1) to/for you (pl.); by/w./fr. you; (2) to/for us; by/w./fr. us; (3) we (nom.); us (acc.); (4) you (nom. pl.); you (acc. pl.); (5) of you (sg.); (6) of me; (7) to/for me; (8) to/for you (sg.); (9) you (acc. sg.); by/w./fr. you; (10) me (acc.); by/w./fr. me.
3. (1) them (masc.); (2) them (fem.); (3) their (masc., neut.); (4) their (fem.); (5) his, her, its; (6) by/w./fr. her; (7) she (nom.); they (nom. and acc. pl. neut.); (8) by/w./fr. him, it; (9) to/for him, her, it; they (masc. nom.); (10) to/for them (masc., fem., neut.); by/w./fr. them; (11) they (nom. fem.); (12) it (nom. or acc. sg.). N.B. in the sg. any one of the three Latin genders of is, ea, id may be translated by it when the antecedent of the pronoun is a word which in English is neuter. For instance, suppose that in a preceding sentence the word pāx appears. Then we read: Sine eā nūlā civitās valet. The Latin feminine eā becomes English it because in English peace is regarded as neuter.
4. (1) eius
(2) eius
(3) eōrum

(4) eārum
(5) eās
(6) eōs

(7) ea
(8) ei
(9) eī
(10) eē
(11) eā
(12) eō
5. These men will give it to you (sg.). 6. I was giving it to you (pl.). 7. You (pl.) will give this gift to them. 8. I shall give the same thing to him (her, it). 9. We shall give them (= those things) to him (her). 10. That man will give it to me. 11. We shall give you (pl.) his books. 12. You (sg.) will give us their (masc.) books. 13. We shall give their money to you (sg.). 14. They will give his (her) money to me. 15. We shall send these/those books to her. 16. I shall send his (her) book to you (sg.). 17. That man, however, was sending their money to us. 18. We are sending them (fem.) with her. 19. I am sending him with them. 20. We shall send them with his (her) friends. 21. You (sg.) will send me with their friend. 22. They were sending you (pl.) with me to his friend. 23. He is sending us with you (sg.) into their land. 24. They will send them (fem.) with us to their friends. 25. I shall send him with you (pl.) to their friends. 26. They will send you (sg.) with him to me.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 12

1. (1) pres. act. ind.; (2) pres. act. inf.; (3) perf. act. ind.; (4) perf. pass. partic.
2. (1) mittō, pres. act. ind., I send
   (2) mittere, pres. act. inf., to send
   (3) missē, perf. act. ind., I sent
   (4) missum, perf. pass. partic., having been sent, sent
3. The perfect is like a “snapshot” of a past, completed action; the imperfect looks at continuing or progressive past action, like a video.
4. (1) mittō (6) agō (11) remaneō (16) dīcō
   (2) laudō (7) sum (12) scribō (17) sum
   (3) vincō (8) dō (13) sum (18) vīvō
   (4) dīcō (9) sum (14) faciō (19) faciō
   (5) faciō (10) agō (15) fugiō (20) videō
5. (1) you (pl. perf.) . . . ; (2) he (perf.) . . . ; (3) they (perf.) . . . ; (4) you (sg. perf.) . . . ; (5) we (perf.) . . . ; (6) he had . . . ; (7) we shall have . . . ; (8) we had . . . ; (9) you (sg.) had . . . ; (10) they will have . . . ; (11) they had . . . ; (12) he will have . . . ; (13) you (pl.) had . . .
6. (1) they saw, were seeing (12) he will conquer
   (2) they had seen (13) he conquered
   (3) you (sg.) saw (14) we conquered
   (4) he did (15) we conquer
   (5) he was doing (16) you (sg.) gave
   (6) we had done (17) you (pl.) had given
   (7) we did (18) we gave
   (8) we shall do (19) he flees
   (9) they did (20) he fled
   (10) you (sg.) lived (21) they flee
   (11) they lived (22) they fled
(23) he saved  
(24) they saved  
(25) you (pl.) saved  
(26) he had saved  
(27) he will have saved  
(28) we remained  
(29) we had remained  
(30) he came  
(31) he comes  
(32) you (pl.) were coming  
(33) you (pl.) came  
(34) they came  
(35) they come  
(36) they had come

7. Those men had fled (will flee; are fleeing; were fleeing; fled). 8. These men remained (remain; will remain; were remaining; had remained). 9. The king had conquered (is conquering; conquered; will conquer) Asia. 10. The kings conquered (will conquer; are conquering; had conquered) Asia. 11. Kings possessed (possess; will possess; had possessed) Asia. 12. Caesar had come (came; is coming; will come) into the same land. 13. Caesar said (says; had said; will say) the same things. 14. You (pl.) gave (will give; were giving; had given) us peace. 15. You (sg.) sent (will send; are sending; had sent) a letter to her. 16. We saw (see; had seen) them in the same street. 17. He had lived (lived; will live) a long time. 18. You (sg.) had done (will do; did; are doing) it well. 19. I saved (shall save; was saving; had saved) their (his) state. 20. They found (had found; will find) him in the same place. 21. God had given (gave; gives; will give) liberty to men. 22. They thanked (will thank; were thanking; had thanked; thank) me. 23. You (pl.) were (were; are; will be; had been) free men.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 13**

1. See p. 82, s.v. “Reflexive Pronouns.”
2. See p. 82, s.v. “Declension of Reflexive Pronouns.”
3. In pronouns of the first and the second persons.
4. (1) to/for myself.
   (2) yourself (sg. acc.); by/w./fr. yourself.
   (3) to/for ourselves; by/w./fr. ourselves.
   (4) to/for himself (herself, itself); to/for themselves.
   (5) yourselves (acc.).
   (6) himself (acc.); by/w./fr. himself; themselves (acc.); by/w./fr. themselves.
   (7) to/for yourselves; by/w./fr. yourselves.
5. Since suus, -s, -um is an adjective, it must agree in number with the noun which it modifies. Since suus is a reflexive, it means *his own* or *their own* according to whether the subject of the verb is singular or plural. See, for example, sentences 15 and 20 below.
6. Eōrum and eius are fixed genitives of possession; and therefore, they do not, like suus, agree with the nouns on which they depend. See, for example, sentences 16–19 below.
7. See p. 85, s.v. “The Intensive Pronoun.” Sē, being reflexive, is used in the predicate and refers to the subject. Ipse can be used to emphasize a noun or pronoun in any part of a sentence. See, for example, sentences 27, 28, and 31 below.
8. Caesar saved them. 9. Caesar was saving him (= another person). 10. Caesar saved himself. 11. The Romans saved themselves. 12. The Romans saved them (=
13. The Romans saved him. 14. Caesar saved his own friend. 15. Caesar saved his own friends. 16. Caesar saved his (= another's) friend. 17. Caesar saved his (= another's) friends. 18. Caesar saved their friend. 19. Caesar saved their friends. 20. The Romans saved their (own) friend. 21. The Romans saved their (own) friends. 22. The Romans saved their (= others') friend. 23. The Romans saved their (= others') friends. 24. The Romans saved his friend. 25. The Romans saved his friends. 26. Caesar himself saved him. 27. Caesar himself saved himself. 28. They saved Caesar himself. 29. They were saving the friend of Caesar himself. 30. They saved the friend of the Romans themselves. 31. The friend of Caesar himself saved himself. 32. The friends of Caesar himself saved themselves. 33. The friend of Caesar himself saved him. 34. Caesar's friends themselves saved him. 35. They did not save us. 36. We saved ourselves. 37. We saved the Romans themselves. 38. The Romans themselves did not save you. 39. You (sg.) saved yourself. 40. You (sg.) saved the Romans themselves. 41. He was giving nothing to me. 42. I gave nothing to myself. 43. He gave nothing to himself. 44. They gave nothing to themselves. 45. They gave nothing to them (= others). 46. They gave nothing to him. 47. I conquered myself. 48. They conquered me. 49. They conquered their (= others') anger. 50. They conquered their own anger. 51. He conquered his own anger. 52. He conquered his own sons. 53. They conquered their own sons.
6. (1) accompaniment; (2) means; (3) manner; (4) means
7. (1) they ran (currō); (2) we were running (currō); (3) you (sg.) ran (currō); (4) we had dragged (trahō); (5) he will drag (trahō); (6) they are dragging (trahō); (7) he was managing (gerō); (8) he manages (gerō); (9) they manage (gerō); (10) we shall manage (gerō); (11) they hold (teneō); (12) they will hold (teneō); (13) they held (teneō); (14) we held (teneō).

8. He waged many wars with the Romans. 9. They were managing the state with great wisdom. 10. He himself held the state by the power of troops. 11. Those animals dragged many men into the sea. 12. You (sg.) said this with great skill. 13. We ran with care (carefully) across the city. 14. He was coming to us with a large part of the citizens. 15. He will conquer the rights of the citizens by force. 16. You (pl.) dragged him to death across his land. 17. We shall join ourselves with the citizens of many cities. 18. He wrote this letter to the king himself with courage (courageously). 19. The violence of those seas was great. 20. I have seen the art of the Greeks with my own eyes. 21. We have drawn many beautiful thoughts from the ancients.

22. 8, accompaniment; 9, manner; 10, means; 12, manner; 13, manner; 14, accompaniment; 15, means; 17, accompaniment; 18, manner; 20, means.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 15**

1. See p. 97.
2. See p. 97–98.
3. See p. 98.
4. (1) dat./abl. pl. m. and n.; (2) indecl. adj. agreeing with noun in any case; (3) nom./acc. pl. n.; (4) nom. pl. m. and n., acc. pl. n.; (5) any form in pl.; (6) nom./acc. pl. n.; (7) any form in pl.; (8) dat./abl. pl. f.; (9) any form in pl.; (10) gen. pl. any gender; (11) any form in pl.; (12) any form in pl.
5. The word which indicates the whole number or amount out of which a part is taken is normally put in the genitive case. See p. 99 s.v. “Genitive of the Whole.”
6. Ex or dē + abl.
7. (1) one citizen (2) ten citizens (3) part of the citizens (4) three citizens (5) 3 of the 6 citizens (6) 5 of the citizens (7) 5 citizens (8) 100 citizens (9) 100 of the citizens (10) 1000 citizens (11) 3000 citizens (12) what (is) new? (13) much praise (14) enough money (15) no water
8. Time when, at which, within which.
9. (1) He used to come (was coming, kept coming) with his friends. Ablative of accompaniment.
   (2) He will come in one hour. Abl. of time within which.
   (3) He came at the same time. Abl. of time when.
   (4) He wrote the book in a few hours. Time within which.
   (5) At that time he wrote a book. Time when.
   (6) He was writing the book with care. Manner.
10. At that time alone he feared those three dangers; but he always used to fear (was afraid of) death. 11. Those two kings used to throw money among the thousands of citizens. 12. That one tyrant (of yours) always used to praise himself. 13. The citizens of those five cities kept expecting liberty. 14. They saved the city in two hours by their own wisdom. 15. I used to come into the city with three of my friends. 16. You (pl.) used to wage great wars with courage (= courageously). 17. Therefore a hundred Romans conquered a thousand Greeks. 18. Fathers often used to fear their own sons—and now they have much (of) fear. 19. Did you (sg.) see our two fathers at that time? 20. Where did you (pl.) find enough freedom? 21. They came in three hours, and he kept saying the same thing to us. 22. I understood little of the argument. 23. We have changed no part of our lives. 24. Our state used to preserve the liberty and rights of the citizens. 25. The Romans used to praise the customs of ancient times. 26. The two fathers sent four of their sons. 27. The ten men had enough wisdom and much virtue. 28. What’s new, my friend?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 16

1. Abl. sg. masc. and fem.: fortī as compared with čīve.
2. (1) The adjective of 2 endings.
   (2) Nom. sg. masc. and fem.: fortis, fortis; ācer, ācris; potēns, potēns.
3. -ī, abl. sg. of all genders; -ium, gen. pl. of all genders; -ia, nom. and acc. neut. pl.; but see p. 105 n. 2.
4. -ī; but see p. 105 n. 2.
5. Yes.
6. (1) to/for a sweet girl (11) of all parts
   (2) by/w./fr. a sweet girl (12) of all kings
   (3) by/w./fr. a sweet mother (13) of all wars
   (4) to/for a sweet mother (14) by/w./fr. a happy man
   (5) to/for a happy mother (15) to/for a happy man
   (6) by/w./fr. a happy mother (16) to/for or by/w./fr. every sea
   (7) all wars, nom. or acc. pl. (17) to/for every good art
   (8) all names, nom. or acc. pl. (18) by/w./fr. every good art
   (9) all seas, nom. or acc. pl. (19) of every good art
   (10) by/w./fr. every part (20) to/for, by/w./fr. swift force

7. A long life is often difficult. 8. A difficult life can be happy. 9. How brief was his sweet life! 10. The memory of a sweet period of life helps thousands of men. 11. You (sg.) wrote a short book in a hundred hours. 12. In every sea we kept finding these two powerful animals. 13. In every land you (pl.) will see many thousands of brave men. 14. Swift rumor ran through every land. 15. That short war was difficult. 16. We overcame all dangers in six hours. 17. The powerful tyrant will conquer their country with swift violence. 18. In a short time he will change all the rights of the citizens. 19. They did not understand the difficult art of sweet liberty, for they had little wisdom. 20. Men fear difficult duties in all lands.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 17

1. See Ch. 17, p. 110–11, s.v. “Usage and Agreement.”
2. (1) Its use in its own clause. (2) The antecedent.
3. In gender and number.
4. (1) who. (2) which. (3) who, which.
5. (1) to/for whom or which, masc. sg.
   (2) whom or which, masc. pl.
   (3) who/which, nom. sg. fem.
   who/which, nom. pl. fem.
   which, nom. or acc. pl. neut.
   (4) of whom/which, whose, sg.
   (5) to/for or by/w.lfr. whom/which, pl.
   (6) which, nom. or acc. neut. sg.
   (7) by/w/lfr. whom/which, fem. sg.
   (8) who/which, masc. sg. and pl.
   (9) whom/which, masc. sg.
   (10) whom/which, fem. pl.
   (11) of whom/which, whose, masc. pl.
   (12) whom/which, fem. sg.

6. They praised the citizen whom you (pl.) had sent.
7. They praised the ten citizens whom you (pl.) had sent.
8. They praised the citizen who had saved the country.
9. They praised the hundred citizens who had saved the country.
10. They praised the citizen whose son had saved the country.
11. They praised the citizens whose seven sons had saved the country.
12. They praised the citizen to whom they had entrusted the country.
13. They praised many of the citizens to whom they had entrusted the country.
14. They praised the citizen with whom they had come.
15. They praised the citizens with whom they had come.
16. He came with the citizen to whom he had entrusted his own life.
17. Tyrants destroy the rights of the citizens whom they capture.
18. The tyrant destroyed the city from which thousands of citizens had fled.
19. The tyrant destroyed the city into which those nine citizens had fled.
20. The tyrant destroyed the cities from which the citizens had fled.
21. The tyrant destroyed the cities into which the citizens had fled.
22. He overcame the danger which we feared.
23. He overcame the dangers which we feared.
24. He gave books to the girls whom he was praising.
25. The man whose daughter you (sg.) love kept coming into the city.
26. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love.
27. He used to help the mother, who had much courage.
28. The king used to give money to the mothers who had many sons.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 18

2. See p. 118 s.v. “Ablative of Personal Agent.” Note that “agent” is a person;
   “means” is something other than a person.
3. (1) The letter r.
   (2) No.
4. (1) we; (2) he; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.).
5. (1) -b hã, imperf.; -bì (-bô, -be, -bu), fut.
   (2) Yes, with the minor exception of -be- in the 2nd pers. sg.
6. (1) we shall be . . . ; (2) you (pl.) were being . . . ; (3) he was being . . . ; (4) you
(sg.) will be . . . ; (5) they will be . . . ; (6) we were being . . . ; (7) he will be . . . ; (8) you (sg.) were being . . . ; (9) you (pl.) will be . . . ; (10) they were being . . .

7. They terrify me; I am terrified by them; I am terrified by their violence. 8. The tyrant was destroying this city. 9. This city was being destroyed by the tyrant; it will be destroyed by a plot. 10. He used to be aroused (moved) by his friends; he used to be aroused by their plans. 11. We are not being destroyed by the strength of men, but we can be destroyed by a plot. 12. You (pl.) will be destroyed not by war but by love of leisure and by the plans of evil men. 13. You yourself (sg.) are not being changed, but your name is being changed. 14. Thousands of men are possessed by the love of money. 15. Others used to be held by tyrants. 16. A few will be possessed by love of truth and friendship. 17. The boy will be saved by his friends. 18. Books of this sort used to be given to the boys by the teacher. 19. Liberty will be given to the people by the third king in a short time. 20. Our country can even now be saved by brave citizens. 21. We ought to be warned by the fortune of other men (others). 22. We are terrified by the plans of that tyrant who lives across the sea; but we love liberty, and we shall wage war with great courage. 23. We shall be helped by powerful friends. 24. We praise all our men, who are moved by courage and truth, not by love of themselves.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 19

1. (1) The perfect passive participle plus the present of sum.
   (2) The perfect passive participle plus the imperfect of sum.
2. (1) Vir missus est = a man was (has been) sent; vir mittitur = a man is (is being) sent.
   (2) Vir missus erat = a man had been sent; vir mittētur = a man was being (used to be) sent.
3. An interrogative pronoun introduces a question.
4. quis (nom. sg. m. and f.); quid (nom. and acc. sg. n.).
5. See p. 124.
6. (1) he is (is being) moved (9) we were held
   (2) he was (has been) moved (10) we had been held
   (3) it had been moved (11) we were being held
   (4) he was being moved (12) he had been changed
   (5) they had been destroyed (13) he was (has been) changed
   (6) they were being destroyed (14) he is (is being) changed
   (7) they were destroyed (15) he was being changed
   (8) we are held
7. (1) whose (sg.)? (6) to whom (sg.)?
   (2) whom (sg.)? (7) whom (fem. pl.)?
   (3) who (pl.)? (8) who (sg.)?
   (4) what (nom. and acc. sg.)? (9) who (fem. pl.)?
   (5) whose (pl.)? what (neut. nom. and acc. pl.)?
8. By whom was the book prepared (had been prepared; was being prepared)?
9. The teacher by whom the book was prepared is overcome with work. 10. To
whom was the book given (was being given, had been given)? 11. What boy was saved? 12. I myself saw the boy who was saved. 13. Whose (sg.) two sons were saved? 14. I never saw the old man whose sons were saved. 15. Who (sg.) was sent? 16. Peace and liberty were praised by the citizen who had been sent. 17. Who (pl.) were sent? 18. Friendship was praised by the ten citizens who had been sent. 19. Whom (pl.) did you (sg.) see in the city? 20. Where are the three new friends whom you (sg.) saw in the city? 21. What things were found by you (sg.) there? 22. Where are the three bodies which were found there by you (sg.)? 23. By whom was this (thing) said? 24. To whom was this said? 25. The eight wretched men to whom these things were said fled from the city. 26. Whose sons were praised by him? 27. The fathers whose sons were praised will thank him. 28. What terrifies you? 29. What danger terrifies you? 30. But the danger which terrifies you has been conquered by brave citizens.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 20**

1. (1) object, acc. sg.; (2) of, pl.; (3) by/w./fr., sg.; (4) subject, sg.; (5) of (sg.); subject or object (pl.); (6) to/for, sg.
2. (1) to/for a hand (band) (8) of fruit; fruits (subj./obj.)
   (2) a hand (subj.) (9) of fruits
   (3) of hands (10) by/w./fr. fruit
   (4) by/w./fr. a hand (11) of the senate
   (5) of a hand; hands (subj./obj.) (12) to/for the senate
   (6) to/for or by/w./fr. fruits (13) the senate (subj.)
   (7) fruit (obj.) (14) by/w./fr. the senate
3. (1) Masculine; (2) manus.
4. (1) The ablative of place from which = motion apart; the ablative of separation = distance apart.
   (2) The ablative of separation.
   (3) The ablative of place from which.
5. Place from which regularly has a preposition (ab, de, ex); for separation, see p. 130.
6. Who came to us at that time? 7. An old man of great fame fled from his country to our senate. 8. What new was said by him? 9. This (thing) was said by that man: “We lack liberty.” 10. Free us from slavery and heavy fear. 11. Our forces waged long war against the tyrant’s fierce bands. 12. Those fierce bands which the tyrant sent against us from that land were conquered by us. 13. After this (lit. these things) the citizens who feared the tyrant were led from their own country into our state. 14. We freed them from the crimes of that tyrant. 15. Now they lack (are free from) every fear (anxiety). 16. Their sons eagerly (with zeal) read good books in our schools. 17. And so they have written a thousand verses with their own hands. 18. These one hundred verses give great thanks to us. 19. In these verses the senate and the Roman people are praised. 20. For those unfortunate men now have the fruits of peace and much liberty without fear. 21. Since we have helped others, even we ourselves have great enjoyment. 22. Good men will never lack an
abundance of these fruits. 23. In our age many human beings pass their life in fear and slavery. 24. We ought to free those unfortunate men from fear. 25. For who can be happy if other human beings lack the enjoyments of peace and liberty?

26. (6) time when; (7) place from which; (8) agent; (9) agent; (10) separation; (12) agent; (13) place from which; (14) separation; (15) separation; (16) manner; (17) means; (22) separation; (23) time when; (24) separation.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 21**


2. Check with paradigms on p. 135–36 and repeat them until you can say them without hesitation.

3. In the passive infinitive the final -e of the active infinitive has been changed to -r: (1) sentiri, to be felt; (2) moveri, to be moved; (3) servari, to be saved; (4) sciri, to be known; (5) teneri, to be held.

4. The whole active ending -ere is changed to -r: (1) mitti, to be sent; (2) iaci, to be known; (3) tangi, to be touched; trahi, to be drawn.

5. (1) I shall be sent (2) you (sg.) are sent (3) you (sg.) will be sent (4) to be sent (5) they are sent (6) I am sent (7) he is seized (8) he will be seized (9) to be seized (10) we are seized (11) they will be seized (12) they are seized (13) you (sg.) are seized (14) you (sg.) will be seized (15) they are touched (16) they will be touched (17) to be touched (18) you (sg.) are touched (19) you (pl.) will be touched (20) you (sg.) will be known (21) you (sg.) are known (22) he will be known (23) he is known (24) to be known

6. Who is being sent (will be sent, used to be sent, was sent)? 7. By whom will this letter be sent (was sent, is sent)? 8. By whose hand was that letter written (will be written)? 9. What was said (was being said, will be said, is said)? 10. “Who (sg.) will be seized?” “You (sg.) will be seized.” 11. “Who (pl.) will be seized?” “You (pl.) will be seized.” 12. For a long time you (sg./pl.) will be neglected (were neglected). 13. After many hours we were freed (shall be freed). 14. For the sake of the state they ordered him to be seized. 15. For the sake of liberty our state ought to be managed by the other man. 16. His soul could not be touched by money. 17. In every soul the love of country used to be felt (will be felt, is felt, was felt). 18. We are joined (used to be joined, will be joined) to (lit., with) other citizens by love of country. 19. Friendship is not always understood, but it is felt. 20. Wisdom and truth will not be found (are not found, were not found) in those two men. 21. Wisdom is not obtained (will not be obtained, was not obtained) by even a great deal of (= much) money. 22. Truth often is not known (will not be known, was not known), because the study of it is difficult. 23. Not without great labor will truth be found (was found, can be found). 24. Others are drawn by eagerness for (lit., of) money and fame; we ought to be drawn by love of truth and wisdom.
KEY FOR CHAPTER 22

1. ē.

2. -em, -ē; -ēs, -ēbus, -ēs, -ēbus (also -ēr, dat., and -ērum, gen.)

3. (1) Feminine. (2) Diēs.

4. (1) of hope; to/for hope. (11) to/for or by/w./fr. days
(2) of hopes
(3) hope (acc.)
(4) to/for or by/w./fr. hopes
(5) hope (nom.); hopes (nom., acc.)
(6) by/w./fr. faith
(7) faith (acc.)
(8) of or to/for faith
(9) of days
(10) day (nom.); days (nom., acc.)

5. (1) place where; he remained in the city.
(2) time within which; he will come in one hour.
(3) time when; he came at that time.
(4) accompaniment; he came with them.
(5) place from which; he came from the city.
(6) separation; they lack fire.
(7) means; that was done by fire.
(8) agent; it was done by them.
(9) manner; it was done faithfully (with faith).

6. (1) ab + abl.
(2) cum + abl.
(3) abl. alone after verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving; with other verbs ab, dē, ex is often used.
(4) in + abl.
(5) abl. alone
(6) cum + abl.; cum may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adj.
(7) ab, dē, ex + abl.
(8) abl. alone.

7. At that time he faithfully preserved the liberty of those ten citizens. 8. He managed the state with great care (= very carefully). 9. The state was managed by him with great care. 10. Many good things were seen in the middle of the city. 11. On that day they prepared many things hopefully. 12. We snatched the fire from the hands of the boy. 13. In five days Cicero will rescue the republic from danger. 14. You (sg.) freed the two republics from fear. 15. The earth nourishes human beings with good fruits. 16. He nourished their uncertain hopes by his own courage. 17. In this age our hopes are being destroyed by these three tyrants. 18. Seven of our friends came from that state with great fear. 19. The whole clan came into the territory of this state with a large band of friends in one day. 20. Not all free men dare to join themselves with this republic. 21. If those men lack faith, there is no hope of friendship and peace. 22. Good faith and the love of this republic can save us. 23. You (sg.) have given (your) whole life to this state.
KEY FOR CHAPTER 23

1. (1) perf. pass. = having been . . . or Eng. perf. partic.
   (2) pres. act. = -ing
   (3) fut. act. = about to . . .
   (4) pres. act. = -ing
   (5) fut. act. = about to . . .
   (6) fut. pass. = (about) to be . . .
   (7) perf. pass. = having been . . .
   (8) pres. act. = -ing.
   (9) perf. pass. = having been (e.g., nom. pl.)
   (10) perf. pass. = having been (dat. or abl. pl.)

2. (1) about to be
   (2) about to press
   (3) pressing
   (4) (having been) pressed
   (5) (about) to be pressed
   (6) turning
   (7) (having been) turned
   (8) about to turn
   (9) (having been) said
   (10) saying
   (11) about to say
   (12) (having been) done
   (13) (about) to be done
   (14) seizing
   (15) about to seize
   (16) (having been) desired
   (17) desiring
   (18) (about) to be given
   (19) (having been) given
   (20) about to give
   (21) giving
   (22) (having been) moved
   (23) moving
   (24) about to move

3. (1) visus
   (2) videns
   (3) visurus
   (4) scribendus
   (5) scripturus
   (6) scriptus
   (7) mittens
   (8) missus
   (9) missurus
   (10) victus
   (11) victurus
   (12) vincens
   (13) iuncturus
   (14) iungens
   (15) tractus
   (16) trahens
   (17) iactus
   (18) iactus

4. When captured (lit., having been captured) he said nothing.
5. Freed from slavery he will lead a pleasant life.
6. He thanked those giving the gifts.
7. I do not like someone seeking gifts.
8. To a man desiring much money he used to give only a few gifts.
9. I sent my son to your school to be taught.
10. That man, when about to conquer another people, kept wishing to destroy (their) teachers and books.
11. Terrified by this plot we shall live a wretched life.
12. Long oppressed, they began to turn themselves against the oppressing tyrant.
13. Those four unfortunate men, when seen by the tyrant, ran across the border.
14. The orator, because he feared the tyrant, always used to say pleasing things.
15. We fear someone fearing us. (= who fears us).
16. These men, if they conquer, will take away all the rights of the conquered citizens.
17. That wretched man on the point of fleeing kept seek-
ing the advice of his three friends. 18. The old man, warned by two of his friends, fled to us. 19. Having himself been helped by the second old man, he kept giving many things to those lacking money. 20. Who, when freed from these dangers, will not thank the gods? 21. Joined with you (pl.), we shall save the republic. 22. To those having faith nothing is uncertain.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 24**

1. (1) A noun (pronoun) + participle in abl.
   (2) No. (See p. 155.)

2. (1) See p. 155.
   (2) As a rule commas separate an abl. abs. from the rest of the sentence. This makes it appear somewhat apart from the rest of the sentence.

3. No. Since this “absolute” construction is not too commonly favored in English, the literal translation if regularly adhered to would make rather clumsy English.

4. When, since, after, although, if. (See p. 156.)

5. (1) Incorrect because the noun (urbe) of the abl. abs. is used (through its pronoun eam) as the object.
   (2) Incorrect because captus means having been captured, not having captured.
   (3) Correct because urbem captam (the captured city) stands as the natural object of délivit.
   (4) Correct because urbe captā is a normal abl. abs., the noun of which is not used elsewhere as subject or object.

6. (1) Obligation or necessity.
   (2) It is really a predicate adjective; and so it naturally agrees with the subject of sum.
   (3) Débeo + inf., though debeo more often expresses the idea of moral obligation.

7. (1) Mihi is dat. of agent.
   (2) À me; abl. of agent.

8. If (since, etc.) these two men hold the power, the republic will be strong. 9. When (since, etc.) this rumor had been reported, the leader left the city without delay. 10. When every desire for (lit., of) money and glory had been banished from his soul, that leader conquered himself. 11. Every desire for evil things ought to be conquered by us (= we ought to conquer . . . ) if we wish to lead a good life. 12. If (since, etc.) the citizens love (their) country, we can have great hopes. 13. All citizens kept fearing that tyrant (of yours), who had to be banished. 14. When the tyrant had been overcome, the citizens regained their liberty and rights. 15. But after a tyrant has been expelled, another tyrant often gets the power. 16. Who in taking the power desires to help the state alone, not himself? 17. When many peoples had been conquered, you (sg.) desired to possess the whole world. 18. Slavery of every sort must be checked throughout the whole world. 19. If our republic is strong, nothing is to be feared by you (sg.). 20. Our country ought to be helped by each one who likes our mode of life. 21. All rights, therefore, ought to be preserved by the citizens with great care. 22. When duties have been deserted by the citizens, the state will be in great danger. 23. When these important things had
been said, the orator was praised by us.  24. Truth and virtue ought always to be sought by all men.  25. When (since) truth and virtue had been sought, the republic was saved.

26. A. (8) virīs tenentibus; (9) fāmā narrātā; (10) cupiditāte expulsā; (12) cīvibus amantibus; (14) tyrannō superātō; (15) tyrannō expulsō; (17) gentibus vicīs; (22) officīs relictās; (23) rēbus dictās; (25) vēritāte . . . quaesitās.
B. (11) vincenda est; (13) expellendus erat; (18) opprimenda est; (19) timendum est; (20) adiuvanda est; (21) cōnservanda sunt; (24) quaerendae sunt.
C. (11) nōbīs; (19) tibi; (20) cuique; (21) cīvibus; (24) virīs.
D. (22) a cīvibus; (23) a nōbīs.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 25

1. See p. 117, 136, 162.
2. Future active infinitive.
3. Perfect passive infinitive.
4. They agree with the subject of the infinitive. See p. 163, n. 4.
5. Since it is the ending of the perfect active infinitive, -isse in effect means “to have. . . .”
6. (1) to have moved (16) to have lived (2) to have been moved (17) to have been drawn (3) to be about to move (18) to have been seen (4) to be moved (19) to have been seized (5) to be said (20) to have been sent (6) to be known (21) to have been sought (7) to be saved (22) to have been expelled (8) to be seized (23) to have been left (9) to be sent (24) to have been given (10) to have believed (25) to be about to give (11) to have destroyed (26) to be about to turn (12) to have drawn (27) to be about to press (13) to have touched (28) to be about to seize (14) to have loved (29) to be about to order (15) to have conquered (30) to be about to touch
7. See p. 164.
8. (2) māntiō, I announce (14) sentiō, I feel, think (4) intellegō, I understand (16) scrībō, I write (7) videō, I see (19) ostendō, I show (8) nesciō, I do not know (20) spērō, I hope (10) crēdō, I believe (22) putō, I think (13) audiō, I hear (24) negō, I say that . . . not, deny
10. The infinitive with subject accusative; not a “that” clause.
11. The accusative.
12. No.
13. (1) The perfect infinitive = time before that of the main verb.
(2) The future infinitive = time after that of the main verb.
(3) The present infinitive = the same time as that of the main verb. See p. 165.

14. I know that you did (will do, are doing) this thing. 15. I knew that you had done (would do, were doing) this. 16. We believed that they would come (had come, were coming). 17. We believe that they will come (came, are coming). 18. Tomorrow he will hear (A) that they are coming (i.e., tomorrow); (B) that they came (e.g., yesterday) or that they have come; (C) that they will come (e.g., in a few days). 19. Today he hears (A) that they are coming (today); (B) that they came (yesterday); (C) that they will come (soon). 20. Yesterday he heard (A) that they were coming (yesterday); (B) that they had come (e.g., the day before yesterday); (C) that they would come (in a few days). 21. They hope that you (pl.) will see him. 22. I know that this was done by you. 23. I did not know that those things had been done by him. 24. They said that the city was not being captured by the enemy (had not been captured). 25. You (pl.) know that those men are (will be, were/have been) always faithful. 26. You (pl.) knew that those men were (would be, had been) always faithful. 27. They kept thinking that the tyrant ought to be driven out by them (by themselves). 28. We believe that peace ought to be sought by all leaders. 29. He says that peace is being sought (was sought) by the ten leaders. 30. He said that the two leaders would seek (were seeking, had sought) peace. 31. The enemy hope that they will conquer all states. 32. I well know that I do not know many things, for no one can know all things.

33. Scire (sentence 32) is a complementary infinitive depending on potest.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(14) tē</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (fēcisse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) fēcisse</td>
<td>perf. act. inf.</td>
<td>indir. statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) eōs</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (ventūros esse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) ventūros esse</td>
<td>fut. act. inf.</td>
<td>indir. state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) eum</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. of inf. (vestūros esse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) hoc</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (factum esse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23) eō</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(24) hostibus</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(25) fidēlēs</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>pred. adj. agreeing with illōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(27) sibi</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>agent w. pass. periphrastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) pācem</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (quaerendam esse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) ducibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>agent w. pass. periphr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(29) ducibus</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(30) pācem</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. of inf. (quaesitūros esse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(31) rēs pūblicās</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. of inf.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) Latin -ior corresponds to English -er.
   (2) They have a slight similarity in sound and they both have a final -r as a sign of the comparative.

2. (1) Latin -issimus corresponds to English -est.
   (2) The s's which they have in common suggest s as a sign of the superlative.
3. (1) They are added to the base of the adjective. (See p. 171-72.)
   (2) turpior, turpissimus; velōcior, velōcissimus; prūdentior, prūdentissimus
4. (1) Acerbior = harsher, rather harsh, too harsh.
   (2) Acerbissimus = harshest, very harsh.
5. (1) Quam with the comparative = than (this man was harsher than that one).
   (2) Quam with the superlative = as . . . as possible, -st possible (this man was as harsh as possible, the harshest possible).
6. There is no fixed case after quam, which is an adverb or conjunction of comparison. The second word of a comparison, which comes after quam, is put in the same case as that of the first of the two words compared. (See p. 173.)
7. (1) Most have i-stems.
   (2) Comparatives have consonant stems. (Note, incidentally, that comparative and consonant both begin with the same sound.)
8. They announced that the bravest possible leader had come. 9. After a very clear light had been seen by the four men, the bravest troops were sent against the enemy.
10. When that very base man had been banished, the senate gave gifts to the more faithful citizens.
11. The more fortunate citizens used to do these pleasant things on behalf of the more unfortunate citizens. 12. This author is more famous than that one. 13. Certain men said that this author was more famous than that one.
14. Read the books of wiser authors if you wish to lead the wisest (a very wise) life. 15. The six authors whose books I have read are too (rather) harsh. 16. After certain very wise books had been read, we avoided those baser faults. 17. This man, who has overcome his base faults, is braver than the very brave leader.
18. Who is the happiest man? He who leads the wisest life is happier than the most powerful tyrant. 19. The cure of your vices seems rather (too) difficult. 20. That leader thought that his country was dearer to him than life. 21. A band of the most faithful young men possible ought to be sought by the senate.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 27
1. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item II.
2. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item I.
3. Positive  Comparative  Superlative
   parvus  minus (minor, minus)  minimum (minimus)
   malus  pejorare (peior)  pessimist (pessimus)
   bonus  ameliorate (melior)  optimist (optimus)
   (pré)  prior (prior)  prime (prīmus)
   magnus  major (maior)  maximum (maximus)
   superus  superior (superior)  supreme (suprēmus)
   multus  plus (plūs)  summit (summus)
4. (1) a smaller war  (7) the smallest boy
   (2) the worst (very bad) war  (8) the better boy
   (3) a greater war  (9) a very (most) beautiful girl
   (4) former wars  (10) a more beautiful girl
   (5) a very similar book  (11) very many girls
   (6) a more difficult book  (12) greater faith
(13) very small faith (25) more labors
(14) a smaller sea (26) the best leaders
(15) in a smaller sea (27) greater leaders
(16) larger seas (28) better leaders
(17) the best fruits (29) the smallest gifts
(18) worse fruit (30) more gifts
(19) the fiercest (very fierce) men (31) the first gifts
(20) fiercer men (32) more praise
(21) more men (33) more praises
(22) most (very) difficult labor (34) the worst citizens
(23) the last (supreme) labor (35) better citizens
(24) more labor (36) very free citizens

5. The easiest things often are not the best. 6. The difficult things are often the greatest. 7. The better pursuits are more (rather) difficult. 8. The worst authors write very many books. 9. These books are worse than the books of better authors. 10. The smaller boy received a larger gift. 11. That very small republic had the greatest hopes. 12. More men believe that this war is worse than the first war. 13. A better leader will come with greater forces. 14. Fierce leaders often used to praise the fiercer forces of the fiercest enemy. 15. When the very evil tyrant had been banished, the citizens sought a better and a wiser leader. 16. They gave the better leader greater power and more money. 17. Citizens of the smaller cities are not better than those of the largest cities. 18. We are not better than very many men of former ages. 19. Our ancestors used to call Apollo the god of the sun.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 28

1. Something other than a fact; e.g., the command and purpose clauses learned in this chapter. See p. 186.
2. See p. 186.
3. (1) é; (2) à (except that in the 3rd and 4th conjugations the forms dúcām and audiam are identical in the future indicative and the present subjunctive).
4. Command, called “jussive.”
5. Purpose.
7. No. (See p. 189.)
8. (1) he will send (12) subj., 1st pl. pass.
   (2) subj., 3rd sg. (13) we are heard
   (3) he is sending (14) subj., 2nd sg.
   (4) subj., 3rd sg. (15) you (sg.) are seizing
   (5) he gives (16) you (sg.) will seize
   (6) subj., 3rd pl. (17) they are known
   (7) they believe (18) they will be known
   (8) they will believe (19) subj., 3rd pl. pass.
   (9) they move (20) you (pl.) are freed
   (10) subj., 3rd pl. (21) subj., 2d. pl. pass.
   (11) we shall be heard (22) you (pl.) will be freed
9. Let that leader come. We are awaiting him. 10. Let the base citizens depart from (our) republic so that we may live in peace. 11. If those two men desire friends, let them do real kindnesses. 12. He shows kindnesses to others in order to be loved (so that he may be loved). 13. I say these happy words to you so that you may not depart. 14. Let us do these very difficult things for the sake of our country. 15. Give more money to those unfortunate people so that they may not lack arms against the enemy. 16. He thinks that they will do it to avoid my anger. 17. Let us prepare arms so that our liberty may not be taken away. 18. Will our freedom be rescued from danger by arms alone? 19. Let philosophers not write too difficult books. 20. For (= the truth is) we shall not receive enough wisdom from too difficult books. 21. Let him do better and greater things so that he may not lead a most wretched life. 22. Tell these things to that very famous author so that they may be written in his book. 23. Let us always seek the truth, without which the greatest souls cannot be happy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>24.</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>veniat</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command (jussive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10)</td>
<td>discēdant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vivāmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11)</td>
<td>faciant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12)</td>
<td>praestat</td>
<td>pres. ind.</td>
<td>statement of fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13)</td>
<td>discēdātis</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14)</td>
<td>faciāmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15)</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>imper.</td>
<td>command in 2nd per.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>armīs</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>careant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16)</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>factūros esse</td>
<td>fut. act. inf.</td>
<td>indirect statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vītent</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17)</td>
<td>parēmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tollātur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18)</td>
<td>armīs</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēripiētur</td>
<td>fut. ind.</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19)</td>
<td>scribant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20)</td>
<td>accipieōmus</td>
<td>fut. ind.</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21)</td>
<td>faciat</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>agat</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22)</td>
<td>nārrā</td>
<td>imper.</td>
<td>command in 2nd per.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scribantur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23)</td>
<td>quaerāmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KEY FOR CHAPTER 29

1. Present active infinitive + personal endings. See p. 194.

2. Yes.

   (2) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
   (4) impf. subj., 1 sg.
   (5) impf. subj., 2 sg.
   (6) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (7) impf. subj., 2 pl.
   (8) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (9) you (sg.) will find
   (10) pres. subj., 2 sg.
   (11) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (12) he will say
   (13) he says
   (14) pres. subj., 3 pl.
   (15) impf. subj., 3 sg.

4. Ut or ut nón + subjunctive.

5. See p. 196.


7. They read the best books with such great care that they learned much wisdom.

8. We used to read good books with care so that we might learn wisdom. 9. The best books ought to be read by students in order that they may learn the truth and good character. 10. Let the wisest authors write more books so that they may be able to help all peoples. 11. The souls of very many men are so foolish that they do not wish to learn. 12. But many minds are so keen that they can learn well. 13. Some teachers used to teach their pupils so skillfully (with such great skill) that even the pupils themselves wanted to learn. 14. The power of that tyrant was so great that the senate could not drive him out. 15. Let all citizens dedicate (give) themselves to the country so that the enemy may not take away their liberty. 16. Caesar was such a keen leader that the enemy did not conquer the Roman soldiers. 17. Are we leading other peoples with such great wisdom and courage that liberty is being preserved? 18. You (pl.) used to do such great kindnesses that all loved you. 19. He was so harsh that no one loved him. 20. Thousands of citizens kept fleeing from that land in order not to be oppressed by the tyrant. 21. They so loved liberty that they were never conquered by the enemy.

22. | Word   | Form      | Reason   |
    |--------|-----------|----------|
    | (7) discerent | impf. subj. | result   |
    | (8) discerēmus | impf. subj. | purpose  |
    | (9) discant    | pres. subj. | purpose  |
    | (10) scribant  | pres. subj. | command  |
    | possint       | pres. subj. | purpose  |
    | (11) cupiant   | pres. subj. | result   |
(12) possint
(13) cuperent
(14) posset
(15) dent
tollant
(16) vincerent
(17) cōnservētur
(18) amārent
(19) amāret
(20) opprimerentur
(21) vincerentur

pres. subj.
impf. subj.
impf. subj.
imp. subj.
impf. subj.
impf. subj.
impf. subj.
impf subj.
impf subj.
impf subj.

result
result
result
purpose
result
result
result
result
result
result

KEY FOR CHAPTER 30

1. It is the perfect active infinitive (-isse) + personal endings; e.g., pōnere-m and posuisse-m.
2. It is the perfect passive participle + essem (the imperfect subjunctive of sum); e.g., positus eram and positus essem.
3. Positus sit is perfect subjunctive passive.
4. The future perfect indicative.
5. (1) impf. pass., 3 sg. (9) impf. act., 3 pl.
   (2) plupf. act., 1 sg. (10) plupf. pass., 1 pl.
   (3) perf. pass., 3 pl. (11) pres. act., 3 sg.
   (4) pres. pass., 1 pl. (12) perf. pass., 2 sg.
   (5) perf. act., 3 pl. (13) plupf. act., 2 sg.
   (6) impf. act., 1 pl. (14) impf. pass., 3 sg.
   (7) plupf. act., 2 pl. (15) perf. act., 1 pl.
   (8) plupf. pass., 3 sg. (16) plupf. act., 3 pl.
   (2) Present and perfect.
   (3) The past tenses.
   (4) Imperfect and pluperfect.
7. (1) The same time or time after (contemporaneous or subsequent). See p. 205.
   (2) The same time or time after.
   (3) Time before (prior).
   (4) Time before (prior).
8. Where is (was) the leader? 9. They ask where the leader is (was).
10. They kept asking where the leader was (had been). 11. They will ask where the leader is (was).
12. I do not know where the money was put. 13. Do you (sg.) know where the money is being put?
14. They knew where the money was being put. 15. He did not know where the money had been put.
16. We shall tell you (pl.) why the soldier did (does) this. 17. They told me why the soldier had done (was doing) this.
18. Tell me who came (is coming). 19. The orator asked why the other citizens had not learned these plans.
20. We announced to the leader that the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled) into that land. 21. We announced to the leader into what
land the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled). 22. We heard that the citizens were so faithful that they preserved the state. 23. We heard what the citizens had done to preserve the state. 24. They kept inquiring in whose state peace could be found. 25. We learned that peace had not been found in their country. 26. Those foolish men always ask what is better than power or money. 27. We certainly think that money itself is not bad; but we believe that truth and liberty and friendship are better and greater. 28. These things we desire so that we may live a finer life; for money alone and power can make men harsh, so that they are not happy. 29. Finally, let him explain all things so that you (pl.) may now understand what great crimes have been committed against the republic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(15) posita esset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) fecerit</td>
<td>perf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) fecisset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18) venérerit</td>
<td>perf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20) fugere</td>
<td>pres. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) fugerent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) esse cónservárent</td>
<td>pres. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23) fecissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cónservárent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(24) posset</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(25) inventam esse</td>
<td>perf. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(26) sit</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(27) esse</td>
<td>pres. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) agámus sint</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pres subj.</td>
<td>result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(29) expónat comprehéndátis commíssae sint</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 31**

1. When (circumstantial, which is to be distinguished from cum temporal), since, although.
2. Although.
3. (1) The 3rd conjugation.
   (2) They lack the connecting vowel eī, which is seen in the corresponding forms of dīcē. (See p. 212.)
   (2) he bears (9) he is borne
   (3) impf. subj. act., 3 sg. (10) bear (2 pl.)
   (4) he will bear (11) you (pl.) bear
   (5) to bear (12) you (sg.) will be borne
   (6) they bear (13) you (sg.) are borne
   (7) they will bear (14) bear (2 sg.)
(15) to be borne  (18) to be borne (gerundive)
(16) to have borne  (19) to have been borne
(17) to be about to bear  (20) plupf. subj. act., 3 sg.

5. When we had said this, those twenty men replied that they would offer a just peace.  6. Although he had gone into another country, nevertheless he found new friends.  7. Since they offer us friendship, we shall offer them aid.  8. Since the danger was great, they brought all their troops and arms together in a short time.  9. What do you (sg.) bring? What does he bring? Tell me why these gifts are offered.  10. When he had explained what he was seeking, you (sg.) said that such great aid could not be offered.  11. Although they had brought pleasing gifts, I was able nevertheless to recognize their treachery.  12. Since we now understand your plans, we will not endure your treachery.  13. Such great evils are not to be endured. Go (be-take yourself) into exile.  14. Finally, let these hundred citizens bear aid to the republic.  15. I kept thinking that they would bring the wine in ships (lit., by ships).  16. Although our soldiers had conquered the enemy, nevertheless they offered them many kindnesses.  17. When he had learned what great benefits the other three men were offering, he himself offered equal benefits.  18. We ought to offer sufficient aid to the unfortunate citizens of small nations.  19. When the consul had spoken these words, the senate replied that money had been brought together for this purpose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dīxissēmus</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum circumstantial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oblātūrōs esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contulisset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offerant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>cum since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>cum since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offerantur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exposuisset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum circumstantial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peteret</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comprehendāmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>cum since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnfer</td>
<td>imper. 2 sg.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive (command)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvibus</td>
<td>abl. pl.</td>
<td>means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātūrōs esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offerrent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dfxisset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum circumstantial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY FOR CHAPTER 32

1. (1) -ē; (2) -iter (e.g., līberē, celeriter).
2. The ending -īly (e.g., freely, quickly).
3. No. For example, see the list on p. 221.
4. (1) -ius (e.g., līberius, celerius).
   (2) It is identical with the nom. and acc. neut. sg.
(3) It is usually formed by using *more* (*too, rather*) with the positive degree of the adverb (e.g., *more/too freely, more quickly*).

5. The base is the same in both instances.

6. (1) *liberius* = *more/too/rather freely*.
   (2) *liberrimum* = *most/very freely*.

7. (1) pleasantly  (2) more/too pleasantly  (3) most/very pleasantly  (4) better  (5) very faithfully  (6) briefly  (7) very quickly  (8) worse  (9) more faithfully  (10) more easily
   (11) very little, least of all  (12) more, rather  (13) longer  (14) badly  (15) more wretchedly  (16) less  (17) easily  (18) especially, most of all  (19) very seriously  (20) more swiftly

8. (1) *vlo-;* (2) *vel-*. See p. 221.

9. It is similar to *sum*. See p. 221.

10. (1) you (sg.) will wish  (2) pres. subj., 2 sg.  (3) you (sg.) wish  (4) impf. subj., 2 sg.  (5) he prefers  (6) pres. subj., 1 pl.  (7) impf. subj., 1 pl.  (8) plupf. subj., 2 sg.  (9) I shall wish  (10) they kept wishing  (11) he will wish  (12) you (pl.) wish  (13) to have wished  (14) they wish  (15) we wished  (16) to wish  (17) he had wished  (18) they wished  (19) you (sg.) wished  (20) impf. subj., 3 sg.  (21) they do not wish  (22) impf. subj., 3 sg.

11. Certain men prefer to believe that all men are equal. 12. Certain men say that all men's minds at least are not equal. 13. These men obtained wealth very quickly; those will be poor for a very long time. 14. This man wishes to get very many honors as easily as possible. 15. Do not lose this knowledge. 16. The citizens themselves managed the state better than the leader. 17. There the land is more level and is more open. 18. Free men will not wish to keep us from knowledge; but tyrants especially so wish. 19. The tyrant used to oppress his citizens so badly that they always wished to be free. 20. He will offer very many gifts very freely so that the army may be willing to help that tyrant. 21. Since they had very little wish to offer aid, we were unwilling to show them many favors. 22. Since the enemy are coming swiftly against us, we want to call our men to arms as quickly as possible. 23. Although they truly wanted to preserve their liberty and laws, nevertheless the crimes of the tyrant had to be endured very long. 24. He prefers to do these things more wisely so that he may not lose this occasion at least. 25. Do not leave, my friend.
KEY FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) The present subjunctive. (2) See p. 229.
2. (1) (A) Present contrary to fact; (B) past contrary to fact.
   (2) The conditional clause. See p. 229.
3. Nisi.
4. The future less vivid condition.
5. See vocabulary p. 230.

6. If reason leads, you (sg.) are happy. 7. If reason leads, you will be happy. 8. If reason should lead, you would be happy. 9. If reason were leading, you would be happy. 10. If reason had led, you would have been happy. 11. If you (sg.) love money, you lack wisdom. 12. If you love money, you will lack wisdom. 13. If you should love money, you would lack wisdom. 14. If you were in love with money, you would lack wisdom. 15. If you had loved money, you would have lacked wisdom. 16. If we seek the truth, we find knowledge. 17. If we seek the truth, we shall find knowledge. 18. If we should seek the truth, we would find knowledge. 19. If we were seeking the truth, we would find knowledge. 20. If we had sought the truth, we would have found knowledge. 21. If you do not avoid anger, you will lose your two friends. 22. If you had not avoided anger, you would have lost your five friends. 23. If you should not avoid anger (if you should fail to avoid anger), you would lose many friends. 24. If you were not avoiding anger, you would be losing many friends. 25. If you do not avoid anger, you are losing many friends. 26. If you did not avoid anger, you lost many friends. 27. If anyone has a good character, we praise him. 28. If anyone had had a good character, we would have praised him. 29. If anyone should have a good character, we would praise him. 30. If anyone had a good character, we praised (used to praise) him. 31. If anyone were in possession of a good character, we would praise him. 32. If anyone has a good character, we shall praise him. 33. If those men win, we shall depart. 34. If those men should win, we would depart. 35. If those men had won, we would have departed. 36. If you had read books well, you would have written better. 37. If you read books well, you will write better. 38. If you should read books well, you would write better.

39. (6) simple present
   (7) simple fut.
   (8) fut. less vivid
   (9) pres. contr. to fact
   (10) past contr. to fact

21. simple fut.
22. past contr. to fact
23. fut. less vivid
24. pres. contr. to fact
25. simple present
26. simple past

KEY FOR CHAPTER 34

1. See p. 234.
2. Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Impf.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cōnāmur</td>
<td>cōnābāmur</td>
<td>cōnābimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loquitur</td>
<td>loquēbātur</td>
<td>loquētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Perf. cōnātī sumūs locūtus est
Plupf. cōnātī erāmus locūtus erat
Fut. Perf. cōnātī erimus locūtus erit

Subjunctive
Pres. cōnāēmur loquātur
Impf. cōnāērum loquērētur
Perf. cōnātī sīmus locūtus sit
Plupf. cōnātī essēmus locūtus esset

3. (1) Participles
Pres. patiens, suffering
Perf. passus, having suffered
Fut. passūrus, about to suffer
Ger. patiendus, to be endured

(2) Infinitives
Pres. patī, to suffer
Perf. passus esse, to have suffered
Fut. passūrus esse, to be about to suffer

4. (1) illud cōnsilium; (2) illō cōnsiliō; (3) illud cōnsilium


6. Pres. partic.; fut. partic.; fut. inf.; e.g., patiens, passūrus, passūrus esse in 3 above.

7. (1) cōnōr
2 sg. cōnāre, try
2 pl. cōnāminī, try
(2) loquor
loquere, speak
loquimus, speak

8. (1) locūtus, having said
(2) mortuus, having died
(3) cōnātus, having tried
(4) passus, having suffered
(5) secūtus, having followed
(6) ēgressus, having gone out
(7) profectus, having set out

9. (1) he will use
(2) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(3) he uses
(4) impf. subj., 3 sg.
(5) having used
(6) plupf. subj., 3 sg.
(7) to be about to use
(8) you (sg.) will endure
(9) you (sg.) are enduring
(10) endure (imper.)
(11) to endure
(12) they endured
(13) to have endured
(14) enduring
(15) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(16) he endures
(17) we shall endure
(18) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(19) impf. subj., 3 sg.
(20) it must be endured

10. He thinks that these evils ought to be endured. 11. We shall try to endure these evils. 12. If you do not wish to die, endure these evils. 13. Having endured the greatest evils, the poor man died. 14. The tyrant thought that those two men would endure these evils a long time. 15. When they had endured three wars, they dared to force that tyrant into exile. 16. If you follow this new leader, you will enjoy liberty and leisure. 17. When these words had been said, we dared to follow him.
18. Having spoken these words, we set out so that we might not die in that miserable place. 19. Although he thought that you had used a bad plan, nevertheless he spoke with you freely. 20. If anyone should dare to use wine of that sort, he would quickly die. 21. His son was born and died on the same day. 22. Let us use all our resources so that our country may be saved. 23. When he tried to set out into another land, he was captured by soldiers. 24. I kept thinking that he would go out of the city with his ten friends. 25. Having set out that night, Caesar came to a certain very famous island. 26. If they had used better books, they would have learned more. 27. If you wish to have many friends, do not be arrogant.

28. (12) simple pres.; (16) simple fut.; (20) fut. less vivid; (26) past contrary to fact.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passūrōs esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbīs</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>abl. abs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locūtī</td>
<td>nom. pl. of perf. partic.</td>
<td>agrees w. subject of verb purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morerēmur</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>special deponents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsilio</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>cēm although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitrārētūr</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diē</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>jussive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ùtāmur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>time when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocte</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>spec. deponents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libīs</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY FOR CHAPTER 35

1. See p. 246.

3. (1) eum; they recognize him. (13) eum; they overcome him.
   (2) ei; they forgive him. (14) ei; they trust him.
   (3) ei; they serve him. (15) eō; they lack it.
   (4) eum; they save him. (16) ei; they study it.
   (5) eum; I prepared him. (17) eum; they urge him.
   (6) ei; I obeyed him. (18) eum; they follow him.
   (7) eum; they endure him. (19) ei; they persuade him.
   (8) eum; they will find him. (20) eō; they use it (him).
   (9) ei; they injure him. (21) eum; they strike him.
   (10) eum; they help him. (22) ei; they spare him.
   (11) ei; they please him. (23) ei; they command him.
   (12) eum; they throw him. (24) eum; they order him.

4. He saved the leader. 5. He served the leader. 6. Slaves serve other men. 7. Brave men save others. 8. That slave served my son and saved him. 9. If anyone serves himself alone, he will never save the republic. 10. If someone had undertaken this work, he would have saved a thousand men. 11. The gods will pardon me; you, O citizens, pardon the whole army. 12. If we want God to forgive us, we ought to forgive other men. 13. They do not trust me now, and they will never be willing to trust my two sons. 14. Those friends are very dear to me. 15. Since you lacked good faith, they could not trust you. 16. Let us obey this leader so that he
may spare us and save the city. 17. If Caesar does not please the citizens, they will not spare his life. 18. I am studying Latin literature, which I like (pleases me) even if I cannot persuade my friends. 19. Let us always study and obey truth and wisdom. 20. Always study the best subjects if you wish to be truly happy. 21. As we study these subjects, let us enjoy both books and life. 22. A good man wishes to harm nobody; he spares all, he helps all. 23. My rewards are very similar to yours.

24. **Word** | **Form** | **Reason**
--- | --- | ---
(5) duò | dat. | special vbs.
(8) eum | acc. | obj. of suffix
(9) sibi | dat. | spec. vbs.
(11) exercitū | dat. | spec. vbs.
(12) hominibus | dat. | spec. vbs.
(13) filius | dat. | spec. vbs.
(14) mihi | dat. | dat. w. adjs.
(15) fidē | abl. | separation
(16) duò | dat. | spec. vbs.
pareāmus | pres. subj. | jussive
servet | pres. subj. | purpose
(17) civibus | dat. | spec. vbs.
vīae | dat. | spec. vbs.
(18) litterās | dat. | spec. vbs.
amīcīs | dat. | spec. vbs.
(21) rébus | dat. | spec. vbs.
librīs | abl. | spec. depon. vbs.
ūtāmur | pres. subj. | jussive
(22) omnibus | dat. | spec. vbs.
(23) tuīs | dat. | dat. w. adjs.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 36**

1. Indirect command = ut (nē) + subjunctive. See p. 253.
2. E.g., imperō, dīcō, cūrō, moneō, hortor, persuādeo, petō, quaerō, ārō, rogō. See p. 254.
3. (1) it will be made/done, (9) to have been made/done, become
   he will become (10) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (2) it is made/done, he becomes (11) we are made, become
   (3) pres. subj., 3 sg. (12) they will be made, become
   (4) impf. subj., 3 sg. (13) you (sg.) are made, become
   (5) to be made/done, to become (14) impf. subj., 1 sg.
   (6) they are made/done, they become (15) pres. subj., 3 pl.
   (7) they were being made/ (16) gerundive, to be made/done
   done, they were becoming (17) pres. subj., 1 pl.
   (8) you (sg.) will be made, become

4. He said that they were studying Latin literature. 5. He told why they were studying Latin literature. 6. He said that they should study Latin literature (he told them to study . . .). 7. We asked them why they were studying Greek philosophy. 8. Do
you ask that we learn (= ask us to learn) the nature of all things? 9. I warn you to
spare these wise men. 10. He warned the soldiers not to injure those seeking peace.
11. He will command us not to trust the enemy. 12. He commanded you to obey
the leader. 13. I ask you why you did this. 14. I ask you to do this. 15. I beg of
you that peace be made. 16. They kept begging me not to make war. 17. I begged
him not to obey the disgraceful king. 18. We beg you to become very keen pupils.
19. Do not be like that harsh tyrant. 20. Caesar took care that his power be made
greatest in the state. 21. The speaker urged us to serve our free country eagerly.
22. He persuaded us that we should always use just laws. 23. We are trying to per­
suade the leader not to harm the arts and laws of the country. 24. A tyrant com­
mands that money be made; and money is made. But that fool does not perceive
that this money will be nothing without good faith. 25. Let us urge more students
certainly to study the Latin language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>(4) studēre</td>
<td>pres. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) studērent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) studērent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(7) studērent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(8) cognōscāmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(9) parcās</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(10) eis pācem</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. petentībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(11) hostībus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(13) fecerīs</td>
<td>perf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(14) faciās</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(16) facerem</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(18) fātis</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(22) lēgibus</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>spec. dep. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(23) lēgibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(24) futūram esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(25) hortēmur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 37**

1. (1) Present indicative and present subjunctive.
   (2) It is ī-
2. Nom. sg. = īēns; nom. pl. = euntēs.
3. In writing the synopsis of a verb one should follow the sequence of tenses in the
indicative and the subjunctive as given above in #2 of the Key of Chapter 34. If
this is done there is no need to label the tenses.

Eō 2nd sg.: Indicative—ēs, ībās, ībis, īsti, īerās, ieris.
Subjunctive—ēās, īrēs, ierēs, īssēs.

Eō 3d pl.: Indicative—eunt, ībant, ībunt, īerunt, ierant, ierint.
Subjunctive—eant, īrent, ierint, īssent.

4. (1) we went (2) we are going (3) impf. subj., 1 pl. (4) we shall go
5. (1) ab, de, ex + abl.; ab (ex) eā terrā.
(2) in + abl.: in eā terrā; in eā īnsulā.
(3) in or ad + acc.: in (ad) eam terram.
6. (1) Place from which = abl. without a preposition.
(2) Place where = locative without a preposition.
(3) Place to which = accusative without a preposition.
7. The locative is the case which expresses the idea of “place where” when domus or the name of a city is used. See p. 262.
8. (1) Time when = abl. without a prep.: eōdem diē.
(2) Time how long = acc. usually without a prep.: multōs diēs.
(3) Time within which = abl. without a prep.: ūnō diē.
9. Since an impersonal verb lacks the 1st and the 2nd persons sg. and pl., the 1st and the 3rd principal parts are given in the 3rd pel’s. See p. 264, Vocabulary, s.v. licet and n. 1. Licet tibi ire.
10. (1) (for) one day (7) in a few days (13) home (= to home)
(2) in one day (8) on the same night (14) at/from Athens
(3) on that day (9) (for) many days (15) at home
(4) from Rome (10) into the ship (16) to Athens
(5) at Rome (11) in the ship (17) from home
(6) to Rome (12) out of the ship (18) (for) a few hours
11. In a few hours we shall go to Rome. 12. We are going to the city; they are going home. 13. As we have often admitted, you may not (are not permitted to) go from Rome to Athens (lit., to go is not permitted to you). 14. Why did you leave home (go away from home) so quickly? 15. They are coming to Rome in order to go to Athens with my brother. 16. Do not go away from Rome. 17. When your brother had been killed at Rome, we kept urging you to return to Athens. 18. If he should go into the territory of the enemy at this time, he would perish in a few hours. 19. He said that he did not want to stay in that country of yours many days. 20. You said that you would return home from Athens in one hour. 21. I beg of you to return from the ship to the island in a short time. 22. In those days we were accustomed to be at Athens. 23. If they had injured his friends at Rome, he would have returned to Rome in a very short time. 24. Although my brother stayed at home, I nevertheless went away from home into new lands. 25. The Romans, if they wanted to say something bad, often used to say: “Go to the devil.” 26. He is persuading them to study Latin.
27. (11) hōrīs = abl.: time within which; Rōman = acc.: place to which; (12) do­num = acc.: place to which; (13) Rōmā = abl.: place from; Athēnās = acc.: place to; Īre = pres. inf.: subject of licet; (14) domō = abl.: place from; (15) Rōman = acc.: place to; (18) tempore = abl.: time within; ēat = pres. subj.: fut. less vivid; hōrīs = abl.: time within; (19) velle = pres. inf.: ind. state.; diēs = acc.: time how long; (20) domum = acc.: place to; Athēnās = abl.: place from; hōrīs = abl.: time within; rēditūrum esse = fut. inf.: ind. state.; (21) tempore = abl.: time within; redeās = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause; (22) diēbus = abl.: time when; Athēnās = locative: place where; (23) amīcis = dat.: spec. verbs; Rōmae = locative: place where; redissent = plupf. subj.: past contr. to fact condit.; (24) domī = locative: place where; terrās = acc.: place to; domō = abl.: place from; (26) studeant = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 38

1. A relative clause with the indicative tells a fact about the antecedent.
2. A relative clause with the subjunctive tells a characteristic of the antecedent, indicates it to be a person or thing of such a sort. See p. 269.
3. See p. 270.
5. My friend who defended the consul was himself a very famous man. 6. But there was no one who would defend that base fellow. 7. What is there which men fear more than a tyrant? 8. Who is there who would hesitate between liberty and the command of a tyrant? 9. At ancient Rome there were those who loved money more than the state. 10. Let that evil man depart from his country—he who has endured the hatred of all good citizens. 11. Catiline, who had made such a great plot against the state, was driven from the city by Cicero. 12. What life can be pleasant for that leader as he goes off into exile? 13. Who is there who would be able to bear such pain? 14. If a person is not agreeable and good, he will not live a truly happy life, it seems to me. 15. They will not trust a consul who would do base deeds. 16. Do not trust a man who is harsh to his friends. 17. Cicero was a consul who would place the state before his own safety. 18. They knew why we wanted to follow such a brave consul. 19. I know nothing which could be easier for me. 20. I am seeking a leader whom all men would praise. 21. They were going to Rome to ask for freedom. 22. The Romans, who had captured ten Greek republics with their own armies, were themselves—amazing to say—taken captive by the Greek arts! 23. For the ancient men there was nothing which was better than courage and wisdom. 24. Nothing is to be feared which cannot injure the soul.

25. The qui . . . dēfendit states a fact about the amīcus; it does not describe his char­acter. The subjunctive clause in #6 tells what kind of person the imagined nēmō might be.

26. Syntax: (7) metuat = pres. subj.: characteristic; (8) dubitet = pres. subj.: characteristic; (9) Rōmae = loc.: place where; amārent = impf. subj.: characteristic; (10) abeat = pres. subj.: jussive; passus est = perf. indic. rel. cl. of fact; (11) fēce­runt = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; (12) ducī = dat.: reference; potest = pres. ind.: main verb in a direct question; (13) possit = pres. subj.: characteristic; (14) erit = fut. indic.: simple fut. condit.; mihi = dat.: ref.; (15) consuli = dat.: spec. vbs.
(16) amicēs = dat.: dat. w. adj.s.; (17) salūtī = dat.: compound vb.; antepōneret = impf. subj.: characteristic; (18) vellēmus = impf. subj.: ind. quest.; (19) mīli = dat.: ref.; possīt = pres. subj.: characteristic; (21) rogātūm = acc. supine: purpose; (22) cēperant = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; dīctū = abl. supine: respect; (23) virīs = dat.: ref.; (24) animō = dat.: spec. vbs.; possīt = pres. subj.: characteristic.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 39

   (2) See p. 276.
   (3) See p. 276–77.
   (4) In its four cases it is used as a noun is used. See p. 277.
   (5) The infinitive; see p. 277.
   (2) The gerundive is an adjective.
   (3) As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun and agrees with that noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case.
   (4) The gerundive (e.g., laudandus, -a, -um) is declined as magnus, -a, -um is. See p. 276.
   (5) Since the gerund has only the endings -ī, -ō, -um, -ō, any feminine or any plural ending on an -nd- base is bound to indicate a gerundive; and also, if an -nd- form agrees with a noun as an adjectival modifier, it must be a gerundive.
3. (1) The Latin gerund is normally translated by the English gerund in -ing with any attending noun constructions or adverbal modifiers.
   (2) The gerundive is to be translated by the English as if it were a gerund with an object and any adverbial modifiers. In other words, both the gerund and the gerundive are to be translated in the same way. See p. 277–78.
   (3) (A) We learn by reading with care.
       (B) We learn by reading books with care.
4. We learn by experiencing.  5. They came to learn (for learning).  6. He gave (devoted) himself to learning.  7. They came to your school to learn (for the sake of learning).  8. The boy went to the school desirous of learning (eager to learn).  9. The fear of dying kept terrifying him.  10. The hope of living after death encourages many people.  11. By thinking (= by using his head) he overcame them.
12. He devoted (gave) himself—(1) to seeking glory. (2) to waging war. (3) to making money. (4) to getting power. (5) to destroying states. (6) to following this leader. (7) to saving his country. (8) to seeking peace. (9) to attacking wrongs. (10) to writing books. (11) to reading books. (12) to learning philosophy. (13) to learning Latin literature. (14) to understanding the truth. (15) to seeking wisdom. (16) to helping human beings.
13. He came to Rome—(1) to undertake this work. (2) to see the Roman games. (3) to see the old buildings. (4) to seek peace. (5) for the sake of undertaking this work (to undertake . . .). (6) for the sake of learning philosophy (to learn . . .). (7) for the sake of reading new books (to read . . .). (8) to see the games.
14. He wrote a book—(1) about enduring pain. (2) about overcoming fear. (3) about
living a good life. (4) about managing the state. (5) about waging war. (6) about defending liberty. (7) about conquering the enemy. (8) about giving gifts.

15. We become wiser—(1) by reading Latin literature. (2) by learning philosophy. (3) by experiencing life. (4) by conquering fear. (5) by following truth.

16. We help our very selves—(1) by always reading good books. (2) by freeing unfortunate men from fear. (3) by offering aid. (4) by helping others.

17. He consumed much time—(1) in thinking (speaking, running). (2) in doing these tasks. (3) in finding the way. (4) in preparing an army. (5) in preparing supplies (troops).

18. He had time for writing this book only.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 40


2. Positive fear clauses are introduced by ne; negative clauses by ut.

3. The noun must itself be modified by an adjective.

4. I greatly fear that the general may not send us enough help. 5. She was a woman of the greatest courage and loyalty and in fact very like her mother. 6. Do not fear that all the men and women of great courage will depart from Rome. 7. This is, indeed, easy to say but difficult to do! 8. They came home to please their parents. 9. You do wish to hear something good, don’t you? 10. Do you wish to have much wisdom? Study Latin! 11. He ordered the three soldiers to go to Rome to seek peace. 12. You do not hesitate to say this, do you, my friend? 13. You urge me to be of great courage and to have hope of safety, but I fear that I may be too weak. 14. For my part I place wealth ahead of wisdom. For I do not think that human beings can find a happy life without a great deal of money. 15. However, very many rich men experience much fear. 16. Poor men are often happier and have less fear. 17. Money itself is not bad; but the things of the mind and the soul offer more help for living happily. 18. Nine of the leaders urged us to supply more aid. 19. When five of the guards had been killed, my father fled into that free land with two of his sons and with a large number of friends. 20. Never will he have enough leisure; yet some leisure is better than nothing. 21. In our times we all have too much of fear and too little of hope. 22. Great faith and courage must be found by all men.
SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

Two Rules of Phonetic Change

Prefixes

Suffixes

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

SUMMARY OF FORMS

SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

TWO RULES OF PHONETIC CHANGE

"Phonetic" derives from Greek phōnē, sound, voice, speech (cp. phonograph, phonology, symphony, telephone). Consequently, phonetic change means a change which occurs in original speech sounds for one reason or another. Of the many instances of this in Latin, the following two rules of phonetic change are probably the most important ones for the beginner.

A. Vowel weakening usually occurs in the medial syllables of compounds according to the following outline.

1. á > ī before a single consonant and before ŋg.
   ā > ē before two consonants.
cāpiō, cāptum: ac-cāpiō, ac-cēptum
fāciō, fāctum: per-fāciō, per-fāctum
fācilis: dif-fācilis
cādō, cāsum: oc-cādō, oc-cāsum (Note that long ā does not change.)
tāngō, tāctum: con-tāngō, con-tāctum

2. ē > ĕ before a single consonant.
(tēneō: con-tēneō (but contentum)
prēmō: com-prēmō (but compressum)

3. ae > ĕ.
quaerō, quaesītum: re-quārō, re-quāsitum
laedō, laesum: col-līdō, col-līsum
caedō, caesum: in-cidō, in-cīsum; oc-cīdō, oc-cīsum
aestimō: ex-īstimō

4. au > ĕ.
claudō: in-clūdō, ex-clūdō
causor: ex-cāsō

B. Assimilation of the final consonant of a prefix to the initial consonant of the base word commonly occurs.
ad-capiō > ac-cāpiō in-mortālis > im-mortālis
dis-facilis > dif-fācilis in-ruō > ir-ruō

PREFIXES
Listed here are important prefixes helpful in the analysis of both Latin words and English derivatives. The Latin prefixes have passed over into English unchanged except where indicated. Incidentally, most Latin prefixes were also used by the Romans as prepositions; but the few labeled “inseparable” appear only as prefixes.

ā-, ab-, away, from.
ā-vocō, call away (avocation)
ā-vertō, turn away (avert)
ā-mittō, send away, let go, lose
ab-sum, be away (absent)
ab-eō, go away
ab-dūcō, lead away (abduct)
ad- (by assimilation ac-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-), to, towards, in addition.
ad-vocō, call to, call (advocate)
ad-dūcō, lead to (adduce)
ad-mittō, send to, admit
ac-cēdō, go to, approach (accede)
ac-cāpiō (ac-cāpiō), get, accept
ap-pōnō, put to (apposition)
as-sentīō, feel towards, agree to, assent
ante-, before.
ante-pōnō, put before, prefer
ante-cēdō, go before, precede, excel (antecedent)
circum-, around.
   circum-ducō, lead around
   circum-venīō, come around, surround (circumvent)
   circum-stō, stand around (circumstance)

com- (com = cum; also appears as con-, cor-, col-, co-), with, together; intensive force: completely, very, greatly, deeply, forcibly.
   con-vocō, call together (convoke)
   con-ducō, lead together (conduct)
   com-pōnō, put together, compose (component)
   com-mittō, send together, bring together, entrust (commit)
   cōn-sentiō, feel together, agree (consent)
   cō-gō (co-agō), drive together, force (cogent)
   complēō, fill completely, fill up (complete)
   cōn-servō, save completely, preserve (conserve)
   con-cēō, go completely, go away, yield, grant (concede)
   con-tendō, stretch greatly, strive, hurry (contend)
   col-laudō, praise greatly or highly
   cor-rōborō, strengthen greatly (corroborate)

contra-, against, opposite. (Not common as a prefix in Latin but fairly common in English, especially in the form counter.)
   contrā DICō, speak against or opposite, oppose, rely (contradict)
   contrā-venīō (late Latin), come against, oppose (contravene)

de-, down, away, aside, out, off; intensive force: utterly, completely.
   dē-ducō, lead down or away, drawn down (deduce, deduct)
   dē-pōnō, put aside, lay aside, entrust (deponent, deposit)
   dē-mittō, send down, throw down, let fall (demit)
   dē-venīō, come from, arrive at, reach
   dē-vocō, call away or off
   dē-cēō, go away (decede)
   dē-mēns, out of one's mind, demented
   dē-certō, fight it out, fight to the finish

dis- (dif-, dī-; inseparable), apart, away, not.
   dis-pōnō, put apart in different places, arrange (disposition)
   dis-cēō, go away, depart
   dī-mittō, send away in different directions, let go (dismiss)
   dif-ferō, dī-lātus, bear apart, scatter; put off, differ (different, dilate)
   dis-similis, not similar, unlike, dissimilar
   dif-ficiēs, not easy, difficult

e-, ex- (ef-), from out, forth; intensive force: exceedingly, up.
   ē-dōcō, lead out (educe)
   ex-cēō, go out, from, away; go beyond (exceed)
   ē-mittō, send out, forth (emit)
   ē-vocō, call out, forth (evoke)
   ex-pōnō, put out, set forth, explain (exponent, exposition)
   ē-venīō, come out, forth; turn out, happen (event)
ef-ficiō, (ex-faciō), produce, accomplish, perform (efficient, effect)
ex-plicō, fill up, complete
ex-asperō, roughen exceedingly, irritate (exasperate)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; sometimes en- or em- in Eng.), in, into, on, upon, against. (Also see in- below.)
in-vocō, call in, call upon (invoke)
in-dūcō, lead in or into, introduce, impel (induce)
in-mittō, send into, send against, let loose against
in-pōnō, put in, lay upon (impose)
in-veniō, come upon, find (invent)
in-clūdō, shut in, shut (include, enclose)
in-vādō, go into, move against (invade)
in-rūō, rush into or upon
il-lūdō (in-laedō), strike or dash against
in-genium (in + gen-, from gignō, beget, give birth to), inborn nature, natural capacity, talent, character (engine, ingenious)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; inseparable prefix; cognate with Eng. un-), not, un-.
in-certas, not certain, uncertain
in-fīstus, not just, unjust (cp. injustice)
in-finitus, not limited, unlimited (infinite)
in-firmus, not firm, weak (infirm)
in-mortālis, not mortal, deathless (immortal)
il-litterātus, unlearned, ignorant (illiterate)
in-revocābilis, not-call-back-able, unalterable (irrevocable)

inter-, between, among.
inter-veniō, come between; interrupt (intervene)
inter-cēdō, go between (intercede)
inter-mittō, place between, leave off (intermittent)
inter-pōnō, put between, bring forward (interpose)
inter-rēgnum, period between two reigns (interregnum)

intrō-, within, in. (Also used as adv.)
intrō-dūcō, lead in (introduce)
intrō-mittō, send in
intrō-spiciō, look within (introspect)

ob- (oc-, of-, op-), towards, to, opposite, against, over.
ob-dūcō, lead toward or against
ob-veniō, come opposite, meet
oc-currō, run to meet, meet (occur)
of-ferō, bear towards, furnish (offer)
op-pōnō, put opposite, set against, oppose (opposition)

per- (pel-), through; intensive force: thoroughly, very, completely.
per-dūcō, lead through or along
per-veniō, come through to, arrive at, reach
per-ferō, carry through, bear thoroughly, endure
per-mittō, let go through, entrust, allow (permit)
per-ficiō (-faciō), do thoroughly, accomplish, finish (perfect)
per-facilis, very easy
per-paucus, very small
pel-lucidus, shining through, transparent

**post-**, after.
post-pōnō, put after, esteem less, disregard (postpone)
post-ferō, put after, esteem less, disregard (postpone)
post-scribō, write after; add (postscript)

**praer**, before, in front, forth; intensive force: very. (In Eng. also spelled pre-.)
praer-moneō, warn before, forewarn (premonition)
praer-cēdō, go before, excel (precede)
praer-pōnō, put before, place in command of; prefer (preposition)
praer-mittō, send before or forth, set before (premise)
praer-scribō, write before, order (prescribe, prescription)
praer-ferō, bear before, set before, prefer
praer-clārus, very noble, very famous, excellent

**prō-**, before, in front, forth, out, away, instead of, for: (Sometimes pur- in Eng.)
prō-vocō, call forth or out, challenge, excite (provoke)
prō-videō, see ahead, foresee, care for (provide, provision, purvey)
prō-dūcō, lead before or out, bring forth, prolong (produce)
prō-cēdō, go forward, advance (proceed)
prō-pōnō, put in front, set forth, declare (proponent, purpose)
prō-mittō, send forth, assure (promise)
prō-consul, one who served in place of a consul (proconsul)

**re-** (red-; inseparable), back again.
re-vocō, call back, recall (revoke)
re-dūcō, lead back (reduce)
re-cēdō, go back, retire (recede)
re-pōnō, put back, replace, restore (repository)
re-mittō, send back, give up (remit)
red-dō, give back, restore, return
red-eō, go back, return

**sē-** (inseparable), apart, aside, without.
sē-dūcō, lead aside, separate (seduce)
sē-cēdō, go apart, withdraw, retire (secede)
sē-pōnō, put aside, select
sē-movēō, move aside, separate
sē-cūrus, without care, untroubled, serene (secure)

**sub-** (suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur-, sus-), under, up (from beneath); rather, somewhat, a little, secretly.
sub-dūcō, draw from under, withdraw secretly
suc-cēdō, go under, go up, approach, prosper (succeed)
sup-pōnō, put under; substitute (supposition, supposititious)
sub-venīō, come under, help (subvene, subvention)
sus-tineō (-teneō), hold up, support, endure (sustain)
super- (also sur- in Eng.), over, above.
  super-pōnō, place over or upon, set over (superposition)
  super-sedēō, sit above or upon, be superior to, be above, refrain from, desist (supercede)
  super-sum, be over and above, be left, survive
  superō, be above, surpass, conquer (insuperable)
  superbus, above others, haughty, proud (superb)
  super-vivō, survive
  super-ficēs, surface

trans- (trā-), across, over.
  trans-mittō, send across, cross over (transmit)
  trans-dūcō, lead across (traduce)
  trans-eō, go across (transition)
  trans-dō, give over, surrender, hand down (tradition)

SUFFIXES

Of the very numerous Latin suffixes only a few of the more important ones are listed here with their English equivalents.

1. Suffix denoting the agent, the doer, the one who (-tor or -sor, m.; -trix, f.).
   -tor or -sor (cp. Eng. -er)
     victor (vincō, victum, conquer), conqueror, victor
     scriptor (scribō, scriptum, write), writer
     lector, lectrix (legō, lēctum, read), reader
     orātor (ōrō, orātum, [speak], plead), speaker, orator
     repertor, repértrix (reperīō, repertum, discover), discoverer
     auctor (augeō, auctum, increase), increaser, author
     liberātor (liberō, liberātum, free), liberator
     tōnsor (tundeō, tōnsum, shave, clip), barber
     amātor (amō, amātum, love), lover

   These nouns have the same base as that of the perfect participle.

2. Suffixes denoting action or result of action (-or, -ium, -tiō).
   -or (Eng. -or)
     amor (amō, love), love, amour
     timor (timeō, fear), fear
     dolor (doleō, suffer pain), pain, suffering, grief
     error (errō, go astray, err), error
     terror (terreō, frighten, terrify), fright, terror
   -ium (Eng. -y; -ce when -ium is preceded by c or t)
     studium (studeō, be eager), eagerness, study
     colloquium (colloquor, talk with), talk, conference, colloquy
     imperium (imperō, command), command, power
     odium (ōdī, hate), hate
     aedificium (aedificō, build) building, edifice
     silentium (silēns, silēnis, silent), silence
Appendix 441

-τιό, -τίonis, or -ςιό, -ςιonis (Eng. -tion or -sion)
  The suffixes are appropriate for adjectives:
  
  -τιό (τιον, τιονisc, τιον (Eng. -tion or -sion)

  admonitiō (admoneo, admonitum, admonish) admonition
  
  ratiiō (reor, ratum, reckon, think), reckoning, plan, reason (ration)
  
  orātiō (orō, orātum, [speak], plead), oration
  
  nātiō (nāscor, nātum, be born), birth, nation
  
  occasiō (occidō, occasum, fall down) a befalling, occasion, opportunity

3. Suffixes denoting quality, state, or condition (-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō).

-ia (Eng. -y)
  
  miseria (miser, miserable), misery
  
  ἵσαια (ἵσανυς, insane), insanity
  
  victoria (victor, victor), victory
  
  invidia (invidus, envious), envy
  
  iniuria (iniūrus, wrong, unjust), injustice, injury

-tia (Eng. -ce)
  
  amicitia (amicus, friendly), friendship
  
  sapientia (sapiens, wise), wisdom, sapience
  
  scientia (sciēns, knowing), knowledge, science
  
  iūstitia (iūstus, just), justice
  
  diligentia (diligēns, diligent), diligence

-tās, -tātis (Eng. -ty)
  
  libertās (liber, free), freedom, liberty
  
  vēritās (vērus, true), truth, verity
  
  paupertās (pauper, poor), poverty
  
  cupidītās (cupidus, desirous, greedy), greed, cupidity
  
  gravitās (gravus, heavy, grave), weight, seriousness, gravity
  
  celeritās (celer, swift), swiftness, celerity

-tūdō, -tūdinis (Eng. -tude)
  
  multitudūdō (multus, much, many), multitude
  
  magnitudūdō (magnus, large, great), magnitude
  
  pulchritūdō (pulcher, beautiful), beauty, pulchritude
  
  solitudūdō (sōlus, alone), solitude
  
  sollicitūdō (sollicitus, agitated, solicitous), solicitude

4. Adjectival suffix meaning full of (-ōsus).

-ōsus, -ōsa, -ōsum (Eng. -ous or -ose)
  
  studiōsus (studium, zeal), full of zeal, eager (studious)
  
  imperiōsus (imperium, command), full of command, imperious
  
  periculōsus (periculum, danger), full of danger, dangerous
  
  vitīōsus (vitium, fault, vice), faulty, vicious
  
  verbōsus (verbum, word), wordy, verbose

5. Adjectival suffix meaning able to be, worthy to be; sometimes able to (-bilis).

-bilis, -bile (Eng. -able, -ible, -ble)
  
  laudābilis (laudō, praise), worthy to be praised, laudable
  
  amābilis (amō, love), worthy to be loved, lovable, amiable
6. Adjectival suffixes denoting pertaining to (-ālis or -āris, -ānus, -icus).

-ālis, -āle, or -āris, -āre (Eng. -al or -ar)
  - mortālis (mors, death), pertaining to death, mortal
  - vitālis (vīta, life), pertaining to life, vital
  - fātālis (fātum, fate), fatal
  - populāris (populus, people), popular
  - vulgāris (vulgus, the common people), common, vulgar

-ānus, -āna, -ānum (Eng. -an or -ane)
  - Rōmānus (Rōma, Rome), pertaining to Rome, Roman
  - hūmānus (homo, man), pertaining to man, human, humane
  - urbānus (urbs, city), urban, urbane
  - mundānus (mundus, world), worldly, mundane

-icus, -ica, -icum (Eng. -ic)
  - domésticus (domus, house), pertaining to the house, domestic
  - públicus (populus, people), pertaining to the people, public
  - rūsticus (rūs, country), rustic
  - cīvisīcus (cīvis, citizen), civic
  - classīcus (classis, class), pertaining to the classes, of the highest class; classic

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

The following constructions are listed for the benefit of students who plan to continue their study of Latin beyond the introductory year. A number of these constructions have already been encountered here and there in the 40 formal chapters of this book. However, although often these can be easily translated without benefit of syntactical labels, it seems wise to catalog them here along with the more difficult items.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

The genitive may indicate the material of which a thing is made.

pōculum aurī, a goblet of gold
Numerus hostium crescit, the number of the enemy is increasing.
Mōns aquare secūtus est et tempestās trēs nāvēs cīnxit a.ggere harēnae, a mountain of water followed and the storm surrounded three ships with a mound of sand.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

The objective genitive depends on a noun of verbal meaning and is used as the object of the verbal idea. It is sometimes translated by for.
amor laudis, love of praise (= amat laudem, he loves praise.)
cupiditās pecūniae, greed for money (= cupit pecūnium, he longs for money.)
metus mortis, fear of death (= metuit mortem, he fears death.)
spēs salūtis, hope for safety (= spērat salūtem, he hopes for safety.)
Fēmina erat dux factī, a woman was the leader of the enterprise (= dūxit factum.)
laudātor tempōris āctī, a praiser of the past (= laudat tempus āctum.)

**DATIVE OF PURPOSE**
The dative may express the purpose for which a person or thing serves. A dative of reference (Ch. 38) often appears in conjunction with the dative of purpose, and this combination is called the “double dative” construction.

Petītō mea tībī (dat. of ref.) summae cūrāe (dat. of purp.) est, my candidacy is (for) the greatest concern to you.

Ec rūs mīhi (ref.) summae vōluptātī (purp.) erat, that matter was for the greatest pleasure to me = gave me the greatest pleasure.

Ilī nōbis (ref.) auxiliō (purp.) vēnērunt, they came as an aid to us.

Hōs librōs dōnō (purp.) mēsīt, he sent these books as a gift.

Hoc mē inuat et mīhi (ref.) nelli (purp.) est, this gratifies me and is (as) honey to me.

Optant locum tēctō (purp.), they desire a place for a roof (building).

**DATIVE OF POSSESSION**
The dative can be used with sun to express the idea of possession.

Liber est mīhi, a book is to me = I have a book.

(Contrast: liber est meus, the book is mine.)

Illī maior turba clientiūm est, that man has a greater throng of retainers.

Sunt tībi animus et mōrēs, you have a soul and character.

Haec ēs semper erunt, they will always have these things.

Prōtentiā est illī puellae, that girl has prudence.

Ō virgō, nōn tībi est vultus mortālis, O maiden, you do not have the face of a mortal.

Si umquam mīhi filius erit . . ., if I ever have a son . . .

**ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION**
The ablative may be used to tell in what specific respect a verb or an adjective holds true.

Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtūs, lēgibus inter sē differunt, these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws.

Ilī virtūte omnibus (dat.) praestābant, those men used to excel all in courage.

Id genus erat intractābile bēlō, that race was unmanageable in war.

Quis est praestantior aut nōbilitāte aut probitāte aut studiō optimārum artium?
Who is more outstanding in nobility or integrity or the pursuit of the finest arts?

Ager bene cultus est ūber ūsū et ornātūs speciē, a field well cultivated is rich in usefulness and beautiful in appearance.
Asia omnibus terris (dat.) antecellit übertåte agrorum et varietåte fructuum et multitudine eorum quae exportantur, Asia excels all lands in richness of fields and variety of fruits and large number of those things which are exported.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The ablative can be used to indicate a cause or reason.

Miser timore delirat, the wretched man is insane with fear.
Corpora eorum metu debilia sunt, their bodies are weak from fear.
Aper dentibus timetur, the boar is feared because of his teeth.
Nihil arduum mortaliibus est; caelum ipsum stultitiâ petimus, nothing is (too) arduous for mortals; we seek the sky itself in our folly.
Odio tyrannì in exsilium fugit, because of his hatred of the tyrant he fled into exile.
Bonì amòre virtutis peccare odêrunt, good men because of their love of virtue hate to sin.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

With comparatives and adverbs suggesting comparison the ablative can be used to indicate the degree of difference in the comparison.

Tantò melius, the better by so much = so much the better.
Senex non facit ea quae iuvenis, at multò maiora et meliöra facit, an old man does not do the things which a young man does, but he does much greater and better things (greater by much).
Multò acius iam vigilâbò, I shall now watch much more keenly.
Römam paucìs post diebus vènistì, you came to Rome a few days afterwards (afterwards by a few days).
Aberat ab ea urbe tribus mîlibus passuum, he was three miles from that city (was away by three miles).
Bonae Athènae paulò plius artis adiècèrunt, good Athens added a little more skill (more by a little).

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

In indirect discourse, subordinate clauses regularly have verbs in the subjunctive mood, even though they had the indicative in the direct form.

Lègit libròs quòs mîserås, he read the books which you had sent.
Dixit sè légisse libròs quòs misisses, he said that he had read the books which you had sent.
Eî malì quì in urbe manent înfîrmì crunt sine duce, those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.
Putò eòs malòs quì in urbe naneant înfîrmòs futùròs esse sine duce, I think that those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.
Si id crèdet, erràbit. If he believes this, he will be wrong.
Dicò sì id crèdat eum erràtùrum esse. I say that if he believes this he will be wrong.
OBJECTIVE INFINITIVE

The complementary infinitive has no subject accusative (see Ch. 6). However, when an infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of a verb, it is called an objective infinitive.

- Volunt venire, *they wish to come*. (compl. inf.)
- Iussit eōs venīre, *he ordered them to come*. (obj. inf.)
- Nōn possum loquī, *I cannot speak*. (compl. inf.)
- Nōn patitur mē loquī, *he does not permit me to speak*. (obj. inf.)
- Nōn audet īre, *he does not dare to go*. (compl. inf.)
- Coēgērunt eum īre, *they forced him to go*. (obj. inf.)
### SUMMARY OF FORMS

#### NOUNS—DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>porta, -ae</td>
<td>amicus, -i</td>
<td>rēx, rēgis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>gate</td>
<td>m., friend</td>
<td>m., king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>amīc-us</td>
<td>amīc-it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.</td>
<td>amīc-i</td>
<td>puer-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D.</td>
<td>amīc-o</td>
<td>puer-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A.</td>
<td>amīc-um</td>
<td>puer-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>amīc-a</td>
<td>puer-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>amīc-i</td>
<td>amīc-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.</td>
<td>amīc-um</td>
<td>amīc-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D.</td>
<td>amīc-ēs</td>
<td>amīc-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A.</td>
<td>amīc-um</td>
<td>amīc-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>amīc-is</td>
<td>amīc-ōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Third (I-Stems)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cīvis, -is</th>
<th>urbs, -is</th>
<th>mare, -is</th>
<th>fructus, -ūs</th>
<th>cornūs, -ūs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>citizen</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>cīv-is</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
<td>fruct-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cīv-is</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>mar-is</td>
<td>fruct-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cīv-i</td>
<td>urb-ī</td>
<td>mar-ī</td>
<td>fruct-ūf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A.</td>
<td>cīv-em</td>
<td>urb-em</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
<td>fruct-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>cīv-e</td>
<td>urb-e</td>
<td>mar-ī</td>
<td>fruct-ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Fourth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cīvis, -is</th>
<th>urbs, -is</th>
<th>mare, -is</th>
<th>fructus, -ūs</th>
<th>cornūs, -ūs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>citizen</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>cīv-is</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
<td>fruct-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cīv-is</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>mar-is</td>
<td>fruct-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cīv-i</td>
<td>urb-ī</td>
<td>mar-ī</td>
<td>fruct-ūf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A.</td>
<td>cīv-em</td>
<td>urb-em</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
<td>fruct-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>cīv-e</td>
<td>urb-e</td>
<td>mar-ī</td>
<td>fruct-ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Fifth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cīvis, -is</th>
<th>urbs, -is</th>
<th>mare, -is</th>
<th>fructus, -ūs</th>
<th>cornūs, -ūs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>citizen</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>cīv-is</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
<td>fruct-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cīv-is</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>mar-is</td>
<td>fruct-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cīv-i</td>
<td>urb-ī</td>
<td>mar-ī</td>
<td>fruct-ūf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A.</td>
<td>cīv-em</td>
<td>urb-em</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
<td>fruct-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>cīv-e</td>
<td>urb-e</td>
<td>mar-ī</td>
<td>fruct-ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vīs is irregular: Sg., N., vīs, G. (vīs), D. (vī), A. vī; Pl., N. vīrēs, G. vīrium, D. vīribus, A. vīrēs, Ab. vīribus.

---

1 The vocative singular of nouns like amīc-us and of masculine adjectives like magnus ends in -e. The vocative singular of filius and of names in -ius ends in a single -i (Fili, Vergili); the vocative singular of the masculine adjective mens is mē; the vocative singular of masculine adjectives in -ius ends in -e (ēgregius; ēgregie). Otherwise, the vocative has the same form as the nominative in all declensions.
### ADJECTIVES—DECLENSIONS

#### First and Second Declensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. magnus</td>
<td>magna</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. magni</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magni</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. magni</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magni</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnam</td>
<td>magnam</td>
<td>magnam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. magni</td>
<td>magni</td>
<td>magni</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

| N. magni | magna | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| G. magnorum | magnorum | pulchri | pulchrarum | pulchrum |
| D. magnis | magnis | pulchrus | pulchrurum | pulchrum |
| A. magnis | magnis | pulchrus | pulchrurum | pulchrum |
| Ab. magnis | magnis | pulchrus | pulchrurum | pulchrum |

#### Third Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Two endings</th>
<th>Three endings</th>
<th>One Ending</th>
<th>Comparatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fortis, forte</td>
<td>acer, acri, acre</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>fortior, fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brave</td>
<td>keen, severe</td>
<td>powerful</td>
<td>braver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fortis</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>acer</td>
<td>acris</td>
<td>acer</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>fortior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortis</td>
<td>acris</td>
<td>potentis</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. forti</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>potentium</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>fortiorum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortem</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>fortiorem</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. forti</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potens</td>
<td>fortiore</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fortis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fortibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

2 The plural follows the pattern of the singular except that it has the plural endings.
3 Present participles follow the declension of potens except that they have -e in the ablative singular when used as genuine participles.
4 For -is (acc. pl.) see Ch. 16.
5 For irregular plus see Ch. 27.
### PRONOUNS

**Demonstrative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hæc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>illo</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hæ</td>
<td>hæe</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>illōs</td>
<td>illās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Relative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>quī, who, which</th>
<th>Interrogative&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt; quis, who?</th>
<th>Intensive ipsum, himself, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
<td>quārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>quōs</td>
<td>quās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<sup>6</sup>The interrogative adjective quī? quae? quod? meaning *what? which? what kind of?* has the same declension as that of the relative pronoun.
**PRONOUNS**

**Demonstrative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is, this, that, he, she, it</th>
<th>idem, the same</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| N. | ca | id | idem | ca | id | idem |
| G. | eius | eius | eiusdem | eius | eiusdem | eiusdem |
| D. | ei | ei | eiusmod | ei | eiusmod | eiusmod |
| A. | eam | id | eandum | eam | eandum | idem |
| Ab. | ea | eo | eodem | ea | eadem | eodem |

**Pl.**

| N. | cac | ca | idem, idem | idem |
| G. | carum | carum | carumdem | carum |
| D. | eis, is | eis, is | eiusmod | eis |
| A. | eis | eis | eisdem | eisdem |
| Ab. | eis | eis | eisdem | eisdem |

**Irregular Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>salus, alone, only</th>
<th>Personal</th>
<th>Reflexive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| N. | salae | sola | nōs | nos | sē |
| G. | solae | sola | nostrum | vestrum | si |
| D. | solae | sola | nostrō | vestrō | sē |
| A. | solae | sola | nōbs | vōbs | sē |
| Ab. | solae | sola | nōbs | vōbs | sē |

7 Also idem.

8 Similarly ānus, ātus, āllus, nūllus, ālius, āltus, āter, neuter (see Ch. 9).

9 All forms of the pronouns of the first and second persons except the nom. sg. and the nom. pl. may also be used as reflexive pronouns.

10 These forms are reflexive only. The nonreflexive forms of the third person are supplied by is, ca, id (see Chs. 11, 13).

11 The form sēsē is also frequently found.
### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus, -a, -um (long)</td>
<td>longior, -ius</td>
<td>longissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e (brave)</td>
<td>fortior, -ius</td>
<td>fortissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēlix, gen. fēlicis, (happy)</td>
<td>fēlicior, -ius</td>
<td>fēlicissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapiens, gen. sapientis (wise)</td>
<td>sapienior, -ius</td>
<td>sapienissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e (easy)</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, -era, -erum (free)</td>
<td>liberior, -ius</td>
<td>liberissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, -chra, -chrum (beautiful)</td>
<td>pulchrior, -ius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre (keen)</td>
<td>ācrior, -ius</td>
<td>ācerrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um (good)</td>
<td>melior, -ius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um (large)</td>
<td>maior, -ius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um (bad)</td>
<td>peior, -ius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um (much)</td>
<td>---, plūs</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um (small)</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(prae, prō)</td>
<td>prior, -ius (former)</td>
<td>prīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, -a, -um (that above)</td>
<td>superior, -ius</td>
<td>summus (suprēmus), -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longē (far)</td>
<td>longius</td>
<td>longissīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortēter (bravely)</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēliciter (happily)</td>
<td>fēlicius</td>
<td>fēlicissīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapienter (wisely)</td>
<td>sapientius</td>
<td>sapientissīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilē (easily)</td>
<td>facilīus</td>
<td>facillīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberē (freely)</td>
<td>liberīus</td>
<td>liberrīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchre (beautifully)</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter (keenly)</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene (well)</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere (greatly)</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malē (badly)</td>
<td>peius</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum (much)</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum (little)</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(prae, prō)</td>
<td>prīus (before)</td>
<td>prīmum; prīmō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diū (a long time)</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissīmē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### NUMERALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinals</th>
<th>Ordinals</th>
<th>Roman Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. unus, -a, -um</td>
<td>primum, -a, -um</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>secundus, alter</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. tres, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. quattuor</td>
<td>quartus</td>
<td>IIII; IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. quinque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. octo</td>
<td>octavus</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. novem</td>
<td>nonus</td>
<td>VIII; IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td>XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td>XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. quattuوردecim</td>
<td>quartus decimus</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. quindecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td>XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. sèdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. quindeviginti</td>
<td>quindeviginti</td>
<td>XVI; XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. undeviginti</td>
<td>undeviginti</td>
<td>XXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. viginti</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. viginti unus,</td>
<td>viginti unus et</td>
<td>XXXX, XL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. quadrāgintā</td>
<td>quadrāgintā</td>
<td>LX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. quinquagintā</td>
<td>quinquagintā</td>
<td>LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. sexagintā</td>
<td>sexagintā</td>
<td>LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70. septuagintā</td>
<td>septuagintā</td>
<td>LXXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80. octogintā</td>
<td>octogintā</td>
<td>LXXXXX; XC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90. nonagintā</td>
<td>nonagintā</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100. centum</td>
<td>centesimus</td>
<td>CI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200. ducenti, -ae,-a</td>
<td>ducentesimus</td>
<td>CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300. trecenti</td>
<td>trecentesimus</td>
<td>CCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400. quadringentī</td>
<td>quadringentēsimus</td>
<td>CCCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500. quingentī</td>
<td>quingentēsimus</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600. sescenti</td>
<td>sescentesimus</td>
<td>DC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700. septingentī</td>
<td>septingentēsimus</td>
<td>DCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800. octingentī</td>
<td>octingentēsimus</td>
<td>DCCCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900. nongentī</td>
<td>nongentēsimus</td>
<td>DCCCCCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000. mīlē</td>
<td>millēsimus</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000. duo mīlia</td>
<td>bis millēsimus</td>
<td>MM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Declension of Numerals

For the declension of unus see Ch. 9 or sōlus above.
For duo, tres, and mīlē see Ch. 15.
The forms from trecentī through nongentī are declined in the plural like ducentī, -ae, -a.
The ordinals are declined like primum, -a, -um.
The other forms are indeclinable.
## CONJUGATIONS 1-4

### Principal Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>laudō</th>
<th>laudāre</th>
<th>laudāvī</th>
<th>laudātum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>laudāre</td>
<td>laudāvī</td>
<td>laudātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>moneōre</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>agō</td>
<td>agere</td>
<td>ēgī</td>
<td>ēctum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>audīō</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd (-iō): capiō</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>cēpi</td>
<td>captum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Indicative Active

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>moneō</th>
<th>agō</th>
<th>audiō</th>
<th>capiō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>agō</td>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>capiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās</td>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>agis</td>
<td>audis</td>
<td>capis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>monēt</td>
<td>agit</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>capit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāmus</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>agēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>capīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātis</td>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>agētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>capītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudant</td>
<td>monēnt</td>
<td>agunt</td>
<td>audiunt</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>moneōbam</th>
<th>agēbam</th>
<th>audiēbam</th>
<th>capiēbam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābam</td>
<td>moneōbam</td>
<td>agēbam</td>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābās</td>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>agēbās</td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābat</td>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>agēbat</td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābāmus</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>agēbāmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābātis</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>agēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābant</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>agēbant</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>monebō</th>
<th>agam</th>
<th>audiām</th>
<th>capiam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābō</td>
<td>monebō</td>
<td>agam</td>
<td>audiām</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābis</td>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>agēs</td>
<td>audēs</td>
<td>capiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābit</td>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>aget</td>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>capiēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābīmus</td>
<td>monēbīmus</td>
<td>agēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābītis</td>
<td>monēbītis</td>
<td>agētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābunt</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td>agent</td>
<td>audient</td>
<td>capiend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>monuī</th>
<th>ēgī</th>
<th>audiūvī</th>
<th>cēpī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāvī</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>ēgī</td>
<td>audiūvī</td>
<td>cēpī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvisī</td>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>ēgīstī</td>
<td>audiūvisī</td>
<td>cēpistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvit</td>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>ēgit</td>
<td>audiūvit</td>
<td>cēpit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvimus</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
<td>ēgim us</td>
<td>audiūvimus</td>
<td>cēpimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvisītis</td>
<td>monuistis</td>
<td>ēgīstis</td>
<td>audiūvisītis</td>
<td>cēpistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverunt</td>
<td>monuérunt</td>
<td>ēgerunt</td>
<td>audiūverunt</td>
<td>cēpērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>monueram</th>
<th>ēgeram</th>
<th>audiūveram</th>
<th>cēperam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāveram</td>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>ēgeram</td>
<td>audiūveram</td>
<td>cēperam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverēs</td>
<td>monuerēs</td>
<td>ēgerēs</td>
<td>audiūverēs</td>
<td>cēperēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverat</td>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>ēgerat</td>
<td>audiūverat</td>
<td>cēperat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverāmus</td>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>ēgerāmus</td>
<td>audiūverāmus</td>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverātis</td>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>ēgerātis</td>
<td>audiūverātis</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverant</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>ēgerant</td>
<td>audiūverant</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>monuerō</th>
<th>ēgerō</th>
<th>audiūverō</th>
<th>cēperō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāverō</td>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>ēgerō</td>
<td>audiūverō</td>
<td>cēperō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverēs</td>
<td>monuerēs</td>
<td>ēgerēs</td>
<td>audiūverēs</td>
<td>cēperēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverit</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>ēgerit</td>
<td>audiūverit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverimus</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>ēgerimus</td>
<td>audiūverimus</td>
<td>cēperimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverītis</td>
<td>monuerītis</td>
<td>ēgerītis</td>
<td>audiūverītis</td>
<td>cēperītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverint</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>ēgerint</td>
<td>audiūverint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Subjunctive Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudem</th>
<th>moneam</th>
<th>agam</th>
<th>audiam</th>
<th>capiam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>lautēs</td>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>agās</td>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>capiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudet</td>
<td>monēat</td>
<td>agat</td>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>capiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudēmus</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>agāmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudētīs</td>
<td>monētīs</td>
<td>agētīs</td>
<td>audiētīs</td>
<td>capiētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudent</td>
<td>monēant</td>
<td>agant</td>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>capiant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>laudāremp</td>
<td>moneāremp</td>
<td>agerēm</td>
<td>audiērem</td>
<td>caperem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudārēs</td>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>agerēs</td>
<td>audiērēs</td>
<td>caperēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāret</td>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>ageret</td>
<td>audiēret</td>
<td>caperet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudārēmus</td>
<td>monērēmus</td>
<td>agerēmus</td>
<td>audiērēmus</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudārētīs</td>
<td>monērētīs</td>
<td>agerētīs</td>
<td>audiērētīs</td>
<td>caperētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudārent</td>
<td>monērent</td>
<td>agerent</td>
<td>audiērent</td>
<td>caperent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>laudāverim</td>
<td>monēverim</td>
<td>ēgerim</td>
<td>audiēverim</td>
<td>cēperim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāverīs</td>
<td>monēverīs</td>
<td>ēgerīs</td>
<td>audiēverīs</td>
<td>cēperīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāverit</td>
<td>monēverit</td>
<td>ēgerit</td>
<td>audiēverit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāverīmus</td>
<td>monēverīmus</td>
<td>ēgerīmus</td>
<td>audiēverīmus</td>
<td>cēperīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāverītīs</td>
<td>monēverītīs</td>
<td>ēgerītīs</td>
<td>audiēverītīs</td>
<td>cēperītīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāverint</td>
<td>monēverint</td>
<td>ēgerint</td>
<td>audiēverint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plusperfect</td>
<td>laudāvissem</td>
<td>monēvissem</td>
<td>ēgissem</td>
<td>audēvissem</td>
<td>cēpissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāvisses</td>
<td>monēvisses</td>
<td>ēgissses</td>
<td>audēvisses</td>
<td>cēpissses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāvisset</td>
<td>monēvisset</td>
<td>ēgisset</td>
<td>audēvisset</td>
<td>cēpisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāvissemus</td>
<td>monēvissemus</td>
<td>ēgissemus</td>
<td>audēvissemus</td>
<td>cēpissemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāvissetīs</td>
<td>monēvissetīs</td>
<td>ēgissetīs</td>
<td>audēvissetīs</td>
<td>cēpissetīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāvissent</td>
<td>monēvissent</td>
<td>ēgisssent</td>
<td>audēvissent</td>
<td>cēpisssent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Imperative Active**

| laudā    | monē    | age     | audi    | cape    |
| audiēte  | monēte  | agite   | audīte  | capīte  |

### Indicative Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudor</th>
<th>moneor</th>
<th>agor</th>
<th>audior</th>
<th>capior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>laudāris(-re)</td>
<td>monēris(-re)</td>
<td>ageris(-re)</td>
<td>audiēris(-re)</td>
<td>caperis(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudātur</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>agitur</td>
<td>audītur</td>
<td>capītur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāmur</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>agimur</td>
<td>audīmur</td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāmini</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
<td>agimini</td>
<td>audīmini</td>
<td>capīmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudāntur</td>
<td>monēntur</td>
<td>aguntur</td>
<td>audīntur</td>
<td>capīntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>laudābar</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>agēbar</td>
<td>audēbar</td>
<td>capiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābāris(-re)</td>
<td>monēbāris(-re)</td>
<td>agēbāris(-re)</td>
<td>audēbāris(-re)</td>
<td>capiēbāris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābātur</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>agēbātur</td>
<td>audēbātur</td>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābāmur</td>
<td>monēbāmur</td>
<td>agēbāmur</td>
<td>audēbāmur</td>
<td>capiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābāmini</td>
<td>monēbāmini</td>
<td>agēbāmini</td>
<td>audēbāmini</td>
<td>capiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laudābāntur</td>
<td>monēbāntur</td>
<td>agēbāntur</td>
<td>audēbāntur</td>
<td>capiēbāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Future

| laudābor | monēbor | agar | audiar | capiar |
| laudāberis(-re) | monēberis(-re) | agēris(-re) | audiēris(-re) | capiēris(-re) |
| laudābitur | monēbitur | agētūr | audiētūr | capiētūr |
| laudābimur | monēbimur | agēmūr | audiēmūr | capiēmūr |
| laudābimini | monēbimini | agēminī | audiēminī | capiēminī |
| laudābuntur | monēbuntur | agentūr | audientūr | capientūr |

### Perfect

| laudātus<sup>12</sup> sum | monitus sum | actus sum | auditus sum | captus sum |
| laudātus es | monitus es | actus es | auditus es | captus es |
| laudātus est | monitus est | actus est | auditus est | captus est |
| laudātī sumus | monitū sumus | actū sumus | audītū sumus | captī sumus |
| laudātī estis | monitū estis | actū estis | audītū estis | captī estis |
| laudātī sunt | monitū sunt | actū sunt | audītū sunt | captī sunt |

### Pluperfect

| laudātus eram | monitus eram | actus eram | auditus eram | captus eram |
| laudātus erās | monitus erās | actus erās | auditus erās | captus erās |
| laudātus erat | monitus erat | actus erat | auditus erat | captus erat |
| laudātī erāmus | monitū erāmus | actū erāmus | audītū erāmus | captī erāmus |
| laudātī erātis | monitū erātis | actū erātis | audītū erātis | captī erātis |
| laudātī erant | monitū erant | actū erant | audītū erant | captī erant |

### Future Perfect

| laudātus erō | monitus erō | actus erō | auditus erō | captus erō |
| laudātus erīs | monitus erīs | actus erīs | auditus erīs | captus erīs |
| laudātus erīt | monitus erīt | actus erīt | auditus erīt | captus erīt |
| laudātī erīmus | monitū erīmus | actū erīmus | audītū erīmus | captī erīmus |
| laudātī erītis | monitū erītis | actū erītis | audītū erītis | captī erītis |
| laudātī erunt | monitū erunt | actū erunt | audītū erunt | captī erunt |

### Subjunctive Passive

| lauder | monēr | agar | audēr | capēr |
| laudēris(-re) | monēris(-re) | agēris(-re) | audiēris(-re) | capiēris(-re) |
| laudētūr | monētūr | agētūr | audiētūr | capiētūr |
| laudēmūr | monēmūr | agēmūr | audiēmūr | capiēmūr |
| laudēmīnī | monēmīnī | agēmīnī | audiēmīnī | capiēmīnī |
| laudēnītur | monēnītur | agēntūr | audiēntūr | capiēntūr |

### Imperfect

| laudāēr | monērēr | agēr | audēr | capēr |
| laudāēris(-re) | monēris(-re) | agēris(-re) | audiēris(-re) | capiēris(-re) |
| laudāētūr | monētūr | agētūr | audiētūr | capiētūr |
| laudāēmūr | monēmūr | agēmūr | audiēmūr | capiēmūr |
| laudāēmīnī | monēmīnī | agēmīnī | audiēmīnī | capiēmīnī |
| laudāērentur | monērentur | agērentur | audiērentur | capiērentur |

<sup>12</sup>The participles laudātus (-a, -um), monitus (-a, -um), etc., are used as predicate adjectives, and so their endings vary to agree with the subject.
**Appendix 455**

**Perfect**

| laudatus sim | monitus sim | actus sim | auditus sim | captus sim |
| laudatus sis | monitus sis | actus sis | auditus sis | captus sis |
| laudatus sit | monitus sit | actus sit | auditus sit | captus sit |
| laudati simus | monitii simus | actii simus | auditii simus | captii simus |
| laudati sitis | monitii sitis | actii sitis | auditii sitis | captii sitis |
| laudati sint | monitii sint | actii sint | auditii sint | captii sint |

**Pluperfect**

| laudatus essem | monitus essem | actus essem | auditus essem | captus essem |
| laudatus esses | monitus esses | actus esses | auditus esses | captus esses |
| laudatus esset | monitus esset | actus esset | auditus esset | captus esset |
| laudati essemus | monitii essemus | actii essemus | auditii essemus | captii essemus |
| laudati essetis | monitii essetis | actii essetis | auditii essetis | captii essetis |
| laudati essent | monitii essent | actii essent | auditii essent | captii essent |

**Present Imperative Passive**

In classical Latin, passive form imperatives are found chiefly in deponent verbs (for forms, see Ch. 34).

**Participles**

**Active**

- *Pres.* laudãns
- *Fut.* laudáturus

**Passive**

- *Perf.* laudátus
- *Fut.* laudandus

**Infinitives**

**Active**

- *Pres.* laudãre
- *Fut.* laudáturus esse

**Passive**

- *Pres.* laudâri
- *Perf.* laudátus esse
- *Fut.* laudâtum ïri

**DEPONENT VERBS**

**Principal Parts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conj.</th>
<th>2nd Conj.</th>
<th>3rd Conj.</th>
<th>4th Conj.</th>
<th>3rd (-iō)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortor</td>
<td>fateor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>mōlior</td>
<td>patior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortâri</td>
<td>fatēri</td>
<td>sequī</td>
<td>mōlīri</td>
<td>patī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātus sum (urge)</td>
<td>fassus sum (confess)</td>
<td>secūtus sum (follow)</td>
<td>mōliōtus sum (work at)</td>
<td>passus sum (suffer)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortor</td>
<td>fateor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>mōlior</td>
<td>patior</td>
<td>hortābar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāris(-re)</td>
<td>fatēris(-re)</td>
<td>sequēris(-re)</td>
<td>mōlēris(-re)</td>
<td>patēris(-re)</td>
<td>hortēbaris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūr</td>
<td>fatētūr</td>
<td>sequitūr</td>
<td>mōlitūr</td>
<td>patētūr</td>
<td>hortēbatūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāmūr</td>
<td>fatēmūr</td>
<td>sequimūr</td>
<td>mōlimūr</td>
<td>patāmūr</td>
<td>hortēbamūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortēminī</td>
<td>fatēminī</td>
<td>sequimīnī</td>
<td>mōlimīnī</td>
<td>patāminī</td>
<td>hortēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortantūr</td>
<td>fatētuntūr</td>
<td>sequuntūr</td>
<td>mōliuntūr</td>
<td>patiuntūr</td>
<td>hortēbantūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāris( -re)</td>
<td>fatēris(-re)</td>
<td>sequēris(-re)</td>
<td>mōlēris(-re)</td>
<td>patēris(-re)</td>
<td>hortēbaris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūr</td>
<td>fatētūr</td>
<td>sequētūr</td>
<td>mōlitūr</td>
<td>patētūr</td>
<td>hortēbatūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāmūr</td>
<td>fatēmūr</td>
<td>sequēmūr</td>
<td>mōlimūr</td>
<td>patāmūr</td>
<td>hortēbamūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortēminī</td>
<td>fatēminī</td>
<td>sequēminī</td>
<td>mōlimīnī</td>
<td>patāminī</td>
<td>hortēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortantūr</td>
<td>fatētuntūr</td>
<td>sequuntūr</td>
<td>mōliuntūr</td>
<td>patiuntūr</td>
<td>hortēbantūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūr</td>
<td>fatētūr</td>
<td>sequētūr</td>
<td>mōlitūr</td>
<td>patētūr</td>
<td>hortēbatūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāmūr</td>
<td>fatēmūr</td>
<td>sequēmūr</td>
<td>mōlimūr</td>
<td>patāmūr</td>
<td>hortēbamūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortēminī</td>
<td>fatēminī</td>
<td>sequēminī</td>
<td>mōlimīnī</td>
<td>patāminī</td>
<td>hortēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortantūr</td>
<td>fatētuntūr</td>
<td>sequuntūr</td>
<td>mōliuntūr</td>
<td>patiuntūr</td>
<td>hortēbantūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātor</td>
<td>fateor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>mōlior</td>
<td>patior</td>
<td>hortābar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāris(-re)</td>
<td>fatētāris(-re)</td>
<td>sequētāris(-re)</td>
<td>mōlitāris(-re)</td>
<td>patētāris(-re)</td>
<td>hortēbatāris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūtūr</td>
<td>fateātūr</td>
<td>sequētūtūr</td>
<td>mōlitūtūr</td>
<td>patētūtūr</td>
<td>hortēbatūtūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātāmūr</td>
<td>fateāmūr</td>
<td>sequētāmūr</td>
<td>mōlimātūr</td>
<td>patātāmūr</td>
<td>hortēbātāmūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāminī</td>
<td>fateāminī</td>
<td>sequētāminī</td>
<td>mōlimātāminī</td>
<td>patātāminī</td>
<td>hortēbātāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortantātūr</td>
<td>fateāntātūr</td>
<td>sequēntātūr</td>
<td>mōliuntātūr</td>
<td>patiuntātūr</td>
<td>hortēbāntātūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētār</td>
<td>fateēr</td>
<td>sequēr</td>
<td>mōliēr</td>
<td>patēiēr</td>
<td>hortēbēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāris(-re)</td>
<td>fateētāris(-re)</td>
<td>sequētāris(-re)</td>
<td>mōlitētāris(-re)</td>
<td>patētētāris(-re)</td>
<td>hortēbētāris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētātūr</td>
<td>fateētūr</td>
<td>sequētētūr</td>
<td>mōlitētūr</td>
<td>patētētūr</td>
<td>hortēbētātūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāmūr</td>
<td>fateēmūr</td>
<td>sequētēmūr</td>
<td>mōlimētūr</td>
<td>patēlimētūr</td>
<td>hortēbētāmūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāminī</td>
<td>fateēminī</td>
<td>sequētēminī</td>
<td>mōlimētēminī</td>
<td>patēlimētēminī</td>
<td>hortēbētāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortantātūr</td>
<td>fateēntātūr</td>
<td>sequēntātūr</td>
<td>mōliuentātūr</td>
<td>patēiuentātūr</td>
<td>hortēbēntātūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs sum</td>
<td>fassus sum</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
<td>mōlītus sum</td>
<td>passus sum</td>
<td>hortētūs sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs es</td>
<td>fassus es</td>
<td>secūtus es</td>
<td>mōlītus es</td>
<td>passus es</td>
<td>hortētūs es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs est</td>
<td>fassus est</td>
<td>secūtus est</td>
<td>mōlītus est</td>
<td>passus est</td>
<td>hortētūs est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī sumus</td>
<td>fassī sumus</td>
<td>secūtī sumus</td>
<td>mōlītī sumus</td>
<td>passī sumus</td>
<td>hortētī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī estis</td>
<td>fassī estis</td>
<td>secūtī estis</td>
<td>mōlītī estis</td>
<td>passī estis</td>
<td>hortētī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī sunt</td>
<td>fassī sunt</td>
<td>secūtī sunt</td>
<td>mōlītī sunt</td>
<td>passī sunt</td>
<td>hortētī sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī eram</td>
<td>fassī eram</td>
<td>secūtī eram</td>
<td>mōlītī eram</td>
<td>passī eram</td>
<td>hortētī eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī erās</td>
<td>fassī erās</td>
<td>secūtī erās</td>
<td>mōlītī erās</td>
<td>passī erās</td>
<td>hortētī erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī erat</td>
<td>fassī erat</td>
<td>secūtī erat</td>
<td>mōlītī erat</td>
<td>passī erat</td>
<td>hortētī erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī crāmus</td>
<td>fassī crāmus</td>
<td>secūtī crāmus</td>
<td>mōlītī crāmus</td>
<td>passī crāmus</td>
<td>hortētī crāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī crātis</td>
<td>fassī crātis</td>
<td>secūtī crātis</td>
<td>mōlītī crātis</td>
<td>passī crātis</td>
<td>hortētī crātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī crunt</td>
<td>fassī crunt</td>
<td>secūtī crunt</td>
<td>mōlītī crunt</td>
<td>passī crunt</td>
<td>hortētī crunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs erō</td>
<td>fassus erō</td>
<td>secūtus erō</td>
<td>mōlītus erō</td>
<td>passus erō</td>
<td>hortētūs erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs eris</td>
<td>fassus eris</td>
<td>secūtus eris</td>
<td>mōlītus eris</td>
<td>passus eris</td>
<td>hortētūs eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs erit</td>
<td>fassus erit</td>
<td>secūtus erit</td>
<td>mōlītus erit</td>
<td>passus erit</td>
<td>hortētūs erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī crāmus</td>
<td>fassī crāmus</td>
<td>secūtī crāmus</td>
<td>mōlītī crāmus</td>
<td>passī crāmus</td>
<td>hortētī crāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī crātis</td>
<td>fassī crātis</td>
<td>secūtī crātis</td>
<td>mōlītī crātis</td>
<td>passī crātis</td>
<td>hortētī crātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī crunt</td>
<td>fassī crunt</td>
<td>secūtī crunt</td>
<td>mōlītī crunt</td>
<td>passī crunt</td>
<td>hortētī crunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortēr</td>
<td>fateēr</td>
<td>sequēr</td>
<td>mōliēr</td>
<td>patēiēr</td>
<td>hortēbēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāris(-re)</td>
<td>fateētāris(-re)</td>
<td>sequētāris(-re)</td>
<td>mōlitētāris(-re)</td>
<td>patētētāris(-re)</td>
<td>hortēbētāris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētūtūr</td>
<td>fateētūtūr</td>
<td>sequētētūr</td>
<td>mōlitētūtūr</td>
<td>patētētūtūr</td>
<td>hortēbētētūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāmūr</td>
<td>fateēmūr</td>
<td>sequētēmūr</td>
<td>mōlimētēmūr</td>
<td>patēlimētēmūr</td>
<td>hortēbētāmūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortētāminī</td>
<td>fateēminī</td>
<td>sequētēminī</td>
<td>mōlimētēminī</td>
<td>patēlimētēminī</td>
<td>hortēbētāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortantātūr</td>
<td>fateēntātūr</td>
<td>sequēntētūr</td>
<td>mōliuntētūr</td>
<td>patiuntētūr</td>
<td>hortēbēntātūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>hortārēr</th>
<th>fatērēr</th>
<th>sequerēr</th>
<th>mōlīrēr</th>
<th>paterēr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortārēris(-re)</td>
<td>fatērēris(-re)</td>
<td>sequerēris(-re)</td>
<td>mōlīrēris(-re)</td>
<td>paterēris(-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortārētur</td>
<td>fatērētur</td>
<td>sequerētur</td>
<td>mōlīrētur</td>
<td>paterētur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortārēmur</td>
<td>fatērēmur</td>
<td>sequerēmur</td>
<td>mōlīrēmur</td>
<td>paterēmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortārēminī</td>
<td>fatērēminī</td>
<td>sequerēminī</td>
<td>mōlīrēminī</td>
<td>paterēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortārentur</td>
<td>fatērentur</td>
<td>sequerentur</td>
<td>mōlīrentur</td>
<td>paterentur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>hortātus</th>
<th>fassus</th>
<th>secūtus</th>
<th>mōliūs</th>
<th>passus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātus sīs</td>
<td>fassus sīs</td>
<td>secūtus sīs</td>
<td>mōliūs sīs</td>
<td>passus sīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātus sit</td>
<td>fassus sit</td>
<td>secūtus sit</td>
<td>mōliūs sit</td>
<td>passus sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī sīmus</td>
<td>fassī sīmus</td>
<td>secūtī sīmus</td>
<td>mōliūtī sīmus</td>
<td>passī sīmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī sītīs</td>
<td>fassī sītīs</td>
<td>secūtī sītīs</td>
<td>mōliūtī sītīs</td>
<td>passī sītīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī sint</td>
<td>fassī sint</td>
<td>secūtī sint</td>
<td>mōliūtī sint</td>
<td>passī sint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>hortātūs</th>
<th>fassus</th>
<th>secūtūs</th>
<th>mōliūtūs</th>
<th>passus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs essēs</td>
<td>fassus essēs</td>
<td>secūtūs essēs</td>
<td>mōliūtūs essēs</td>
<td>passus essēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātūs esset</td>
<td>fassus esset</td>
<td>secūtūs esset</td>
<td>mōliūtūs esset</td>
<td>passus esset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī essēmus</td>
<td>fassī essēmus</td>
<td>secūtī essēmus</td>
<td>mōliūtī essēmus</td>
<td>passī essēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī essētis</td>
<td>fassī essētis</td>
<td>secūtī essētis</td>
<td>mōliūtī essētis</td>
<td>passī essētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātī essent</td>
<td>fassī essent</td>
<td>secūtī essent</td>
<td>mōliūtī essent</td>
<td>passī essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>hortāre</th>
<th>fatēre</th>
<th>sequere</th>
<th>mōlīre</th>
<th>patere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortāminī</td>
<td>fatēminī</td>
<td>sequiminī</td>
<td>mōliminī</td>
<td>patiminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Pres. hortāns</th>
<th>fatēns</th>
<th>secūens</th>
<th>mōlīens</th>
<th>patēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf. hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōliūs</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. hortātūrus</td>
<td>fassūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>mōliūtūs</td>
<td>passūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger. hortandus</td>
<td>fatendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>mōliendus</td>
<td>patiendum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>Pres. hortāřī</th>
<th>fatēřī</th>
<th>secūī</th>
<th>mōlīřī</th>
<th>patī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf. hortātūs esse</td>
<td>fassus esse</td>
<td>secūtūs esse</td>
<td>mōliūtūs esse</td>
<td>passus esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. hortātūrus esse</td>
<td>fassūrus esse</td>
<td>secūtūrus esse</td>
<td>mōliūtūrus esse</td>
<td>passūrus esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR VERBS

**Principal Parts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>essē</th>
<th>īūī</th>
<th>futūrum</th>
<th>(be)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>potūī</td>
<td>futūrum</td>
<td>(be able, can)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>volui</td>
<td></td>
<td>(wish, be willing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>nōluī</td>
<td></td>
<td>(not to wish, be unwilling)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālō</td>
<td>mālle</td>
<td>māluī</td>
<td></td>
<td>(prefer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>īre</td>
<td>ī</td>
<td>itum</td>
<td>(go)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indicative\(^{13}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>potes</td>
<td>viō</td>
<td>nōn viō</td>
<td>māviōs</td>
<td>iōs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>potest</td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvultit</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>possus</td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td>iōmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>potestis</td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultitis</td>
<td>itis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eram</td>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
<td>iōbam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erās</td>
<td>poterās</td>
<td>volēbās</td>
<td>nōlēbās</td>
<td>mālēbās</td>
<td>iōbas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>poterat</td>
<td>volēbat</td>
<td>nōlēbat</td>
<td>mālēbat</td>
<td>iōbat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
<td>volēbāmus</td>
<td>nōlēbāmus</td>
<td>mālēbāmus</td>
<td>iōbāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erētis</td>
<td>poterētis</td>
<td>volēbētis</td>
<td>nōlēbētis</td>
<td>mālēbētis</td>
<td>iōbētis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>poterant</td>
<td>volēbant</td>
<td>nōlēbant</td>
<td>mālēbant</td>
<td>iōbant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erō</td>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td>mālam</td>
<td>iōbō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>poteris</td>
<td>volēs</td>
<td>nōlēs</td>
<td>mālēs</td>
<td>iōbis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>poterit</td>
<td>volet</td>
<td>nōleit</td>
<td>māleet</td>
<td>iōbit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erīmus</td>
<td>poterīmus</td>
<td>volēmus</td>
<td>nōlēmus</td>
<td>mālēmus</td>
<td>iōimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erītis</td>
<td>poterītis</td>
<td>volētīs</td>
<td>nōlētīs</td>
<td>mālētīs</td>
<td>iōtīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erunt</td>
<td>poterunt</td>
<td>volēbant</td>
<td>nōlēbant</td>
<td>mālēbant</td>
<td>iōbant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūi</td>
<td>potuī</td>
<td>volūi</td>
<td>nōluī</td>
<td>māluī</td>
<td>iū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuīstī</td>
<td>potuīstī</td>
<td>voluīstī</td>
<td>nōluīstī</td>
<td>māluīstī</td>
<td>iūstī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūt</td>
<td>potuit</td>
<td>voluit</td>
<td>nōluit</td>
<td>māluit</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūimus</td>
<td>potuīmus</td>
<td>voluīmus</td>
<td>nōluīmus</td>
<td>māluīmus</td>
<td>iōimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuītis</td>
<td>potuītis</td>
<td>voluītīs</td>
<td>nōluītīs</td>
<td>māluītīs</td>
<td>iōtīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuīrant</td>
<td>potuīrant</td>
<td>voluīrant</td>
<td>nōluīrant</td>
<td>māluīrant</td>
<td>iōrant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueram</td>
<td>potueram</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
<td>ieram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerās</td>
<td>potuerās</td>
<td>voluerās</td>
<td>nōluerās</td>
<td>māluerās</td>
<td>ierās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerō</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
<td>ierō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>potueris</td>
<td>volueris</td>
<td>nōlueris</td>
<td>mālueris</td>
<td>ieris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>possess</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>mālim</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīs</td>
<td>possīs</td>
<td>velīs</td>
<td>nōlīs</td>
<td>mālīs</td>
<td>eās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>possīt</td>
<td>velīt</td>
<td>nōlīt</td>
<td>mālīt</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīmus</td>
<td>possimus</td>
<td>velīmus</td>
<td>nōlīmus</td>
<td>mālīmus</td>
<td>eāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sītis</td>
<td>possessīs</td>
<td>velītis</td>
<td>nōlītis</td>
<td>mālītis</td>
<td>eātīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sint</td>
<td>possessint</td>
<td>velīnt</td>
<td>nōlīnt</td>
<td>mālīnt</td>
<td>eant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{13}\)Note that the verbs in this list have no passive voice (except for the idiomatic impersonal passive of eō, which is not used in this book).
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>vellum</td>
<td>nöllum</td>
<td>mällem</td>
<td>iñem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>possēs</td>
<td>vellēs</td>
<td>nöllēs</td>
<td>mällēs</td>
<td>iēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset</td>
<td>posset</td>
<td>vellet</td>
<td>nöllet</td>
<td>mället</td>
<td>iet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>possēmus</td>
<td>vellēmus</td>
<td>nöllēmus</td>
<td>mällēmus</td>
<td>iēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>possētis</td>
<td>vellētis</td>
<td>nöllētis</td>
<td>mällētis</td>
<td>iētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essent</td>
<td>possent</td>
<td>vellent</td>
<td>noblent</td>
<td>mällent</td>
<td>ient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nölluerim</td>
<td>mäluerim</td>
<td>ierim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerīs</td>
<td>potuerīs</td>
<td>voluerīs</td>
<td>nölluerīs</td>
<td>mäluerīs</td>
<td>ierīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>potuerit</td>
<td>voluerit</td>
<td>nölluerit</td>
<td>mäluerit</td>
<td>ierit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerīmus</td>
<td>potuerīmus</td>
<td>voluerīmus</td>
<td>nölluerīmus</td>
<td>mäluerīmus</td>
<td>ierīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerītis</td>
<td>potuerītis</td>
<td>voluerītis</td>
<td>nölluerītis</td>
<td>mäluerītis</td>
<td>ierītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerint</td>
<td>potuerint</td>
<td>voluerint</td>
<td>nölluerint</td>
<td>mäluerint</td>
<td>ierint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuissem</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nöluuissem</td>
<td>mäluissem</td>
<td>ësem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisēs</td>
<td>potuisēs</td>
<td>voluisēs</td>
<td>nöluisēs</td>
<td>mäluisēs</td>
<td>ësēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisset</td>
<td>potuisset</td>
<td>voluisset</td>
<td>nöluisset</td>
<td>mäluisset</td>
<td>ëset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisēmus</td>
<td>potuisēmus</td>
<td>voluisēmus</td>
<td>nöluisēmus</td>
<td>mäluisēmus</td>
<td>ësēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisētis</td>
<td>potuisētis</td>
<td>voluisētis</td>
<td>nöluisētis</td>
<td>mäluisētis</td>
<td>ësētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisent</td>
<td>potuisent</td>
<td>voluisent</td>
<td>nöluisent</td>
<td>mäluisent</td>
<td>ësent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Es</th>
<th>Este</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essent</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

**Pres.** | **Perf.** | **Fut.** | **Gen.**
---|---|---|---
| potēns | volēns | nöllens | --- |
| potuisēs | voluisēs | nöluisse | --- |
| potuisset | voluisset | nöluisset | --- |

### Infinitives

**Pr.** | **Pf.** | **Fu.**
---|---|---
| esse | posse | futūrus esse |

**IRREGULAR:** ferō, ferre, tuī, lātum, to bear, carry

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>feror</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferris(-re)</td>
<td>ferēbas</td>
<td>ferēbāris(-re)</td>
<td>ferēs</td>
<td>ferēris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>fertur</td>
<td>ferēbat</td>
<td>ferēbātur</td>
<td>feret</td>
<td>ferēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
<td>ferēbāmus</td>
<td>ferēbāmur</td>
<td>ferēmus</td>
<td>ferēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
<td>ferēbātis</td>
<td>ferēbāmini</td>
<td>ferētis</td>
<td>ferēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
<td>ferēbant</td>
<td>ferēbantur</td>
<td>ferent</td>
<td>ferentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Wheelock's Latin

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tulī</td>
<td>látus sum</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>látus eram</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td>látus ero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulīs</td>
<td>látus es</td>
<td>tulerās</td>
<td>látus erās</td>
<td>tuleris</td>
<td>látus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulit</td>
<td>látus est</td>
<td>tulerat</td>
<td>látus erat</td>
<td>tulerit</td>
<td>látus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>látus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferās</td>
<td>ferāris(-re)</td>
<td>ferās</td>
<td>ferrēs</td>
<td>ferrēris(-re)</td>
<td>tuleris</td>
<td>látus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferat</td>
<td>ferātūr</td>
<td>ferātūr</td>
<td>ferret</td>
<td>ferrētūr</td>
<td>tulerit</td>
<td>látus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferāmus</td>
<td>ferāmur</td>
<td>ferēmus</td>
<td>ferrēmus</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferātis</td>
<td>ferēmīnī</td>
<td>ferētis</td>
<td>ferrēmīnī</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>ferantūr</td>
<td>ferent</td>
<td>ferrent</td>
<td>ferrentūr</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IRREGULAR: fierī, fieri, factus sum, to happen, become; be made, be done

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fierī</td>
<td>fierī</td>
<td>fierī</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
<td>fierīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierīt</td>
<td>fierīt</td>
<td>fierīt</td>
<td>fierīt</td>
<td>fierīt</td>
<td>fierīt</td>
<td>fierīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierīnt</td>
<td>fierīnt</td>
<td>fierīnt</td>
<td>fierīnt</td>
<td>fierīnt</td>
<td>fierīnt</td>
<td>fierīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fierem</td>
<td>fierem</td>
<td>factus sim</td>
<td>factus essem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierēs</td>
<td>fierēs</td>
<td>factus sis</td>
<td>factus essēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fieret</td>
<td>fieret</td>
<td>factus sit</td>
<td>factus essēt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierēmus</td>
<td>fierēmus</td>
<td>factē sīmus</td>
<td>factē essēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierētis</td>
<td>fierētis</td>
<td>factē sītis</td>
<td>factē essētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierent</td>
<td>fierent</td>
<td>factē sint</td>
<td>factē essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>factum ēri</td>
<td>factus esse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Imperative: | fier, fit |
An Arabic (I) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in -āre, -āvī, -ātum. For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix. For more complete definitions of the Latin words, see the Latin-English Vocabulary.

A
abandon, relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum
able (be), possum, posse, potūf
about (concerning), dē + abl.
absolute ruler, tyrannus, -ī, m.
abundance, cōpiā, -ae, f.
accomplish, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; be accomplished, fīo, fīeri, factus sum
across, trāns + acc.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
advice, moneō, -ere, -uī, -itum
affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum
afraid (be), metuō, -ere, -uī
after, post + acc.
afterswords, postea
after all, postrēmum
again, iterum
against, contrā + acc.
age, aetās, -tātis, f.
alas, heu, vaec
all, omnīs, -e
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
also, quoque
although, cum + subj.
always, semper
among, inter + acc.
ancestors, maiōrēs, maiōrum, m. pl.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um
and, et, -que, ac, atque
anger, Íra, -ae, f.
angry, Írātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -mālis, n.
announce, nūntiō (I)
another, alius, -a, -ud
answer, respondeō, -ere, -spondī, -spōnsum
any, ūllus, -a, -um
any (anyone, anything, after sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, quid
argument, argūmentum, -ī, n.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. pl.
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -ē, -hēnsum
arrogant, superbus, -a, -um
art, ārs, artis, f.

461
as, ut + indic.
as . . . as possible, quam + superlative
Asia, Asia, -ae, f.
ask, rogō (1)
assume (I assure you, you may be assured), use
   personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,
   tibi)
at (= time), abl. of time; (= place), loc. of names
of cities
Athens, Athênae, -ārum, f. pl.
attack, oppugnō (1)
author, auctor, -ōris, m.
avert, āvertō, -ere, -ā, -āversum
away from, ab + abl.

B
bad, malus, -a, -um
band, manus, -ās, f.
banish, expello, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
base, turpis, -c
be, sum, esse, fūt, futūrum
beard, barba, -ae, f.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum; bellus, -a, -um
beauty, forma, -ae, f.
because, quod
become, fio, fierI, factus sum
before, ante + acc.
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpiō, -ceptum (see began
above)
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum
benefit, beneficium, -iī, n.
best, optimus, -a, -um
better, melior, -ius
blind, caecus, -a, -um
body, corpus, -poris, n.
(be) born, nāscor, -iī, nātus sum
book, līber, -brī, m.
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, puertī, m.
brae, fortis, -e
brief, brevis, -e.
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring, ferō, ferre, tuī, lātum
bring (back), referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
bull, bōs, bovis, m.lf.
but, sed, at
by (= agent), ā or ab + abl.;
   (= means), simple abl.

C
Caesar, Caesar, -saris, m.
call, vocō (1); appello (1)
can, possum, posse, potui
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum
care, cūra, -ae, f.
certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um;
   (indef.) quidam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.) or
   quoddam (adj.)
certainly, certē
change, mūtō (1)
character, mōrēs, mōrōrum, m. pl.
cheer, recreō (1)
Cicero, Cicerō, -rōnis, m.
citizen, cīvis, -īs, m.lf.
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, f.
city, urbs, urbis, f.
come, veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum
come back, reveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum
comfort, solācium, -ii, n.
command (noun), imperium, -ii, n.;
   (vb.), imperō (1)
common, commūnis, -e
commonwealth, rēs pública, rei publicae, f.
compare, comparō (1)
complain, queror, -iī, questus sum
concerning, dē + abl.
confess, fatero, -ērī, fassum sum
conquer, supero (1); vincō, -ere, viēvī, victum
conspirators, coniurātī, -orum, m. pl.
constellation, sidus, -deris, n.
consul, consul, -sulis, m.
country, patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, f.
create, creō (1)
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
crime, scelus, -leris, n.

D
danger, periculum, -ī, n.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
daughter, filia, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. filiābus)
day, diēs, -ī, m.
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, f.
dedicate, dedicō (1)
deed, factum, -i, n.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -ī, -fēnsum
delay, mora, -ae, f.
delight, dēlectō (1)
deny, negō (1)
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; abeō, -ire, -ī, -itum
deprieved of (be), careō, -ere, -ītum

descent, nepōs, -pōtis, m.
desire (vb.), cupiō, -ere, -lvi, -ltum; desiderō (1);
(noun), voluptas, -tatis, f.
despise, contemno, -ere, -temptum

destroy, deleo, -ere, -vetum

die, morior, -1, mortuus sum
difficult, difficilis, -e
dignity, dignitas, -tatis, -i

dine, ceno (1)
dinner, cena, -ae, f.
discern, reperiō, -ire, -perrī, -pertullum
disgraceful, turpis, -e
dissimilar, dissimilis, -e

do, facio, -ere, -feci, factum; be done, fieri, factus sum
doctor, medica, -ae, f.; medicus, -i, m.
drag, traho, -ere, traxi, tractum
dread (vb.), metuō, -ere, -ui; (noun), metus, -us, m.
drive out, expello, -ere, -pulli, -pullum

eagerness, studium, -i, n.
ear, auris, -is, f.
easy, facilis, -e
eight, octō
either, uter, utra, utrum
either ... or, aut ... aut
eleven, undecim
emperor, imperator, -tōris, m.
end, finis, -is, m.
endure, ferō, ferre, tuī, lātum; patior, -i, passus sum
enemy, hostis, -is, m. (usually pl.)
enjoy, ūtor, -i, usus sum + abl.
enjoyment, fructus, -ūs, m.
enough, satis
entire, totus, -a, -um

entrust, committō, -ere, -misī, -missum
envy, (be) envious, invideo, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsum + dat.
err, errō (1)
esteen, diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum
even, etiam; not even, nē ... quidem
ever, umquam
every(one), omnis, -e
evill (adj.), malus, -a, -um; (noun), malum, -i, n.
exhibit, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
expect, expectō (1)
expel, expello, -ere, -pulli, -pullum
eye, oculus, -us, m.

face, vultus, -ūs, m.
faith, fīdēs, -eī, f.
faithful, fīdelis, -e
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrum
false, falsus, -a, -um
fame, fāma, -ae, f.
family, familia, -ae, f.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.; vitium, -i, n.
fear (vb.), timeō, -ere, -ui; (noun), metus, -ūs, m.; timor, -mōris, m.
feel, sentiō, -ere, sēnsī, sēnsum
feeling, sēnsus, -us, m.
ferocious, ferox, gen. ferōcis
few, paucī, -ae, -a (pl.)
fish, piscis, -eī, f.
fierce, acer, acris, acer; ferōx, gen. ferōcis
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um
finally, dēnique
find, invenio, -ire, -venī, -ventum
first (adj.), prīmus, -a, -um; (adv.) prīmum, prīmō
five, quīnque
flee, fugio, -ere, fugī, fugītūrum
follow, sequor, -i, secutus sum
foolish, stultus, -a, -um
for (conj.), nam, enim; (= since, because), quod, quoniam; (prep.), prō + abl.; often simply the dat. case.
force, vis, vīs, f.
forces (troops), cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.
forgive, ignoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat.
former, prior, prius
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forum, forum, -i, n.
four, quattuor
free (vb.), liberō (1); (adj.), liber, -era, -erum
freedom, libertās, -ātīs, f.
freely, liberē
friend, amīca, -ae, f.; amīcus, -i, m.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
frighten, terrō, -ere, -uī, -ītum
from (away), ab; (out) ex; (down) de:
fruit, fructus, -us, m.
full, plēnus, -a, -um
G
game, lūdus, -i, m.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
general, dux, ducis, m.; imperātor, -tōris, m.
gift, dōnum, -i, n.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dāre, datum
(go) glad, gaudeō, -ere, ĝāvisus sum
glory, gloria, -ae, f.
go, ēō, ēre, ēī, ēītum
go astray, errō (1)
go away, abdēō, -āre, -āī, -ātum
god, deus, -i, m. (voc. sg. deus, nom. pl. deī or dī, dat. and abl. pl. dīs)
goddess, dea, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. deābus)
good, bonus, -a, -um
gratitude, grātitā, -ae, f.
great, magnus, -a, -um
greedily, avārūs, -a, -um
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um; a Greek, Graecus, -i, m.
grieve, dolēō, -ere, -uī, -ītūrum
ground, humus, -i, f.: terra, -ae, f.
guard, custōdīa, -ae, f.

H
hand, manus, -ūs, f.
happy, beātus, -a, -um; felix, gen. felicis
harm, nocēō, -ere, -uī, -ītum + dat.
harsh, dūrūs, -a, -um; acerbus, -a, -um
have, habēō, -ere, -uī, -ītum
he, is; often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.
head, caput, -pitis, n.

healthy, sānus, -a, -um
hear, audīō, -ēre, -īvī, -ītum
heart (in one's), use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., mihi, tibi)
heavy, gravēs, -e
help (vb.), adiuvō, -āre, -īvī, -ītum;
(noun), auxilium, -iī, n.
her (possessive) eius (not reflexive); suus, -a, -um (reflexive)
herself, suī (reflexive); ipsa
hesitate, dubitō (1)
high, altus, -a, -um
higher, altior, -ius; superior, -ius
himself, suī (reflexive); ipse (intensive)
his, eius (not reflexive); suus, -a, -um (reflexive)
hold, tenēō, -ere, -uī, tenētum
home, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domī;
(to) home, domum; from home, domō
honor, honor, -nōris, m.
hope (noun), spēs, -eī, f.; (vb.), spērō (1)
horn, cornūs, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -iī, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, casa, -ae, f.
however, autem (postpositive)
how great, quantus, -a, -um
how many, quot
human, hūmanus, -a, -um
human being, homō, -minis, m.
humane, humanus, -a, -um
humble, humilis, -e
hundred, centum
hurt, nocēō, -ere, -uī, -ītum + dat.

I
I, ego, meī; often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.
if, si; if ... not, nisi
ill, malum, -iī, n.
illy, illusīōs, clārus, -a, -um
immortal, immortālis, -e
in, in + abl.
infinity, inphantīa, -ae, f.
injustice, iniūria, -ae, f.
into, in + acc.
invite, invitō (1)
iron, ferrum, -iī, n.
it, is, ea, id; often indicated only by personal ending of vb.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.

itself, suī (reflexive); ipsum (intensive)

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum
judge, iūdex, -dicis, m.
judgment, iudicium, -i, n.
just, iūstus, -a, -urn

K

keen, ōcer, ācris, ācre
keenly, acrī
ter
kindness, beneficium, -i, n.
king, rex, regis, m.
kiss, basītum, -i, n.
knee, īnus, -a, -um
know, scīō, -ere, -vī, -vītum; not know, nesciō, -ere, -vī, -vītum
knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.

L

labor, labor, -bōris, m.
lack, careō, -ere, -ūi, -itūrum + abl.
land, patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
large, magnus, -a, -urn
Latin, Latinus, -a, -um
law, lex, légis, f.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
leader, dux, ducis, m.
learn (in the academic sense), discō, -ere, didīcī;
(get information), cognoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum
leave, abeō, -ere, -ī, -itum
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
leisure, ētītum, -i, n.
let (someone do something), express this with
jussive subj.
letter (epistle), litterae, -arum, f. pl.
liberty, libertās, -tātis, f.
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.
listen (to), audiō, -ere, -ūi, -ūtum
literature, litterae, -arum, f. pl.
little, parvus, -a, -um; little book, libellus, -i, m.
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum; live one's life, vītam
ageō, -ere, ēgī, ēctum
long (for a long time), diū

lose, āmittō, -cre, -mīṣi, -missum
love (vb.), amō (1); (noun), amor, amōris, m.
loyal, fidēlis, -e
luck, fortūna, -ae, f.

M

make, facō, -ere, fēcī, factum
man, vir, virī, m.; homō, -minis, m.;
often expressed by masc. of an adj.
many, multī, -ae, -a
master, magister, -trē, m.; dominus, -ī, m.
may (indicating permission to do something), licet
+ dat. + inf.
me. See 1.
memory, memoria, -ae, f.
mercy, clémentia, -ae, f.
method, modus, -i, m.
middle, medius, -a, -um
mind, mēns, mentis, f.
mix, misceō, -ere, -ūi, mixtum
mob, vulgus, -i, n. (sometimes m.)
modest, pudicus, -a, -um
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
monument, monumentum, -ī, n.
more, plūs, plūris; comp. of adj. or adv.
most, plūriorum, -a, -um; superl. of adj. or adv.
mother, māter, -tris, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, -ere, mōvī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um
murder, necō (1)
must, débeō, -ere, -ūi, -itum; or, for passive, use
passive periphrastic
my, meus, -a, -um (m. voc. sg. mī)
myself (reflexive), meī, mihi, etc.;
(intensive) ipse, ipsa

N

name, nōmen, -minis, n.
narrate, narrō (1)
nation, gēns, gentis, f.
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
neglect, neglectō, -ere, -glēxī, -glēctum
neighbor, vicīna, -ae, f.; vicīnus, -ī, m.
neither ... nor, neque ... neque
never, nunquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, f.
nine, novem
no, nēnīs, -a, -um
nobody, no one, nēmō, m./f.; for decl. see Lat.-Eng. Vocab.
not, nōn; nē with jussive, jussive noun, and purpur-clauses; ut with fear clauses
nothing, nihil (indecl.), n.
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, m.

O
obey, pāreō, -ēre, -ū + dat.
offer, offerō, -erēre, obtulī, oblātum
office, officium, -ī, n.
often, saēpe
old, antīquus, -a, -um; senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, m.
on (= place), in + abl.; (= time), simple abl.
on account of, propter + acc.
one, unus, -a, -um
only (adv.), tantum; (adj.), sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.; (in one’s) opinion, use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., mihi, tibi)
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, f.
or, aut
oration, orātiō, -ōnis, f.
orator, orātōr, -ōris, m.
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum; imperō (1) + dat.
(in) order to, ut (+ subj.); in order not to, nē (+ subj.)
other, another, alius, alia, aliud;
the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum;
(all) the other, cēteri, -ae, -a
ought, dēbō, -ēre, -ū, -itum; or: for passive, use passive periphrastic
our, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex + abl.
overcome, superō (1)
overpower, opprimō, -ēre, -pressī, -pressum
own, his own, suus, -a, -um; my own, meus, -a, -um

P
pain, dolor, -ōris, m.
part, pars, partis, f.
passage, locus, -ī, m.
passion, cupiditās, -tātis, f.
patience, patientia, -ae, f.
pay. See penalty.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.; pay the penalty, poenās dare
people, populus, -ī, m.
perceive, sentiō, -ēre, sēnsī, sēnsum
perhaps, fortasse
period (of time), aetas, -tātis, f.
perish, pereō, -ēre, -ū, -itum
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum;
it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit (imper.)
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um
persuade, persuādeo, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum + dat.
philosopher, sapiens, -entis, m.; philosopha, -ae, f.; philosophus, -ī, m.
philosophy, philosophia, -ae, f.
place, locus, -ī, m.; pl., loca, -orum, n.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um
please, placēō, -ēre, -ū, -itum + dat.; with a request, amābō tē
plesure, voluptās, -tātis, f.
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, f.
plot, insidiae, -arum, f. pl.
poem, carmen, -inis, n.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
(as ... as) possible (or greatest possible, brightest possible, etc.), quam + superl. of adj. or adv.
power (command), imperium, -ī, n.
powerful, potēns, gen. potentis
praise (vb.), laudō (1); (noun), laus, laudis, f.
preface, laudō (1)
preface, laudō (1)
priest, sacerdōs, -dōtis, m.
priest, sacerdōs, -dōtis, m.
prohibit, prohibō, -ēre, -ū, -itum
promise, prōmītto, -ēre, mītis, -missum
provided that, dummodo + subj.
pupil, discipula, -ae, f.; discipulus, -ī, m.
pursuit, studium, -ī, n.
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum

Q
queen, regina, -ae, f.
quick, celer, -eris, -ere
quickly, celeriter, cito
R
raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum
rather: express this with comp. degree of adj. or adv.
read, legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctum
real, vērus, -a, -um
reason, ratio, -onis, I
receive, accipio, -ere, -cepium
recognize, recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
refuse, recūsō (1)
region, loca, -arum, I
remain, remaneo, -ere, -mansū, -mansum
report, nuntiō (l)
republic, res publica, reI publicae, f
reputation, ratio, -onis, I
rescue, eripio, -cre, -tuT, -reptum
rest, the rest, ceterī, -ae, -a
restrain, teneo, -ere, -uI, -tentum
return (go back), redeō, -ire, -ītum
return (in return for), prō + abl.
riches, dīvitiae, -arum, I
right (noun), iūs, iūrius, n.; (adj.), dexter, -tra, -trum
road, via, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
rose, rosa, -ae, m.
rumor, rūmor, -mōris, m.
rum, currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum
S
sad, tristis, -e
safe, salvus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -lūtis, f.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake (for the sake of), gen. + causā
salt, sāl, salis, m.
same, idem, eadem, idem
satisfy, satiō (1)
save, servō (1); cōservō (1)
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
school, lūdus, -ī, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
second, secundus, -a, -um; alter, -era, -erum
see, videō, -ère, vīdī, vīsum
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum
seem, videor, -crī, visus sum
seize, rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
send, mittō, -ere, mīstit, missum
serious, gravis, -e
serve, serviō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum + dat.
service, officium, -ī, n.
seven, septem
she, ea; often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -e
show, ostendō, -ere, -i, -tentum
shun, vīto (1); fugio, -ere, fūgi, fugītūrum
sign, signum, -ī, n.
similar, similīs, -e
since, quoniam + indic.; cum + subj.; abl. abs.
sister, soror, -rōris, f.
six, sex
skill, ars, artis, f.
slave, servus, -ī, m.; slavegirl, serva, -ae, f.
slavery, servitus, -tiHs, I
sleep (vb.), dormiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum; (noun), somnus, -ī, m.
slender, graciīs, -e
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, ita, sīc (usually with vbs.), tam (usually with
adjs. and advs.); so great, tantus, -a, -um
soldier, mīles, -litis, I
some, a certain one (indef.), quīdam, quaedam,
quiddam; (more emphatic pron.), aliquis, aliquid
some ... others, aliI ... am
son, fīlius, -ī, m.
ssoon, mox
sort, genus, -neris, n.
soul, animus, -ī, m.
sound, sānus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsīrum + dat.
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, locutus
sum
spirit, spīritus, -ūs, m.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum
start, proficīscor, -i, -fectus sum
state, civitās, -tātis, f.; res pública, reI públicae, f.
story, fābula, -ae, f.
street, via, -ae, f.
strength, viRēs, -iur, f. pl.
strong, fortis, -e; be strong, valeō, -ère, -uī, -itūrum
student, discipula, -ae, f.; discipulus, -ī, m.
study (noun), studium, -ī, n.; (vb.), studēō, -ercr, -uī + dat.
suddenly, subitō
summer, aestās, -tātis, f.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
support, aldō, -ere, -uī, altum
suppose, opinōr, -ārī, -ātus sum; putō (1)
suppress, oprinō, -primēre, -pressī, -pressum
supreme power, imperium, -iī, n.
sure, certus, -a, -um
surrender, tradō, -ere, -ddītum
sweet, dulcis, -e
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
sword, ferrum, -1, n.; gladius, -iī, 117.
Syracuse, Syracusae, -ārum, f. pl.

T
talk, loquor, -i, -cūtus sum
teach, doccō, -ere, -uī, doctum
teacher, magister, -trī, m.; magistra, -ae, f.
tear, laerima, -ae, f.
tell, dicō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
ten, decem
terrify, terreō, -ere, -uī, -itum
territory, finēs, -ium, m. pl.
than, quam; or simple abl.
thank, gratiās agō, -ere, ēgī, ēctum + dat.
that (demonstrative), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id;
that (of yours), iste, ista, istud
that (subord. conj.), not expressed in ind. state.; ut (purp. and result); nē (fear)
that . . . not, nē (purp.), ut . . . nōn (result); ut (fear)
that (rel. pron.), quī, quae, quod
their, suus, -a, -um (reflexive); eōrum, cārum (not reflexive)
them. See he, she, it.
then, tum, deinde
there, ibi
therefore, igitur (postpositive)
these. See this, demonstrative.
they. See he, she, it; often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.
thing, rēs, rē, f.; often merely the neut. of an adj.
think, putō (1); arbitrōr, -ārī, -ātus sum
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
those. See that, demonstrative.
thousand, mīlia (indecl. adj. sg.), mīlia, -īūm, n.
(noun in pl.)

three, trēs, tria
through, per + acc.
throughout, per + acc.
throw, iactōr, -ere, iēcī, iactum
thus, sic
time, tempus, -poris, n.; (period of) time, aetās, -tātis, f.
to (place to which), ad + acc.; (ind. obj.), dat.;
(purp.), ut + subj., ad + gerund or gerundive
today, hodie
tolerate, tolerō (1)
tomorrow, crās
too, nimis, nimium; or use comp. degree of adj. or adv.
touch, tangō, -ere, tegī, tāctum
travel (abroad), peregrīnōr, -ārī, -ātus sum
trivial, levis, -e
troops, copia, -ārum, m. pl.
Troy, Trōia, -ae, f.
true, vērus, -a, -um
truly, vērē
trust, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -dittum + dat.
truth, veritās, -tātis, f.
try, experīor, -īrī, expertum sum
turn, vertō, -ere, -ī, versum
twenty, vigintī
two, duo, duae, duo
type, genus, -neris, n.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, m.

U
unable (be) non possum
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um
under, sub + abl. (= place where), + acc. (= place to which)
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum;
comprehendo, -ere, -ī, -hēsum
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum
unless, nisi
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōltū
urban, urbane, urbānus, -a, -um
urge, hortōr, -ārī, -ātus sum
use, uōr, -ī, usus sum + abl.

V
verse, versus, -ūs, m.
very, express this by the superl. degree of adj. or adv.
vice, vīlium, -ii, n.
Virgil, Vergilius, -i, m.

virtue, virtūs, -tūtīs, f.

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
walls, moenia, -iūm, n. pl.
want, volō, velle, volui
war, bellum, -ī, n.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uiī, -ītum
water, aqua, -ae, f.

we. See I; often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.

wealth, divitiae, -ārum, f. pl.
weapons, arma, -ōrum, n. pl.
well, bene
what (pron.), quid; (adj.), quī, quae, quod
whatever, quisquis, quidquid
when, participial phrase; abl. abs.; cum + subj.; (interrogative), quandō; (rel.), ubi
whence, unde, adv.
where, ubi
wherefore, quærē
which (rel. pron. and interrogative adj.), quī, quae, quod
while, dum
who (rel.), quī, quae, quod; (interrogative), quis, quid
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, uxōris, f.

willing (be), volō, velle, volui
window, fenestra, -ae, f.
wine, vīnum, -ī, n.

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, sapientis, gen. sapientis
wisely, sapienter
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, volui
with, cum + abl.; abl. of means (no prep.)
without, sine + abl.

woman, fēmina, -ae, f.; often expressed by fem. of an adj.

word, verbum, -ī, n.

work, labor, -ōris, m.; opus, operis, n.
world, mundus, -ī, m.

worse, peior, -ius
worst, pessimus, -a, -um
write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum
writer, scripctor, -tōris, m.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.
yesterday, herī
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum
you, tū, tuī; often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.
young man, adulēscēns, -centis, m.
your (sg.), tuus, -a, -um; (pl.), vester, -tra, -trum
yourself (reflexive), tuī, tibi, etc.; (intensive), ipse, ipsa

youth, iuvenis, -is, m.
Latin-English Vocabulary

An Arabic numeral after a vocabulary entry indicates the chapter in which the word is first introduced as an item of required vocabulary. Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in -āre, -āvi, -ātum. For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix.

A

ā or ab, prep. + abl., from, away from; by (agent). 14
abeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, go away, depart, leave. 37
absconditus, -a, -um, hidden, secret
absens, gen. -sentis, adj., absent, away. 37
absūm, -esse, āflūt, āflūtūrum, be away, be absent
abundantia, -ae, f., abundance
ac. See atque.
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, come near, approach. 36
accipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -cēptum, take, receive, accept. 24
accommodō (1), adjust, adapt
adēcūsātor, -tōris, m., accuser
accūsō (1), accuse
ācer, ācrīs, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, severe, fierce. 16
acerbītās, -tātis, f., harshness
acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter, grievous. 12
Achillēs, -is, m., Achilles, Greek hero, chief character in the Iliād
aciēs, -ēī, f., sharp edge, keenness, line of battle
acquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, acquire, gain
ācritēr, adv., keenly, fiercely. 32
ad, prep. + acc., to, up to, near to. 8
addiscō, -ere, -didici, learn in addition
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, induce
adeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, go to, approach. 37
adferō, -ferre, attuli, allātum, bring to. 31
adīcīō, -ere, -ēcī, -ectum, affect, afflict, weaken
adīcō, -ere, -ēcī, -ectum, add
adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4
admīrō, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire
admittō, -ere, -miśī, -missum, admit, receive, let in. 17
admoneō = moneō
adnuō, -ere, -nuī, nod assent
adoptō (1), wish for oneself, select, adopt
adsum, -esse, -suī, -sūtūrum, be near, be present, assist
adūlātiō, -ōnis, f., fawning, flattery
aduīliēsēns, -sentis, m. and f., young man or woman. 12
aduīliēsentia, -ae, f., youth, young manhood; youthfulness. 5
adultus, -a, -um, grown up, mature, adult
adúrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, set fire to, burn, singe
adveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come (to), arrive
adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, adverse. 34
adversus, prep. + acc., toward, facing; against
advesperāscit, advesperāscere, advesperāvit,
  *imper.* evening is coming on, it is growing dark
aedificium, -ii, n., building, structure. 39
aegrē, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely
aequitas, aequīs, n., justice, fairness, equity
aes, aeris, n., bronze. 40
aestas, -tātis, l., summer. 35
aestus, -īs, m., heat, tide
aeternus, -a, -um, eternal
aetas, -tātis, l., period of life, life, age, an age, time. 16
aeternus, -a, -um, eternal
Agamemnon, -onīs, m., Agamemnon,
  commander-in-chief of the Greek forces at Troy
ager, agrī, m., field, farm. 3
agō, -ere, ēgī, ēctum, drive, lead, do, act; of time or life; pass, spend;
grātīs agere + dat., thank. 8
agricola, -ae, m., farmer. 3
agricultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
āit, āiunt, he says, they say, assert. 25
Alexander, -dri, m., Alexander the Great,
  renowned Macedonian general and king,
  4th cen., B.C.
aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another (cp. alius),
  foreign, strange, alien
aliōquī, adv., otherwise
aliqūi, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pronominal adj.,
  some
aliquis, aliiquid (gen. alicuius; dat. alicui), indef.
  pron., someone, somebody, something. 23
alter, adv., otherwise
alīus, alīa, alīud, other, another;
alīi . . . alīi, some . . . others. 9
alō, -ere, alū, altum, nourish, support, sustain,
  increase; cherish. 13
alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second. 9
altus, -a, -um, high, deep
ambītīō, -ōnis, f., a canvassing for votes; ambition;
  flattery
ambulō (1), walk. 39
āmēn, adv. from Hebrew, truly, verily, so be it
amīca, -ae, f., (female) friend. 3
amīcitia, -ae, f., friendship. 10
amiculum, -i, n., cloak
amicus, -a, -um, friendly. 11
amicus, -ī, m., (male) friend. 3
āmīttō, -ere, -miśī, -miśum, lose, let go. 12
amō (1), love, like; amābō tē, please. 1
amor, amōris, m., love. 7
āmovēō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove
an, adv. and conj. introducing the second part of a
double question (see utrum), or; used alone, or,
can it be that
ancilla, -ae, f., maidservant
angēlus, -i, m., angel
angulus, -i, m., corner
augustus, -a, -um, narrow, limited
animā, -ae, f., soul, spirit. 34
animal, -mālis, n., a living creature, animal. 14
aninus, -i, m., soul, spirit, mind; animī, -ōrum,
  high spirits, pride, courage. 5
annus, -i, m., year. 12
ante, prep. + acc., before (in place or time), in
  front of; adv., before, previously. 13
anteā, adv., before, formerly
antēpōnō, -ere, -possī, -positum, put before, prefer
  + dat. 35
anticūs, -a, -um, ancient, old-time. 2
Apollo, -linis, m., Phoebus Apollo, god of sun,
  prophecy, poetry, etc.
aparātus, -īs, m., equipment, splendor
appellō (1), speak to, address (as), call, name. 14
approbō (1), approve
approvinquō (1) + dat., approach, draw near to
aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable
apud, prep. + acc., among, in the presence of, at
  the house of. 31
aqua, -ae, f., water. 14
ārā, -ae, f., altar
arānea, -ae, f., spider’s web
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think. 34
arbōr, -boris, f., tree. 38
arcus, -īs, m., bow
argentum, -i, n., silver, money
argūmentum, -i, n., proof, evidence, argument. 19
arma, -ōrum, n., arms, weapons. 28
arō (1), plow
ars, artis, f., art, skill. 14
arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold. 23
as, assis, m., an as (a small copper coin roughly
equivalent to a cent). 31
Asia, -ae, f., Asia, commonly the Roman province
  in Asia Minor. 12
asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh. 21
aspicio, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at, behold
assentātor, -tōris, m., yes-man, flatterer
astrum, -i, n., star, constellation
at, conj., but; but, mind you; but, you say; a more emotional adversative than sed. 19
āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy
 Athenaē, -ārum, pl., Athens. 37
Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; Athēniēnsēs, -ium, the Athenians
atque or ac, conj., and, and also, and even. 21
atqui, conj., and yet, still
auctor, -tōris, m., increaser; a lītor, originator. 19
auctoritas, -tatis, f., authority
audacia, -ae, l., daring, boldness, audacity
audax, -ae, audacis, daring, bold
audeo, -ere, ausus sum, dare. 7
audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, hear, listen to.
auditor, -tōris, 111., hearer, listener, member of an audience. 16
auferō, -ferrc, abstuli, abliitum, bear away, carry off
Augustus, -i, m., Augustus, the first Roman emperor
aureus, -a, -um, golden
auris, -is, f., ear. 14
aurum, -i, 11., gold
aut, conj., or; aut ... aut, either ... or. 17
autem, postpositive conj., however; moreover. 11
auxilium, -ii, 11., aid, help. 31
avērītia, -ac, f., greed, avarice
avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious. 3
āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry away
āverītō, -ere, -vertī, -vertum, turn away, avert. 23
āvocō (1), call away, divert

B
balbus, -a, -um, stammering, stuttering
barba, -ae, f., beard
bāsium, -ii, n., kiss. 4
beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed. 10
bēlicus, -a, -um, relating to war; military
bellum, -i, n., war. 4
bellus, -a, -um, pretty, handsome, charming. 4
bene, adv. of bonus, well, satisfactorily, quite. 11
(comp. melius; superl. optime. 32)
beneficium, -ii, n., benefit, kindness, favor. 19
benevolentia, -ae, f., good will, kindness
bēstia, -ae, f., animal, beast
bibō, -ere, bibi, drink. 30
bis, adv. twice

B
bonus, -a, -um, good, kind. 4 (comp. melior; superl. optimus. 27)
būs, bovis, m.f., bull, ox, cow
brevis, -e, short, small, brief. 16
brevitās, -tātis, f., shortness, brevity
breviter, adv., briefly
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain
Brundusium, -ii, n., important seaport in S. Italy
Brutus, -i, m., famous Roman name: L. Junius Brutus, who helped establish the Roman republic; M. Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Julius Caesar

C
C., abbreviation for the common name Gāius
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrum, fall. 12
caecus, -a, -um, blind. 17
cælestis, -e, heavenly, celestial
cælum, -i, n., sky, heaven. 5
Caesar, -saris, m., Caesar, especially Gaius Julius Caesar. 12
calamitās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster
calculos, -i, m., pebble
campana, -ae, f., bell (late Lat.)
candidus, -a, -um, shining, bright, white; beautiful.

33
canis, -is (gen. pl. canum), m.f., dog
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, to sing about
cantō (1), sing
capillus, -i, m., hair (of head or beard)
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture, seize, get. 10
captō (1), grab, seek to get, hunt for (legacies, etc.)
caput, -pitis, n., head; leader; beginning; life; heading, chapter. 11
carbō, -bōnis, m., coal, charcoal
carēcō, -ēre, -ūi, -āturum + abl. of separation, be without, be deprived of, want, lack, be free from. 20
cāritās, -tātis, f., dearness, affection
carmen, -minis, n., song, poem. 7
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carpatum, harvest, pluck; seize. 36
Carthago, -gēs, f., Carthage (city in N. Africa). 24
cārus, -a, -um, dear. 11
casa, -ae, f., house, cottage, hut. 21
cāsus, -iis, m., accident, chance
Latin-English Vocabulary

**Latin**
catëna, -(ae), -f., chain
Catilïna, -(ae), m., L. Sergius Catiline, leader of the conspiracy against the Roman state in 63 B.C.
Catullus, -(ae), -m., Gaius Valerius Catullus, 1st cen. B.C.
Lyric poet
cattus, -(ae), -m., cat
causa, -(ae), -f., cause, reason, case, situation; causa with a preceding gen., for the sake of, on account of.
caveo, -(f.), beware, avoid
causa, -(ae), -f., cause, reason; case, situation;
causa with a preceding gen., for the sake of, on account of.
caveo, -(f.), beware, avoid
cavus, -(ae), -m., hole
cedo, -(ere), cedi, ceditum, go, withdraw; yield to, submit, grant.
celer, -(eris), -ere, celer, quick, rapid.
celeritas, -(ae), -tatis, -f., speed, swiftness
celeriter, -f., quickly
cena, -(ae), -f., dinner.
ceno -(f.), dine.
centum, -(ae), -n., a hundred.
cerno, -(ere), crevi, crevitum, distinguish, discern, perceive.
cert, -(ae), -n., certain
certus, -(ae), -n., definite, sure, certain, reliable.
cenus, -(ae), -n., stag, deer
cetcri, -(ae), -a, -n., the remaining, the rest, the other.
Cicero, -(ae), -n., Marcus Tullius Cicero.
cicéta, -(ae), -f., hemlock (poison)
cinis, -(ae), -n., ashes
circenses, -(ae), -m., pl. (sc. ludi), games in the Circus
cito, -(ae), -n., quickly.
civilis, -(ae), -n., civil, civic
civis, -(ae), -n., m./f., citizen.
civitas, -(ae), -tatis, -f., state, citizenship.
clarus, -(ae), -n., clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious.
clauso, -(ae), -n., shut, close
clementia, -(ae), -n., mildness, gentleness, mercy.
coepi, -(ae), -n., begin, commence, commence
coercio, -(ae), -n., curb, check, repress
cogito, -(ae), -n., think, ponder, consider, plan.
cognoscio, -(ae), -n., become acquainted with, learn, recognize; in perf. tenses, know.
cogito, -(ae), -n., think, ponder.
colligo, -(ae), -n., gather together, collect
collecream, -(ae), -n., place, put, arrange
collum, -(ae), -n., neck
coló, -(ae), -n., cultivate; cherish
color, -(ae), -n., color
comemoró, -(ae), -n., remind, relate, mention
commiscio, -(ae), -n., intermingle, join
committó, -(ae), -n., entrust, commit.
commnus, -(ae), -n., common, general, of/for the community.
compare, -(ae), -n., compare
compónó, -(ae), -n., put together, compose
comprehendo, -(ae), -n., grasp, seize; comprehend, understand.
concédó, -(ae), -n., yield, grant, concede
concilium, -(ae), -n., council
condó, -(ae), -n., store; build, found, establish.
cónfero, -(ae), -n., bring together, compare; se cónfere, betake oneself.
cónfido, -(ae), -n., have confidence in, believe confidently, be confident
confocto, -(ae), -n., confess
congrego, -(ae), -n., gather together, assemble
conicio, -(ae), -n., throw, hurl, put with force; put together, conjecture
coniuratió, -(ae), -n., conspiracy
coniurati, -(ae), -n., conspirators.
conor, -(ae), -n., try, attempt.
conscientia, -(ae), -n., consciousness, knowledge; conscience
conscius, -(ae), -n., conscious, aware of
conservó, -(ae), -n., preserve, conserve, maintain.
consilium, -(ae), -n., counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom.
consistó, -(ae), -n., depend on
consó, -(ae), -n., ex, consist of
consuécso, -(ae), -n., become accustomed
consul, -(ae), -n., consul.
consulón, -(ae), -n., look out for; have regard for
consul tum, -(ae), -n., decree
consúmó, -(ae), -n., use up, consume.
contennó, -(ae), -n., despise, scorn.
contendó, -(ae), -n., strive, struggle.
contineo, -(ae), -n., enclose, restrain.

collum, -(ae), -n., neck
coló, -(ae), -n., cultivate; cherish
color, -(ae), -n., color
comemoró, -(ae), -n., remind, relate, mention
commiscio, -(ae), -n., intermingle, join
committó, -(ae), -n., entrust, commit.
commnus, -(ae), -n., common, general, of/for the community.
compare, -(ae), -n., compare
compónó, -(ae), -n., put together, compose
comprehendo, -(ae), -n., grasp, seize; comprehend, understand.
concédó, -(ae), -n., yield, grant, concede
concilium, -(ae), -n., council
condó, -(ae), -n., store; build, found, establish.
cónfero, -(ae), -n., bring together, compare; se cónfere, betake oneself.
cónfido, -(ae), -n., have confidence in, believe confidently, be confident
confocto, -(ae), -n., confess
congrego, -(ae), -n., gather together, assemble
conicio, -(ae), -n., throw, hurl, put with force; put together, conjecture
coniuratió, -(ae), -n., conspiracy
coniurati, -(ae), -n., conspirators.
conor, -(ae), -n., try, attempt.
conscientia, -(ae), -n., consciousness, knowledge; conscience
conscius, -(ae), -n., conscious, aware of
conservó, -(ae), -n., preserve, conserve, maintain.
consilium, -(ae), -n., counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom.
consistó, -(ae), -n., depend on
consó, -(ae), -n., ex, consist of
consuécso, -(ae), -n., become accustomed
consul, -(ae), -n., consul.
consulón, -(ae), -n., look out for; have regard for
consul tum, -(ae), -n., decree
consúmó, -(ae), -n., use up, consume.
contennó, -(ae), -n., despise, scorn.
contendó, -(ae), -n., strive, struggle.
contineo, -(ae), -n., enclose, restrain.
contingō, -ere, -tiō, -tac tum, touch closely, befall, fall to one's lot
corr, prep. + acc., against. 19
contundō, -undere, -undī, -tūsum, beat, crush, bruise, destroy. 36
conturbō (1), throw into confusion
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn around, cause to turn
convocō (1), call together, convene
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply; cōpiae, -ārum, supplies, troops, forces. 8
cōpiōsē, adv., fully, at length, copiously
Corinthian, -i, /., Corinth
corner, -us, n., horn. 20
corona, -ae, /, crown
corpus, -poris, m., body. 7
corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectum, make right, correct
corroboro (1), strengthen
corrumpō, -ere, -rubī, -ruptum, ruin, corrupt
cotidiē, adv., daily, every day. 36
eras, adj.'., tomorrow. 5
creator, -toris, m., creator
crēbrus, -brā, -brum, thick, frequent, numerous
credo, -ere, credidi, creditum, believe, trust. 25;
dat. 35
erēo (1), create, 12
cresco, -ere, crevi, cretum, increase. 34
cruelis, -e, cruel
crustacūn, -I, n., pastry, cookie
cubiculm, -I, n., bedroom, room
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame. 5
culpō (1), blame, censure. 5
cultūra, -ae, f., cultivation
cum, conj. with subj., when, since, although;
with ind., when. 31
cum, prep. + abl., with. 10
cūntātiō, -onis, f., delay
cūntātor, -tōris, m., delayer
cūntor (1), delay
cupiditās, -tātis, f., desire, longing, passion;
cupidity, avarice. 10
credō, -ere, crēdīvī, crēditum, believe, trust. 25; +
dat. 35
crēdō (1), create. 12
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase. 34
cruelēs, -e, cruel
crūstulm, -I, n., pastry, cookie
cubiculm, -I, n., bedroom, room
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame. 5
culpō (1), blame, censure. 5
cultūra, -ae, f., cultivation
cum, conj. with subj., when, since, although;
with ind., when. 31
cum, prep. + abl., with. 10
cūntātiō, -onis, f., delay
cūntātor, -tōris, m., delayer
cūntor (1), delay
cupiditās, -tātis, f., desire, longing, passion;
cupidity, avarice. 10
credō, -ere, crēdīvī, crēditum, believe, trust. 25; +
gens, desirous of, eager for. 39
cupō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, desire, wish, long for. 17
cūr, adv., why. 18
cūra, -ae, f., care, attention, caution, anxiety. 4
cūrō (1), care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care. 36
cūrō, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run, rush, move quickly. 14
cursus, -ūs, m., running, race; course. 28
curvo, -a, -um, curved, crooked, wrong
custōdia, -ae, f., protection, custody; pl., guards. 32
custōs, -tōdis, m., guardian, guard
D
damnō (1), condemn
Dāmocles, -is, m., Damocles, an attendant of Dionysius
dē, prep. + abl., down from, from; concerning, about. 3
dea, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. deābus), goddess. 6
dēbeō, -ere, -ūf, -itum, owe, ought, must. 1
dēbitūs (1), weaken
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, settle, decree. 36
decertō (1), fight it out, fight to the finish, contend
decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 15
dēcipō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, deceive
decor, -cōris, m., beauty, grace
dēcretum, -I, n., decree
dēdicō (1), dedicate. 28
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, ward off, defend, protect. 20
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail
dēgustō (1), taste
dēhinc, adv., then, next. 25
dēinde, adv., thereupon, next, then. 18
dēlectātiō, -onis, f., delight, pleasure, enjoyment. 27
dēlectō (1), delight, charm, please. 19
dēleō, -ere, dēlevī, dēlētum, destroy, wipe out, erase. 17
dēlibēro (1), consider, deliberate
dēmēns, gen. -mentis, adj., out of one's mind, insane, foolish
dēmītō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let down, lower
dēmonstrō (1), point out, show, demonstrate. 8
Dēmosthenēs, -is, m., Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, 4th cen. B.C.
dēnique, adv., at last, finally. 29
dēns, dentis, m., tooth
dēpōnō, -ere, -posūi, -positum, put down, lay aside
déportō (1), carry off
dēsidēro (1), desire, long for, miss. 17
dēsidēsus, -a, -um, lazy
dēsīnō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease, leave off. 34
dēspīō, -ere, act foolishly
dēstinātus, -a, -um, resolved, resolute, firm
dētrimentum, -i, n., loss, detriment
deus, -i, m. (voc. sg. deus, nom. pl. dei or diē, dat. and abl. pl. diēs), god. 6
dēvōcī (1), call down or away
dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand. 20
diabolus, -i, m., devil
dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say, tell, speak; call; name. 10
dictātum, -ōrum, n. pl., things dictated, lessons, precepts
dictātor, -tōris, m., dictator
dictītus, -ī, m., say repeatedly, dictate
diiēs, -ēs, m., day. 22
difficultis, -ē, hard, difficult, troublesome. 16
digitus, -i, m., finger, toe. 31
dignitās, -ätis, f., merit, prestige, dignity. 38
dignus, -a, -um, worthy, worthy of. 29
diligēns, -ī, adj., diligent, careful. 27

diligentia, -ae, f., diligence
diligens, -ī, adj., diligent, careful. 27
diligenter, adv., diligently
diligentia, -ae, f., diligence
dilīgō, -ere, dilēxi, dictum, esteem, love. 13
dimidium, -īi, adj., half
dimmittō, -ere, misset, -missum, send away, dismiss
Dionysius, -ii, m., Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse
discedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, depart. 20
discipula, -ae, f., and discipulus, -i, m., learner, pupil, disciple. 6
discō, -ere, didicē, learn. 8
disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion

disputō (1), discuss
dissimilis, -ē, unlike, different. 27
dissimulō (1), conceal
distinguo, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, distinguish
dū, adv., long, for a long time. 12
dives, gen. divitis or dītis, adj., rich. 32
divīnus, -a, -um, divine, sacred
divitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches, wealth. 13
dō, dare, dedi, datum, give, offer. 1
doceō, -ere, -ducī, -ductum, teach. 8
doctrīna, -ae, f., teaching, instruction, learning
doctus, -a, -um, taught, learned, skilled. 13
dolcō, -ere, -uī, -ifūrum, grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain. 31
dolor, -ōris, m., pain, grief. 38
domesticus, -a, -um, domestic; civil
domīna, -ae, f., mistress, lady. 40
dominātus, -īōs, -ī, m., rule, mastery, tyranny
dominicus, -a, -um, belonging to a master; the Lord's

dominus, -i, m., master, lord. 40
domus, -ūs (-ī), f., house, home; domī, at home;
domum, (to) home; domō, from home. 37
dōnum, -ī, n., gift, present. 4
dormīō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, sleep. 31
dubitō (1), doubt, hesitate. 30
dubium, -īi, n., doubt
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, lead; consider, regard;
prolong. 8
dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable. 16
dum, conj., while, as long as; at the same time that; until. 8
dummodo, conj., with subj., provided that, so long as. 32
duo, duae, duo, two. 15
dūrō (1), harden, last, endure
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, tough, difficult. 29
dux, ducis, m., leader, guide, commander, general. 23

E

ē. See ex.
ecclesia, -ae, f., church (ecclesiastical Lat.)
educō (1), bring up, educate. 23
edūcō, -ere, dūxi, -ductum, lead out
effecerō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum, carry out; bury; lift up, exalt
efficiō, -ere, -ficī, -fectum, accomplish, perform, bring about, cause
effugēō, -ere, -fugī, -fugitūrum, flee from, flee away, escape
egeco, -ere, egui + abl. or gen., need, lack, want. 28
ego, mei, 1. 11
egregior, -i, -gressus sum, go out, depart. 34
ēcīō, -ere, -icī, -ictum, throw out, drive out. 15
elementum, -ī, n., element, first principle
elephantus, -i, m., elephant. 31
elōquēns, gen. -quentis, adj., eloquent
elōquentia, -ae, f., eloquence
ēmendō (1), correct, emend
emō, -ere, emptī, emptūm, buy
ēmoveō, -ere, -movī, -motum, move away, remove
ēnim, postpositive conj. for, in fact, truly. 9
Ennius, -ii, m., Quintus Ennius, early Roman writer
ēnumerō (1), count up, enumerate
eō, ēre, ērī (or ērī), itum, go. 37
epigramma, -matis, n., inscription, epigram
epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle
eques, equitīs, m., horseman
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flūctus, -ūs, m.,</td>
<td>billow, wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen, -mūnis, n.,</td>
<td>river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum,</td>
<td>flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for, fārī, fātus sum,</td>
<td>speak (prophetically), talk, foretell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forūs, adv.,</td>
<td>out of doors, outside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrma, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>form, shape, beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrmā (1),</td>
<td>form, shape, fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrūs, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>fortune, luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrūs, adv.,</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortasse, adv.,</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>strong, brave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter, adv.,</td>
<td>bravely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortūna, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>fortune, luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortūnātus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>lucky, fortunate, happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forum, -i, n.,</td>
<td>market place, forum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frater, -tris, m.,</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frons, frontis, f.,</td>
<td>forehead, brow, front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūctus, -īs, m.,</td>
<td>fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frugalitas, -tātis, f.,</td>
<td>frugality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugia, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugio, -cre, fugī, fugītīrūm,</td>
<td>flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulgeo, -ere, fūsī, flash, shine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulgeō, -ere, fulsī,</td>
<td>flash, shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furo, -rōris, m.,</td>
<td>rage, frenzy, madness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furtificus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>thievish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūrtim, adverb,</td>
<td>stealthily, secretly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gāius, -ī, m.,</td>
<td>Gaius, a common praenomen (first name); usually abbreviated to C. in writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallus, -ī, m.,</td>
<td>a Gaul. The Gauls were a Celtic people who inhabited the district which we know as France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum,</td>
<td>be glad, rejoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaudium, -ī, n.,</td>
<td>joy, delight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēnum, genus, -ae, -i,</td>
<td>origin; kind, type, sort, class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genu, genūs, n.,</td>
<td>knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genus, generis, n.,</td>
<td>origin; kind, type, sort, class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum,</td>
<td>carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gladius, -ī, m.,</td>
<td>sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glōria, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>glory, fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender, thin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graecia, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graecus, -i, m.,</td>
<td>a Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātia, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>gratitude, favor; grātīās agere + dat., to thank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>pleasing, agreeable; grateful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravis, -e,</td>
<td>heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravitas, -tātis, f.,</td>
<td>weight, seriousness, importance, dignity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graviter, adverb,</td>
<td>heavily, seriously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gustō (1),</td>
<td>taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeō, -ēre, -ūn, -itum,</td>
<td>have, hold, possess; consider, regard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hāmus, -ī, m.,</td>
<td>hook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannibal, -balis, m.,</td>
<td>Hannibal, celebrated Carthaginian general in the 2nd Punic War, 218–201 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasta, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>spear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haud, adv.,</td>
<td>not, not at all (strong negative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herē, adverb,</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heu, interjection, ah!, alas! (a sound of grief or pain)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hic, hinc, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron.,</td>
<td>this, the latter; at times weakened to he, she, it, they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hie, adverb,</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hine, from this place, hence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hodī, adverb,</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homērōs, -i, m.,</td>
<td>Homer, the Greek epic poet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homō, hominis, m.,</td>
<td>human being, man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honor, -nōris, m.,</td>
<td>honor, esteem; public office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōra, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>hour, time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horrendus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>horrible, dreadful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortor, -āri, -ātus sum,</td>
<td>urge, encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortus, -ī, m.,</td>
<td>garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hospes, -pitis, m.,</td>
<td>stranger, guest; host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostis, -is, m.,</td>
<td>an enemy (of the state); hostes, -īnum, the enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hui, interjection, sound of surprise or approbation not unlike our “whee”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hūmānitas, -tātis, f.,</td>
<td>kindness, refinement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hūmānus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>pertaining to man, human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e,</td>
<td>lowly, humble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hūmus, -ī, f.,</td>
<td>ground, earth; soil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypocrita, -ae, m.,</td>
<td>hypocrite (ecclesiastical Lat.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
idem, eadem, idem, the same. 11

in, 
impiinitus, -a, -urn, unpunished, unrestrained,
imllendeo,
imlll'imis,
imlll'imis,
imperioslls,
imperator, -toris,
imlello,
imllediO,
impedimentum,
immortalis,
imago,
imlacrimo (l)
ignosco,
igitur,
ibi,
ianua, -ae, /,
iaculum,
iaciO,
iaceo,
478 Wheelock's Latin

imlmdens,
improvidlls, -a, -um, improvident 

ilIe, ilia, ilIud,
imllerium, -ii,
imitor,

inmUs, -a,
excessive

immius, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37

ignarus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant

ilIe, ilia, ilIud,
imllerium, -ii,
imitor,
inunineo,

iam,
idoneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37

ignarus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant

hnmMus, -a,

immius, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37

ignarus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant

he, she, it, they. 9

idoneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37

ignarus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant

immortalis,
imago,
imlacrimo (l)
ignosco,
igitur,
ibi,
ianua, -ae, /,
iaculum,
iaciO,
iaceo,

478 Wheelock's Latin
iratus, il'ascor, ira, invado, ifil'o
iungo, -ere, ifidico (I), iudex, -dids, iiicundus, -a, -um, agreeable, pleasant, iiicunditas, -tatis, iubeo, iterum, itero
iter, itaque, itaque, irrito (l), excite, exasperate, irritate
invenio, -ire, Iuppitel', lovis, 171., Jupiter, Jove
invidia, invideo, inventor,
intcl'cipiO, interl'Ogatio, iocus, invict'Us, -a, -um, unconquered; unconquerable
iUdicium, ita, iste, ista, istud, ipsa, ipsum,
ipse, invitus, invisus, -a, invictus, invisus, -a,
invcstigo, intus, introdiico, intro
interficiO, interficiO, interdum,
is, ea, id, Halia,
is, ea, id, Italy. 15
is, ea, l, Ireland. 15
is, ea, l, Italy. 15
itineris,
ita, adv. used with adj., vbs., and advs., so, thus. 29
Italia, -ae, f., Italy. 15
itaque, adv., and so, therefore. 15
iter, itineris, n., journey; route, road. 37
itero (1), repeat
iterum, adv., again, a second time. 21
iubeō, -ere, iussi, iussum, bid, order, command. 21
iúcunditās, -tatis, f., pleasure, charm
iúcundus, -a, -um, agreeable, pleasant, gratifying. 16
iūdex, -dicis, m., judge, juror. 19
iūdicium, -ī, n., judgment, decision, opinion; trial. 19
iūdicō (1), judge, consider
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnectum, join. 13
Iuppiter, lovis, m., Jupiter, Jove
iūrō (1), swear
iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law. 14; iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, n., oath
iussū, defective noun, abl. sg. only, m., at the command of
iūstus, -a, -um, just, right. 40
iuvenis, -is (gen. pl. iuvenum), m., a youth, young person
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4
L
lābor, -ī, lápus sum, slip, glide
labor, -bōris, m., labor, work, toil. 7
labōrō (1), labor; be in distress. 21
labrum, -ī, n., lip
laccessō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 40
lacūnār, -nāris, n., paneled ceiling
laetūs, gen. -tantis, adj., rejoicing
lactus, -a, -um, happy, joyful
Latinus, -a, -um, Latin. 22
laudātor, -tōris, m., praiser
laudō (1), praise. 1
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory, fame. 8
fector, -tōris, m., lēctix, -tricis, f., reader. 36
lectus, -a, m., bed
legātus, -ī, m., ambassador, deputy
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion
legō, -ere, légī, lēctum, pick out, choose; read. 18
fēnis, -e, smooth, gentle, kind
lentē, adv., slowly
Lentulus, -ī, m., P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura, chief conspirator under Catiline, left in charge of the conspiracy when Catiline was forced to flee from Rome
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, the name which Catullus gave to his sweetheart
levīs, -e, light; easy, slight, trivial. 17
lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute. 26
libellus, -ī, m., little book. 17
libenter, adv., with pleasure, gladly. 38
liber, -era, -erum, free. 5
liber, -brī, m., book. 6
liberalis, -e, of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal, generous. 39
liberāltās, -tāsis, f., generosity, liberality
liberator, -tōris, m., liberator
liberē, adv., freely. 32
libēri, -ōrum, m., (one's) children
liberō (1), free, liberate. 19
libertas, -tāsis, f., liberty, freedom. 8
libō (1), pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently. 39
licet, licēre, licēit, impers. + dat. and inf., it is permitted, one may. 37
ligō (1), bind, tie
linen, -mīnis, n., threshold. 26
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. 25
lintum, -i, n., linen, napkin
littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; litterae, -ārum, a letter (epistle); literature. 7
lūtus, -ōris, n., shore, coast. 23
locō (1), place, put
locuplētō (1), enrich
locus, -i, m., place; passage in literature; pl., loca, -ōrum, n., places, region; locī, -ōrum, m., passages in literature. 9
longē, adv. far. 32
longinquitās, -tātis, f., distance, remoteness
longus, -a, -um, long. 16
loquāx, adj., talkative, loquacious
loquor, -i, locitus sum, say, speak, tell, talk. 34
lucrum, -i, n., gain, profit
lūdō, -ere, lūstī, lūsum, play
lūdus, -i, m., game, sport; school. 18
lūna, -ae, f., moon. 28
lupus, -i, m., wolf
lūx, lūcis, f., light. 26
luxuria, -ae, f., luxury, extravagance

M

Maecēnās, -ātis, m., Maecenas, unofficial “prime minister” of Augustus, and patron and friend of Horace
magis, adv. more, rather
magister, -trī, m., master, schoolmaster; teacher. 4
magistra, -ae, f., mistress, schoolmistress. 4
magnanimus, -a, -um, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous. 23
magnopere, adv. greatly, exceedingly (comp. magis; superl. maximā). 32
magnus, -a, -um, great, large; important. 2 (comp. maior; superl. maximus. 27);
maiorēs, -um, m. pl., ancestors. 27
maiestās, -tātis, f., greatness, dignity, majesty
maior. See magnus.
maiorēs, -um, m. pl., ancestors. 27
malē, adv. badly, ill, wrongly (comp. peius; superl. pessimē). 32
mālō, mālle, māluī, to want (something) more, instead; prefer. 32
malum, -i, n., evil, misfortune, hurt, injury. 30
malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked, evil. 4 (comp. peior; superl. pessimus. 27)
mandātum, -i, n., order, command, instruction
manēō, -ère, mānūsī, mānūsum, remain, stay, abide, continue. 5
manus, -ās, f., hand; handwriting; band. 20
Marcellus, -i, m., Marcellus, Roman general who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.
Mārcus, -i, m., Marcus, a common Roman first name, usually abbreviated to M. in writing
mare, -is, n., sea. 14
marītus, -i, m., husband
māter, -tris, f., mother. 12
māteria, -ae, f., material, matter
mātrōnimium, -īnī, n., marriage
maximus. See magnus.
medicūs, -i, m., medica, -ae, f. doctor, physician. 12
medioeris, -e, ordinary, moderate, mediocre. 31
meditor, -āri, -ātus sum, reflect upon, practice
medius, -a, -um, middle; used partitively, the middle of. 22
mel, mellīs, n., honey
melior. See bonus.
meminī, meminissee, defective, remember
memor, gen. -moris, adj., mindful
memoria, -ae, f., memory, recollection. 15
mendōsus, -a, -um, full of faults, faulty
mēns, mentis, f., mind, thought, intention. 16
mēnsā, -ae, f., table; dining; dish, course; mēnsa secunda, dessert. 26
mēnōsis, -is, m., month
merces, -cēdis, f., pay, reward, recompense
meridiānus, -a, -um, of midday, noon; southern
merus, -a, -um, pure, undiluted. 33
mēta, -ae, f., turning point, goal, limit, boundary. 40
metō, -ere, metūī, fear, dread; be afraid for + dat. 38
metus, -īs, m., fear, dread, anxiety. 20
meus, -a, -um (m. voc. mī), my. 2
miles, militis, m., soldier. 23
militāris, -e, military
mille, indecl. adj. in sg., thousand;
milia, -um, n., pl. noun, thousands. 15
minimum. See parvus.
minor. See parvus.
minuō, -ere, minūī, minūtum, lessen, diminish. 30
mirabilis, -e, amazing, wondrous, remarkable. 38
miror, -ārī, -ātus sum, marvel at, admire, wonder. 35
mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising, extraordinary
miscēō, -ere, miscūī, mixtum, mix, stir up, disturb. 18
miser, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 15
miserē, adv., wretchedly
misericordia, -ae, pity, mercy
mitesco, -cre, become or grow mild
mitis, -e, mild, gentle; ripe
mitto, -ere, missi, missum, send, let go. II
modo, adv., now, just now, only; modo ... modo, at one time ... at another
modus, -I, m., measure, bound, limit, manner, method, mode, way. 22
moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls of a city. 29
molēctus, -a, -īm, troublesome, disagreeable, annoying
mollio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, soften; make calm or less hostile. 29
mollis, -e, soft, mild, weak
moneo, -ere, -ui, -itum, remind, warn, advise, 
monēm ut + subj.
monitiō, -onis, I, admonition, warning
mons, -montis, m., mountain. 20
monstrum, -I, fl., portent; monster
monumentum, -i, n., monument. 40
mora, -ae, f., delay. 4
morbus, -i, m., disease, sickness. 9
mors, mortis, f., death. 14
mortālis, -e, mortal. 18
mortifertus, -a, -um, dead. 28
mōs, mōris, m., habit, custom, manner; mōrés, mōrum, habits, morals, character. 7
moveō, -ere, mūvī, mōtum, move; arouse, affect. 18
mox, adv., soon. 30
mulier, -eris, f., woman. 39
multō (1), punish, fine
multum, adv., much
(comp. plūs; superl. plūrimum). 32
multus, -a, -um, much, many, 2
(comp. plūs; superl. plūrimum. 27)
mundus, -i, m., world, universe. 21
mūnimentum, -i, n., fortification, protection
mūniō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, fortify, defend; build (a road)
mūmus, -neris, n., service, office, function, duty; gift
mūs, mūris, m./f., mouse
Mūsa, -ae, f., a Muse (one of the goddesses of poetry, music, etc.)
mūtātō, -ōnis, f., change
mūtō (1), change, alter; exchange. 14
N
nam, conj., for. 13
narrō (1), tell, narrate, report. 24
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born, spring forth, arise. 34
nāsus, -ī, m., nose. 40
nāta, -ae, f., daughter. 29
nātālis, -is (sc. diēs), m., birthday
nātō, -ōnis, f., nation, people
nātūra, -ae, f., nature. 10
nauta, -ae, m., sailor. 2
navigātō, -ōnis, f., voyage, navigation
navigō (1), sail, navigate. 17
nāvis, -is, f., ship. 21
nē, conj. with subj., that ... not, in order that ... not, in order not to, 28, 36; that, 40; adv. in nē ... quidem, not ... even. 29
-neclitic added to the emphatic word at the beginning of a question the answer to which may be either "yes" or "no." It can be used in both direct and indirect questions. 5
nec. See neque.
necessarius, -a, -um, necessary
necessus, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable. 39
necō (1), murder, kill. 7
nēfās (indecl.), n., wrong, sin
nēlegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctum, neglect, disregard. 17
nēgō (1), deny, say that ... not. 25
nēmō, (nullus), nēminī, nēminem, (nullō, -ā), m./f., no one, nobody. 11
nepōs, -pōtis, m., grandson, descendant. 27
neque or nec, conj. and not, nor; neque ... neque, neither ... nor. 11
nesciō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, not to know, be ignorant. 25
neuter, -tra, -trum, not either, neither. 9
nēve, and not, nor (used to continue ut or nē + subj.)
niger, -gra, -grum, black
nihil (indecl.), n., nothing. 1, 4
nihilum, -ī, n., nothing
nūmis or nūmium, adv., too, too much, excessively. 9
nisi, if ... not, unless, except. 19
nīveus, -a, -um, snowy, white
nocēō, -ère, nocū, nocītum + dat., do harm to, harm, injure. 35
nōlē, nōlēc, nōlēt, not . . . wish, be unwilling. 32
nōmen, nōminis, n., name. 7
nōn, adv., not. 1
nōndum, adv., not yet
nōnne, interrog. adv., which introduces questions expecting the answer “yes.” 40
nōnnullus, -a, -um, some, several
nōnnullus, -a, -um, ninth
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
nōs. See ego.
nōscō. See cognōscō.
nostér, -tra, -trum, our, ours. 5
notārius, -i, m., writer of shorthand, stenographer
novem, indecl. adj., nine. 15
novus, -a, -um, new, strange. 7
nox, Noctis, f., night. 26
nūbēs, -is, f., cloud. 31
nūbō, -ère, nūpsī, nūptum, cover, veil; + dat. (of a bride) be married to, marry. 35
nullus, -a, -um, not any, no, none. 9
num, interrogative adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer “no”; (2) introduces indirect questions and means whether. 40
numerus, -i, m., number. 3
numquam, adv., never. 8
nunc, adv., now, at present. 6
nūntiō (1), announce, report, relate. 25
nūntius, -ii, m., messenger, message
nūper, adv., recently. 12
nūtrīō, -ère, -īvī, -ītum, nourish, rear
O
Ō, interjection, O!, oh! 2
obdurō (1), be hard, persist, endure
obeō, -ère, -ī, -itum, go up against, meet; die. 37
obiciō, -ère, -iēcī, -iectum, offer; cite (as grounds for condemnation)
oblectō (1), please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly. 36
obruō, -ère, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, destroy
obsequium, -iī, n., compliance
obstinātus, -a, -um, firm, resolved
occāsiō, -ōnis, f., occasion, opportunity. 28
occidō, -ère, -cīdī, -cāsum (cadō, fall), fall down; die; set (of the sun). 31
occidō, -ère, -cīdī, -cāsum (cadō, cut), cut down; kill, slay
occultē, adv., secretly
occupō (1), seize
oculus, -i, m., eye. 4
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsārum (defective vb.), hate. 20
odium, -i, n., hatred. 38
Oedipus, -podis, m., Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, offer. 31
officium, -iī, n., duty, service. 4
ōlīn, adv., at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13
omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, omit
omnia, adv., wholly, entirely, altogether. 40
omnipotēns, gen. -tentis, adj., all-powerful, omnipotent
omnis, -e, every, all. 16
onerō (1), burden, load
onus, oneris, n., burden, load
opus, operis, m., a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38
opriō, -ère, -pressī, -pressum, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23
opprobrium, -iī, n., reproach, taunt, disgrace
opugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39
ops, opis, f., help, aid; opēs, opum, power, resources, wealth. 33
optīmus. See bonus.
optō (1), wish for, desire
opus, operis, n., a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., speech. 38
ōrātor, -ōris, m., orator, speaker. 23
orbis, -is, m., circle, orb; orbis terrārum, the world, the earth
ōrdō, ordinis, m., rank, class, order
orior, -īri, ortus sum, arise, begin, proceed, originate
ōrnō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39
ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray. 36
ōs, ēris, n., mouth, face. 14
ōsculum, -i, n., kiss. 29
ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, exhibit, show, display. 23
ōstīum, -iī, n., entrance, door
őtium, -ii, n., leisure, peace. 4
onis, -is, f., sheep

P

paedagōgus, -i, m., slave who attended children
(particularly at school)
pāgānus, -i, m., a countryman, peasant; pagan
palam, adv., openly, plainly
palma, -ae, f., palm
pānis, -is, m., bread
pār, gen. pars, adj., equal, like. 32
pāreō, -ere, pāreō, partum, beget, produce
ijarmula, -ae, f., little shield
pāro (I), prepare, provide; get, obtain. 19
pars, partis, 111., part, share; direction. 14
parum, adv., little, too little, not very (much)
(comp. minus; superl. minimē). 32
parvus, -a, -nm, small, little, 4
(comp. minor; superl. minimus, 27)

per, prep. + acc., through; with reflex. pron. by. 13
percipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, gain, learn, perceive
perdo, -ere, perdidō, perdītum, destroy, ruin, lose
perēō, -ere, -iti, -itum, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 37
peregrinōr, peregrināri, peregrinātus sum, travel
abroad, wander. 37
perfectus, -a, -um, complete, perfect
perferō, -ferre, -fūi, -lātum, bear, endure, suffer
perificō, -ere, -feci, -fectum, do thoroughly,
accomplish, bring about
perfugium, -ii, n., refuge, shelter. 24
pericūlosus, -a, -um, dangerous
periculum, -i, n., danger, risk. 4
perimō, -ere, -ēmi, -emptum, destroy
perītus, -a, -um, skilled, expert
permittō, -ere, -mēti, -missum, permit, allow
perniciosus, -a, -um, destructive, pernicious
pernoctō (1), spend or occupy the night. 39
perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, lasting,
uninterrupted, continuous. 6
perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsi, -scriptum, write out, place
on record
persequor, -i, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, take
vengeance on
Persicus, -a, -um, Persian
persuādeo, -ere, -suāsi, -suāsum, succeed in
urging, persuade, convince
perteerreo, -ere, -ui, -itum, frighten thoroughly,
terrify
pertineō, -ere, -ui, -teutum, pertain to, relate to,
concern
perturbo (1), throw into confusion, trouble,
disturb, perturb
perveniō, -ere, -veni, -ventum + ad, come through
to, arrive at, reach
pēs, pedis, m., lower leg, foot. 38
pessimus. See malus.
pestis, -is, f. plague, pestilence, curse, destruction
petō, -ere, petivī, petītum, seek, aim at, beg,
beseech, 23; petō ab eō ut + subj. 36
philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy, love of wisdom. 2
philosophus, -i, m., philosopher. 33
piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, slow, dull
pipō (1), chirp, pipe
piscator, -tōris, m., fisherman
piscis, -is, m., fish
placeō, -ere, -ui, -itum + dat., be pleasing to,
please. 35
plācō (1), placate, appease
planē, adv., plainly, clearly
platea, -ae, f., broad way, street
Platō, -tōnis, m., Plato, the renowned Greek philosopher
plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people, populace, plebeians. 33
plēnus, -a, -um, full, abundant, generous. 6
plūrīmus. See multus.
plūs. See multus.
pōēma, -matis, n., poem
poena, -a, -ae, penalty, punishment; poenās dare, pay the penalty. 2
poēta, -ae, f., poet. 2
pōnum, -i, n., fruit, apple
pōnō, -ere, possū, positum, put, place, set. 27
pōnōs, pontis, m., bridge
populus, -i, m., the people, a people, nation. 3
porta, -ae, f., gate, entrance. 2
possessio, -ōnis, f., possession, property
possessus, possus, potuī, be able, can, have power. 6
post, prep. + acc., after, behind. 7
postea, adv., afterwards. 24
postponō, -ere, posuī, -positum, put after, consider secondary
postquam, conj., after
posthōmus, adv., after all, finally; for the last time. 40
potēns, gen. -tentis, pres. part. of possum as adj., able, powerful, mighty, strong. 16
potestās, -ītis, f., power, ability, opportunity
potior, -iri, potius sum + gen. or abl., get possession of, possess, hold
potius, adv., rather, preferably
prae, prep. + abl., in front of, before. 26
praebē, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum, offer, provide. 32
praecipitum, -ī, n., precept
praecūrus, -a, -um, noble, distinguished, famous, remarkable
praefereō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bear before, display; place before, prefer
praeficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, put in charge of
praemittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, send ahead or forward
praemium, -ii, n., reward, prize. 35
praesidium, -ii, n., guard, detachment, protection
praestō, -āre, -stītī, -stītum, excel (+ dat.); exhibit, show, offer, supply. 28
praesum, -esse, -fūi, be at the head of, be in charge of
praetor, prep. + acc., besides, except; beyond, past. 40
praetereō, -āre, -ītum, go by, pass, omit
praeteritus, -a, -um, perf. part. of praetereō as adj., past
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press; press hard, pursue. 23
pretium, -ii, n., price, value, reward
prex, precīs, f., prayer
primō, adv., at first, first, at the beginning. 30
primūm, adv., first, in the first place; quam primum, as soon as possible
prīmus. See prior. 27
princeps, gen. -cipis, chief; m. tf. noun. leader; prince, emperor. 28
principium, -ii, n., beginning. 12
prior, prius, comp. adj., former, prior; prīmus, -a, -um, first, foremost, chief, principal. 27
prīstīnus, -a, -um, ancient, former, previous. 38
prius, adv., before, previously
privātus, -i, m., private citizen
privō (1), deprive
prō, prep. + abl., in front of, before, on behalf of, in return for, instead of, for, as. 12
probātās, -tātis, f., uprightness, honesty, probity. 18
probō (1), approve; recommend; test. 27
proconsul, -sulis, m., proconsul, governor of a province
prōdītor, -tōris, m., betrayer, traitor
proelium, -ii, n., battle
prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bring forward, produce, make known, extend
proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, set out, start. 34
profor, -āri, -ātus sum, speak out
profundō, -ere, -fūi, -fāsum, pour forth
prohibēō, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum, prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit. 20
prōcio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, throw forward or out
prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, send forth, promise. 32
prōnuntiātō (1), proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce. 20
prōponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put forward, propose
prōpītus, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, proper, personal, characteristic
prōpter, prep. + acc., on account of, because of. 5
prōtīnus, adv., immediately. 22
prōvidēō, -ēre, -vīdi, -āsum, foresee, provide, make provision
proximus, -a, -um (superl. of propter), nearest, next
prōdēns, gen. -dentis, adj., wise, prudent
prōdenter, adv., wisely, discreetly
prudentia, -ae, f., foresight, wisdom, discretion
públicus, -a, -um, of the people, public; rēs pública, ref públicae, f., the state
pudicus, -a, -um, modest, chaste. 26
pudor, -dōris, m., modesty, bashfulness
puella, -oe, f., girl. 2
puer, pueri, m., boy; pl. boys, children. 3
pueriliter, (adv., childishly, foolishly
pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle
puguo (I), fight. 29
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome; fine. 5
pulchītūs, -ae, f., beauty
pulō (I), cleanse
puirus, -a, -um, pure, free from
puto (I), reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine. 25
Pythagoras, -ae, m., Pythagoras, Greek philosopher and mathematician of 6th cen. B.C.

Q
quā, adv., by which route, where
quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., forty
quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesītum, seek, look for; strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into. 24
quam, adv., how; conj., than, 26; as... as possible (with superl.), 26
quamvis, adv. and conj., however much, however; although
quando, interrogative and rel. adv. and conj., when; sī quando, if ever. 5
quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great, how much. 30
quārē, adv., because of which thing, therefore, wherefore, why. 6
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth. 15
quasi, adv. or conj., as if, as it were. 39
quattuor, indecl. adj., four. 15
-que, enclitic conj., and. It is appended to the second of two words to be joined. 6
quemadmodum, adv., in what manner, how
queror, -ī, questus sum, complain, lament. 38
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that. 17
quia, conj., since, because
quid, what, why. See quis.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.) or quoddam (adv.), indef. pron. and adj.: as pron., a certain one or thing, someone, something; as adj., a certain. 26
quīdem, postpositive adv., indeed, certainly, at least, even; nē... quīdem, not even. 29
quiēs, -ēsis, f., quiet, rest, peace
quīn, adv., indeed, in fact. 40
quīn etiam, adv., why even, in fact, moreover
Quintus, -ī, m., Quintus, a Roman praenomen, abbreviated to Q. in writing
quis, quid, indef. pron., after sī, nisi, nē, and num, anyone, anything, someone, something. 33
quisquam, quidquam (or quicquam), indef. pron. and adj., anyone, anything
quisque, quidque, indef. pron., each one, each person, each thing. 13
quisquis, quidquid, indecl pron., whoever, whatever. 23
quō, adv., to which or what place, whither, where
quod, conj., because. 11
quōmodo, adv., in what way, how
quondam, adv., formerly, once. 22
quantiam, conj., since, inasmuch as. 10
quoque, adv., also, too. 17
quot, indecl. adj., how many, as many. 27
quotienscumque, adv., however often, whenever

R
rapiō, -ere, rapūi, raptum, seize, snatch, carry away. 21
rāurus, -a, -um, rare
ratīō, -onis, f., reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration; system, manner, method. 8
recēdō, -ere, recedī, -cessum, go back, retire, recede
recipiō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum, take back, regain; admit, receive. 24
rectō (I), read aloud, recite. 17
recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nūtum, recognize, recollect. 38
recordātō, -onis, f., recollection
recreō (I), restore, revive; refresh, cheer. 36
rectus, -a, -um, straight, right; rectum, -ī, n., the right, virtue
recuperātō, -onis, f., recovery
recuperō (I), regain
recūsō (1), refuse. 33
reddō, -ere, -dūi, -ditum, give back, return
redeō, -ère, -ī, -itum, go back, return. 37
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back
referō, -ferre, -talū, -lātum, carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report. 31
rēgīna, -ae, f., queen. 7
rēgīus, -a, -um, royal
rēgnum, -i, n., rule, authority, kingdom
rēgō, -ere, rēctum, rule, guide, direct. 16
relegō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, read again, reread
relevō (1), relieve, alleviate, diminish
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lectum, leave behind, leave, abandon. 21
remaneō, -ère, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, stay behind, abide, continue. 5
remédium, -ī, n., cure, remedy. 4
remissō, -ōnis, f., letting go, release; relaxation. 34
removeō, -ère, -mōvi, -mōtum, remove
repente (1), suddenly. 30
reperīō, -ère, -pperī, -pertum, find, discover, learn; get. 40
repellētō, -ōnis, f., repetition
repellō, -ere, -lūvi, -lūtum, seek again, repeat
rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, -reptum, creep, crawl
repungō (1) + dat., fight against, be incompatible with
requisīscō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētum, rest. 37
requīrō, -ere, -quisīvi, -sītum, seek, ask for; miss, need, require. 36
rēx, rēgis, m., king. 7
rēpublica, reā publicae, state, commonwealth. 22
resīstō, -ere, -stītī, make a stand, resist, oppose
respondeō, -ere, -spōnsum, answer. 29
resistūs, -e, -stītūr, -stītūrum, restore
retrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, drag or draw back
revenīō, -ère, -vēni, -ventum, come back, return
revocō (1), call back, recall
rēx, rēgis, m., king. 7
rhētoricus, -a, -um, of rhetoric, rhetorical
rūdeō, -ère, rūsī, rūsim, laugh, laugh at. 24
ridiculus, -a, -um, laughable, ridiculous. 30
rogō (1), ask, ask for. 30; rogō cum ut + subj. 36
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. 14
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. 3
rosa, -ae, f., rose. 2
rōstrum, -ī, n., beak of a ship; Rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, speaker's platform
rota, -ae, f., wheel
rotundus, -a, -um, wheel-shaped, round
rūmor, -mōris, m., rumor, gossip. 31
ruō, -ere, rū, rutum, rush, fall, be ruined
rūs, rūris, n., the country, countryside. 37
rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural
S
sabbatum, -ī, n., the Sabbath
sacculus, -ī, n., little bag, purse
sacrificium, -ī, n., sacrifice
sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, m., priest. 23
sacrilegus, -a, -um, sacrilegious, impious
saepē, adv., often. 1
saeta equīna, -ae -ae, f., horse-hair
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow
sāl, salīs, m., salt; wit. 33
salsus, -a, -um, salty, witty
salōbris, -e, healthy, salubrious
salūs, salūtis, f., health, safety; greeting. 21
salūtō (1), greet
salvēō, -ère, be well, be in good health. 1
salvus, -a, -um, safe, sound. 6
sānctificō (1), sanctify, treat as holy
sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy
sānītās, -tātis, f., health, soundness of mind, sanity
sānō (1), heal
sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy, sane. 5
sapience, -ae f., wisdom. 3
sapiō, -ere, sapīvi, have good taste; have good sense, be wise. 35
satīō (1), satisfy, sate. 3
satis, indecl. noun, adj., and adv., enough, sufficient(ly). 5
sator, -tōris, m., sower, planter; begetter; father. 38
satura, -ae, f., satire. 16
saxum, -ī, n., rock, stone. 40
scabīs, -ēī, f., the itch, mange
scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accused
scelestus, -a, -um, wicked, accused, infamous
sceles, -leris, n., evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness. 19
schola, -ae, f., school
scientia, -ae, f., knowledge, science, skill. 18
scīō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, know. 21
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write, compose. 8
scripтор, -tōris, m., writer, author. 8
sēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, separate
seundus, -a, -um, second; favorable.
śecūrus, -a, -um, free from care, untroubled, safe.
sed, conj., but. 2.
sedeō, -ēre, sedē, sessum, sit. 34.
seductor, -ōris, m. (ecclesiastical Lat.), seducer.
semel, adv., a single time, once, and for all, simultaneously. 31.
senectus, -a, -i, senecitūs, -um, old age. 10.
serex, senis, adj. and n., old, aged; old man. 16.
serēns, -ēs, m., feeling, sense. 20.
sententia, -ae, l., feeling, thought, opinion, vote; sentence. 2.
sentio, -ēre, sendi, sendum, feel, perceive, think, experience. 11.
septem, indecl. adj., seven. 15.
sepulcrum, -i, n., grave, tomb.
sequor, -ī, seccūtus sum, follow. 34.
serēnō (1), make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe. 36.
sērīō, adv., seriously.
sērūs, -a, -um, serious, grave.
sermō, mōnis, m., conversation, talk.
sērō, -ere, sēvi, satum, sow.
servō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + dat., be a slave to, serve. 35.
servitūs, -ōtūs, f., servitude, slavery. 20.
servō (1), preserve, keep, save, guard. 1.
servus, -ī, m., and serva, -ae, f., slave. 24.
sevēritās, -ātīs, f., severity, sternness, strictness.
sī, conj., if. 1.
sīc, adv. (most commonly with verbs), so, thus. 29.
sīcūt, adv. and conj., as, just as, as it were.
sīdus, -deris, n., constellation, star. 29.
signum, -ī, n., sign, signal, indication; seal. 13.
silentium, -ī, n., silence.
silva, -ae, f., forest, wood.
similis, -e, similar to, like, resembling. 27.
simplex, gen. -plicis, adj., simple, unaffected.
simulātiō, -ōnis, f., pretense.
sine, prep. + abl., without. 2.
singuli, -ae, -a, pl., one each, single, separate.
singultim, adv., stammeringly.
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened. 20.
sittō, -īre, -īvī, be thirsty.
socius, -i, m., companion, ally.
Sōcratēs, -is, m., Socrates.
sui (sibi, sē, sē), reflex. pron. of 3rd pers., himself, herself, itself, themselves. 13
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum, be, exist. 4; est, sum may mean there is, there are. 1
summa, -ae, f. highest part, sum, whole
summus, -a, -um. See superus.
sūmpō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmpsum, take, take up, assume
sūmpsum, -ōs, m., expense, cost
superex, -lectilis, f., furniture, apparatus
superbus, -a, -urn, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud. 26
superior. See superus.
supero (1), be above, have the upper hand, surpass, overcome, conquer. 5
superus, -a, -um, above, upper; superē, -ōrum, m., the gods (comp. superior, -iis, higher; superl. supremus, -a, -um, last, or summus, -a, -um, highest). 27
supplicium, -ii, n., punishment
supra, ad. and prep. + acc., above
suprēmus. See superus.
surculus, -ī, m., shoot, sprout
surgō, -ere, surgēxi, surgēctum, get up, arise. 29
suscipō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum, undertake. 25
suspendō, -ere, -pendi, -pensum, hang up, suspend; interrupt. 38
sustineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum, hold up, sustain, endure
suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers., his own, her own, its own, their own. 13
synagōga, -ae, l, synagogue
Syracōsa, -ae, f. pl., Syracuse. 37

T

tabella, -ae, f., writing tablet; tabellae, -ārum, letter, document
taceō, -ere, -uī, -itum, be silent, leave unmentioned. 28
tālis, -e, such, of such a sort. 34
tam, adv. used with adj. and advs., so, to such a degree; tam . . . quam, so . . . as. 29
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still. 8
tamquam, adv., as it were, as if, so to speak. 29
tandem, adv., at last, finally
tangō, -ere, tangī, tāctum, touch. 21
tantum, adv., only. 26
tantus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such size. 29
tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy
tāctum, -ī, n., roof, house
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, hide, protect
temerītās, -ātis, f., rashness, temerity
temperantia, -ae, f., moderation, temperance, self-control
tempestās, -ātis, f., period of time, season; weather, storm. 15
templum, -ī, n., sacred area, temple
temptātīō, -ōnis, f., trial, temptation
tempus, -poris, n., time; occasion, opportunity. 7
tendō, -ere, tentendi, tentum or tēnum, stretch, extend; go
teneō, -ere, -uī, tentum, hold, keep, possess, restrain. 14
terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum, rub, wear out
terra, -ae, f., earth, ground, land, country. 7
terreō, -ere, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify. 1
tertius, -a, -um, third. 15
thema, -matis, n., theme
Themistocēlēs, -is, m., Themistocles, celebrated Athenian statesman and military leader who advocated a powerful navy at the time of the Persian Wars
timeō, -ere, -uī, fear, be afraid of, be afraid. 15
timor, -ōris, m., fear. 10
titulus, -ī, m., label, title; placard
toga, -ae, f., toga, the garb of peace
tolerō (1), bear, endure, tolerate. 6
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy. 22
tondō, -ere, totondi, tōnsum, shear, clip
tōnsor, -ōris, m., barber
tōnsōrius, -a, -um, of or pertaining to a barber, barber’s
tot, indecl. adj., that number of, so many. 40
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 9
tractō (1), drag about; handle, treat, discuss
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach. 33
tragōedia, -ae, f., tragedy
trahō, -ere, trāxi, tratuum, draw, drag; derive, acquire. 8
trāns, prep. + acc., across. 14
trānsseō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go across, cross; pass over, ignore. 39
trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bear across, transfer, convey
trānsitus, -ūs, m., passing over, transit; transition. 39
trādecim, indecl. adj. thirteen. 15
tremō, -ere, tremūi, tremble
trepidē, adv., with trepidation, in confusion
tēs, tria, three. 15
trigintā, indecl. adj., thirty
tristis, -e, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe. 26
triumphus, -ī, m., triumphal procession, triumph
Trōia, -ae, f., Troy. 23
Trōānus, -a, -um, Trojan
tū, tuī, you. 11
Tullius, -īi, m., Cicero’s family name
tum, adv., then, at that time; thereupon, in the
tumulus, -īs, m. uprisning, disturbance
turba, -ae, f., uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd,
tumulus, -ī, m., mound, tomb
tunc, adv., then, at that time
turpis, -e, ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful. 26
triumphus, -ī, m., absolute ruler, tyrant. 6

U
ubi, rel. adv. and conj., where; when; interrogative,
where? 6
ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, avenge, punish for wrong
done
ūllus, -a, -um, any. 9
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme; last, final. 25
ultrā, adv. and prep. + acc., on the other side of,
beyond. 22
umbra, -ae, f., shade; ghost
umerus, -i, m., shoulder, upper arm
unquam, adv., ever, at any time. 23
unde, adv., whence, from what or which place;
from which, from whom. 30
ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, alone. 9
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, urban, urbane,
   elegant. 26
urbs, urbis, f., city. 14
ūsque, adv., all the way, up (to), even (to),
    continuously, always. 31
ūsus, -ūs, m., use, experience, skill, advantage
ut, conj.; A. with subj. introducing (1) purpose, in
   order that, that, to (28); (2) result, so that, that
   (29); (3) jussive noun clauses, to, that (36); (4)
   fear clauses, that . . . not (40); B. with indic., just
   as, as, when. 24
utēr, utra, utrum, either, which (of two). 9
ūtilis, -e, useful, advantageous. 27
ūtilītis, -tātis, f., usefulness, advantage
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + abl., use; enjoy, experience. 34

utrum . . . an, conj., whether . . . or. 30
uxor, -ōris, f., wife. 7

V
vacō (1), be free from, be unoccupied
vacus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)
vaē, interjection, alas, woe to. 34
valēō, -ēre, -ū-, -ūtūrum, be strong, have power; be
    well, fare well; valē (valēte), good-bye. 1
valētūdō, -dīnis, f., health, good health, bad
    health
variōs, -a, -um, various, varied, different
    -ve, conj., or 33
vehemēns, gen. -mentis, adj., violent, vehement,
   emphatic, vigorous
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey
vel, conj. or (an optional alternative)
velōx, gen. -lōcis, adj., swift
vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēndītum, sell. 38
venia, -ae, f., kindness, favor, pardon
venīō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, com. 10
ventītō (1), come often
ventus, -ī, m., wind. 39
Vēnus, -nerīs, f., Venus, goddess of grace, charm,
   and love
verbera, -rum, n. pl., blows, a beating
verbūm, -ī, n., word. 5
vērē, adv., truly, really, actually, rightly
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, show reverence for,
   respect; be afraid of, fear. 40
Vergilīus, -īi, m., Virgil, the Roman epic poet
vēritās, -tātis, f., truth. 10
vērō, adv., in truth, indeed, to be sure, however. 29
versus, -ūs, m., line, verse. 20
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn, change. 23
vērus, -a, -um, true, real, proper. 4
vesper, -peris or -perī, m., evening; evening star. 28
vespīllo, -lōnis, m., undertaker
vestēr, -tra, -trum, your, yours (pl.). 6
vestīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūm, clothe
vetus, gen. -terīs, adj., old. 34
via, -ae, f., road, street, way. 10
vīcīnus, -ī, m., vīcinā, -ae, f., neighbor. 21
vicissitūdō, -dīnis, f., change, vicissitude
victor, -ōtīs, m., victor
victōria, -ae, f., victory. 8
victus, -ūs, m., living, mode of life
vidēō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, observe;
    understand, 1; videor, -ērī, visus sum, be seen,
    seem, appear. 18
vigilō (1), be awake, watch, be vigilant
vigor, -gōris, m., vigor, liveliness
villa, -ae, f., villa, country house
vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctum, conquer, overcome. 8
vinculum, -ī, n., bond, chain. 36
vīnum, -ī, n., wine. 31
vir, virī, m., man, hero. 3
virgō, -ginis, f., maiden, virgin. 7
virtūs, -tūtis, f., manliness, courage; excellence, virtue, character, worth. 7
vis, vis, f., force, power, violence; vīrēs, vīrium, strength. 14
vīta, -ae, f., life, mode of life. 2
vītōsus, -a, -um, full of vice, vicious. 34
vītium, -ī, n., fault, vice, crime. 6
vītō (1), avoid, shun. 14
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live. 10
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living. 30
vix, adv., hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
vocō (1), call, summon. 1
volō, velle, voluī, wish, want, be willing, will. 32
volō (1), fly
voluntārius, -a, -um, voluntary
voluntās, -tātis, f., will, wish
voluptās, -tātis, f., pleasure. 10
vōs. See tū.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word. 34
vulgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.), the common people, mob, rabble. 21
vulnus, -neris, n., wound. 24
vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, face. 40.

X
Xenophōn, -phontis, m., Xenophon, Greek general and author
Abbreviations

AUTHORS AND WORKS CITED

Aug., St. Augustine (Confessions)
Caes., Caesar
   B.C., Bellum Civile
   B.G., Bellum Gallicum
Catull., Catullus (Poems)
Cic., Cicero
   Am., De Amicitia
   Arch., Oratio pro Archia
   Att., Epistulae ad Atticum
   Cat., Orationes in Catilinam
   De Or., De Oratore
   Div., De Divinatione
   Fam., Epistulae ad Familiares
   Fin., De Finibus
   Inv., De Inventione Rhetorica
   Leg., De Legibus
   Marcell, Oratio pro Marcello
   Off., De Officiis
   Or., Orator
   Phil., Orationes Philippicae in M. Antonium
   Pis., Oratio in Pisonem
   Planc., Oratio pro Plancio
   Q. Fr., Epistulae ad Q. Fratrem

Rep., De Re Publica
Sen., De Senectute
Sex. Rosc., Oratio pro Sex. Roscio
Sull., Oratio pro Sulla
Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes
Verr., Actio in Verrem
Enn., Ennius (Poems)
Hor., Horace
   A.P., Ars Poetica (Ep. 2.3)
   Ep., Epistulae
   Epod., Epodes
   Od., Odes (Carmina)
   Sat., Satires (Sermones)
Juv., Juvenal (Satires)
Liv., Livy (Ab Urbe Condita)
Lucr., Lucretius (De Natura Rerum)
Mart., Martial (Epigrams)
Macr., Macrobius (Saturnalia)
Nep., Nepos
   Att., Atticus
   Cim., Cimon
   Milt., Miltiades
Ov., Ovid
492 Wheelock's Latin

A.A., Ars Amatoria
Am., Amores
Her., Heroides
Met., Metamorphoses
Pers., Persius (Satires)
Petron., Petronius (Satyricon)
Phaedr., Phaedrus (Fables)
Plaut., Plautus
Aul., Aulularia
Mil., Miles Gloriosus
Most., Mostellaria
Stich., Stichus
Plin., Pliny the Elder
H.N., Historia Naturalis
Plin., Pliny the Younger
Ep., Epistulae
Prop., Propertius (Elegies)
Publil. Syr., Publilius Syrus (Sententiae)
Quint., Quintilian
Inst., Institutiones Oratoriae
Sall., Sallust
Cat., Catilina
Sen., Seneca the Elder
Contr., Controversiae
Sen., Seneca the Younger
Brev. Vit., De Brevitate Vitae
Clem., De Clementia

Cons. Polyb., Ad Polybium de
Consolatione
Ep., Epistulae
Suet., Suetonius
Aug., Augustus Caesar
Caes., Julius Caesar
Tac., Tacitus
Ann., Annales
Dial., Dialogus de Oratoribus
Ter., Terence
Ad., Adelphi
And., Andria
Heaut., Heauton Timouroumenos
Hec., Hecyra
Phorm., Phormio
Veg., Vegetius Renatus
Mil., De Re Militari
Vell., Velleius Paterculus (Histories)
Virg., Virgil
Aen., Aeneid
Ecl., Eclogues
Geor., Georgics
Vulg., Vulgate
Eccles., Ecclesiastes
Exod., Exodus
Gen., Genesis

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS

abl. ablative case
abs. absolute
acc. accusative case
act. active voice
A.D. after Christ (Lat. annum domini, lit., in the year of the Lord)
adj. adjective
adv. adverb
App. Appendix
B.C. before Christ
c. about (Lat. circa)
cen(s). century(ies)
Ch(s). Chapter(s)
cl(s). clause(s)
comp. comparative (degree)
compl. complementary

conj. conjunction
contr. to fact contrary to fact
cmp. compare (Lat. comparē)
dat. dative case
dcl. declension
dep. deponent
e.g. for example (Lat. exemplī grātiā)
Eng. English
etc. and others (Lat. et cētera)
t/f/fem. feminine gender
ff. and the following (lines, pages)
Fr. French
fr. from
fut. future tense
fut. perf. future perfect tense
gen. genitive case
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gk.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibid.</td>
<td>in the same place (Lat. <em>ibidem</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id.</td>
<td>the same (Lat. <em>idem</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>that is (Lat. <em>id est</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imper.</td>
<td>imperative mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impf.</td>
<td>imperfect tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
<td>indirect question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind. state.</td>
<td>indirect statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indic.</td>
<td>indicative mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf.</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introd.</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irreg.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It.</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.A.</td>
<td><em>Locī Antīquitī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat.</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.l.</td>
<td><em>Locī Immūtātī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m./M./masc.</td>
<td>masculine gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mid.</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n./N./neut.</td>
<td>note or neuter gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no(s).</td>
<td>number(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object or objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect (present perfect) tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pers.</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plupf.</td>
<td>pluperfect (past perfect) tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.R.</td>
<td>Practice and Review (sentences)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purp.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref.</td>
<td>reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russ.</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>supply, namely (Lat. <em>scilicet</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent.</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp.</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spec.</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.A.</td>
<td><em>Sententiae Antiquae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.S.</td>
<td>Supplementary Syntax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LL</td>
<td>Lexicon (p. 442-45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superl.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s.v.</td>
<td>under the word (Lat. <em>sub verbō</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb(s).</td>
<td>verb(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vocative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocab.</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vs.</td>
<td>as opposed to, in comparison with (Lat. <em>versus</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Page references to illustrations are italicized.

Ab
  with ablative of personal agent, 118–19, 143
  in place constructions, 256
Ablative case
  absolute, 155–57
  of accompaniment, 92, 142
  as adverbial case, 10
  with cardinal numerals, 99, 143
  of cause, 444
  of comparison, 173
  of degree of difference, 444
  of description, 285
  forms of. See Declension
  of manner, 92, 142, 143
  of means or instrument, 91–92, 143
  of personal agent, 118–19, 143
  of place from which, 130, 262
  of place where, 142, 262
  with prepositions, 18n, 68n
    summary of uses, 142–43
  without prepositions, summary of uses, 143
  of separation, 130–31
  with special deponent verbs, 237–38
  of specification, 443–44
  of time when or within which, 99–100, 143,
    263
    usage of, 91–92
Accents, xli, 4
Accompaniment, ablative of, 92, 142
Accusative case
  as direct object, 10
  of duration of time, 263
  forms of. See Declension
  infinitive in indirect statement with, 164–66
  of place to which, 262
Achilles, 87
Active periphrastic, 204
Active voice, 2
  deponent verbs, 234–38
  infinitive, 162–63
  participles, 147–48
  perfect system. See Perfect system, active voice
  personal endings for, 2–3
  present system
    1st and 2nd conjugation, 3–5, 31–33
    3rd conjugation, 49–51, 62–64
    4th conjugation, 62–63
  subjunctive, 187, 194
Ad
  with gerundive or gerund, 278
  in place constructions, 262
Adjectives
  1st declension, 11–12, 14n, 25–26, 33, 57–58
  2nd declension, 17–18, 24–26, 33, 57–58
  3rd declension, 104–06, 172–73
  agreement of, 12, 25
  comparison of, 171–73. See also Superlatives, of
    adjectives
      declension, 172–73, 181
      formation, 171–72
      irregular formation, 180–81
      summary of forms, 450
      usage and translation, 172–73
  dative case with, 245–46
  demonstrative, 55–57
    idem, eadem, idem, 70–71
    is, ea, id, 70
  with genitive ending in -īnus and dative ending in
    -i, 57–58
  interrogative, 124–25
  predicate, 26–27
  reflexive possessives, 84
Adjectives (cont.)
  substantive, 27
  summary of forms, 447
  verbal. See Gerundive; Participles
  word order and, 19, 20

Adverbs, 19
  ablative case and, 10
  comparison of, 220–21
  irregular, 220–21
  summary of forms, 450
  definition of, 118
  formation of, 219–20

Aeneas, 154, 288–91

Agamemnon, 53

Agent
  ablative of, 118–19, 143
  dative of, 157–58

Agreement
  of adjectives, 12, 25–26
  of relative pronouns, 110–12
  subject-verb, 13

Alexander the Great, 87, 232

Allobroges, 133, 259

Alma-Tadema, Sir Lawrence, 114

Alphabet, xxxix–xli

Anglo-Saxon language, xxviii–xxx

Antony, Marc, 72, 288

Apposition, 19

Archaising Period, xxxvii

Aristotle, 232

Arria, 281

Articles, 11n, 60

Athena (Minerva), 154

Audiō, conjugation of, 63

Augustan Period, xxxv–xxxvi, 25

Augustine, Saint, xxxvii

Augustus, xxxvi–xxxvi, 24, 23, 159, 161, 217

Bacon, Francis, xxxvii

Bede, Caedmon's Anglo-Saxon Verses and the Difficulties of Translation, 301–02

Browne, Sir Thomas, xxxix

Brutus, Lucius, 79

Caecina Paetus, 281, 348

Caelius (Rufus), 183

Caesar, xxxvi, 79, 128, 161, 176, 266, 272, 274
  The Nations of Gaul, 176
  Caesar of Heisterbach, The Devil and a Thirteenth-Century Schoolboy, 302–03

Capiō, conjugation of, 64

Cardinal numerals, 97–99, 451
  ablative with, 99, 143
  genitive with, 99

Carthage, 40, 154, 159, 290

Cases
  definition of, 9
  of nouns, 9–11, 13. See also Ablative case; Accusative case; Dative case; Declarative case; Genitive case; Locative case; Nominative case; Vocative case

Cætilline (Lucius Sergius Catilina), 73, 95, 133, 208, 210, 218, 240, 258–59

Catullus, xxxiii–xxxiv, 201, 209, 266, 304–07

Alley Cat, 183

Ask Me if I Care, 273

Bids a Bitter Farewell to Lesbia, 128

Bids His Girlfriend Farewell, 15

B.Y.O.B., etc., etc., 231–32

Death or a Pet Sparrow, 305–06

Dedicates His Poetry Book, 47

A Dedication, 304–05

Disillusionment, 292–93

Frater Ave, Atque Vale, 306–07

Give Me a Thousand Kisses!, 216

How Many Kisses?, 199, 305

I Love Her . . . I Love Her Not, 258

On Lesbia's Husband, 242–43

Promises, Promises!, 281

Thanks a Lot, Tully!, 183–84

Causā, with genitive phrase, 278

Cause, ablative of, 444

Characteristic, relative clauses of, 269–70


The Aged Playwright Sophocles Holds His Own, 127

Alexander the Great and the Power of Literature, 87

On Ambition and Literature, Both Latin and Greek, 146

anecdotes from, 322–25

The Arrest and Trial of the Conspirators, 311–16

The Authority of a Teacher's Opinion, 87

On Contempt of Death, 319–20

Cyrus' Dying Words on Immortality, 101

Death of a Puppy (Example of an Omen), 322

Denounces Catiline in the Senate, 73

Derivation of "Philosophus" and Subjects of Philosophy, 294–95
Cicero (cont.)
- De Vita et Morte, 316–20
- On the Ethics of Waging War, 54
- Evidence and Confession, 208–09
- Fabian Tactics, 102
- Get the Tuscanian Country House Ready, 325
- How Demosthenes Overcame His Handicaps, 293
- Imagines the State of Rome Itself Urging Him to Punish the Catilinarian Conspirators, 95
- The Incomparable Value of Friendship, 66
- Literature: Its Value and Delight, 320–22
- Marcus Quintô Frâtri S., 267
- A More Positive View About Immortality, 317–19
- The Most Pitiful Speech I’ve Ever Heard!, 273
- The Nervousness of Even a Great Orator, 200
- Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig, 273
- On the Pleasures of Love in Old Age, 114
- Quam Multa Non Desiderô!, 323
- The Rarity of Friendship, 29
- Socrates’ “Either-Or” Belief, 316–17
- Sorry, Nobody’s Home!, 251
- The Sword of Damocles, 294
- Testimony Against the Conspirators, 258–59
- Themistocles; Fame and Expediency, 324–25
- Thermopylae: A Soldier’s Humor, 35–36
- Too Conscientious (An Example of Irony), 322–23
- Two Examples of Roman Wit, 273
- Two Letters to, 274
- The Tyrant Can Trust No One, 293–94
- Urges Catiline’s Departure from Rome, 133
- On the Value and the Nature of Friendship, 295–96
- The Value of Literature, 290
- Vitriolic Denunciation of the Leader of a Conspiracy Against the Roman State, 307–11

Cimon, 225
Cincinnatus, 168
Circus Maximus, 120
Claudius, 241

Clauses
- participial phrases translated as, 150
- subjunctive, 186
  - conditional sentences, 229
  - cum, 211–12
  - fear, 285
  - indirect questions, 204
  - jussive, 188

Clauses (cont.)
- jussive noun, 253
- proviso, 223
- purpose, 189, 196, 253
- relative clause of characteristic, 269
- result, 196–97
- subordinate, 124
  - in indirect discourse, 444

Cleopatra, 273
Cognate languages, xxviii–xxxii
Collatinus, 47

Commands
- imperative, 5, 50, 51, 63, 188, 213, 223, 237, 261
- jussive noun clauses, 253–54
- jussive subjunctive, 188
- negative, nôlo and, 223

Comparison (comparative degree)
- ablative of, 173
- of adjectives, 171–73. See also Superlatives, of adjectives
  - declension, 172–73, 181
  - formation, 171–72
  - summary of forms, 450
  - usage and translation, 172–73
- of adverbs, 220–21
- irregular, 220–21
- summary of forms, 450

Complementary infinitive, 38–39

Compound verbs, dative case with, 247–48

Conditional sentences, 228–30
- indicative, 228–29
- subjunctive, 229

Conjugation. See also First conjugation; Fourth conjugation; Second conjugation; Third conjugation
- definition of, 2
- of deponent verbs, 234–37
- personal endings for. See Personal endings
- summary of forms of, 452–60

Conjunction, cum as, 211

Consonants, pronunciation of, xlii–xliii

Constantine, 88

Cornelius Nepos, 47

Cum, with ablative case, 92, 142

Cum clauses, 211–12

Cyrus the Great, 101

Dante, xxxviii

Dative case
- with adjectives, 245–46
Dative case (cont.)
of agent, 157–58
with compound verbs, 247–48
forms of. See Declension
general use of, 10
of possession, 443
of purpose, 443
of reference or interest, 270
with special verbs, 246–47

Dé
ablative case with, 99, 143
in place constructions, 262

Declension, xxxviin
1st, 11–12, 14n
  adjectives, 11–12, 25–26, 33, 57–58
2nd, 17–19
  adjectives, 33, 57–58
  masculines ending in -er, 18
  masculines ending in -us, 17–18
  neuters, 24–26
3rd, 43–44
  adjectives, 104–06, 172–73
  i-stem nouns, 89–91, 105
4th, 129–30
5th, 141–42
of adjectives, summary of forms, 447
definition of, 11
of gerund, 276–77
of participles, 148–49
of pronouns
  demonstratives, 55–56, 70–71
  intensive, 85
  personal, 67–68
  reflexive, 82–83
  relative, 110
use of term, 11n

Definite article, 11n, 60

Degree of difference, ablative of, 444

Demonstratives
hic, ille, iste, 55–57
  idem, cadem, idem, 70–71
is, ea, id, 70
usage and translation of, 56–57

Demosthenes, 132, 199

Deponent verbs, 234–38
  ablative case with, 237–38
  definition of, 234
  principal parts and conjugation of, 234–37
  semideponent, 237
  summary of forms of, 455–57

Derived languages, xxviii–xxxix
Descartes, 30

Description, genitive and ablative of, 285–86
Diēs Irae, 146
Dionysius, 40, 101, 113, 183, 266
Diphthongs, pronunciation of, xli

Direct object, 2, 19
  accusative case and, 10
Direct questions, -ne, nō, and nōne, 284

Domus, in place constructions, 262

Dufresnoy, Charles, 208

Dummodo, 223

Early Period of Latin literature, xxxii–xxxiii

Ego/nōs
  declension of, 67–68
  usage of, 68–70

Endings
1st declension, 11–12, 19
2nd declension, 17–19, 24–25
3rd declension, 43–44, 105
4th declension, 129–30
5th declension, 141
  i-stem, 89–91, 105
  personal
    deponent verbs, 234
    perfect system active, 77
    present system active, 2
    present system passive, 116–17

English language, xxvii–xxxii

Ennius, 102, 251

Eō, conjugation of, 260–61

-er adjectives, 1st and 2nd declension, 33

Erasmus, xxxviii

Etruria, 227

Etymology. See also last section of each chapter
  definition of, 15–16

Ex
  ablative case with, 99, 143
  in place constructions, 262

Fabius Maximus, Quintus, 102, 232–33

Fear clauses, 285

Perō, conjugation of, 212–13

Fifth declension, 141–42
  summary of forms of, 446

Finite verbs, 82

Fīō, conjugation of, 254–55

First conjugation
  future indicative
First conjugation (cont.)
  active, 31–32
  passive, 117
  imperative, 5
  imperfect indicative
  active, 31–32
  passive, 117
  present indicative
  active, 4
  passive, 116–17
  present infinitive
  active, 3
  passive, 117
  subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
  summary of forms of, 452–55
First declension, 11–12, 14n
  2nd declension compared with, 19
  adjectives, 11–12, 25–26
  ending in -er, 33
  summary of forms of, 446–47
Fourth conjugation, 62–63
  future indicative
  active, 63
  passive, 135–36
  imperative, 63
  imperfect indicative
  active, 63
  passive, 136
  present indicative
  active, 62
  passive, 135
  present infinitive
  active, 63
  passive, 136
  subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
  summary of forms of, 452–55
Fourth declension, 129–30
  summary of forms of, 446
Fronto, xxxvii
Fundanus, Minicius, 80
Future indicative
  deponent verbs, 235
  of possum, 38
  of sum, 37
Future indicative active
  1st and 2nd conjugation, 31–32
  3rd conjugation, 49, 50
  4th conjugation, 63
Future indicative passive
  1st and 2nd conjugation, 117
Future indicative passive (cont.)
  3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36
Future passive participle. See Gerundive
Future perfect
  active, 77–78
  deponent verbs, 235
  passive, 122
Future tense, translation of, 32
Gaul, 176
Gellius, xxxvii
Gender
  1st declension, 12
  2nd declension, 17–18
  neuters, 24–26
  3rd declension, 44, 90
  4th declension, 129
  5th declension, 141
Genitive case
  with cardinal numerals, 99
  of description, 285
  forms of. See Declension
  general use of, 10
  of material, 442
  objective, 69n, 442–43
  partitive (of the whole), 69n, 98–99
  possessive, 10
  of the whole (partitive genitive), 69n, 98–99
Gerundive (future passive participle), 147, 276, 281
  gerund compared with, 277
  in passive periphrastic, 155, 157
  phrases, 277–78
Gerunds, 276–78, 281
  declension of, 276–77
  gerundive compared with, 277
  phrases, 277–78
Gladiators, 243–44
Golden Age, xxxiii–xxxv, xxxviin
Greek alphabet, xxxix
Greek literature, xxxiii
Hamilcar, 102, 281
Hannibal, 102, 281–82
Hic
  declension of, 55, 56
  is compared with, 56
  use and translation of, 56–57
Homer, 87, 114, 145
Horace, xxxv, 7, 185, 291, 337–43
Aurea Mediocritas—The Golden Mean, 338–40
Autobiographical Notes, 298–99
“Carpe Diem,” 337
Contemplates an Invitation, 7
De Cupiditatem, 159–60
Diēs Festus, 342
The Grass Is Always Greener, 22
Integer Vitae, 337–38
Läbuntur Annī, 340–41
Longs for the Simple, Peaceful Country Life on His Sabine Farm, 299
A Monument More Lasting than Bronze, 290, 342–43
The Satirist’s Modus Operandi, 160
A Sense of Balance in Life, 341–42
Who Is Truly Free?, 258
Humus, in place constructions, 262

İdem, eadem, idem, 70–71
Ille
decision of, 55, 56
etymology and, 60
is compared with, 70
use and translation of, 56–57
Imperative, 188
1st and 2nd conjugation, 5
3rd conjugation, 50, 51, 63
4th conjugation, 63
definition of, 2
of deponent verbs, 237
nōlō, 223
Imperfect indicative
deponent verbs, 235
of possum, 38
of sum, 37
Imperfect indicative active
1st and 2nd conjugation, 31–33
3rd conjugation, 50–51, 63
4th conjugation, 63
Imperfect indicative passive
1st and 2nd conjugation, 117
3rd and 4th conjugation, 136
Imperfect subjunctive, 194–95
deponent verbs, 236
usage and translation of, 195–96
Imperfect tense
perfect (present perfect) tense compared with, 77–78
translation, 32–33
Impersonal verbs, 264n

In
with ablatival case, 142
in place constructions, 262
Indefinite article, 11n, 60
Indicative, xxxviin
definition of, 2
future. See Future indicative; Future indicative active; Future indicative passive
imperfect. See Imperfect indicative; Imperfect indicative active; Imperfect indicative passive;
Imperfect tense
present. See Present indicative; Present indicative active; Present indicative passive
subjunctive compared with, 186
Indicative conditional sentences, 228–29
Indirect command (jussive noun clauses), 253–54
Indirect object, 10, 19
Indirect questions, 204
Indirect statement (indirect discourse)
definition of, 164
infinitive in, with accusative subject, 164–66
list of verbs followed by, 167
subordinate clauses in, 444
Indo-European languages, xxviii–xxx, xxxiii
Infinite, 162–66
complementary, 38–39
definition of, 3n
of deponent verbs, 236–37
to distinguish the conjugations, 3, 50
in indirect statement, with accusative subject, 164–66
irregular verbs
possum, posse, potui, 38
sum, 26
objective, 445
present passive, 117, 136
usage of, 163
Instrument (means), ablative of, 91–92
Intensive pronouns, 85
Interest, dative of, 270
Interrogative adjectives, 124–25
Interrogative pronouns, 123–24
Intransitive verbs, 26. See also sum
-iō verbs
conjugation of, 62–64
participles, 148
subjunctive, 186–87, 194
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 85
Irregular verbs
eō, 260–61
ferō, 212–13
Irregular verbs (cont.)

fiō, 254–55
mālō, 222
nōlō, 222–23
possum, 38, 195
sum, 26, 37, 157, 195
summary of forms of, 457–60
volō, 221–22

Is, ea, id

declension of, 68
as demonstrative, 70
usage of, 68–70

Isidore of Seville, xxxviii
The Days of the Week, 192

Isto, declension of, 56
I-stem nouns of 3rd declension, 89–91, 105
Iubeō, with jussive noun clauses, 254

Jerome, Saint, xxxvii

Johnson, Samuel, xxxvii

Jussive noun clauses, 253–54
Jussive subjunctive, 188
Juvenal, xxxvi–xxxvii, 36, 210
Explains His Impulse to Satire, 109

Latin language, in linguistic history, xxvii–xxxii

Latin literature
brief survey of, xxxii–xxxix
“vulgar,” xxvii, xxxvii–xxxviii

Lentulus, 208, 258–59
Leonidas, 35–36
Lesbia, 183, 199, 216, 242
Linking verbs, intransitive, 26. See also sum

Livy, xxxv
On the Death of Cicero, 326
Laments the Decline of Roman Morals, 40–41
The Rape of Lucretia, 47
Locative case, 262
Lucretia, rape of, 47
Lucretius, xxxiii

Maccari, Cesare, 73
Macrobius, Facētiae (Witticisms), 217
Macrons, xli, 4
Maecenas, 7, 21

Mālō
conjugation of, 222
with jussive noun clauses, 254
Manlius, 133
Manner, ablative of, 92, 142, 143

Martial, xxxvi, 353–54
A Covered Dish Dinner!, 209
Diaulus Still Buries His Clients, 81
Even Though You Do Invite Me— I’ll Come!, 354
Fake Tears, 354
The Good Life, 177
To Have Friends One Must Be Friendly, 192
His Only Guest Was a Real Boar!, 35
“I Do,” “I Don’t!,” 251
“I Do Not Love Thee, Doctor Fell,” 40
I Don’t Cook for Cooks!, 258
Issa, 355
It’s All in the Delivery, 114
Large Gifts—Yes, but Only Bait, 301
A Legacy-Hunter’s Wish, 209
Maronilla Has a Cough, 251
Message from a Bookcase, 128
Note on a Book by Lucan, 273
Note on a Copy of Catullus’ Carmina, 209–10
Oh, I’d Love to Read You My Poems . . . Not!, 258
The Old Boy Dyed His Hair, 353
Paete, Nōn Dolet, 281
Please . . . Don’t!, 226
Please Remove My Name from Your Mailing List!, 191
Pretty Is as Pretty Does, 242
Pro-crās-tination, 354
The Quality of Martial’s Book, 257
The Rich Get Richer, 232
Ringo, 217
Store Teeth, 94–95
Summer Vacation, 252
On a Temperamental Friend, 109
Thanks . . . but No Thanks!, 266
A Vacation . . . from You!, 226
And Vice Is Not Nice!, 242
A Visit from the Young Interns, 145
What’s in a Name?, 335
When I Have . . . Enough!, 59
You’re All Just Wonderful!, 200

Material, genitive of, 442
Matthew, The Lord’s Prayer, 301
Means (instrument), ablative of, 91–92, 143

Medieval Period, xxxvii–xxxviii

Middle English, xxxi

Milo, 215
Milton, John, xxxviii

Minerva (Athena), 154

Mood
definition of, 2
imperative, 2, 5, 50, 63, 237
Mood (cont.)
   indicative, 2
   subjunctive, 2, 186–87
More, Sir Thomas, xxxvii
Mycenae, 53

-ne, num, nōnne, in direct questions, 284–85
Nepos, xxxv, 47, 327–37
   Aristides the Just, 333–35
   The Character of Cimon, 225
   Hannibal; The Second Punic War, 297–98
   Hannibal and the Beginnings of the Second Punic
   War, 281–82
   Miltiades and the Battle of Marathon, 327–30
   Themistocles and the Battle of Salamis, 330–33
Newton, Sir Isaac, xxxvii
Nōlō
   conjugation of, 222–23
   with jussive noun clauses, 254
   negative commands and, 223
Nominative case
   forms of. See Declension
   as subject, 10
Nouns
   1st declension, 11–12
   2nd declension, 17–19, 24–25
   3rd declension, 43–44, 89–91
   4th declension, 129–30
   5th declension, 141–42
   in apposition, 19
   cases of, 9–11, 13. See also Ablative case; Accusative
   case; Dative case; Declension; Genitive
   case; Nominative case; Vocative case
   predicate, 26–27
   substantive adjectives as, 27
   summary of forms, 446–47
   verbal. See Gerund; Infinitive; Supine
Number, 1, 13
Numerals, 97–98, 451
   cardinal, 97–99, 451
   ablative case, 99, 143
   ordinal, 98, 451
Objective genitives, 69, 442–43
Objective infinitive, 445
Object of verb
   direct, 2, 10, 19
   indirect, 10, 19
Odo de Cerinton, Who Will Put the Bell on the Cat's Neck!, 302
Ordinal numerals, 98, 451
Orestes, 192
Ovid, xxxvi, 291
   Asks the Gods to Inspire His Work, 250–51
   On Death and Metamorphosis, 121
Paetus, Caecina, 281
Pannini, Giovanni, 96
Paradigms
   meaning and use of, 3
   said aloud, 3–4
Participles (participial phrases), 147–53. See also Ger-
   undive
   ablative absolute, 155–57
   declension of, 148–49
   of deponent verbs, 236–37
   passive periphrastic, 155, 157
   translation of
   as clauses, 150
   as verbal adjectives, 147, 149–50
Partitive genitive, 69
Passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum), 155, 157
Passive voice, 2
   definition of, 118
   infinitive, 162–63
   participles in, 147–48
   perfect system, 122
   subjunctive, 203
   usage and translation, 123
   present system
   1st and 2nd conjugation, 116–18
   3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36
   subjunctive, 188, 194
Patristic Period, xxxvii
Perfect indicative
   active, 77
   deponent verbs, 235
   passive, 122
   imperfect tense compared with, 77–78
   translation of, 77–78
Perfect subjunctive
   active, 202
   deponent verbs, 236
   passive, 202–03
Perfect system
   active voice, 75–78
   perfect active stem and, 76–77
   principal parts, 75–76
   usage, translation and distinction from the im-
   perfect, 77–78
   definition of, 75
Perfect system (cont.)
  passive voice, 122–23
  usage and translation, 123
  subjunctive, 202–03
Periodic style, 19–20
Periphrasis, definition of, 157n
Persia, 35–36, 132, 215
Persius, 291
Person, 1, 13
Personal agent, ablative of, 118–19, 143
Personal endings
  active voice, 2–3, 77
  passive voice, 116
Personal pronouns, 67–70
  declension of, 67–68
  definition of, 67
  reflexive pronouns compared with, 83–84
  usage of, 68–70
Petrarch, xxxviii
Petronius, xxxvi
  Trimalchio’s epitaph, 266–67
Phaedrus, 343–46
  The Ass and the Old Shepherd, 345
  De Cupiditatis, 160
  The Fox and the Tragic Mask, 343–44
  The Fox Gets the Raven’s Cheese, 344–45
  The Other Person’s Faults and Our Own, 343
  Sour Grapes, 343
  The Stag at the Spring, 344
  The Two Mules and the Robbers, 345–46
Phonetic change, 435–36
Phrases
  gerund and gerundive, 277–78
  participial
    ablative absolute, 155–57
    translation, 150
Pittoni, Giovanni, 102
Place constructions, 261–62
  from which, 130, 143, 262
  to which, 262
  where, 142, 262
Plato, 152
Plautus, xxxiii, xxxvi
Pliny (cont.)
  A Sweet, Brave Girl, 349–50
  What Pliny Thinks of the Races, 300
  Why No Letters?, 300
  Writes to Marcellinus about the Death of Fundamus’ Daughter, 80–81
Pluperfect (past perfect), usage of, 78
Pluperfect indicative
  active, 77
  deponent verbs, 234
  passive, 122
Pluperfect subjunctive, 202–03
  deponent verbs, 236
Plūs, declension of, 181
Polyphemus, 108
Pompeii, 40, 42, 209
Pompey, 274
Pontilianus, 191
Possession
  dative of, 443
  genitive case and, 10
Possessives, reflexive, 84
Possum
  with complementary infinitive, 38–39
  conjugation of, 38
  subjunctive, 195
Postpositive word, 34
Praeneste, 139
Predicate, definition of, 26
Predicate adjectives, 26–27
Predicate nouns, 26–27
Prefixes, 436–40
Prepositions, xxxvi
  with ablative case, 10–11, 18n, 68n, 142–43
  with accusative case, 10
  definition of, 10n
  object of, 10
  in place constructions, 261–62
Present imperative active
  1st and 2nd conjugation, 5
  3rd conjugation, 50, 51, 63
  4th conjugation, 63
Present imperative passive, deponent verbs, 237
Present indicative
  deponent verbs, 235
  of possum, 38
  of sum, 26
Present indicative active
  1st and 2nd conjugation, 4
  3rd conjugation, 49, 50, 62
  4th conjugation, 62
Present indicative passive
   1st and 2nd conjugation, 116–17
   3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36
Present stems. See Stems of verbs, present
Present subjunctive.
   conjugation of, 186–87
   deponent verbs, 235
   of possum, 195
   of sum, 195
   translation of, 188–89
Present system
   1st and 2nd conjugation
   imperative, 5
   indicative, 3–4, 31–32, 116–18
   subjunctive, 186–87, 194
   3rd conjugation
   imperative, 50, 51
   indicative, 49–51, 62–64, 135–36
   subjunctive, 186–87, 194
   4th conjugation
   imperative, 63
   indicative, 62–63, 135–36
   subjunctive, 186–87, 194
   definition of, 75
Pronouns
   demonstrative
      hic, ille, iste, 55–57
      idem, eadem, idem, 70–71
      is, ea, id, 70
   intensive, 85
   interrogative, 123–24
   personal, 67–70
      declension, 67–68
      definition of, 67–68
      reflexive pronouns compared with, 83–84
      usage, 68–70
   reflexive, 82–84
      personal compared with, 83–84
   relative, 110–12
      declension, 110
      interrogative adjectives compared with, 124–25
      usage and agreement, 110–11
      summary of forms of, 448–49
Pronunciation, xxxix–xliv
   accent and, xliii–xliv
   of consonants, xli
   of diphthongs, xli
   syllables and, xlii–xliii
   of vowels, xli, 4
Propertius, xxxvi
   Proviso clauses, 223
   Publilius Syrus, xxxv
   Purpose, dative of, 443
   Purpose clauses, 189, 196
   jussive noun clauses compared with, 253
   Pylades, 192
   Pyrrhus, 168, 170
   Pythagoras, 87–88
Quam
   with comparative and superlative adjectives, 173
   with comparative and superlative adverbs, 220
Questions
   direct, -ne, num, and nónne, 284
   indirect, 204
Quí, quae, quod
   as interrogative adjectives, 124–25
   as relative pronouns, 110–12
Quídam, 99
Quintilian, xxxvi
   Aristotle, Tutor of Alexander the Great, 232
Raphael, 88
Reading passages. See specific authors
Reference, dative of, 270
Reflexive possessives, 84
Reflexive pronouns, 82–84
   personal pronouns compared with, 83–84
Regulus, 280
Relative clauses of characteristic, 269–70
Relative pronouns, 110–12
   declension of, 110
   interrogative adjectives compared with, 124–25
   usage and agreement, 110–12
Result clauses, 196–200
Romance languages, xxix, xxxvii, 444
   etymology and, 22, 29–30, 48, 60, 73, 95, 102, 114,
   139, 146, 178, 184–85, 193, 200, 275, 282
Rome, 8, 96, 265
Rubicon river, 128, 274
Rūs, in place constructions, 262
Salinator, Marcus Livius, 232–33
Schoenfeld, Johann, 282
Scipio Nasica, 251
Second conjugation
   future indicative
      active, 31–32
      passive, 117
   imperfect indicative
      active, 31–32
Second conjugation (cont.)
   passive, 117
   present indicative
      active, 4
      passive, 116–17
   present infinitive
      active, 3
      passive, 117
   subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
   summary of forms of, 452–55
Second declension, 17–19
   1st declension compared with, 19
   adjectives, 25–26
      in -er, 33
      masculines in -er, 18
      masculines in -us, 17–18
      neuters, 24–26
   summary of forms of, 446–47
Semi-deponent verbs, 237
Seneca, xxxvi, 60
   Claudius' excremental expiration, 241
   When I Have ... Enough!, 59–60
Separation, ablative of, 130–31, 143
Shakespeare, William, xxxiii
Silver Age, xxxvi–xxxvii
Socrates, 152, 168, 208
Solon, 257
Sophocles, 79, 127
Specification, ablative of, 443–44
Stems of participles, 147–48
Stems of verbs
   perfect active, 76–77
   present
      1st and 2nd conjugation, 3, 5
      3rd conjugation, 50
      4th conjugation, 63
Sub
   with ablative case, 142
   in place constructions, 262
Subject, 19, 26a
   agreement of with verb, 13
   of indicative, accusative case, 164–66
   nominative case as, 10
Subject-object-verb (SOV) pattern, 5
Subjunctive (cont.)
   proviso, 223
   purpose, 189, 196, 253
   relative clause of characteristic, 269
   result, 196–97
   subjunctive by attraction, 258
   definition of, 2, 186
   of deponent verbs, 235–36
   imperfect, 194–97
      usage and translation, 195–96
   perfect, 202–03
   pluperfect, 202–03
   of possum, 195
   present, 186–87, 195
   of sum, 195
      translation of, 188, 195–96, 203
Subordinate clauses, 124
   in indirect discourse, 444
Substantive adjectives, 27
Suffixes, 440–42
Sum
   conjugation of
      future and imperfect indicative, 37
      present indicative, 26
      subjunctive, 195
   with gerundive, 153, 157
   with predicate nouns or adjectives, 26–27
Superlatives
   of adjectives
      declension, 172
      irregular formation, 179–80
      peculiar formation, 178–79
      regular formation, 171–72
      usage and translation, 172–73
   of adverbs, 220–21
Supine, 270–71
Syllables, xliii–xliv
Synopsis, 136
Syntax, 13
Tacitus, xxxvi
Tarquinius Superbus, 47, 159
Tarquinius, Sextus, 47
Tense(s)
   definition of, 2
      future, 31–32, 37, 38, 49, 50, 63, 75, 117, 135–36
      future perfect, 77, 78
      imperfect, 75
         indicative, 31–33, 37, 38, 50–51, 63, 117, 136
         subjunctive, 194–97
      infinitive, 163, 165
Tense(s) (cont.)
  participles, 147-48
  perfect
    indicative, 77-78
    subjunctive, 202-03
pluperfect
  indicative, 77, 78
  subjunctive, 202-03
present, 26, 38, 75
  imperative, 5
    indicative, 3-5, 38, 49, 50, 62, 116-17, 135
    subjunctive, 186-87, 195
sequence of, 204-06
  subjunctive, 186
Terence, xxxiii, 48
  An Uncle's Love for His Nephew and Adopted Son, 184
Themistocles, 132, 215
Thermopylae, 35-36, 168
Third conjugation, 49-51
  future indicative
    active, 49, 50
    passive, 135-36
  imperfect indicative
    active, 50-51
    passive, 136
-iō verbs, 62-64
  present indicative
    active, 49, 50
    passive, 135
  present infinitive
    active, 50, 62
    passive, 136
  subjunctive, 186-87, 194, 202-03
summary of forms of, 452-55
Third declension, 43-44
  adjectives, 104-06
    usage, 106
  i-stem nouns, 89-91, 105
    summary of forms of, 446-47
Time constructions, 263
Time when or within
  ablative of, 99-100, 143, 263
Transitive verbs
  definition of, 2
  infinitive, 162
  participles of, 147
  voice and, 2
Translation, 5
  3rd declension and, 44
Translation (cont.)
  of comparative adjectives, 172-73
  of demonstratives, 56-57
  of future tense, 32
  of imperfect tense, 32-33
  of is, ea, id, 70
  of perfect passive system, 123
  of perfect tense, 77
  of relative pronouns, 112
  of subjunctive, 188, 195-96, 203
Troy, 152-54, 168-70, 191, 289-90
Tū/orīs
  declension of, 67-68
  usage of, 68-70
Unus, etymology and, 60
UNUS NAUTA, 57-58
Verbs. See also Conjugation; Mood; Tense(s); Voice
  agreement of with subject, 13
  auxiliary, xxxviin
  characteristics of, 1-2
  dative case with
    compound verbs, 247-48
    special verbs, 246-47
  deponent, 234-38
    summary of forms of, 455-57
  finite, 82
  intransitive, 26. See also sum
    infinitive, 162
  irregular. See Irregular verbs
  transitive, 2
    infinitive, 162
    participles, 147
    word order and, 5, 19-20
Virgil, xxxv, 7, 154, 209, 290-91
  The Death of Laocoon ... and Troy, 168-69
  Jupiter Prophesies to Venus the Future Glory of Rome, 288-89
  Laocoon Speaks Out Against the Trojan Horse, 152-53
  Messianic Eclogue, 139
VIS, declension of, 91
Vocative case, forms of. See Declension
Voice. See also Active voice; Passive voice
  definition of, 2
Volō
  conjugation of, 221-22
  with jussive noun clauses, 254
Vowels, pronunciation of, xli, 4
Vulgate, xxviin, xxxv

West, Benjamin, 192
Whole, genitive of the (partitive genitive), 98–99
Wilson, Thomas, xxxin
Word order, 13, 19

Xenophon, 138
Xerxes, 36
Location of the
Sententiae Antiquae

(7) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (8) Cic., Phil. 4.5.9.
(9) Nep., Milt. 5. (10) Cic., De Or. 1.61.260.
(11) Hor., A.P. (Ep. 2.3) 335–336. (12) Ter.,
Heaut. 4.2.675. (13) Cic., Off. 1.23.80.
(14) Cic., Am. 9.29.
30. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.3.6. (2) Phaedr. 3.7.1. (3) Hor.,
Sat. 1.5.67–68. (4) Virg., Ec. 8.43.
(9) Hor., Ep. 1.2.1–4. (10) Hor., Ep. 1.18.96–
31. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.6.15. (2) Cic., Am. 12.42.
(3) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10 and 1.9.23. (4) Hor.,
(6) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.2.4.14. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.5.12.
(8) Cic., Sen. 10.33. (9) Liv. 45.8. (10) Ter.,
12. Cic., Client. 53.146.
32. (1) Publil. Syr. 512. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10.
(3) Hor., Ep. 1.6.29. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.9.996.
(5) Ter., Hecat. 4.1.622. (6) Cic., Sen. 3.7.
(7) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701. (8) Caes., B.G. 3.18.
(9) Plaut., Trin. 2.2.361. (10) Publil. Syr.
129. (11) Sall., Cat. 8. (12) Cic., Fin.
3.7.26. (13) See Ch. 18 S.A. 11. (14) Sen.,
16. Hor., Ep. 2.3.102–103 (Ars Poetica).
33. (1) Verg., Mil. Prolog. 3. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.76.
(3) Cic., Sull. 31.87. (4) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.3.5.
(5) Phaedr. App. 18. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
24. (7) Publil. Syr. 412. (8) Hor., Od.
4.10.6. (9) Juv. 3.152–153.
34. (1) Virgil., Aen. 3.188. (2) Hor., Sat. 1.3.68–69.
2.9.1 and Cic., Tuscul. 3.9.19. (5) Cic., Cat.
1.5.10. (6) Hor., Od. 3.16.7. (7) Cic., Fam.
7.10.1. (8) Publil. Syr. 350. (9) Mart. Bk. 1
Praef. 1–2. (10) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (11) Ter.,
Heaut. 1.2.239–240. (12) Cic., Am. 6.22.
(13) Cic., De Or. 2.67.274. (14) Virgil., Aen.
1.199.
35. (1) Sen., ep. Ep. 8.7; and Hor., Sat. 2.7.83 ff.
Syr. 99. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.86–87. (5) Cic.,
Fin. 1.18.60, 4.24.65; De Or. 1.3.10 et pas-
sim. (6) Publil. Syr. 767 and 493. (7) Vulg.,
B.G. 4.23 and 5.45. (10) Quint., Inst.
10.1.112. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.41–42.
(12) Publil. Syr. 687. (13) Hor., Sat. 2.2.135–
Syr. 288.
36. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.3. (2) Lucr. 1.205. (3) Ter.,
Heaut. 2.3.314. (4) Caes., B.C. 2.43.
(5) Ter., Ad. 3.4.505. (6) Ter., Hecat.
5.5.1049 and 1067. (7) Hor., Od. 1.11.7–8.
211. (12) Hor., Od. 1.24.19–20. (13) Ov.,
Am. 1.2.10. (14) Cic., Am. 5.7. (15) Cic.,
Arch. 2.3.
37. (1) Hor., Ep. 2.3.68. (2) Virgil., Aen. 6.127.
(3) Ov., A.A. 3.62–65. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132;
Ad. 1.1.26. (5) Ter., Ad. 5.5.882. (6) Ter.,
Od. 4.1.517, 4.2.556. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.9.1.
2.4.54.120. (10) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421 and 423.
(11) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (12) Nep., Att. 8; Cic.,
Phil. 2.12.28, Tuscul. 5.37.109 (names
Sen. 7.24. (15) Prop., 2.15.23–24.
38. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.31. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9.
(3) Cat., 4.7.16. (4) Cic., Am. 7.23.
(5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Cic., Am. 15.53.
(7) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (8) Cic., Cat. 4.11.24.
(9) Virgil., Ec. 1.7. (10) Cic., Fam. 4.5.6.
(13) Plin., Ep. 5.16.4–5. (14) Hor., Od.
1.37.1–2.
(3) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (4) Publil., Syr. 762.
(5) Cic., Off. 1.25.89. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54.
(7) Cic., Off. 3.32.113. (8) Cic., Sest. 2.5
(9) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (10) Cic., Att. 2.23.1.
(13) Virgil., Aen. 4.175. (14) Cic., Fam.
5.12.4.
40. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.7.14. (2) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7.
(3) Cic., Tuscul. 1.41.97. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.4.856.
(9) Liv.: see Loci Immutati #17. (10) Cic.,
Marcell. 10.32. (11) Catull. 43.1–3.
(12) Ter., Hecat. 1.1.77. (13) Cic., Am.
21.81. (14) Vulg., Exod. 20.11. (15) Caes.,
B.G. 1.47. (16) Cic., Cat. 1.4.8. (17) Cic.,
Planc. 42.101.
ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Frederic M. Wheelock (1902–1987) received the A.B., A.M., and Ph.D. degrees from Harvard University. His long and distinguished teaching career included appointments at Haverford College, Harvard University, the College of the City of New York, Brooklyn College, Cazenovia Junior College (where he served as Dean), the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon, NY), the University of Toledo (from which he retired as full Professor in 1968), and a visiting professorship at Florida Presbyterian (now Eckerd) College. He published a number of articles and reviews in the fields of textual criticism, palaeography, and the study of Latin; in addition to Wheelock's Latin (previously titled Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors), his books include Wheelock's Latin Reader (previously titled Latin Literature: A Book of Readings) and Quintilian as Educator (trans. H. E. Butler; introd. and notes by Prof. Wheelock). Professor Wheelock was a member of the American Classical League, the American Philological Association, and the Classical Association of the Atlantic States. Biographies of Professor Wheelock authored by Professor Ward Briggs appear in his book, A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists (Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1994), as well as in the Winter, 2003, issue of the Classical Outlook.

Richard A. LaFleur received the B.A. and M.A. in Latin from the University of Virginia and the Ph.D. in Classical Studies from Duke. He has taught since 1972 at the University of Georgia, where he served for 21 years as head of one of the largest Classics programs in North America and has held since 1998 the chair of Franklin Professor of Classics. He has numerous publications in Latin language, literature, and pedagogy, including the books The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis, Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student, Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader, Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom, A Song of War: Readings from Vergil’s Aeneid (with Alexander G. McKay), Wheelock’s Latin (revised 5th and 6th eds.), Wheelock’s Latin Reader (revised 2nd ed.), and (with Paul Comeau) Workbook for Wheelock’s Latin (revised 3rd ed.). Professor LaFleur also served as editor of The Classical Outlook (1979–2003) and is past President of the American Classical League (1984–1986). He has been recipient of over one million dollars in grants from the National Endowment for the Humanities and other agencies, and of state, regional, and national awards for teaching and professional service, including, in 1984, the American Philological Association's award for Excellence in the Teaching of Classics.
Wheelock's Latin is better than ever!

Wheelock's Latin, Sixth Edition, Revised
Frederic M. Wheelock • Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

The new, revised sixth edition of Wheelock's Latin has all the features that have made it the best-selling single-volume beginning Latin textbook: forty chapters with grammatical explanations and readings based on ancient Roman authors • self-tutorial exercises with an answer key for independent study • extensive English-Latin/Latin-English vocabularies • supplementary original Latin readings—unlike other textbooks which contain primarily made-up sentences and passages • etymological aids • maps of the Mediterranean, Italy, and the Aegean area • numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and historical and literary figures presented in the chapter readings.

Also new to the sixth edition, revised, are: further expansion of the English-Latin vocabulary • audio for the chapter vocabularies and other pronunciation aids, online at www.WheelocksLatin.com • an online teacher's guide and answer key, available to instructors only and password/gatekeeper-protected at www.HarperAcademic.com.

Workbook for Wheelock's Latin, Third Edition, Revised
Paul T. Comeau • Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

From two of the country's leading Latinists comes this updated edition of the Workbook for Wheelock's Latin. Each of the forty lessons presented in this newly revised edition begins with a detailed set of objectives and continues with a series of questions designed to focus directly on the newly introduced grammar, a variety of transformation drills, word and phrase translations, and other exercises designed to test and sharpen the student's skills. A section on word power focuses on vocabulary and derivatives, and the final section includes reading comprehension questions and sentences for translation practice. Lessons are presented in an easy to read, clear layout, with perforated pages for hand-in homework assignments and space for the student's name and date.

Wheelock's Latin Reader, Second Edition
Frederic M. Wheelock • Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

This second edition marks the first time this classic book has ever been significantly revised. Featuring expanded notes, and all new photos and maps, Wheelock's Latin Reader is the ideal intermediate Latin reader to follow the best-selling Wheelock's Latin and other introductory texts. It includes extensive selections from writers such as Cicero, Livy, Ovid, Pliny, the Vulgate, Bede, and others, along with useful introductions, translation notes, and a full Latin-English vocabulary.

"[Wheelock's Latin Reader] is a solid companion to [Wheelock's Latin] and deserves wide circulation as a practical introduction to the humanism of Ancient Rome."
—The Classical Bulletin

www.WheelocksLatin.com

VOCABULARY CARDS FOR WHEELOCK'S LATIN: Cards for all Wheelock vocabulary plus handy grammar summary available from Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 1000 Brown Street, Unit 101, Wauconda, IL 60084 / www.bolchazy.com / orders@bolchazy.com / 847-526-4344
WHEN PROFESSOR FREDERIC M. WHEELOCK’S LATIN first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and conciseness; at least one reviewer predicted that the book “might well become the standard text” for introducing students to elementary Latin. Now, five decades later, that prediction has certainly proved accurate.

The revised sixth edition of Wheelock’s Latin has all the features that have made it the best-selling single-volume beginning Latin textbook, many of them improved and expanded:

- 40 chapters with grammatical explanations and readings based on ancient Roman authors
- Self-tutorial exercises with an answer key for independent study
- A newly enlarged English-Latin/Latin-English vocabulary
- A rich selection of original Latin readings—unlike other textbooks, which contain primarily made-up Latin texts
- Etymological aids

Also included are maps of the Mediterranean, Italy, and the Aegean area, as well as numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and historical and literary figures presented in the chapter readings.

Praise for the New Edition

“Generations of students have learned Latin successfully from Wheelock’s venerable text. LaFleur preserves the best features of the original book, while adapting it to meet twenty-first-century demands.”
—PROFESSOR ANNE H. GROTON, St. Olaf College

“The new edition makes a world of difference.”
—PROFESSOR ROBERT A. KASTER, Princeton University

“For those long familiar with [Wheelock’s Latin], the new edition shows the continuing vitality of a venerable pedagogical classic.”
—PROFESSOR WILLIAM HYLAND, St. Norbert College